



W. M. scul.



W. M. scul.

THE COMPLEAT HORSEMAN AND EXPERT FERRIER.

In two Bookes.

The first, shewing the best manner of breeding good Horses, with their choyce, nature, riding and dyeting, as well for Running as Hunting, and how the Rider ought to behave himselfe in the Breaking and Riding of Colts, as also teaching the Groome and Keeper his true office, touching the Horses and Colts committed to his charge, and prescribing the best manner how a perfect Stable ought to be scituated and made, not hitherto so fully described by any.

The second, directing the most exact and approved manner how to know and cure all maladies and diseases in Horses: a worke containing the secrets and best skill belonging either to *Ferrier* or *Horse-Leech*: the Cures placed Alphabetically: with many hundreds of medicines never before imprinted in any Author.

Published at the earnest request of sundry Noble and worthy Gentlemen, for the generall good and benefit of the whole Kingdome: And dedicated to his most Excellent Majestie,

By Thomas de Gray Esquire.

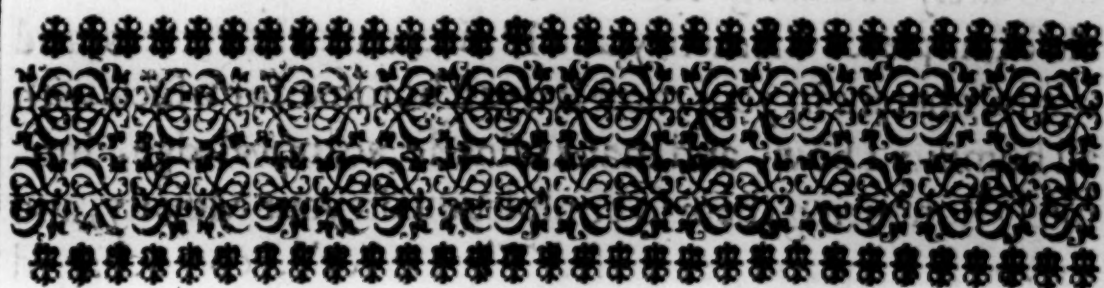


LONDON,

Printed by *Thomas Harper*, and are to be sold by *Lawrence Chapman*, at his Shop at Chancery lane end next Holborne,

1639.

4



TO
THE MOST HIGH AND
MIGHTY MONARCH,
CHARLES,
BY
THE GRACE OF GOD,
KING OF GREAT BRITAIN,
FRANCE, AND IRELAND, DEFEN-
DER OF THE FAITH, &c.

SIR,



You are justly placed in a glorious sphere,
elevated in a most conspicuous altitude a-
bove other inferiour and subordinate
Orbes, from whence (as a sovereign Ar-
biter) you behold and judge of our Mo-
tions, as they either relish of worth or de-
merit, and (like the Sunne) impartially dispense the propiti-
ous beames of your favour, as well to the humblest plant, as
the tallest Cedar. As I am a recent and fresh existent exam-
ple of your life-tendring influence, for when depressed and
trampled upon by the insolency of an unkinde-adversary
that

The Epistle Dedicatory.

that raised me up to tread upon an equall Basis with him, who lately had designed me for his foot-stoole. An admirable example of Clemency and Iustice, eminent vertues, and truely inherent in your most Royall bosome: for which with all humility I bow, and thankfulnessse acknowledge, infinitely honouring them so conspicuous in your Majesty, and by you so frequently exercised. Thus restor'd, I come charg'd with a Booke, which I most humbly prostrate at your feete, because I feare it is not conscious of so much worth, as to merit a kisse from your sacred hand. It is the Embrion of my study, travels, experience, and practise, and cannot arrive to forme and perfection without the reflection of your Majesties favour. It brings with it a front not altogether inglorious, of *Horsmanship* and *Ferriery*, the first not incompetent with the most illustrious title and Heroick Spirit; the second not unworthy the knowledge, yea the practise of the most accomplish'd Gentleman. I know this Treatise cannot hold proportion with so elated a patronage, as that of your Majesty, although it were inform'd with a farre nobler Genius; yet for all this infinite disproportion, the Dedication of it unto your sacred Majesty will not appeare much improper; for first I received the ability to prosecute it from your Grace and favour: so that deriving its being from you, it belongs of right unto you, and must have recourse unto your Majestie for its safety and protection. Secondly, it is the off-spring of my age, and cannot but leave a fatall participation in its Parents infirmity, and therefore (especially in these censorious times) cannot possibly subsist without your Royall protection. Lastly, as you have taken the rationall creatures of this your tripartite Kingdome into your titular care, so have you not excluded the irrationall, albeit in a different condition, much lesse the *Horse*, whole Generosity, and use have given him the precedency in your Majesties esteeme, before all other bruit species; so that this Booke (which beautifies his shape, encreases his courage, delivers rudiments for his menage, prescribes cures for his diseases, and

The Epistle Dedicatory.

and in all, enables and advances his race and bravery) hopes to finde your Majesties hand extended and open to receive it. The worke concernes the Common-wealth in generall, and if accepted and perused with as much zeale and care as I have us'd in the publishing of it; I presume it will not be found empty of profit. My many yeares have given me the priviledge to have seene and knowne this kingdome rich both in the number and quality of her Horses, and it would infinitely grieve me that I now live to see her reduc'd to so deplorable an indignity, but that I am confident I shall see her restor'd to her precedent glory and opulency by your Majesty: and now that I have assum'd the boldnesse to inculcate her poverty, my zeale and respect to my Country, transports me yet a little further to discover the causes of it, together with the redresses and remedies. First, those Forrests, Parks, Commons, Fennes, Moores, and other marriish and waste grounds, which paid yearely so rich a tribute of young, able, and serviceable Horses to the universall use of this Kingdome, are at this time disafforrested, dispark't, taken in, drain'd, laid dry, and converted to other (but much different) uses, so that those brave breeds and races of Horses are much extenuated, or altogether intermitted. Then the Gelders, who in every shire so confidently and frequently exercise their faculty in a most unlawfull manner, and spay yong Fillies, by which meanes they become barren, the breeds of Horses discontinued, and the Common-wealth highly prejudic'd and unfurnish'd; for instance I can and will (upon occasion) produce a Gelder who spayes more then a hundred Fillies. For redresse of the first, your Majesty may be pleased to command that those Statutes which were enacted for the breeding of Horses, may be speedily and exactly put in execution. For the second, that you will likewise please by your Proclamation to inhibit all Gelders that unlawfull and prejudiciall exercise of their profession, then shall your Majesty see the noxious and exorbitant disease meet with a sudden and easie cure, and the whole King-

b

dome

The Epistle Dedicatory.

dome derive a sensible and inestimable benefit from it. Now it rests that I make an humble Apologie for my boldnesse, which indeed would be a matter of trouble and difficulty for me to accomplish; did I not know your Majestie to be a Prince infinitely tending the good and welfare of your Kingdome; so that this treating of a businesse not inconsequent, I despaire not of obtaining your Royall pardon, but promise my selfe from your benignity and clemency, a gracious acceptance of that I have most zealously delivered.

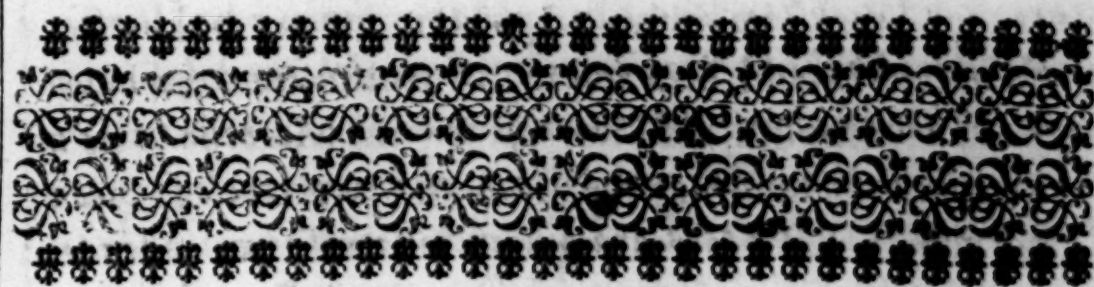
Your Majesties most humble

and faithfull Subject,

THOMAS DE GRAY.

*To know if a mare be in foale
or not a month or 6 weeks
after covering:*

*when you water her in a morninge lay
your fingers betwixt her flankes & rid
upon the thin of her belly, & you shall
perceive a motion like the beating of
a pulse, if it beat on the right side
it will be a horse colt, if on the left
a filly. if you feel no motion she is barren.*



TO
THE RIGHT HONO-
RABLE,

I A M E S,
MARQUESSE HAMILTON,
EARLE OF ARRAN AND
CAMBRIDGE, BARON OF EVEN,

Aberbroth, and Ennerdale, Master of the Horse

*to his Maiestie, Knight of the Honorable order
of the Garter, and one of his Majesties most
honorable privy Councill.*

My Lord,



*I have presented this peece of Horse-manship
to his Maiestie by any other hand then Yours,
had beene very improper ; as well in regard of
the place your Lordship beares, as of my respects
to your Noble person.*

*Here is a subject (my Lord) worthy of
your consideration, and the imployments of your thoughts even
serious ; for in this most generous Creature, next unto Man, con-
sisteth the pleasure, honor, and defence of a most flourishing King-
dome.*

I have given part of my Youth to the investigation of this

beautifull and usefull Creature; I have searched many Nations for my better information; and albeit I have found some Climates more Fortunate then this of Ours, in the production of a happie shape to this Creature, for the most part our Horses not being drawne out with such delicate Lineaments, nevertheless some of them, I have (where care and diligence have beene used in the Breed) of most absolute, and perfect shape, and whereas frequently, the Barbary Iennet, Turke and Neapolitan Courser, are cryed up for their beauties, yet as in some shapes they excell, so in some other they may be found defective.

But if we regard the Spirit, Vigor, and doing of a Horse, no Nation, or Soyle, produceth a more Active, then this our Iland of Great Britaine, as hath beene wellexperienced by many Noble and memorable Services.

Vnto which if we adde a due observation in our Breed, both on the one side of the Stalion or Sire, and the Damme, our lost glory will be soone recovered.

But since the laying aside of the great Saddle and Cannon, and neglect of the Horse of Menage, since the applying our Breed only to Racing, or, (as I may better say) in furnishing our selves with Horses of speed to runne away from our Enemy, the most ancient honour of Horsemanship peculiar to this our Kingdome, and for which all other Nations highly esteemed us, is now almost vanished and lost; insomuch as were we pressed with thoughts of defence (from which the most prudent and watchfull Eye of our most gracious Sovereigne, Guards us, through his most happie Government) we should bee forced (I write this in blushes) to to pull Horses from the Coach, and Cart, to fill up our Troopes.

Let it therefore bee recorded, (my Noble Lord) that whilst you were Master of the Horse to his Maiestie, an exact observation was estabished throughout this whole Kingdome, for the due breeding of serviceable Horses; to the furtherance of which most Noble designe, if these my Observations shall any way conduce, I shall blesse my Pen that it ever waded in such a subiect: professing my selfe to owe unto my Sovereigne and Countrey all I have

have, and unto them my Labours as a most loyall Subiect and true Patriot, I most humbly offer.

And my good Lord, these Observations gathered in my Youth, I was advised and pressed by some Noble Friends (though now old) to publish for the generall good of this our Kingdome: Otherwise for my owne part I should have rather suppressed them, as not being now so fit a subiect for me to treat off, but the publique good hath over-swayd me. Wherefore with these Oblations I Conclude, Kissing your Lordships Hands, and shall ever professe my selfe

Your Lordship

Most humble

Servant.

THOMAS DE LA GREY.

For the farr

2 handfull 1 handfull
Hempseed & Rue. Coyled in state against
of this name

664. April 23. Rue & wormwood. Handfull. Handfull of each
a handfull. roots of dandelion 3 ounces. These being in 2 quarts
of water till halfe was consumed, was given to the farr, for
the farr, after which they dyed up more then formerly
as was purposed 24. Apr. next after

For the farcy.

Take of Red sage. Red fennell, wood Betony
of each a handfull, boyle them in a quart
of stale, & when it is milder warme add to it
an ounce of oyle of Spike, & give it as
a trench; this trench may give 11. 10 ber.
to the gelding cald. Kite. a handfull of Rue being added.

For a Backsinew straggle

Take
oyle de Bay }
oyle of Spike } ana . ℥ss.
oyle of Turpentine }
& ner-oyle }

mixe them together & chafe a little at
a time upon the place with your hand
& hold a hott Brick or firestone behind
it to make it enter.

For a Quittorbone

Take a toade ^{wrap} ~~put~~ it in a brown paper
& put it into the fire & burne it till
it will beat to powder, then fill the
issue with the powder & once or twice
drugging will infallibly cure it, as my
Author says.

These my nephew Anthony Pitt
and I wrote an old farrier in
Darbyshire 1660.



To the Reader.

When I doe consider (*benevolent Reader*) the inconvenience whereinto that Man is plunged, who brings himselfe upon the publique Stage of promulgating his Bookes in print, be the subject never so laudable, and the Author no lesse cautelous and sufficient, endeavouring with all diligence to prevent the brand of a black cole: nevertheless all industry applyed, he shall not passe without obloquy and asperision.

This very consideration hath so afrighted and deterred me, that albeit I have had many great motives exciting me to make a tender of the Love, Duty, and Service I beare to my Country; yet when I doe contemplate the many censures I must undergoe, I have beene evermore disheartened as well from beginning, as going forwards in this my desired purpose. Notwithstanding partly through the respect I beare to my Countries profit and honour, and partly by meanes of the importunity of many my right Noble and generous friends, who have been eye-witnesses to sundry of my Cures, and those not a few uncouth and rare: I have adventured even now in my declining dayes, to leave this Work as a Monument to ensuing times, no whit doubting, but that the judicious will friendly accept thereof; but as for the malevolent and ignorant, I am most confident that the quills they shall dart at me, cannot goe as from a Porcupine, and therefore will do me the lesse hurt or damage.

I therefore am bold to put into thy hand, this poore work of mine, which I have digested into two Bookes: In the first, I lay thee down rudiments how thou mayest breed Horses to thy best advantage and liking; which albeit they may appeare unto thee to be recent and unknown, yet if thou wilt be pleased to put them in ure, and make tryall (not digressing from my principles) thou wilt (I doe assure me) be so farre from disliking them, as never hereafter to swarve or dissent from them. For if we shall seriously ruminare in how high esteeme that man is who is owner and possessor of good Horses, how much commended, how much respected, how much talked of, and how well provided for them: but when he shall be knowne to be a breeder

To the Reader.

breeder of such good Horses, will not his *encomiums* be the greater? but when together with these himselfe shall be known to be exquisite in Horsemanship, whereby to cause his Horse to shew himselfe in his Pace, Menage, and all other his postures like as well becomes a right good Horse, perfectly mouthed, delicately borne, obedient to the hand, and to answer the Switch and Spur, will not (I say) that Gentleman be highly commended, and have more eyes upon him as he passeth along, than are commonly cast upon a Comet or the Sun eclipsed? yes undoubtedly. For if we doe but note when a handsome Horse passeth along, we may observe the people not onely gaze upon him as he cometh towards and against them, but to turn themselves and looke after him so long time as he continueth within their view and sight: Mans love to the Horse is generally so great.

Sithence then the Horse is a creature so generous, and therefore so much liked and beloved of all, in my poore judgement, it should suit very well with every Gentleman of worth, ranke, and quality, to endeavour (if not to breed, yet at least) to be masters of such Horses (which he must keep) that shall be truly handsome and comely, rightly bred, of good colour, cleane shape, well marked, and singularly well ridden and made, and so he shall the better advance his honour and reputation.

Having now bred, or otherwise by thy diligent endeavours attained unto such Horses as be truly good, and for thy turne; the second thing to be thought of, is, if they be not already made unto thy hand as thou desirest to have them, that thou then doe procure such a Rider, who is known to be a master of his Art, or otherwise thou wilt be much deceived, and farre to seeke of enjoying thy wished desires, and therefore I have given thee instructions how to make thy choice of such a man, whereby thou shalt not be wronged in thy expectation, nor thy Horse marred in his first making and handling. Neither have I taken upon me to teach him his Art, (for that were a thing very impertinent) but those documents which I have set thee downe must serve onely to shew thee how thou shouldest soone finde whether the Rider may be for thy turne or not.

The third thing which thou art to take to thy consideration, is, the good or harme that may come unto thee by the choice thou makest of thy Groome or Keeper, who may either through his ignorance, or inconsideration, loone make him unfit both for thy owne use, or any mans else: out of which reason I have depainted thee a Groom in his lively colours, and if his conditions and qualities shall be otherwise than what I have delineated, assure thy selfe thou dost runne a manifest hazard of marring that Horse thou didst hope should have been to thy hearts desire. And forasmuch as it is a matter very much praiseworthy to be a Master of good Horses, to have them made perfect and ready, to have such Riders, Keepers, and Groomes, as be
very

To the Reader.

very perite in their faculties; yet if thy Stable be not every way fitting and correspondent, much disprofit and inconvenience may thereby soone redound to thy Horse. I have therefore prescribed thee the meanes how thou mayest have a perfect and good Stable, with all commodities and accoutrements thereunto belonging: and therefore if thou wilt be pleased to make use of these my rudiments, and punctually observe these my grounds and principles, assure thy selfe thou wilt in short time aspire to that which will be thy honour and renown.

And to the end thou mayest the more perfectly and easily understand the full drift and summe of this my first Booke, I will here give unto thee an Epitome of it in a few lines, which may doe thee much pleasure in the perusall thereof.

In the Introduction, I shew thee how needfull a creature the Horse is beyond all others, and what admirable things Horses in former times have perpetrated and done, whereof I produce thee instances of the famous acts of sundry brave and generous Horses, whose love to their Masters have been so great great, as hardly to be credited, if ancient Histories and Annals of good integrity, had not engraven them in the memory of never-dying posterity. We reade of *Bucephalus* what he did for the good, life, and safety of his Master; of the Horse of *Dionysius*, with what undaunted courage he comported himselfe in battell for the reliefe and succour of his Lord; it is recorded also of the Horse of *Antiochus*, what ill successe befell *Centurenius*, who when he had slaine *Antiochus*, would needs backe the Horse of his slaine Master. It is also noted what inly love *Nicomedes* his Horse bare to his Lord and Master, when after his death of meere griefe, famished himselfe. We reade of *Acthon*, the Horse of *Pallas*, who was evidently observed and seen to weep at the funerall of his Master. *Silius* makes report of two famous Horses called *Pelorus* and *Cirrus*, the one eminent for his prowesse and hardinesse in warre, and the other for his unparalleled swiftnesse. Moreover we may reade, how that this poore creature hath so well merited of man, as that many have erected Monuments and Sepulchers, celebrated Exequies, builded and founded munificent Cities, set up Pyramidies, made Epitaphs, erected goodly Statues, instituted Playes and Games; and all these in honour of the Horse; besides many other remarkable things right worthy of note.

In the way of Breeding, I do intimate unto thee the manner how, the season when, the place where, together with the colours, marks, and shapes as well of thy Stallions, as of thy Race, or Stud Mares, and from what defects they must be free: what Signes are best wherein to cover, what course to take with them that they may conceive, what exercise is fittest for them as well when they be with Fole, as after foling; how to cherish thy Mares when their Colts shall runne by them, and how to breed up thy Colts till they come to handling,

To the Reader.

backing, and riding, with other circumstances very necessary to be known: and thus much briefly for the first Book.


The second Booke consisteth chiefly of the manner how thou mayest cure all such diseases and maladies (both intrinsecall and extrinsecall) whereunto either the life of the Horse, or any of his limbs or members may be any way endamaged or in danger. This I have handled by way of familiar Dialogue, which I hold to be best, for avoyding of prolix and over-tedious discourses, by reason it will very much help the memory of the Reader, and keep his minde the better attent upon the state of the Question or subject in hand, and by that meanes I may my selfe be the better able also to explicate and deliver my meaning, much more cleerely. In which Dialogue, I have introduced as prolocutors, three persons onely, viz. First, *Hippophilus* a Gentleman, one who is the true lover of the Horse: Secondly, *Hippiatrus* the Ferrier or Marishall, one most expert in Horse-leech craft: And thirdly, *Hippoferus* his Servant or Journeyman, sometimes his apprentice bred up by him, from whom *Hippoferus* hath had his education and knowledge in this Art: these be all the *Dramatis persona* to this Scene. Wherefore in the first Chapter, I doe endeavour to illustrate unto thee the true Office of the Ferrier, wherein I do produce an exact examen of his function.

In the second Chapter, I do inculcate as well the causes of health as of sicknesse, wherein I make an abridgement of all those things which all learned Physitians and Chirurgions (both antient and modern do from the grounds and principles of profound Philosophy) finde to govern and beare rule in the body of the Horse, without which he can have no flesh, bones, sinewes, bloud, or life it selfe, wherewith to make up the entire structure of an originall body, and such are first the Elements; secondly, the Humours; thirdly, the naturall faculties; fourthly, the instrumentall members; fifthly, the spirits animall; sixthly, the spirits vitall; seventhly, the naturall parts, and so of the residue. And having sufficiently discussed all these things in due order and method, I do then shew thee what meanes we have to preserve the Horse from all inward diseases, which I doe finde to be foure in number, viz. By Purge, by Sweat, by Phlebotomy, and by Vomit: and then I do proceed to inculcate unto thee the causes of health and long life, which I do make to be in number twelve, which if thou do well observe, they will redound to thy great utility and profit.

In the third Chapter I do demonstrate certaine things most befitting a Ferrier to know and understand well, before he shall take upon him to administer: in the handling whereof I do begin first with the foure Elements, anatomizing unto thee their true natures and vertues, and how and where they be scituate, things most needfull to be known; then I goe along with the two proper Elements, shewing from whence the seed and menstruall bloud is ingendred, then I passe for-

To the Reader.

forwards in intreating of the foure Humours, explaining their natures and vertues, poynting unto the places of their abode and residence, and what relation and coherence they have unto the foure Complexions, I do also shew thee what are the two spirits animall, and the two vitall, their natures vertues, and places of abode and residence in the body of the Horse. After all this I shew thee, that by duly observing the complexion of the Horse thou art to cure, thou mayest thereby the sooner, better, and with more security and ease, perfect thy Cure; nay, I goe yet further with thee, in shewing unto thee an exact way whereby to know by the complexion it selfe, the diseases whereunto the Horse is most propense; then I make known what be the causes of the evill dispositions of the Horse, which bringeth and begetteth unavoydable infirmity and sicknesse, whereof they be two in number, *vis.* Intrinsicall and Extrinsicall, together with a definition of the nature of sicknesse; and so I go along in teaching thee the manner how thou oughtest to administer such Drinks, Potions, Clusters, and Medicines, without any the least perill to thy Horse, as also the time of the day most suteable to that purpose: and what exercise is most requisite to be had after Physicke or Medicine. And lastly I come to touch briefly upon his urine and ordure, whereby to give the rules infallible how to know and understand the true state of the body of the Horse as well in health as in sicknesse.

In the fourth Chapter of this second Book, I do begin to handle the Cures in particular, wherein I run a course by my selfe, which I have not known any before me undertake: for whereas Master *Blundevile*, Master *Markham*, and others, do begin with all the inward diseases which are to be cured by way of Physicke, and then with the outward maladies which doe appertain unto Chirurgery; I have thought it much better to take the diseases Alphabetically, mixing the extrinsicall with the intrinsicall, by which meanes they will the sooner and more easily be found, and turned unto more readily. And wheresoever you shall finde this  mark inserted in the end of any cure, I have set the same there, to let you know that receipt to be undoubted, and approved for good and certaine, being by my selfe often practised and used. And those receipts that have not the mark, are such Cures which I did procure from sundry able Ferriers, whereof I have had no tryall or experience at all, for want of time and means, and therefore dare not avouch or cry them up for mathematicall, albeit they do appear unto me to be probably good, but by reason I have not tryed them, I would not adventure a *probatum*, or *ecce* upon them. Neverthelesse if God permit me to reprint, I doubt not but by that time to give them for approved and warrantable, and to adde many more unto them which I have already by me, which I do forbear to publish at this present, albeit I do know many of them to be as probably good as any of those.

In the other Chapters I goe cleane through the whole Alphabet,

To the Reader.

according to that Method used in that 4th. Chapter; and therefore let this abstract suffice for the present. And forasmuch as I have discussed the former things of Breeding, &c. in my first Booke: Yet my intention was not at the first to trench so deepe into that subject, but to shew principally the *Ferriers* Craft and Art, out of an earnest desire I have to excite & stir up our yong Gentlemen to assume some knowledge of a Mystery so necessary for them to apprehend, or at leastwise to have a glimpse of, considering how rare a thing it is to finde a skilfull *Ferrier* among our rurall or Countrey *Smiths*. For if the Nobility & Gentry of this our Ile of *Great Britaine* did truly know how honourable, and how commendable Horsemanship were, and how much they are esteemed and admired, who are the true professors thereof, they would labour more than they now doe, to breed and have good Horses; but it much troubleth me to see how little esteeme Gentlemen now a dayes have thereof. Some Horses they have, though not for Menage, yet for Hunting; but what manner of Hunting? Fox-hunting forsooth, or Harriers which be as fleet as petty Grey-hounds wherewith they do so much over-straine the strength of their poore Horses (forcing them over deepe-Fallowes, tough-Clayes, and wet and rough Lands) that albeit those Horses be strong and able, yet are they so toyled out therewith, as that when they come home at night, they would pittie the heart of him who loveth a Horse, to see them so bemired, blouded, spurred, lamentably spent, and tyred out: Whereas if such Horses had bene ridden to the great Saddle and Cannon, they would have infinitely delighted all men who should have beheld them.

But let mee leave them vnto their toylesome sports, and let my speech bee directed to such Heroique and Generous Spirits, who have a desire to informe and better their understanding in the secrets of this brave Myserie; who if they have a will to bee edoctinated therein, then for a Mathematicall ground of true Horsemanship, I must tell them, that they having and possessing of good Horses, yea and Riding it self is little worth without the knowledge of the *Ferriers* Craft, at the least in the Theorique or Speculative part, if not in the Practique: and therefore I could wish that every worthy Gentleman should have a good insight therein, albeit he doth not make it his Trade, Occupation; or frequent practise and profession. Yet it will not be amisse, he be able to know every disease in a Horse, its Symtomes, and how it cometh, together with the true signe thereof, which indeed is a matter of very great consequence. For when a Nobleman (V. G.) Knight, or Gentleman shall have a Horse that doth well merit his affection, and which shall be for his turne, if any accident or Malady shall befall him, albeit he may not himselfe take upon him the Cure, and to Drench, Bloudy, or Dresse him with his owne hands; yet (sending for a *Ferrier*) he may discourse with him upon the Nature of the Disease, and thereby come to understand whe-

To the Reader.

whethe r the *Ferrier* speaketh according to Art or not, and whether his intended course of administring, be answerable to true Art & perfect Science, and probably a secure way to perfect the Cure; so as if the Master and Owner of the Horse be not himselfe enabled with some superficial knowledge at the least, at what time he shall consult with the *Ferrier*, if not, (I say) able to iudge of the Mans sufficiency (the Smith himselfe being indeed insufficient) by mistaking the Infirmitie, he may ignorantly administer or apply such contrary Medicine, whereby instead of labouring to cure him, hee shall most easily and infallibly kill him, to the no small regret and griefe of the Owner.

But *Ferriers* and *Smiths* may peradventure greatly repine, and grumble at the publication of this Worke of mine, like as to my knowledge, & in my hearing, they have most virulently exclaimed, and vehemently inveighed against Master *Blundevile*, Master *Markham*, and others, wishing their Bookes burnt, and the Authours at the Goodere, for publishing and Printing them: pretending much wrong to be done, to such poore men who have served Apprentiships to the Trade, having none other way or meanes of livelyhood but onely this. But hereunto I answere, that these Men have no cause at all to feare any prejudice thereby; and I dare boldly affirme the promulgation of Bookes will be so far from their harme or hinderance as that it will be infinitely to their benefit: for when they shall find any one Nobleman, Knight, or Gentleman who will undergoe so much paines as eyther to Bloudy, Drench, Corosive, Canterize, apply Cataplasmes, Emplaysters, Powders, Vnguents, or the like to his Horse, whatsoever he hath attained unto by reading, or otherwise; you shall have a thousand who upon any the least occasion will send for a *Ferrier* to take the Cure in hand. Againe, instead of this pretended prejudice, this commodity will accrew to my brethren *Smiths*, *Marishalls*, and *Ferriers*, viz. they shall (by promulgation of Bookes of this Nature) become much more able, and *Imbui in studijs*, that is, much more learned and indoctrinated in this generous Faculty then ever they were before, by which meanes they will be esteemed much more famous and eminent, and cryed up for most expert and able Men in this Noble Science. For how cometh it to passe, that Physicians, Chyrurgions, Lawyers, Divines, and all others Artists doe become so great Doctors of their Arts and Professions, and admired for most famous and learned Men, and so frequently sought after, enquired out, and sent for when occasion is? Is it not for what they have attained unto by study and reading, untill which time they were not so hardy as to adventure upon practise? so as without their Library, they could never have been able to have attained unto that eminent knowledge they have afterwards aspired unto; neyther could they otherwise have beene possibly able to practise and worke by true Art and Science. For the Workes of
learned

To the Reader.

learned and eminent Men, is the only thing that doth enable them, which are left as a never-dying Monument to ensuing and endlesse Posterity, as the common good to the weale publique, even to all ensuing Ages : Imitating therein the ancient Sages of *Greece*, that when any man had invented that thing which was knowne to bee commodious to the Re-publique, least the thing should bee buried with the Inventer, and by that meanes raked up with him in the ashes of perpetuall oblivion : they ordained that the first Inventer should set up his Science be or knowne by way of Record in their publique Schooles in spacious Tables and in Capitall Characters of gold with this Impresse, or Title, *viz.* Καλλιον & θειοτερον αγαθον το τοις η τοις, *Bonum pulchrius, et divinius, quod Geniti est quam Vni.* That is, That thing is to be esteemed better and more excellent which is communicated to the weale publique in generall, rather then to be imprisoned in the Bosome of any perticular man. Wherefore that thing (I say) whereat I do principally ayme, is to publish the true Art of the *Ferrier*, a Faculty wherein I have beene daily versed, and diligently practised for more than forty yeares, and that unto my no small labour and expence : and I doe well assure my selfe that peradventure no one Gentleman in this our Kingdome more, who hath done greater, more difficult, or desperate Cures.

During the time of my travels, I have for my better indemnity, not only perused what Authours I cold meete with, who have written upon this Subject ; but I did also make my selfe an Eye witnesse to the Cures of the most famous *Marishals* and *Ferriers*, the Cities, and places afforded where I came, omitting no diligence which might informe or enable my knowledge : neyther would I bee too credulous, or give too much beliefe to fame or reports, for we have a Maxime in the civill-Law, which saith : *Fama per se parum momenti habet ad probandum* : Fame alone is not of credit sufficient to satisfie or convince the understanding of Man, untill such time as hee hath made tryall. For the common Proverb is ; *Qui facile credit, Facile decipitur*. He that easily believeth, is easily deceived. And truly thus much I am able to speake, that *France* and *Flanders* (for that in those two places I had most commerce and experience, albeit I travelled many other parts of Christendome) were the two Kingdomes in which I found the best, ablest, and most expert *Marishalls*, or *Ferriers* ; but of all the places where ever yet I came, I am able of my own knowledge to say thus much (and that with no small grieve) that the worst *Ferriers* generally I doe find to be those who are of our owne Nation : neverthelesse, I do not conclude or condemne all for insufficient, for some there be well knowne unto me very quaint and expert *Ferriers*, who can worke very well, and according to true Art and Method. I have therefore in this illaborat Work of mine given you severall Receipts for every Cure, and most of them approved by my perticular practise and experience ; Others againe I have inserted

To the Reader.

serted which are the Cures of other able men, which by reason they do sound probable unto me, I have suffered them to passe among my owne, (though I never had meanes or opportunity to make triall of them.) And the reason why I have inculcated so many severall Receipts to each Cure, are two; *viz.* First because that Receipt which will Cure one disease, will not alwaies cure the same Malady in an other Horse. Secondly, you shall find some Receipts eyther very difficile to make, or the Ingredients not easie to be gotten, otherwise they prove more chargeable than the Owner of the Horse is well able to defray: and therefore I have given the Receipts for all sorts and degrees of Horles; howbeit those Receipts which are most costly and intricate to make and compound are commonly the very best, and worketh the best effects, and therefore I leave thee to thy selfe to make thy owne choyce.

Now if any man shall say, that I have robbed or rifled other mens labours: I answer, I have not robbed, but approved them: for by the same rule I may as well object, that whosoever worketh by my Booke robbeth me, for if that be theft, I pray what Phyfition is there in the whole world, (promulgating his Science) may not be as much censured and accused for rifling the Aphorismes of *Galen* and *Hipocrates*, yea and of others the Ancients and Moderne Authours also. But howsoever, I am so far from traducing other mens endeavours, as that I doe both reverence and admire them, and esteeme my selfe unworthy their Scholler. But I know no reason why I may not publish my knowledge of this Noble Art, for what saith a venerable Authour *Qui se dicit scire quod nescit, temerarius est: et qui negat scire quod scit, ingratus est.* As that man is to be accompted for most temerarious and rash, that shall take upon him to know that which in truth he knoweth not; so also doth he shew himselfe to be most ingrate, who denyeth to know that thing which truly he doth know. Innumerable are the grounds which may be laid to the rearing of this Structure, which being so well knowne to all, by setting each downe in particular, I shall therein but only *Sisyphi saxum volvere*; consume much time (which to me is most pretious) and labour to little purpose, and lesse profit; and therefore I will in this discourse draw towards an end, least I might tire thee out with too long an Epistle; Yet lesse I thought I could not inculcate, by reason there are many things in this worthy and noble Science, which might otherwise seeme to be very darke and abstruse, and the Cures I have (I say) carryed Dialoguewise, *Ne inquam et inquit sapius interponeretur*; meerly to avoyd confusion: For *Aristotle* saith well; *Omne Ens naturaliter appetit suam perfectionem.* Every *Ens*, that is to say; Every man hath a naturall propension to arrive unto that perfection to which hee hath awill or desire to understand.

Now the reason why I did enterlace my first Book with the Honours and perfections which Horses in former times have atchieved,

To the Reader.

as also with such rules and principles of breeding, shape, marks, colours, &c. was, lest otherwise I might be like to one who telleth a sick man of a soveraign medicine for his infirmity, and yet conceales from him the use thereof. And therefore I doe make it my chiefeſt deſire, and principall intention, yea my obligation, not onely to illuſtrate each diſeaſe, together with its cure, but alſo to make up all the attributes belonging to a perfect Horſe, and ſuch defects which be incident to ſo noble and uſefull a creature, being likewise diſcovered.

If therefore it may pleaſe thee ſometimes to retire thy ſelfe in the peruſall of this Treatiſe, and with due and ſerious judgement, not ſo much to reflect upon the method and forme of this world, as of the matter or ſubject it ſelfe, then I doubt not but that thou wilt receive ſuch benefit and contentment, as that thereby thou wilt be much bettered and enabled in thy underhanding, both for the breeding and well ordering of young Horſes, and in the cure of every of their maladies.

And forasmuch as I have brought this my firſt work to its period, which I may rightly reſemble to a Structure or Building, my ſpeciall care hath been to make it faire and beautifull to the eye, and to grace, garniſh, and ſet it forth with varieties of divers ſorts, wherein I have been very diligent to give it all ſatisfaction I have been able, and therefore I have laboured to paint and poliſh it forth with what variety is moſt neceſſary for ſo exquisite a building.

Laſtly, ſithence nothing more imports a building, then to lay a ſure and ſubſtantiall foundation, and withall to make the wals ſo ſtite and impregnable, as to be able to reſiſt not ſo much winde and weather, as the violence, aſſaults, and battery of detracting enemies: my care therefore hath been to have it founded and ſituate upon the immoveable Rock of a pregnant truth. And therefore conſidering I have applyed all this paines, and ſpent ſo much time and coſt, which I might have otherwiſe both imployed and applyed to my more particular commodity, by which I have not onely finiſhed this Structure, and made it commodious for thee, but I do alſo preſent it unto thee meerely for thy proper uſe and habitation; and therefore I hope that thou wilt not make ſuch uſe thereof, as men do of an Inne, where he taketh a bait or repaſt, for one meale, or for a lodging, for one night, and away, to wit, by onely taking a ſuperficiall view thereof: but that thou wilt make it thy abode, at the leaſt for ſome time; I meane, by reading and digeſting the whole worke in order as it lyeth treatably and ſeriously, and after by putting in practice what therein thou ſhalt finde to be fit for thy uſe; ſo ſhalt thou reape, and enjoy the benefit; my ſelfe the comfort, and the Common-wealth the honour.

If any leakes be in the printing, impute them either unto the miſpriſion of the Printer, or elſe to the negligence of him unto whom the

To the Reader.

the charge of the correcting was committed; and if any be in the Author, let the fault light upon those who spurred him so fast on to haste it to the Presse; but howsoever shew thy charity in correcting the faults and slips, as well of the one, as of the other: So shalt thou shew thy selfe to the world like thy selfe, truly Noble, and oblige the Author to remaine ever thy humble Servant, and true Friend: Farewell.

THOMAS DE GRAY.



To my VVorthy Friend, Monsieur de Gray,
upon his exquisite piece of *Horsemanship*
and *Ferriery*.



Hen Troy's Palladium, on whose fatall stay
Their fortunes, hopes, their Gods, their Altars lay;
Was by Vlysses cunning hand surpriz'd,
And Pallas woo'd to see Troy sacrific'd:
The Greeks pretending recompence, returne
A Horse, whose entrals that vast City burne.

How different is thy Gift, since here we see
Pleasure with safety, strength with wit agree?
This frame exceeds that; but to nobler ends,
That hurts by fraud, by knowledge this defends:
And though in Ilium's Horse an Army rest,
'Twill be far more to COMPREHEND this Beast;
Since Ignorance hath taught our Ile to lay
Her Art, on Iades that onely runne away.
But when I looke on thine, and there behold
Souldiers made knowing, and the knowing bold:
I cry, had this been given for that of Wood,
Minerva had return'd, and Ilium stood.

S. I. B. B.



To his good Friend, *Thomas de Gray*, upon his
Booke called the *Expert Ferrier*.

Whilst other, Readers vex in fruitlesse wayes,
And write adventurous lines for vulgar praise,
Thou in a noble Art, and usefull skill,
Ventest the labours of a modest Quill,
To make us by thy well-spent industry,
Supine neglects to know, and rectifie;
Since in this piece of thine, the Horse appears
(Whilst him his Rider as a Pilot steeres
Through stormes of Courage,) by thy awfull hand
Enforc'd to suffer, and obey Command.
Then, thou, his innate Spirit to maintaine
By propagation of a generous straine,
Vnpactis'd precepts with judicious heed
Freely afford'st us in his better breed.
And lastly, that this Worke may fully please,
Experimentall Cures of each disease,
Which frequently occurs in this brave Beast
Are, with the lesse approv'd, by thee express't:
That all may say, we, in this Booke have found,
A Horse well bred, well mennaged, and sound.

S. T. H.



To my knowing Friend, Monsieur
De Gray.



Ld Edward Noble Worcester, that branch
Sprung from great Iohn of Gaunt, and Royall Blanch.
Of thee our de la Gray was wont to say,
To see thee on thy Horse of menage play,
Was solid pleasure, for the Excellence

That fed the eye, went further than the sense.

And I beleeve it. since the Active part

That shines in precepts of thy skilfull Art,

And comes to us from speculations taught

Through long Experience, and with labour wrought

In these thy choyce Phylippicks, makes this Land

Blest in the faire production of thy hand.

Our skilfull Markham, and old Blundevill,

Or whosoe're hath toucht this marshall Quill,

Receives by thee more light than was his owne,

Or was by th' Ancients, or by Modernes known.

G. F.



To my well-deserving Friend, *Thomas de Gray*,
upon his exact piece of *Horsemanship*
and *Ferriery*.

If I who love a Horse next to my life,
Should now be muse in the commending strif
Of this thy *Horsemanship*, my de la Gray,
I might henceforth be banisht all the play
At Bansteed, Winchester, and Salisbury,
And sit me downe under this Horse and dye.

Nay, I will write before thy Booke, and fill
The vacant roome of some deserving quill:
And wish in all my sport to be as sore,
As when thou work'st upon a desperate Cure.

Wolferstone.

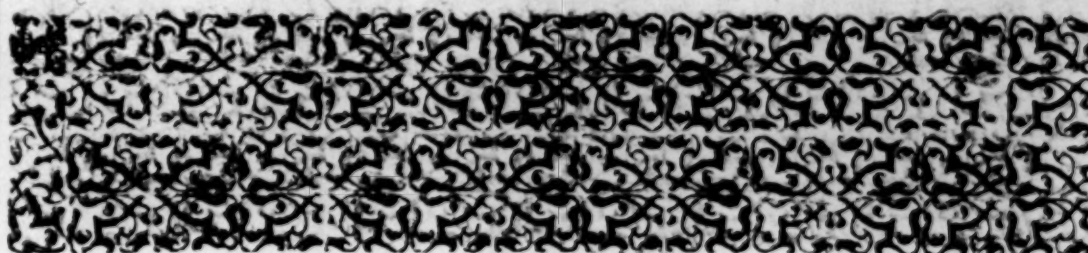


Vpon Monsieur de Gray, his most elaborate piece of
Horsemanship and Ferriery.



*His Book's inform'd with a high Genius! this
Above the malice of detraction is!
Nor needs a friends Encomium blaze it forth,
It's proper vertue vindicates it's worth:
Yet, since, by th' Authors happy care and paine
I understood how first to use the reyne,
And menage sonipes, I could not chuse
But vent this gratefull rapture of my Muse;
How that by it he amply doth impart
The essence of the Horseman's, Ferriers Art;
So that the Horse shall to perfection grow,
And no disease his courage brave o'rethrow.
Now I will leave Pegalus aiery courses,
And sue to mount one of his well-train'd Horses.*

. Ed. R.

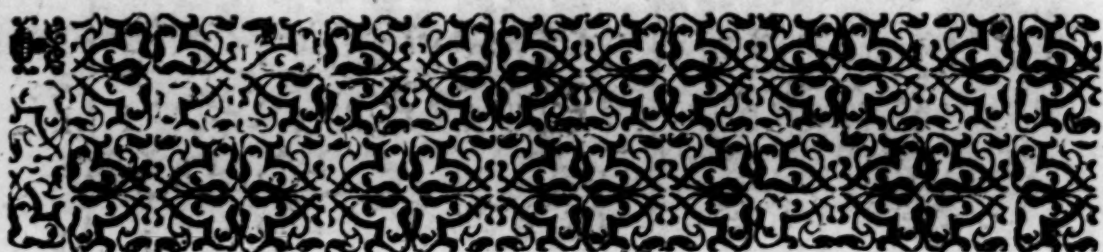


To the Authour of the Expert *Ferrier*.



*Eer's Mirrour, eak Modell of true Honour.
Fame wait's on Thy name. Thou wait'st upon Her.
By Cavall ry the Golden Fleece th'ast wonne;
Therein, Thou art a Non p'reill, That One.
Whose Fame shall dye? Thine? It shall remaine
The age, presag'd by Ovid's sublime straine.*

I. H. D. M.



To my ever honoured Friend *Tho. de Gray*
upon his select Peece of *Horseman-*
ship and Ferriery.

S Age h'ast Thou made our Later age,
Thou art the Phoenix of our Time;
Certes, Thy rare Peece I presage
Hath wonne the Fleece it's so sublime.
My younger Pen cannot but waite on Thee,
Whose Name shall ever bee most deere to mee.

Francis Hawkins.



THE EXPERT FERRIER.

CHAP. I.

THE INTRODUCTION.

IF we will but take to our serious consideration how many great obligations we have to admire the infinite goodnesse of Almighty God in creating such a marvellous number of creatures, meerely for the use and service of man, whereof no one of them can be wanting; and that amongst them all, we have none more usefull, or which can be lesse spared, then the Horse; no dumb creature more generous, nor any that commeth so neere unto the pleasure of man, none can serve him better in time of peace and warre, none better for manuring and tilling the earth, and to cause it to produce its fruits; none more usefull for bringing in the fruits of the earth; none more behoofefull to beare and carry him his long and tedious journeyes, in heat and cold, through thick and thin, by night and day; none better to carry him from danger, and to land his master at the port of safety, then the Horse: and for his pastimes and recreations, no creature to be compared to this: neither is there any creature created by the great Creator of all things, which doth so perfectly understand and connive with the nature and minde of man, or that beareth a more inly love to man, as doth this poore creature the Horse; for upon all occasions he sweateth, he trudgeth, he toyleth, he drudgeth, he moyleth, he laboureth *pro viribus*, with great alacrity and cheerefulness (so long as his vitall spirits last) to give comfort and content to him that feedeth and cherisheth him, yea and that (I say) with such joy and alacrity, as if (like to a reasonable creature) he found himselfe obliged thereto in the bond of all sincere duty and gratitude. For should I speake rather like a Philosopher then a Christian, I could not but agnize nature to be admirable in all her works,

The Expert Ferrier.

wherein man doth owe unto her infinite, and those very great thanks, in that she hath accommodated and plentifully furnished him with all things needfull for his use, as also in that she hath propagated (amongst all other) the Horse, the most usefull for the service of man, and who best acknowledgeth his Master. And that this may be the better anatomized, I will shew you what I finde recorded by authenticall Authors of the excellency of this praise-worthy creature.

The so much-renowned *Bucephalus*, who carried his Master through so many conquered kingdomes, serves for an example to all ensuing ages, who would not suffer any man but great *Alexander* to backe him, who seemed to be proud at what time he carried so glorious and victorious a charge, and it is also written of him, that being wounded at the siege and sacking of *Thebes*, he carried him courageously through the troops and throngs of all the combatants, with incredible valour and courage, nothing at all esteeming or prizing the losse of his blood, being most desirous, and no lesse willing to do his master all faithfull service, to the utmost of his power, and to the effusion of the last drop of his blood, labouring to purchase unto himselfe by his (not to be paralleled) valour, and his resolute perseverance, a victorious advantage over the enemy. What never-dying high renown, the horse of *Cesar* got, I hold little inferiour to that of *Bucephalus*? *Dionysius* the tyrant of *Sicily*, in a great and well-fought battell, was himselfe so hard put to it, that he was constrained to forsake his horse, neverthelesse the poore beast made his way through the throngs of the enemy; who all bloody and mery as he was, gat him to a randevous his Stable. *Centaurettus* of *Galatia*, having in bataille slaine *Antiochus*, he in a bravado mounted his horse, who soone found by good experience, (albeit no whit to his advantage) that the said horse retained a resentment of the death of his slaine Master, for the horse so soone as he felt this his new Lord upon his back, never gave over flinging, yarking, plunging, and bownding, commanding the Bit with his teeth, launching out sometimes this way, sometimes that way, with so great impetuosity and fury, that at length he cast his rash rider to the earth, and then fell to him with his heeles, redoubling his strokes in so thick and violent a manner, not giving over till he had slaine him out-right, whereby he gave him little cause to triumph and glory in his temerarious attempt. We reade of *Nicomedes*, King of *Bitbynia*, whose Horse so intirely loved him, as that his Master was no sooner dead, but the Horse presently forlooke his meat, and so continued, untill such time as he languishing for very grieve, dyed of famine. *Virgil*, the Prince of Poets, maketh honourable mention of *Aethon*, the Horse of *Pallas*, sonne of *Evander*, who saith that this *Aethon* being present at the funerall of his master, wept for sorrow, as these two verses do inculcate :

After

*After came Aethon, bold in fight, now weeping,
And in his teares, his mournfull visage steeping.*

Silius Italicus in his ninth Book, doth highly extoll two horses, to wit, *Pelorus* and *Ciræus*, speaking of them in this manner :

*Ready Pelorus was to th' hand and rayne,
Obedient still, and of a generous straine :
Hearing his Masters voyce, Ciræus hies,
'Fore the beholders, and the winde of flies.*

The tractablenesse and love that the Horse beareth to man, have been the occasion that sundry great personages have reciprocally answered it, by erecting of Statues, and by building of most famous Cities to their honour and memory. *Alexander* before mentioned, founded an opulent City in honour of *Bucephalus*, and gave it his name, and celebrated his exequies. The Egyptians erected most magnificent Piramides, and sumptuous sepulchres to such horses, as had served them well in their warres. *Octavius Caesar*, and after him, *Adrian* the Emperour, interred their Horses with great pomp and solemnities, and caused famous Epitaphs to be engraven upon their monuments. The Emperour *Commodus*, did the like to his Horse *Parfinus*, and commanded that he should be buried in the *Vatican*. *Romulus* did institute Playes and Games called *Equitie*, in honour of Horses, and caused them to be presented in the field of *Mars*. The *Ethiopians* did so highly esteem of these noble creatures, as that they armed their Helmets with the skins of Horses, suffering their eares to remain on, and they did weare their tayles upon their Crests, like as now a daies men use their plumes. Other nations have done the like, who held Horses in no little esteem. We reade of a Roman Emperour, who made his Horse a Senator. The ancient Astrologers have likewise attributed so much to Horses, that they have placed one winged amongst the coelestiall signes. The Poets hold that the Fountaine (where the nine Muses used to bath themselves, and to drink) sprang up, by the blow of the foot which *Pegasus* gave against the two topt hill, *Parnassus*. *Neptune*, God of the Sea, is surnamed *Hippius*; by reason that (as the Poets doe fable) the first Horse that was ever seen, received his origen from him, or from a stone whereon *Neptune* had poured water. There remaineth much more to be said in honour of the Horse, then their hath been already delivered. Wherefore omitting further Encomiums, and attributes, I hasten to matters of greater consequence. Sithence therefore the case so standeth, that this dumb creature is by Almighty God given unto man, as a creature of so usefull importance, what thankfulness then are we bound to give unto him for so great a blessing and benefit? And therefore what dili-

gence is required of us; yea, and what carefulnesse ought we to use, in travelling to attaine to this so necessary a creature in the most exact manner we are able? Nor can this possibly be acquired to our true content, unlesse we doe apply our best endeavours herein; for the Ancients have this Proverb, *All rare and excellent things are hard to compasse*: and therefore we ought to apply all care and industry to attain unto good Horses, which can never be so well done, as by *breeding* them; for they must be the Horses that will be able best to serve us in those offices whereunto we shall intend them, according as hereafter shall be most exactly illustrated.

C H A P. II.

Of the best manner of breeding.

Here are so many diversities of opinions so mainly defended *pro & con*, that maketh men fearefull to bring that to publique view, which long practice and experience hath brought them to know and understand to be most true and infallible: Nevertheless I presuming that the more judicious may peradventure favour my reasons and grounds; allowing them at least for probable and good, if they shall adventure to make triall, which if they be pleased so to do, I am confident they will both allow and approve of this my manner of *breeding*, above all other wayes heretofore practised; who finding it to be much better, will never be brought from the same method, and therefore I would not have any man to condemne me before he shall first have made triall.

My counsell therefore is, that such generous spirits, unto whom Almighty God hath extended his benigne hand, would take to their consideration, how needfull a thing it is for them to lay hold upon this so noble and profitable a blessing and benefit, by applying their best care and diligence to breed, good, able, and serviceable Horses, which may be as easily performed, and in a manner with as little cost, as in breeding Iades and Baffles, unusefull and unprofitable. For by procuring a good and able Stud of choice Mares, and by endeavouring to get select Stallions, which for mettle, spirit, shape, colour, marks, and the like, shall be known to be rightly bred, and truly generous, as well (I say) the Mares as the Stallions; and these, young, handsome, of size indifferent, that is, neither too small, nor too large, long-legged or under-bodied; but well knit, limb'd, and joynted; it will be beyond all peradventure but that you shall have Horses fit wherewith to serve your Country upon all occasions, and your own turn and your friends, and acquire to your selfe no small honour

honour and commendations both from your Prince, and the weale publique. And this the better to bee performed, you must understand that some things are necessary to be considered. First, that your grounds be fit for *breeding*, and those not to be such as be low, wet, fenny, moorish, or marish; but they must be pastures upland, hilly, and in some places stony and rocky, for grounds of this nature are very profitable for your Colts, to scope, run, and play in, it helpeth their winde, it knitteth their joynts, and hardeneth and maketh tough their hooves: some of your grounds ought also not to be without Underwoods, Bushes, Fursells, Broome, and the like; these will serve for shelter at what time the cold windes doe blow: the residue of your grounds ought to have Lawnes and Plains, wherein should be better grasse then the former; and in these Lawnes, is needfull there should be great Oakes, and such like timber-trees for them whereby to shelter them from the scorching sunne in the extreame heats, especially during the time of the Canicular dayes; and these trees will also defend them from the buzzing and stinging Fly, which otherwise would greatly annoy and afflict them: you must also accommodate your grounds with partitions convenient, as well for change, which sometimes is most requisite, as also whereby to segregate each sort of cattell by it self; as your young and old, rase or breeding Mares by themselves, your weanlings by themselves, your Fillyes by themselves, and your stoned Colts by themselves, according as your best judgement shall dictate; otherwise your breed will be in confusion, and come to nothing, and so you may run the hazard, to lose both your cost and paines. Places must be also made apart, wherein both your Mares with sole, and those who have their Colts sucking upon them, may run by themselves with all quietnesse and retirednesse; and every of these partitions must be so sufficiently fenced, as that no one sort of cattell can breake into the other. And I doe yet further advise, that these grounds be well furnished with sweet and wholesome water, whereof ought not to be any want, either in winter or summer, for otherwise you may endanger the tainting and sur-fetting of them.

Furthermore, that certaine Sheds and Hay-houses be erected for them to be fed in during the time of the winter, when grasse is scanty and not so much nourishing, and the cold winds, frosts, raines, and snowes, may greatly pinch and annoy them; in which housings, would be set up Racks and Mangers whereat to feed them; there would also be laid cleane straw for them to lye upon, which will very much comfort and keep them warm: But above all, the greatest care must be had to the fences in generall, whether wall (which is evermore the best) pale, quicksets, broad ditches, or high banks, lest they should at any time breake forth, and trespasse your neighbours to bastardize, and wrong your breed: and you ought also to institute a trusty and diligent Bayliffe or servant, whose onely function should be

be to make his fence-walke morning and evening, as duly as any well-experienced Keeper or Wood-man doth his Pale-walke, to see that the fences be fast, and his cattell safe : and let him not faile every day once at the least, to take a true tale and inventory of every sort of cattell he hath in his severall grounds, for feare any should be missing, or some misfortune befallne any of them; and if hee shall finde any wanting, let him not rest searching, untill he hath found it; and if it be in danger or sicke, let him not give over himselfe if he can, (otherwise let him haste to call company and strength enough) to free it out of harmes way.

Now as touching the grounds themselves, as I would not have them too rich, or too rank and deep with grasse; so must they not be too barren, short, and mossie; for as well in this subject, as in all other things, the golden meane is evermore to be preferred. Having thus provided your selfe of a Stud of the choicest and ablest Mares, for age, colour, shape, and marks, your Stallions also of like attributes your care must be to see your Mares well covered, for in this chiefly consisteth the life and quintessence of your *breeding*. Be you therefore marvellous carefull, that neither your Stallion or Mare, have any of these ensuing defects; *viz.* neither Moon-eyes, watry-eyes, or Bloud-shotten-eyes, or other defect in their eyes or sight, no taint in their wind by Glanders or otherwise, no way subject to Mainge, Mallender, Sellender, Splents, Spaven, Curb, Ring-bone, Scratches, Kybed-heeles, or any other thelike sorances; that they be not Cock-thropled, but their Throples very loose; for let either Stallion or Mare have any of these maladies, then be you well assured their Colts will take them as hereditary from their Parents : insomuch as when you esteem your selfe confident of such young Horses, you so much desired to be master of, you will be mistaken; for instead of a Stirrier or Horse for mannage, you have bred him fit for nought else but the plough; and in the place of a Hunter, he proves a Mil-horse; and in hope you had a Horse for a Course, he proves for no better use but the Cart; and him you desire to have for your own Pad-saddle, you will be constrained to sell him to a Carrier, to beare a Pack-saddle with a burthen.

To come to intreat of the time most fitting for covering your Mares, let that be so done, that they may cast their Foles in the dead of winter; as either in December, or January : for during their time of going with Fole, to wit, from the day of their Covering, unto that of their Foling, is commonly 12 months, and 10 dayes; yet some do aver, they doe want 11 dayes of 12 moneths, of which computation there is just three weeks oddes : others againe doe affirme, that a Mare goeth but only 11. months and 10 dayes, wherein is greater oddes : but I have found it to be a most certain rule which never did faile me (unlesse in a yong Mare upon her first Colt, who will want some few dayes of the ordinary account) and long and frequent experience hath

hath made me to be very perfect, that a Mare goeth (unlesse some mischance or other accident hath otherwise occasioned) twelve moneths and ten dayes: for when at any time I have been present when a Mare hath been covered, I have in the very minute entred into my Almanacke, the very day and houre in which she tooke the Horse, and because I would not be deceived, I have been present at her foaling, and I have found the time never to faile me. And therefore I could wish all breeders to observe with me the same course, and they shall finde this account to fall out just as I have delivered. If your Mare be covered about S. Lucies day, which is the 13 of December, then will she foale about S. Thomas day the same month in the yeare following: But before you suffer her to be covered, let neither the Stallion or Mare be at grasse, but taken into the house, sixe weekes or a moneth at the least; during which time, let them be both very well fed with good old Hay and Oates well dusted and sifted, to the end they may have strength and seed to performe the office for which you have them. But if you will have your Mare certainly to conceive, then take blood from both sides of her necke, and let her bleed at either veine well nigh a quart; which must be done five or sixe dayes before she is to be covered; and the next day after her bleeding, give her in a quart of new milke, halfe a iij. of Artimesia, alias Mugge-wort, chopped very small, a piece of sweet Butter, and 2. of London Treacle warm; all these put upon the fire till the Butter and Treacle be dissolved, and give this to the Mare blood-warme in the morning fasting, and so the next morning again, and let her drinke be white water. This drink is most soveraigne to cause conception, it provoketh seed abundantly, it openeth the pores in the body, and causeth the Mare to keep the seed she receiveth from the Stallion; Moreover this drinke comforteth the womb and matrix very much: so as it is great oddes but that she being thus ordered, will be sped and conceive, unlesse she be a Mare of great sterility, which supposed, she is not to be kept for a race or breeding Mare.

Moreover, if you be desirous to have your Mare to conceive a Horse-colt, rather then a Filly; observe then this lesson I shall here give you, and you shall finde it an infallible rule, which will never misse, viz. At what time you would have your Mare to be covered, Let it be done, when one of the first five masculine Signes do raign, which are either Aries, Taurus, Gemini, Cancer, or Leo; but if she shall be covered when any of the Feminine or watery Signes are predominant, as Virgo, Libra, Scorpio, Sagittarius, Capricornus, Aquarius, or Pisces; then be you confident it will be a Filly. For this have I often tryed, and found it seldome or never to faile me, especially if the wind be either West or North (but West is best) at the time of her covering, and you will finde this my rule to be most infallible, for experience hath taught it me: And I have attained unto more knowledge by experience, then I was ever able to aspire unto, either by reading

The masculine
Signes are. ♈
♉ ♊ ♋ ♌
so that he is
mistaken in
my observation
has bin. when
I has bin in a
masculine sign
aspected with
a masculine
planet it set

Some saye if a mare be then covered, but she brings a horse colt. I had in one yeare 6 colts whereof 5 where horse colts by observing this Rule.

and study, or by hearing what others have dictated, taught, or told mee: For we have a maxime, Experience is the best and ablest mistresse and moderatrix.

Now for the manner of the covering of your Mares, let her be brought into some place abroad, and there fastned to some strong post; then bring out to her some stoned Iade first to dally with her, and he will provoke her to an aptitude and desire of coity; which done, let the Stallion be led forth towards her, betwixt two or more lusty strong men who may be able to master him if he should prove unruly, and let him leap her; and let this be done in a morning betimes fasting; which done, another man standing by with a pail of cold water ready in his hand, in the very time when the Horse is dismounting, let him cast the cold water upon her shape, which by reason of the coldnesse, the strength of the caster, and the suddennesse thereof, will cause her to shrink in, and trusse up her body, and it will be the meanes to make her retaine the seed in the matrix, otherwise the womb would not peradventure so soone enclose it, but for some time after, howsoever the womb would draw together, but not so suddenly, whereby upon the Mares motion, there might be some danger of dissolving. Take then away the Stallion, and let the Mare be put into some remote place alone, from sight and hearing of other Horses and Mares, but let her neither eate nor drinke in foure hours after, neither let her have any water at all till night, and then give her either a sweet Mash, or white water. After she hath been thus Covered, you shall know whether or not she hath either conceived, or lost, or cast her seed, by many evident symptomes which will appeare to your eye; for if she retaineth a good stomacke to her meat, and so continueth, if she doe not neigh at hearing or sight of other horses, if she do not pisse oft times in the day, casteth not her eye about gazing continually at every noise she heareth, pricketh not up her eares, and that in three or foure daies after her Covering, her belly seemeth to be more gaunt, her hayre more slicke and close to her skin, shewing of a brighter colour, and she seemeth to fall away and become leane: if (I say) any of these Symptomes doe appeare in her, then is it an evident signe she hath kept her seed and conceiveth, but if the contrary appeare in her, then hath she lost it, and engendreth not.

But as for offering her the Horse againe ten dayes after, together with such like circumstances, I hold them impertinent for this place, being so frequently knowne and practised, and therefore my labour may well be spared. But for her keeping and ording after her Covering, let her not drinke that she desireth, but continue her with the same dyet which formerly she had before her covering for three weeks or a month after, lest the seed might fortune to be impaired, before the Colt be sufficiently formed in the womb, and let her be kept sweet and cleane as may be, and that without any labour or exercise during that three weeks or moneth: after which terme you may

*To know if a mare keepe to the horse within
6 weeks after covering: viz. page before
exactly is enough. I am sure*

may if you please, inure her to moderate labour, wherein have a special care of four things: first, that she be not at any time galloped, or run off from her wind: secondly, that she be not put to carry heavy burthens: thirdly, that she be neither laboured or travelled in extreme heat: And lastly, that her exercise be not such which may provoke her to sweat violently, for every of these things will cause her to miscarry.

Shee being thus with foale: shee must bee kept in the house untill mid-May at least, and then let first her shooes be taken off, her feet pared well, the Frish and heeles opened, and plates after the manner of running shooes (but not to come home to the heeles) set on; let her run in the driest ground you have, yet not so short of grasse, but that she may at her ease fill her belly at least once a day, and about the latter end of September, (if not before) let her be very carefully taken into the house, but so quietly that you shall not endanger the hurting of her belly, either by the rubbing of other Horses and Mares against her, or through her untimely leaping, or inconsiderate brushing against posts, dores, or the like. Let her be kept thus in the house to the time of her foaling, and long after, and let her dyet be as before is prescribed.

And when the time of her foaling approacheth, let her keeper attend carefully upon her, putting her into a house convenient for her, unhaltred and untied, lest in foaling, the colt receive damage, by reason that Mares doe commonly cast their foales standing: wherefore let not the roome whereinto you put her, be too streight, but very warme, (for warmth is a great comfort as well to Mares with foale, as in foaling) and let good store of straw be layed, that the Foale may fall from the Mare the softer, and be in lesse danger of harm, and let her (I say) be watched for feare the Foale come not right; and so soone as she hath foled and licked it dry, let her keeper presently milke and stroake her, and that before the Colt doe sucke her, which will both cause her to give down her milke, making the same to multiply, and also keep the Vdder that the milke doe not clod, which if it should doe, the Mare might happily in short time become dry, whereof if there be any perill, I then advise you to draw as much milke from her as you can, and boyle it with the leaves of Lavender, or Spike, and so bathe her Vdder therewith warme, continuing so daily to doe, untill by this meanes you have broken the curd, knobs, and knots, causing them to be dissolved. And as for the water which she is to drinke for some time after her foaling, let it be either sweet Mash, or white water, & a moneth after her foaling, give her a Mash, putting therein the powder of Brimstone, or Savin, or the like, which will be a great preservation of the Colt; & then if she be moderately laboured either at Plough or Harrow, if she will draw, as well the Mare as Colt will prosper the better; provided she be kept from raw meat while she remaineth in the Stable, by which meanes she will the sooner recover

strength, lust, and courage, and have store of good milke, which will cause the Colt to thrive the better, and to grow to be of the greater bone, which above all things is a matter of greatest consequence. And that you suffer not the Colt to sucke the Mare when she cometh from worke, untill she be thoroughly cold, lest thereby you surfet the Colt.

Thus much I have thought fit to handle of this subject; and albeit I have laboured herein to attaine to brevity, nevertheless the premises well considered, I shall not greatly offend in prolixity, howsoever this my manner of *breeding* being different from the old received customes, will not (I doe assure me) passe voyd of censure. But as touching old customes, thus much I doe averre, that as they are in many cases of that force, as no law is able to abrogate; so on the contrary part, many of them are so absurd and ridiculous, as nothing can be more; for what saith the civill Law: *Those things which by event or successe of time are found to be pernicious or hurtfull, even those things ought to be repealed, yea albeit they were at the first found profitable.* Which ground holdeth good in nothing so much as in old customes, for of their absurdities, I am able to produce instances not a few, howsoever with many, *It is one of Hercules greatest labours to beat many a man from his old customes be they never so bad, albeit Custome is a meece tyrant, and his soveraignty most insufferable,* as a grave Author very well observeth.

CHAP. III.

How to make and order your Stable.



Having thus waded into this mystery of *breeding*, I hold it a thing very behoovefull to be handled, how your Stable ought to be accommodated. First therefore your Stable should be situate where the ayre is wholesome, pure, and good, and the ground dry: the structure would be either of free Stone or Bricke, but Bricke is best, most wholesome and warmest: besides this benefit Brick hath, which Stone hath not, of being very dry, for Stone will weep, and sweat drops of water against raine and misty weather, which begetteth dampes, and causeth rhumes in Horses. Your Stable ought not to have any unsavory Gutter, Channell, or Sinke neare to it; no Iakes, Hogsties, or Hen-roust, whereby to annoy it. It would be also seeled over head, and have strong doores, with lockes, bolts, and barres unto it. The Racke would not be made too high, or too low, but placed in an indifferent proportion, and so artificially set, that neither the dust or hay-seeds may fall into his
Mane,

Mane, or upon his necke and face. The Manger would be set at an indifferent height, made deep, and of one entire piece, as well for strength, as for conveniency to be kept sweet and cleane. Let the flore be pitched with Flint, and not planked. The windowes would be made with handsome shuts and casements, and well glazed, as well to keep out cold and wind, as also (when there may be cause) to let in the coole and fresh ayre. Againe, take heed there be no lome wall or plaister, so neare as that the Horse may reach thereto with his mouth: for upon that he will gnaw, which may doe him much prejudice, and be the cause of much dangerous sicknesse, for Lome and Lime are suffocating things, they will infect and putrifie the bloud, endanger the Lounges, and be no friend to his winde: neither suffer any dung to lye neare him. Furthermore there would be made a faire Loft wherein to lay Hay, and convenient lodging chambers for your Groomes, whose nearenesse, together with their care and vigilancy might prevent many dangers and inconveniences which may accrue unto your Horses by night. Also let a neat Saddle-houle be contrived with Bings for Provender, and in it Presses, wherein to lay up the Saddles, Bridles, and all other furniture appertaining to Horses, and an Aqua-duct wherewith to bring water to the Stable. And lastly, other Stals would be erected remote, wherein upon occasion to sever the sicke from the sound. Many other accoutrements there are belonging to a perfect Stable, as partitions with boards, posts, and barres, with pins driven into every post, whercon to hang Bridles and the like; shelves also fastned to the wall serving for many uses, to place necessities upon, &c. which being known to all men, will be needlesse for me here to repeat.

But you may peradventure startle at paving, rather then planking your flore, preferring planks as warmer, and much better then flint or a pitched flore can be; as also for that it is a new thing, little practised, and seldome heard.

But give me leave (I pray) a little to inform your understanding in this one point, by which means your judgement may fortune to be much bettered. First therefore, whereas novelty may be objected, I shall most easily assoile that point, even from the selfe-same ground in the civill Law, which I inserted in the conclusion of the precedent chapter, *viz.* That things found to be prejudiciall, ought to be inhibited, although they might be thought needfull, and good in fore-known times. For that paving of Stables is better then planking them, I have reasons not a few wherewith to satisfie a reasonable man. First, it is much more durable and lasting, supposing the flore to be pitched by an expert workman: Secondly, it is lesse charge by much, and therefore in that point the better: Thirdly, for a Horse to stand continually upon a pitched flore, it emboldneth his feet, and treading the more: Fourthly, it is the most excellent thing that may be for Cobs, who are unshod; for it hardneth their hooves, so as by custome they

*Paving of a
Stable
much better
then plank-
ing.*

1
2
3
4

The inconvenience of a planked flore.

1

2

3

will be as bold to goe upon stones, rocky and hard wayes, as Horses that are shod: neither will a pitched flore suffer the hoofe to goe abroad in manner of an Oyster: besides the use thereof will make their hooves more tough, durable, and hollow, insomuch as when they shall come to be shod, and to have exercise, they will carry their shooes much longer, better, and with more ease then otherwise, if they had been used to a planked flore.

Now on the contrary part, which concerneth the planked flore, that (I say) cannot in reason be so good by many degrees. First, it is more slippery, out of which reason a mettled horse may soone be in danger to be lamed or spoyled by some sudden slip, whereof I have had often experience, which a pitched Stable is not so subject unto: Secondly, the planks often times shrinking, the Horse (especially if he be a stirrier who is accustomed to curvet in the Stable) may easily breake a plank, and his foot getting into a hole, or between the planks, the horse plunging and striving, may easily breake his legge before he shall be able to get it forth, whereof I have more than once been *oculus testis*: Thirdly, when you put forth your horses to run at grasse all, or the most part of Summer, during which time the scorching heats wil so ficcicate and dry the planks, which will cause them to warp, and the pinnes which holdeth them down to the joyces will rot, and so the planks give way, especially when horses (who not being handled in some moneths before) becomming wild, rammage, and unruly, are newly brought into the Stable, who feeling the planks to move, yeeld, and give way under them, will fall from starting thereat, to flinging, leaping, bounding and plunging, till they have dislocated the planks, and thereby have endangered both themselves, the residue of their fellowes, and those who might come to their help and succour, which is a thing very frequent in a flore of this nature: Fourthly, whereas you may imagine that a planked flore is warmer then a paved or pitched, I doe know the contrary; for your pitched flore hath no vaults or channels under them, like as hath your planked, wherewith to convey the water which passeth from the horses; hy which meanes the horse lyeth over a moyst and dampish place and vault; and besides that, the evill favour of the horse-pisse will be evermore in their nose, which is most unwholesome, noysome, and many times the cause of much infirmity; neither can it in reason be so warme as is the pitched flore, for that the chinkes and awger-holes bored through the planks (which must alwaies be kept open to let forth the urine) doth give way to the cold wind, which continually ascendeth up to the horse, as well lying as standing, cannot but doe him much dammage. I doe therefore affirme, that if your Groome have a care to litter his horse well, so as he may lye soft and warme, (which is a prime property appertaining to his office) your horse will then prosper, and like much better upon a pitched flore, then he can upon a planked; provided your flore be laid even, not higher

higher before than behind, more then so much that may make the water to avoyd to his hinder feet, where there ought to be a small gutter to caule it to passe away, for in raising your flore so much, I doe abstract from the ancient ill custome, by reason that a horse standeth higher before then he doth behind, his hinder legges will swell, and so he becommeth lame; besides, it giveth him a taint in the backe and kidneyes; and to conclude, his long standing in this uneasie manner, begetteth in the poor beast much pain and griefe, and this occasioneth unto him (which would not otherwise be) the putting forth of Windgals, Pains, Scratches, and such like noy some sorances.

Another thing may peradventure be thought strange, which I have handled in the former chapter, where I intreat of *breeding*; in that I would have the time of the Mares foling to be, either in December or Ianuary, this being in the very depth of winter, as well when the season is commonly coldest, and when little or no grasse is to be had, so as of necessity the Mare must be housed, and fed with hard mear, whereby her milke will be in so small a proportion, as either to endanger the starving of the Colt, or else at leastwise keep him so poor and feeble, as not to be able to grow, thrive, or prosper to any purpose. To satisfie this scruple, I say from long experience, that the winter season for a Mare to sole in, beyond all peradventure, is the very best, as well for the Mare as the Colt, supposing she be kept in a warme house; and as for her milke, she will have great plenty, and that much better and more nourishing than that milke which the Colt shall sucke from his damme at grasse, so as thereby the Colt shall be more lusty, strong, healthy, greater of bone and stature, better able to endure hardinesse, better knit, cleaner limbed, more neatly joynted and hooved, and keep his flesh better than that Colt that is soled in May, Iune, or any the hotter moneths: and my reason is, that albeit grasse cauleth greater plenitude of milke, (which I deny not) yet is not the same so good and nourishing: for the milke which the Colt sucketh at grasse, is very thin and warry; and albeit winter food begetteth not so great a quantity of milke, yet the same will be thicker, more substantiall, and of greater nutriment, (the Mare being very well fed) which will feed the Colt very fat, and make him more lusty and strong, (as I have said) then if the Mare the whole Summer and Winter through, and in all the extremity of the heats and colds had been kept abroad. Moreover, the Colt besides the milke he draweth from the Mare, will also feed with her upon Hay, Oates, Bran, and such like food, which will do him much pleasure: But some againe will say, that their teeth are so tender, as that they will not be able to chew and eate such kinde of hard meates; I answer, they are very much mistaken, for, not onely my selfe alone, but sundry others have with me been eye-witnesses of the contrary; therefore this needs no further solution. And wheras it hath been objected unto me, that that Colt which is soled in May, or *Solstice*, in that season, the

Of the time of foling.

The Colt better nourished in the Stable, then at grasse in winter.

the Mare will have store of milke, thus much I doe ingenuously confesse, but then what manner of milke will it be? None other then such as shall be marvellous thin and watrish, (as I said before) which abundance will also faile, even when the Colt hath most need thereof, that is, when the Colt beginneth to come up to some strength, and at what time he should receive most nutriment, to wit, when the winter commeth on, whose Snows, Frosts, cold raines, and Flouds, will not a little nip and pinch the Colt, and enfeeble the Mare in such terrible and desperate manner, that she will want her former plenty of food, warme and dry lodging, and other necessary reliefe and sustentation, and so in like manner, her abundance of milke, at what time her poore Colt should depend upon the enfeebled Mare, who is not able to supply its own need: by meanes whereof it must necessarily fall out, that she must bring both her selfe and her Colt to extreame poverty, not being able to sustaine her own life, much lesse her Colts and her own, and so become feeble before winter be halfe spent; and over and above all this, the Colt will by his running abroad with the Mare, become so salvage and wilde, as that if any infirmity should happen to seize upon it, its own unrulinesse will be so great, that the cure may thereby become the more difficile: for to speake truely, infinite have been, and daily are the numbers of Colts; yea, and those many times rightly bred, which have miscarried and perished in this nature.

I doe therefore conclude, and as a friend to my Country averre, that the ablest way to breed up the best and most serviceable Horses, is (as I have before inculcated) after this methode and none other; and therefore I am bold to advise all noble Gentlemen who are lovers of good Horses, and of this mystery, to make triall, and to put these my rudiments in execution, and he will never (I doe well assure me) hereafter, either alter or swerve from them; for of this kinde of *breeding*, I have had more then forty yeares good experience: during which time, I intimated these my grounds to a Knight, an intimate friend of mine, who was a great lover of good Horses, and as great a Breeder, as a lover of them, and very well versed in Horse-manship; who hearing my reasons, and thoroughly digesting them, approved of them so well, as that he fell to follow these my instructions, and esteeming them sufficient, would never be brought from them after, he affirming, no way comparable to this: for he found by plaine demonstration, that whereas in former times in breeding (as commonly he did, ten or twelve Colts yearly; when they came to Backing, Riding, and proove of those ten or twelve, he thought himselfe well appayed, and his labour and cost well bestowed, if two or three at the most proved right, and to his minde; whereas ever after in ten Colts thus bred and reared up, hardly any one missed, which proved not right and to his good liking: and this manner of *breeding*, made him more in love with this mystery, then ever before, reason dictating it so well

unto

unto him. For, most certain it is, when the Stallion and Mare are both right, and have all their true attributes, and the time, season, and manner of breeding, with all circumstances thereunto belonging, punctually and in every point duly observed; it will be a hard matter for the Colt to prove ill: but if otherwise, then marvell not if the Colt answer not your expectation, according to the Greeke Adage, which saith; *καλὸν κρεῖσσον κακὸν ποτὶ*, *Iade Sire, Iade Colt*. Wherefore if upon tryall it shall appeare to you, that you have hitherto been to seek of the true grounds, and of the originall causes why you have not bred so many good Horses as you have desired, doe not then wonder that *The cause of your error, and of so great a mischief hath stolne upon, and deceived you*: for the great decay of good Horses, together with those infinite errors in breeding, and Horse-man-ship; that increale that is, being in so vllle a manner of base Iades; have so swarmed in this kingdom, as that (a lamentable case to be related) of one rightly bred, we now adayes have a thousand Iades; to the great dishonour, disprofit, and weakning both of King and Country. And what is the reason? I shall in a word tell you: *It is impossible for a man to bring his work to its wished perfection, who never knew the true grounds of his principles.*

CHAP. IV.

Of the Marks, Colours, and Shapes of Horses.



He next thing befitting our subject, is to speake (albeit briefly) of the Colours, Marks, and perfect Shapes of Horses: Wherein I will first deliver other mens opinions, and lastly, mine owne. Somethere be who hold that Colours, Marks, and Shapes are little materiall to make up a perfect Horse, which I will not contradict, for my meaning is not to traduce or controule any man: but this I will say, that if a good horse have these properties adherent to his goodnesse, then is he questionlesse in much better esteem, for if beauty be added to his other inward vertues, then is he (like to the Nightingale in the beginning of Aprill, heard and hearkened unto, more praise-worthy, and better prized. For a horse, who if he be good and serviceable, well metled, bold, and hardy, of a gentle condition, of a round and comely trot and pace, lightly and well borne, obedient mouthed, sure on foot, tough, strong, and easie; will (I say) not such a horse be well esteemed? But if together with these good properties, there shall be added, good colour, true marks, and perfect shape, which causeth him to appeare most beautifull to all beholders: will not these endowments set him the better forth? and cause him to be the better esteemed,

med, of every man desired, and much more money offered for him: nay, shall not you (whose the horse is) be come unto, be sued unto, have letters sent you from sundry friends, and will not your selfe prize him at a higher rate than otherwise you would have done: yes assuredly; and hereof I make no question. True it is, and I must confesse no lesse, that a horse may be very good, and performe his function very well, who hath neither good colour, true marks, or perfect shape; nevertheless these extrinsecall vertues are more frequently to be found, and better observed to be in good horses, in whom are colour, markes, and shape; than in horses which are otherwise. Wherefore because these things are termed exterior vertues, and therefore takes its object from the eye onely, I will conjoyne them altogether in this my discourse, and shew you what hath been, and is, the opinion of both ancient and moderne Writers. *Virgil* in his *Georgickes*, handling most accurately sundry points of husbandry, among other things in his third book of *Georgicks*, describeth the horse, as well his breeding, and his severall sorts of imployments, as his colour, shape, and markes; yea, and that in most exquisite manner. And thus he beginneth:

Let the Males goe

*Without restraint to venery, and so
By timely breeds, preserve a perfect kind.
Their first age best, all wretched mortals finde;
After diseases, and old age doe come,
Labour, and death's inexorable doome.
There still will be, whose bodies with thy will
Thou would'st wish chang'd. Therefore repaire them still,
And lest thy kinde quite lost thou finde too late,
Prevent the losse, and yearly propagate.
And such a choice you must in Horses make,
By him, whom you for Stallion meane to take,
As hope of all the race, elect with care
Even from a tender Fole. Such Colts as are
Of generous race, straight, when at first they'r sol'd,
Walke proudly, their soft joynts scarce knit, and bold,
Dare leade the way, into the rivers enter,
And dare themselves on unknowne seas to venture.
Not frighted with vaine noyses, lofty neck'd,
Short beaded, slender belly'd, and broad back'd;
Broad and full breasted; let his colour be
Browne-bay, or gray, white proves not commonly,
Nor flesh-colour, when warres alarums sound,
His nostrils gather, and breath fire, no ground
Can hold his shaking joynts, his feare advances
His thicke-curl'd Mane on his right shoulder dances.*

His

His back-bone broad and strong, the hollow ground
 Trampled beneath his hard round hoof doth sound.
 Such was that Horse, which Spartan Pollux tam'd,
 Fierce Cyllarus, and Mars his Horses fam'd
 By th' old Greek Poets, or those two that drew
 Achilles Chariot: such a shape and hew
 At his wives comming, flying Saturne tooke,
 And all high Pelion with shrill neighings shooke,
 Yet when disease or age have brought to nought
 This Horses spirit, let him at home be wrought,
 Nor spare his base old age. A horse grown old
 Though he in vaine attempt it oft, is cold
 To venery, and when he's brought to try
 (Like that great strengthlesse fire in stubble dry)
 In vaine he rages; therefore first 'tis good
 To marke his age, his courage and his brood,
 With other arts; how sad a horse will be
 When overcome, how proud of victory.
 Dost thou not see, when through the field in speed
 Two racing Chariots from the Lists are fled,
 The young mens hearts all rise, as forth they start,
 And feare with joy confounded strikes each heart?
 They give their Horse the raynes, and lash them on,
 Their hurried wheelles enflaming, as they run;
 Now low they goe, now rise as they would flye
 Through th' empty ayre, and mount up to the sky:
 No resting, no delay, a sandy cloud
 Darkens the ayre, they on through shoutings loud
 Of standers by, all sweat, and fom'd doe flye,
 So great's their love of praise and victory.
 First Eriethonius Chariots did invent,
 And by foure Horses drawn in triumph went.
 The Peletronian Lapithes first found
 The use of backing Horses, taught them bound,
 And run the Ring; taught Riders t' exercise
 In martiall ranks, both equall Mysteries:
 The Masters of both these have equall need
 To finde out Horse of courage, and good speed,
 Though ne're so nobly born, though oft in game
 They won the prize, and for their Country claime
 Epire, or fam'd Mycenæ, or else tooke
 Their birth at first from Neptunes trident stroke.

These things observ'd, as Covering time, they care
 To make their Stallion strongly fat and faire
 The father of their brood; for him they mow
 Choice grasse. sweet streames, and corne to him allow,

The Expert Ferrier.

Left he should faile his pleasant worke to doe,
 And th' young ones starvelings from his hunger grow.
 But they of purpose keepe the females light
 And leane: and when they have an appetite
 To venery, let them not drinke nor eate,
 And course them oft, and tye them in the heate,
 When in full Barnes the ripe corne crowded lyes,
 As empty chaffe before the west winde flies.
 And this they doe, least too much ranknesse make
 The breeding, soyle, and fatted furrowes take
 Too dull a sense; but that they should draw in
 Seed with desire, and lodge it safe within.

But if thy minde thou more to warre doe give,
 Or through Love's wood, would'st racing Chariots drive,
 And swiftly passe by Pila's river side:
 Thy first taske is to make thy Horse abide
 To see the souldiers armes, heare their loud voyces,
 The trumpets sound, and rattling Chariots noyses,
 And oft within the stable let him heare
 The clashing whip, he'll more and more appeare
 To be delighted with his Masters praise,
 And when he strokes his necke, his courage raise.
 When first he's wean'd from sucking, let him heare
 These things, and trembling be compel'd to weare
 Soft haulters oft about his head, but when
 His life hath scene foure Summers, teach him then
 To run the Ring, in order high to beate
 The ground, and both wayes skilfully corvet
 As if he toyl'd, then let him with his speed
 Challenge the wind, and from all curbing freed,
 Scoure o're the champion fields so swift, that there
 The sands no print of his light-foot doe beare.
 So when the Scythian gusts, and North-west wind
 From their cold quarter fiercely blow, and bind
 The dry clouds up: all o're the waving field
 Corne bowes with equall blasts; woods tops doe yeeld
 A murmuring noyse, long waves roule on the shore,
 Forth flies the wind, sweeps lands and waters o're;
 Thy Horse thus ordred to the races end
 All bloudy fow'd, victoriously will tend,
 Or else his tamed necke will better bow
 To draw the Belgian Chariot; let him grow
 Full fed, when he is broken well, nor feare
 His growth; so fed before he's broke, he'll beare
 Too great a stomacke patiently to feele
 The lashing whip, or chide the curbing Steele.

But

But no one care doth more their strength improve,
Then still to keep them from venereal love. &c.

See how the Horses joynts all tremble, when
A Mare's knowne sent, he through the ayre doe feele;
No stripes, no strength of men, no bit of Steele,
No Rockes, nor Dikes, or Rivers in his way,
Which roule whole mountaines, can his fury stay. &c.

But strangest far
Is those Mare's furious love, which Venus sent,
When they their Master Glaucus peece-meal rent.
Love makes them mount o're lofty Gargarus,
And swim the streame off swift Ascanius.
And when Love's flames their greedy marrow burnes,
Most in the Spring, (for heat then most returns
To th' bones) upon high rockes they take their places,
And to the westerne wind all turne their faces,
Sucke in the blasts, and (wondrous to be said)
Grow great with fole, without the horses ayd.
Then o're the Rockes and Valleyes all they run,
Not to the North, nor to the rising sun,
Nor Caurus quarter, nor the South whence rise
Blacke showers, which darken and disturbe the skies.
Hence flowes thicke poyson from the groynes of these
Which Shepheards truely call Hippomanes;
Hippomanes, which oft bad Step-dames use,
And charming words, and banefull hearbs infuse.
But time irreparable flies away. &c.

Du-Bartus that famous French Poet, doth likewise in his Treatise
of the Handy-crafts, excellently describe the colour, shape, and pro-
perties of a good horse, in the fourth part of the first day of the second
weeke, which beginneth thus :

Cain as they say with his deep feare disturbed,
Then first of all th' undaunted Courser curbed;
That whilst about anothers feet he run
With lusty speed, he might his deaths-man shun.
Among a hundred brave, light, lusty Horses,
(With curious eye marking their curious forces)
He chooseth one for his industrious prooffe,
With round, high, hollow, smooth, brown, jetty hooffe;
With pasterns short, upright, (but yet in meane)
Dry sinnowy shanks, strong, fleshless knees, and leane,
With Hart-like legges, broad breast, and large behind,
With body large, smooth flanks, and double chin'd :
A crested neck, bow'd like a halfe-bent bow,

The Expert Ferrier.

Lest he should faile his pleasant worke to doe,
 And th' young ones starvelings from his hunger grow.
 But they of purpose keepe the females light
 And leane: and when they have an appetite
 To venery, let them not drinke nor eate,
 And course them oft, and tye them in the heate,
 When in full Barnes the ripe corne crowded lyes,
 As empty chaffe before the west winde flies.
 And this they doe, least too much ranknesse make
 The breeding, soyle, and fatted furrowes take
 Too dull a sense, but that they should draw in
 Seed with desire, and lodge it safe within.

But if thy minde thou more to warre doe give,
 Or through Iove's wood, would'st racing Chariots drive,
 And swiftly passe by Pila's river side:
 Thy first taske is to make thy Horse abide
 To see the souldiers armes, heare their loud voyces,
 The trumpets sound, and rattling Chariots noyses,
 And oft within the stable let him heare
 The clashing whip, he'le more and more appeare
 To be delighted with his Masters praise,
 And when he strokes his necke, his courage raise.
 When first he's wean'd from sucking, let him heare
 These things, and trembling be compel'd to weare
 Soft haulters oft about his head, but when
 His life hath scene foure Summers, teach him then
 To run the Ring, in order high to beate
 The ground, and both wayes skilfully corvet
 As if he toyl'd, then let him with his speed
 Challenge the wind, and from all curbing freed,
 Scoure o're the champion fields so swift, that there
 The sands no print of his light foot doe beare.
 So when the Scythian gusts, and North-west wind
 From their cold quarter fiercely blow, and bind
 The dry clouds up: all o're the waving field
 Corne bowes with equall blasts; woods tops doe yeeld
 A murmuring noyse, long waves roule on the shore,
 Forth flies the wind, sweeps lands and waters o're;
 Thy Horse thus ordred to the races end
 All bloudy fom'd, victoriously will tend,
 Or else his tamed necke will better bow
 To draw the Belgian Chariot; let him grow
 Full fed, when he is broken well, nor feare
 His growth; so fed before he's broke, he'le beare
 Too great a stomacke patiently to feele
 The lashing whip, or chaine the curbing Steele.

But

But no one care doth more their strength improve,
Then still to keep them from venereal love. &c.
See how the Horses joynts all tremble, when
A Mare's knowne sent, he through the ayre doe feele;
No stripes, no strength of men, no bit of Steele,
No Rockes, nor Dikes, or Rivers in his way,
Which roule whole mountaines, can his fury stay. &c.

But strangest far
Is those Mare's furious love, which Venus sent,
When they their Master Glaucus peece-meal rent.
Love makes them mount o're lofty Gargarus,
And swim the streame of swift Ascanius.
And when Love's flames their greedy marrow burnes,
Most in the Spring, (for heat then most returnes
To th' bones) upon high rockes they take their places,
And to the westerne wind all turne their faces,
Sucke in the blasts, and (wondrous to be said)
Grow great with fole, without the horses ayd.
Then o're the Rockes and Valleyes all they run,
Not to the North, nor to the rising sun.
Nor Caurus quarter, nor the South whence rise
Blacke showers, which darken and disturbe the skies.
Hence flowes thicke poyson from the groynes of these
Which Shepheards truly call Hippomanes;
Hippomanes, which oft bad Step-dames use,
And charming words, and banefull beards infuse.
But time irreparable flies away. &c.

Du-Bartus that famous French Poet, doth likewise in his Treatise of the Handy-crafts, excellently describe the colour, shape, and properties of a good horse, in the fourth part of the first day of the second weeke, which beginneth thus :

Cain as they say with his deep feare disturbed,
Then first of all th' undaunted Courser curbed;
That whilst about anothers feet he run
With lusty speed, he might his deaths-man shun.
Among a hundred brave, light, lusty Horses,
(With curious eye marking their curious forces)
He chooseth one for his industrious prooffe,
With round, high, hollow, smooth, brown, jetty hooffe;
With pasterns short, upright, (but yet in meane)
Dry sinnowy shanks, strong, fleshlesse knees, and leane,
With Hart-like legges, broad breast, and large behind,
With body large, smooth flanks, and double chin'd :
A crested neck, bow'd like a halfe-bent bow,

The Expert Ferrier.

Whereon a long thin curled Mane doth flow :
 A firm full risle, touching the lowly ground,
 With dock betwene two faire fat buttocks round.
 A pricked eare that rests as little space
 As his light foot; A leane, bare, bony face,
 Thin joule, his head yet of a middle size,
 Full lively flaming, sprightly rowling eyes :
 Great foming mouth, hot fuming nostrils wide,
 Of chestnut hayre, his forehead starrist'd :
 Two milky feet, a feathen on his breast,
 Whom seven yeares old at the next grasse he guest.

This comely Jenner gently first he winnes,
 And then to backe him actively begins.
 Stedy and straight he sits, turning his sight
 Still 'twixt the eares of his Palfrey light.
 The chafed horse, such thrall ill suffering,
 Begins to snaffe, to snort, to leap, to sting;
 And flying swift his fearefull Rider makes,
 Like some unskilfull Lad that undertakes
 To hold some Ships Helm, whilst the headlong tyde
 Carries away its vessell, and her guide;
 Who neere to drowned in the jaws of death,
 Pale, fearefull, shivering, faint, and out of breath,
 A thousand times (to heaven erected eyes)
 Repents him of so bold an enterprize :
 But sitting fast, lesse hurt then fear'd, Cain
 Boldens himselfe, and his brave horse againe
 Brings him to pace, from pacing to his trot,
 From trot to gallop, after runs him out
 In full career, and at his courage smiles,
 In sitting still, he runs so many miles.

His pace is faire and free, his trot is light
 As Tigers course, or Swallowes nimble flight :
 And his brave gallop seemes as swift to goe,
 As Biscaine Dart, or shafts from Russian Bow.

But roaring Canon from his smoking throat,
 Never more speedy spewes the thundring shot
 (That in an Army mowes whole squadrons downe,
 And batters bulwarks of a summon'd towne)
 As this light-Horse sends, if he doe but feele
 His Briale slacke, and in his side the heele;
 Shunning himselfe, his sinewy strength he stretcheth,
 Flying the earth, and flying ayre he catcheth;
 Born whirle-wind like, he makes the trampling ground
 Shrinke under him, and shake with doubling sound,
 And when the sight no more pursue he may,

In fieldy clouds he vanisheth away,
 The wise-wax't Rider not esteeming best;
 To take too much now of his lusty beast;
 Restraines his fury, then with learned wand,
 The triple-corvet makes him understand:
 With skilfull voyce he gently cheares his pride,
 And on his necke his fluttring palme doth glide:
 He stops him steady still, new breath to take,
 And in the same path brings him softly backe:
 But th'angry Steed, rising and rearing prondly,
 Striking the stones, stamping, and neighing lowdly;
 Calls for the combate, plunges, leaps, and prances,
 Besomes the path, with sparkling eyes he glances;
 Champs on his burnisht Bit, and gloriously
 His nimble Fet-locks listeth belly-high;
 All side-long jaunts, on either side he justles,
 And's waving crest couragiously he bristles;
 Making the gazers glad on every side
 To give more roome unto his portly pride.

Cain gently strokes him, and now sure in seate,
 Ambitionly seekes still some fresher feat:
 To be more famous, one while trots the Ring,
 Another while he doth him backward bring:
 Then of all feare he makes him lightly bound,
 And to each hand to menage rightly round:
 To stop, to turn, to caper, and to swim,
 To dance, to leap, to hold up any limme:
 And all so done, with time, grace, ordred skill,
 As both had but one body and one will:
 T'one for his art no little glory gaines,
 T'other through practise by degrees attaines.
 Grace in his gallop, in his pace agility,
 Lightnesse of head, and in his stop facility:
 Strength in his leap, and stedfast menagings,
 Aptnesse in all, and in his course new wings. &c

A famous Ferrier of Paris delivereth these colours of a good horse, which because they are in French verse, I have englished them *verbatim* thus.

If you desire a horse thee long to serve,
 Take a browne-bay, and him with care preserve:
 The gray's not ill, but he is prized farre
 That is cole-blacke, and blazed with a starre:
 If for thy selfe, or friend, thou wilt procure
 A horse, let him white-Lyard be, he'l long endure.

And

Of the colours of a Horse.

And the same French-man sheweth, what be also the properties and marks which a good horse ought to have; whereof three are to be of an Oxe, three of a Foxe, three of a Hart, and three of a Woman. Those three of an Oxe, are to have, a faire, and full eye, a large necke, and to be strong and short joynted. Those three of a Foxe, are, to have a comely and short trot, small, and long eares, and a bushy tayle. Those three of a Hart, are to have leane and dry legges, to be well risen before, and a leane head. Those three of a Woman, are to be large and faire breasted, to have a beautifull and full haire, and gentle to his Rider and Keeper.

Of the shape of a Horse.

The same Author delivereth yet further what ought to be the colour and shape of a good horse. Those horses (saith he) that are of a chest-nut colour, with Mane, and Tayle blacke, are commonly good. The Sorrell, if his Mane, Tayle, Knees, Fet-lockes, and list along his backe, be blacke, and are for the most part good, if they be otherwise free from evill conditions; as not at any time to lye downe in the water, refuse, and such like bad qualities. The Browne-bay, Dunne, Dapple-grey, iron-grey, if their extremities be black, are many times very good, if they be well chosen. All horses (saith he) must have good Legges, good Feet, and their Fetlocks must not be overcharged with hayre; they must have also good eyes, obedient mouthed, and well metled: they must not have fat or fleshy legs, but to have a great belly, well risen before, straight backt, not charged with over-great shoulders, he must have a thin bended neck, like a Carps backe, a good Crouper, large Thighes, round well spread Buttocks, and a traine well set on: a leane, dry, and thin Head, a full sparkling Eye, a wide Nostrill, a wide, thin, & leane Jaw, a loose Thrope, a well-trussed-together Body, and Legs not too long: being thus accooterd and shaped, it is probable he will be very serviceable. He also sheweth signes whereby to know the good or evill sight of a horse. Every horse (saith he) hath a feather in his Face betwixt his eyes: if the said feather be high above the eyes, then hath he assuredly a good and perfect sight; but if the feather be below his eyes, the horse then hath oft times a bad sight: Observe this rule well, and you shall finde it to be a thing most certaine. He also giveth other marks touching the Legges of a horse: which briefly are, that a horse must have his fore-legs above the knees, to be strong, flat, and large, albeit the lower part of the Legges be small: provided he have a good foot, which supposing, he may prove a horse of long continuance. Another Author speaking of the colours of Horses, doth denominate them after this manner, viz. A Brown-Bay, a Black-Roan, or Black full of silver hayres Cole-black, Chest nut, Dark-Bay, Fly-bitten, or White-Lyard. The Browne-Bay is so highly esteemed with all Nations, as that they doe with one assent alwaies ranke him in the very first place of colours: the Italians and French doe so much prize the Brown-Bay, as that they evermore call that colour *Bayary Loyall*, the Loyall Bayard, or more properly according to our English phrase,

How to know the good sight from the bad of a horse.

Which be the best colours of a Horse.

phrase, Trusty Bayard. The French, Italians, and Germans doe very far commend and prefer three sorts of colours in Horses: to wit, the Browne-Bay, the Chest-nut, and the Cole-Black; but they doe evermore preferre the Browne-Bay to the first place. Master *Blundevile*, and Master *Markham* doe both accord in the choyce of the Colours of the Horse, and they never doe faile in preferring the Browne-Bay to the first place.

What shall I need speake any more of Colours; I will now proceed to their Markes, wherein, albeit in most things all in a manner do agree; yet only in some few points there is some small difference. All generally assent in the white starre, and white foote, if the blaze be not too broad, or the foote too high white above the Pastern, for then it is called hosed, or Buskened: some commend the shimme, or rase downe the Face, if it bee not much broader than a three-penny silke Ribben, but then it must come to end just between the Nosthrils, and not be more on the one side of the Face, than on the other. This indeede is of all true Horse-men esteemed a most beautifull good Marke, and well becometh a good Horse. Some would have the foote being white, to be on the farre foote behinde, and some again on the neare foote before: I have heard some highly commend the Horse to have two white feete a crosse, to wit, the far-foote behind, and the neere foot before, like as had a Horse of the old Lord *Sandes*, being a Courser, which he brought out of *Italy*, with so much charge, labour, and perill of his life, (as his Lordship did sundry times report unto me,) which was of a darke Bay, and his two feete a crosse white, howsoever I have known some Horsemen, dislike of the same Markes, yet I could never heare the reasons of their dislike. A Knight of my acquaintance would highly commend the Horse, who had a white foote, which was bespeckled with blacke motly spots; affirming that a Horse so marked did betoken good mettle, great valour, and a heroick spirit, for he would alwaies call such a Horse, *Equus generosus*, a Horse of a brave spirit; and this hee would report, was taught him by old Sir *Henry Lea*, that famous Horse-man, and no lesse excellent Breeder, of whom this Knight bought many delicate Colts, some of which were thus marked. All good Horsemen doe attest, that the Horse with much white upon his face, raw nosed, sheath, yard, tuell, & hooves white, skin white, and legs hosed, & walcyed; is generally weake, faint, of a cowardly condition, tender, and washy of flesh, subject to rebellion, restifenes, to starting, stumbling, evill-fighted, subject to tire, dangerous to his Keeper, for biting and striking; and in a word, of a most base, and evill condition. For the countenance is the true Index of the minde: And a lewd looke prognosticates a lewd condition: And againe; a deformed countenance doth delineate a wicked and deformed disposition and manners. It is holden for a good Marke in a Horse to have many Feathers about his body, as upon his forehead, so it be scituated above the eyes, and the higher it stands,

Of the marks
of a Horse.

Feathers holden to bee a
good marke
in a Horse.

*The perfect
shape of a
Horse.*

stands, the better : also upon the middle of the Necke neere to the Crest, under the Neck in the middle of the Throple, upon the Brest, and upon both the Flanks, and upon both Buttocks, which for Horses to have Feathers in these, and such like places, is most commendable.

Now as touching the perfect and true shape of a Horse, wherein we have more contrariety of opinions, than are either in the Colour or Marks, whereof I have given you a tast already : Nevertheless, I will demonstrate how farre commonly all doe meete in the shape of a well timbred Horse. First therefore it is required that the hooft be blacke, smooth, dry, large, round, and hollow : the Pasterns straight, and upright, Fetlocks short, the legges straight, and flat, called also lath-legged, the knees bony, leane and round, the necke long, high-rear'd, and great towards the Breast, the Breast large and round, the Eares small, sharpe, long, and upright, the Forehead leane, and large, the Eyes great, full, and black, the Browes well filled and shooting outwards, the Iawes wide, slender, and leane, the Nosthrills wide, and open, the Mouth great, the Head long, and leane like to a Sheepe, the Mane thin and large, the Withers sharp and pointed, the Back short, even, plaine, and double chined, the Sides, and Ribbes deepe, large, and bearing out like the cover of a Trunke, and close shut at the huckle-bone, the Belly long, and great, but hid under the ribs, the Flanks full, yet gaunt, the Rump round, plaine, and broad, with a large space betwixt the Buttocks, the Thighs long, and large, with wel-fashioned bones, and those fleshy, the Hams dry, and streight, the Trunchion small, long, well set on, & well couched, the Trayne long, not too thick, and falling to the ground, the Yard, and Stones small; and lastly the Horse to be well risen before. And to conclude, the perfect shape of a Horse, according as a famous Horseman hath described, is in a few words, thus ; *Viz.* A broad Forehead, a great Eye, a leane Head, thin, slender, leane, wide Iawes ; a long, high-rear'd Neck, high-rear'd Withers ; a broad, deepe Chest, and Body ; upright Pasterns, and a narrow Hooft : And this is the common allowed, and approved shape of a perfect Horse ; so as if any of these things be deficient in him, he cannot be said to be a Horse of a perfect Shape : Wherefore I conclude that if a Horse of a good Colour, well Marked, and rightly Shaped, and right also by Syre, and Mare ; it will be seldome seene that he should prove ill, unlesse his Nature be alienated, and marred, either in the Backing and Riding, or else that he be otherwise wronged, and most shamefully abused by the means of a hare-brain, negligent, or inconsiderate Rider or Groome. But I may in this point bee taxed to hold a Paradox ; for some may object unto me, that many times Horses, who are of the best Colours, best Marks, and truest Shapes, doe nevertheless prove arrant jades, restiffe, stubborn, ill natured, subject to tiring, and the like : I answere, I acknowledge all this to be most true, for I have knowne
Horses,

Horses, who upon their first view, have beene in extrinsecall shew so hopefull, as that they have promised what a man could expect from them; which notwithstanding when they have come to the test, they have beene a scandall to their sex; but this is not a thing frequent, for in every one of these who have thus miscarried; you shall have twenty who will prove right, and answerable to your minde: I have also knowne Horses, which wanting these good attributes, and who have beene as different from those we call good, even as Chalk is from Cheese, who have proved very good Horses: howbeit I will not counsell you to breed upon such an one, who albeit hee may bring you Colts, yet I dare not promise you he shall ever bring you a good Colt, whereof I have oftimes made tryall, as well for Horses of Mennage, as for Hunters, and Horses for the Course. Neither need there any more be said upon this subject.

CHAP. V.

Of the Office of the Rider and Groom.

Aving now bred Colts according to my instructions, which you may well hope will prove to your mind and best liking, neverthelesse some things there yet remaine whereof duly to consider; and that is; that when you have thus (I say) bred your Colts which you may very well hope are right, your eye and judgement for Shape, Colour, and Markes promissing no lesse; it then behooveth you to be very cautelous in the Handling, Breaking, Riding, and wel-ording them, whether you intend them for Menage, Course, Hunting, or the Rode; in any of which an especiall care would bee had to provide you of Riders, Groomes, and Keepers, such as shall be knowne to be expert in their faculties; in which principally consisteth either their direct making, or marring, and finall ruine. For we cannot say, that a Colt (yet unhandled) at three or foure yeares of age, is or can be a perfect good Horse, whilst he remaineth (I say) unriden, unhandled, and unmade, untill such time, as he hath been taken up into the Stable, made gentle, taught to leade, content to be shod, to be Back't, Broken, Ridden, Wayed, Mouthed; and to bee brieft, brought to his utmost perfection. By this time, you will come to bee able to know and understand his true Worth, Vertue, Nature, Disposition, and Quality, his Pace, his Raine, or Bearing his Toughnes, Strength, and Affability, his true worth and goodnesse, and what other attributes are befitting a generous Horse.

*What manner of man
a Rider
ought to be.*

His Rider therefore must be an expert and able Horseman, and his Keeper every way as sufficient; otherwise what defects you shall finde in your Horse, are not to be attributed to him, but either to his Rider, or to the Groome. Wherefore your care must be, that both Rider and Groome be knowne sufficient, lest for want of true science, your Horse may est-soones be brought to assume such sinister conditions, from which he will not be weaned in a long time after. Wherefore if your Rider be known to be an able man, and your Groome sufficiently skilfull; you must then expect that perfection from your horse, you ever hoped. For my part thus much I aver, that this Noble Science (Noble, I call it for that it is a faculty well befitting a truly-Noble Gentleman) is an art wherein I have been versed and travelled for more then forty yeares, as well at home, as in parts abroad, in which I have most diligently consumed much time, as well to the labour of my body and minde, as to my no small expence: and it doth not a little trouble me that in places where I come here in *England*, I doe finde so few Horsemen, (considering it is an Iland which doth abound in Horses, whereof no kingdome under heaven more) and yet so many Braggadochies there be, who will so cracke and boast of their skill in this heroicke Science; and when I shall begin to discourse with them of Horsemanship, they will talke so fillily, and so impertinently, as makes me blush to heare them: insomuch as I have much trouble with my patience in forbearing to let them know their absurd folly: and if I but aske them any easie question concerning this mystery, they presently fall into strange and preposterous discourses, venting many incredible wonders, as farre from sense, and as high above the Moone, as the Moone is above us: and they are as poor, and as ignorant in the true nature and knowledge of the Art, as not to be able to understand the very first grounds and principles in Horsemanship. Others there be, who have attained to so much superficiall speculative knowledge, by reading the works of Master *Blandevile*, Master *Markham*, and others, getting thereby some glimpse of speculation, but lesse true practise, (wherein is as much difference as betwixt us and the Antipodes,) and therefore in what esteeme they either are or can be among Horsemen, is most easie to be imagined. Others there are, who being so active and dexterous, as to be able to sit a rough unriden Colt, a few plunges, by fast holding with both hands to the Mane and Pummell, and by clinging with their legges close to the body of the horse, till by striving and his violent disordered agitation, he hath put himselfe from off his winde; he will not sticke presently to promise to himselfe, the true and entire mystery of able Horsemanship. Others againe I oft meet with, who by sometimes frequenting the Muze, and other places, where Riders use to menage; who after have made no bones to cry themselves up for as good & as able Horsemen, as any in *England*. Others I doe very well know, who by reading, have made some petty practise howsoever
(God

(God knowes) to very small purpose (so farre forth as their diminutive skill was able to extend) upon such (not rightly bred Geldings, and small Nags of their own) wherein they have assumed unto themselves so much pretended knowledge, as that they have in their disjoynted discourses, not spared to taxe the famous *Alexanders*, and other eminent Riders of this our kingdome for Novices, and meere ignorant Horsemen. Such (I say) is the vanity and arrogancy of these our dayes, in which ignorance dareth to adventure to traduce knowledge, and Vice lay an obloquy upon Vertue. *For unlesse a man doe arrive unto the depth of profound knowledge, he shall be derided but like as he either hath or hath it not, he shall be either commended or scorned.* For you shall not see one in a hundred of these pretenders of knowledge, who doth (not so much as) understand the termes of this generous mystery; and therefore I may truly say of them: that, *Not to know the termes or principles, is to be ignorant of the Art it selfe:* And yet I have known some of these so impudently weake, as to take upon them to teach, whereat I have not a little marvelled, it being a generall received rule, *viz. It is impossible for any man to teach that which hee never learned.* And further a venerable Author saith, *He that will be his owne scholler, shall be sure to have a foole to his master.* For assuredly, great folly and weaknesse is to be observed in that man, who shall take upon him to be a master or teacher, who never knew what it was to be a scholler.

But if you desire to have your Colts come to the height of perfection, let then your care be to furnish your selfe of a good Rider, and such an one who is well known and cryed up to be an exquisite Horseman. He must not be of life dissolute, or debauched, nor of nature harsh, furious, cholericke, or hayre-brained: for the least of either of these vices, are unbecoming a person of this profession; but he must be of life sober, and in his function laborious and diligent, of complexion Flegmaticque, and patient, he must be master of his passions; for *A wise man knoweth how to conquer and overcome himselfe:* for that Rider that is cholericke, rash, hasty, and tooone provoked to impatience, can never make a good Horseman; let him love the Art never so well, neither shall he be able to make a horse so perfect as otherwise he might have done, were he otherwise conditioned; but let him apply his best endeavours, yet that horse he maketh, shall have defects, which his inconsiderate harshnesse hath caused. For if your young horse be rightly organized, and as well natured, as well mettled, and as correspondent for markes and colours, he seldome proves ill in the making, supposing his Rider be master of his Art, but if otherwise, by which meanes he doe fall into imperfections or vices: it is not much to be wondered at, for those his evill conditions and faults are not so much to be imputed to the horse, as to his teacher, and as touching curstnesse and correction to be used to young horses, we have a generall rule in Horsemanship, which is, *that he is not cryed up for a good Horseman, who wanteth knowledge how to bring his horse to perfection by*

sweet and gentle manes, rather then by correction and severe chastisement: yet that correction must sometimes be used, no man but knoweth, to be as necessary as his meat; nevertheless let correction be so considerably applied, as not therein to exceed the limits and bounds of moderation; Let it (I say) be done, *to amendment, and not to destruction or confusion, and utter marring of him:* for discretion in a case of this nature is a most precious jewell, and highly to be valued, and when his Rider shall at any time correct him, let it be done in the very instant when he offendeth, and doth justly merit the same, and not otherwise, for else he will not know the cause why he was chastised, whereby he becometh rather confounded than amended: so on the other side, when the horse doth well, let him be cherished and much made of, which will the better encourage him in the same way of going forward in well-doing.

What manner of person a Groom ought to be.

And as touching the Groom, he must be a man who must truly love his horse, and so shape his course towards him, as that the horse may love and dote upon his Keeper, otherwise the horse may soone get to many evil habits, which he will not easily alter or forget. For as *aristotle* learnedly saith, *Like as you order him, so shall you finde:* For the horse by nature is the most loving creature to man of all other brut creatures, and none more obedient, none more intelligible, none more desirous to please; wherefore if he be sweetly, mildly, and plausibly dealt with, he will be also reciprocally: Otherwise if his Keeper be harsh, furious, chollericke, and passionate, the horse will be put besides his patience, stare and see boggards in his Keepers face, become rebellious, fall to striking, biting, and other vices, to the often endangering as well of the life and limbs of his Keeper, as of his Rider, and others: for the old proverb is most true, *Patience once wounded or wronged, is soone turned into fury and rage.* For the horse is not said to be *Creatura animalis*, a creature endowed with a reasonable soule; but is, *Creatura simpliciter animalis*, a creature which hath only life and sense, as learned Philosophers doe teach: a creature (I say) in whom is onely life, sense, and memory, but discourse he hath not, and therefore must be governed by judgement and discretion: If therefore your Groom be a man of a loose, evil, and debauch life, or not otherwise able to govern, or to master his passions, he is wholly unfit to supply this place, and to take a charge of this nature upon him: you he must be a man of a boundlesse patience, he must be judicious and discreet, by which means he may with the greater facility, and lesse difficulty, bring his horse to be of the same identity, purity, and essence with himselfe, their loves and hearts truly united, so as he may at pleasure, mould and fashion him into what forme he desireth: he must continually toy, dally, and play with him, and teach him to play the wanton, be alwayes talking and speaking pleasing words and phrases unto him: he must leade him abroad morning and evening when the sunne shineth warm, and then run, scope, and show him all the

the delight and contentment he is able: he must daily curry, rub, and dresse him, wipe, dust, pick, and cleane him, feed, pamper, and cherish him, keep him warm and sweet, be alwayes fiddling and doing some thing about him, be often rampering with his heeles and legges, often taking up his feet, rapping him gently upon the soles, and knocking him softly upon the coffins, untill his Keeper hath taught him to take up any foot of himselfe at first bidding: his Keeper must have him alwayes so cleane of his body, setting upon his coat so perfect a glosse, as that a man may almost see his face upon it. His feet would be kept stopped, and the coffins daily annoynted, his heeles free from scratches, and other such like sores: and his Keeper ought also to keep so continuall a vigilant eye upon him, and all his actions, as well in his feeding and drinking, as otherwise, whereby no symptoms of sicknesse or infirmity (inward or outward) shall be able so soone to shew its head, but they may be as easily, and as soon cured and amended, or else prevented: for to amend a fault in the beginning, is far better and more easie, than when it hath bene long accustomed: for our old Proverb is, Things are sooner prevented, than amended.

But I am loath to wade any further into this subject, for this is not that I intended when I began: yet since I am thus farre imbarqued in it, I will give you a few rules which may be profitable both to the Master and the Groom, which if they be well observed, you may undoubtedly keep your horse long in very good estate and health. First therefore before you put your horse to grasse (I speake now of horses which have been ridden and exercised) some foure or five dayes, or a week before, take blood from him according as your discretion or the Fetter by his Art shall dictate: the next day after, give him the drink of *Diapente*, mentioned in lib. 2. chap. 7. § 2. with good Sack, and let him after his drinke be inured to hardnesse some dayes before his turning forth, by taking by degrees his cloaks from him, lest by doing things on a sudden, he fortune to take more cold, than you can easily cure: neither would I have you put him forth till the midst of May at the soonest, for till that time, grasse will not have bin enough for him to fill his belly, nor the season warme enough, (and let the day wherein you turne him forth be a warme Sunshine day, and about the houre of ten;) for Horses pampered in warme stables, and kept close, will be subject to take cold, if a thicke order, and course be not taken with them. Secondly, let him be taken up from grasse about the feast of Saint Bartholomew, which is upon the 24. day of August, or soon after, for then the season hath begun to let fall cold dewes, which betideth no good, but much harme to your horse, and which beginneth the heart of grasse to faile, so as the grasse which then he feedeth upon, breedeth no good nutriment, but grosse humours, which putrifieth and corrupteth the blood. Let your horse (I say) be taken up about the day before mentioned,

Rules fit to be observed.

1

2

3

tioned, but with all the quietnes may be, for feare of heating him, by reason his greale he gat at grasse is tender, so as every little motion will dissolve the same, whereby the blood may be inflamed, and so the Horse be brought into eminent perill at least of sicknesse, if not of death. A day or two after you have him in the Stable, or sooner, let him be shod, and let blood, and drench, as before is shewed you, for this preventeth Yellowes, Stavers; and such like diseases, which the Gaule, and Spleen occasioneth, which the heart and strength of grasse (through the ranknes of the blood) doth ingender in his body; Then purg and cleanse him both outwardly and inwardly, like as you are taught in lib. 2. chapter 2.

3

Thirdly, search your Horses mouth, both then and at other times often, for feare of Barbes, Bigs, Blisters, and Cankers, and such like maladies which are very incident to breed in the mouths of Horses, which by the colour of the spots of his Gums, Tongue, and Mouth

4

you may perceiv, and so the better and more easily both prevent, and cure all such diseases as are inherent to those parts. Fourthly, rub and wash sometimes your Horses mouth, and tongue with vinegar or Verjuce mingled with bay salt, but Verjuce is the better, and let some passe downe his throat, for it is both wholesome and good.

5

Fiftly, observe your Horses Eyes, and Countenance, which if you doe find them to be heavy, drowsie, and dull, then be you confident all is not well within him: Then take blood from him, and give him the drinke of *Diapente*, or *Diatefseron*, and hee shall doe well againe.

6

Sixtly, observe well his standing, and his going, if you doe perceive him to felter with any of his feet. be it never so little, or else which foote soever he doth favour, let the Groome presently take up that foot, and examine it, if he can feele any place warmer than other, let him now assure himself something is amisse there, take off the Shoo, and search the foot carefully, to see whether gravell, or naile be any cause thereof; but if you doe find all well there, search the heele and frush, if you find not any thing there, search higher for some swelling that may be in the pastern-joynt in the legge, or backe sinew; and when he hath found the fault, and cause of his complaint, let him presently informe the Ferrier, who is to apply his remedies, and by this meanes he shall discharge his duty as well becometh him.

7

Seaventhly, observe also if he put forth his foote more than usually hee was wont to doe; then assure your selfe the griete lyeth either in the knee or shoulder; if it be so, presently advertise the Ferrier; who knoweth what is best to be done with him. Eightly, when you are to take your journey with him, water him in the House, and give him his break-fast of good cleane Oates, sweet, and wel-sifted; then bridle him and tie him up to the Rack, then curry, dresse, and saddle him, but draw not the girts too streight till you come to take his back; then presently cast his cloath over him least he take cold, and when you come to take his back, draw his girts streight, and so on God's

8

name

name begin your journey, but for a mile, two, or more, goe faire and softly, for if you heat him too soone, he will not digest his meate, but crudities will arise in his stomacke, which you shall perceive by his scouring & purging, as he travaileth, whereby you may either founder him in his body, or else cause a *Calientura*, burning Fever, or some other worse infirmity to seize him: and as you doe travell him, when you are come some foure or five miles from home, alight from him, and walke him, sometimes standing still to see if you may provoke him to stale, for it is very wholesome and good, which you may also doe well to attempt when you dismount and walke him down any hill: and some three miles before you come to your journeyes end, Ride him into some River or other watering place, unto his belly, but no deeper in any wise, and then let him drinke, yet not so much at the first, as he desireth, but by degrees, first taking up his head to cause him to wash his mouth, whereby to free it from filth & some; Then let him drinke halfe his draught, and lastly, so much as in reason he will: Then observe upon what pace you brought him to the water, with the same pace, (and neither softer nor faster) Ride him a mile or better, by which time he will have warmed the water in his belly, without taking cold or harme. This watering him thus, will very much refresh him, cause him to forget his wearisomenesse, and when he shall come to eat, it will be with very good appetite, which otherwise he would not have done. A mile at least before you come to your journeyes end, slack your pace, and begin to go more softly, to the end he may not be too hot when he shall be set up, have him without delay into the Stable warme, well littered up to the belly; but take heed you suffer him not to be either walked, or washed, for these two things are very pernicious, and most dangerous for him, and the cause of more sickness, sorowes, and death to Horses, then of all other things besides. So soone as you have brought him into the Stable, the first thing you doe, off with your Coate, and tie him up to the empty Rack; then litter him up to the belly, ungird him, take off his Saddle, rub his back with speed, and put his cloath upon him, and upon that his Saddle againe, and gird him with his Suringle, then make cleane his stirrops, stirrop-leathers and Girts, and rubbe him downe, both Legges, Belly, Body, Breast, Head, Face, and Neck, and so stufte him up with cleane dry straw, and let him stand so upon the Bit an houre, evermore looking upon him least he sweat a new, which if you shall perceive, then to alay it, take away some of the straw wherewith he is stufed, and hee will coole againe; if you finde him in good temper, unbridle him, and wash his mouth with water and salt, and wash also his Bit, and so bridle him up againe, and give him some good Hay in his Rack to champ upon, for halfe an houres space. After come to him againe, and then unbridle him, put on his Collier-halter, and so give him fresh Hay to eat: Then rub him all over, and so let him stand till
you

you have supped ; then come to him , and give him either a sweete mash or white water, which when he hath drunke, let him eate Hay for halfe an houre after, and then give him his Provender, but by degrees, not too much together, for feare of cloying him, which so soone as he hath dispatched, unsaddle him, and rub his body all over, cloath him up warme , and whisp him up round with small whisps : Which done, rub his legges dry, picke, and stop his feete, and annoint the Coffins and Cronets of his Hoofes, giving him Hay for all night : and lastly shake up his litter about and under him, that so he may ly soft, and warme : and thus doing , leave him to his rest.

The next morning, come to him early ; and first observe whether or not he hath layne downe; then looke upon his Ordure, whether it be laxative or costive, or if he hath avoyded any greale, which if he hath, give him with his Oates, a handfull or two of Hemp-seed, and so order him as you are accustomed, or otherwise as you in discretion doe find to be most requisite. Many other rudiments there are to be given, which for that they are so commonly knowne to every Groome, are impertinent to rehearse ; Only in a word for a close, I say, that a good Groome ought to be a man of good life, and sober demeanour, no Tipler, no haunter of Ale-houses, or Tavernes, (like as too too many are) no lyer abroad from his Horse in the night, nor long from him in the day, and an early riser ; the Stable must be his Compting-house ; he must not be so intimate with any as with his Horse ; have entercourse with none so much as with him : he must be his principall affociate, and make him of his Cabbinet-councell : his Horse must be his only *Idea*, the only Mistresse whom he must court, and serve : and so soone as he doth suspect but any the least inconvenience in him ; let him instantly impart it to the Ferrier, and looke what the Ferrier doth give in directions, let his Keeper diligently observe, and execute accordingly ; for it is an argument of a proud and preposterous condition in a Groome, to swarve from the instructions which the Ferrier shall at any time give. Ninthly, as the Groome must have a speciall care hee doe not pine, or under-meate his Horse, in his dyet ; so he must bee as cautelous hee doe not cloy him , by laying before him too much Provender at once : but his way must be to give him little at once, and often ; he must eate up all before he give him any more, yea hee must eate it with good appetite, otherwise he may marre his appetite utterly, and bring him to loath his Provender, and looke what Hay and Provender he doth at any time give him, let it be sweet, wel-dusted, and throughly purged from Feathers, Hens-dung, Cats-dung, stones, gravell, and such like filth, which are things hurtfull and troublesome to his stomacke and feeding ; for they will cause him to refuse and forsake his meate, unless pure hunger shall constrain him thereunto ; for such kind of nasty meate, & food will engender in him noysome & noxious infirmities.

Tenthly,

Tenthly, as touching the furniture and caparison which the horse is to weare, the Groome must be carefull to keep them clean, bright, and handsome: the Saddles, after sweating and travell, well ayred in the Sun and wind, and after beaten and dusted, the stirrops wiped cleane, with the strops and other such like leathers thereto belonging and appertaining, and so put up safe and handsomely with their cases and coverings upon them to preserve them from dust: the foot cloaths (if he have any under his charge) cleansed, brushed, and neatly folded up; the Bits taken from the Head-stals, and cleane washed, dried before the fire; and wrapped up in an oyly cloath to keep them from rust and canker, and the Bosses carefully also made clean, together with their Bits, and so laid up in the Presse or Chest made for such like purpose. The Head-stals and Reynes, Croopers, and other accoutrements would likewise be wiped, made very cleane, and hanged up in the Presse in their proper places: the Girts, Sursingles, Stirrip-leathers, and such like necessities, would be diligently viewed and examined, cleansed, and made cleane, and if any thing be amisse or broken, let it be mended incontinently, lest they should be to doe when they were to be used: In conclusion, nothing should be out of order at any time, but every thing (as well Stable as Saddle-house) kept cleane, neat, and sweet, which will purchase unto the Groome no small respect with his Lord or Master, and much more reputation and applause of so many as shall be an eye-witnesse thereof.

F

The



THE EXPERT FERRIER.

The Second Booke.

CHAP. I.

*Of what points consisteth the office of the Ferrier :
Handled Dialogue-wise.*

Hypophylus.



After Sergeant Ferrier, you are well encountred, I have been often at your house and shop, with a desire to have spoken with you, but could never have the good fortune to finde you at home.

Hyppiatrus. Sir, it may well be, that you may come often to my house, and yet misse of me, unlesse it be at certaine set houres, for that I having many Cures daily in my hand, and besides I am frequently sent for by many to looke upon sicke horses; marvell not that you cannot so easily finde me at home: but what is your pleasure now that you have met me?

Hypophy. You may remember (good *Hyppiatrus*) you promised me (upon our last meeting) to assist me in the perfecting of my Cures, which so long since I purposed to publish, and now I would gladly know what day and place you would appoint for the finall dispatch of the businesse.

Hyppiat. Truly Sir, the time now fits well, for I have dispatch-
ed all my affaires for this day; wherefore sithence wee are met
so neere my house, we will enter, where we will be retired into a pri-
vate chamber, prohibiting any accessse unto us, my man *Hypposcerus*
onely excepted, whom I will interrogate in such points as shall con-
cerne the Ferriers Art or Science :and you sitting by, making your
selfe very attent to our discourle, and taking in writing the prime
heads

heads of our discussion, when any thing passeth whereof you may desire to be better informed, propose the same, and we will give you a full solution.

Hyppophyl. Your motion likes mee well, for it will bee the best course you can thinke of whereby to give mee ample satisfaction.

A formall Examen of the Office of the Ferrier.

Hyppiat. *What is the Ferriers Art?*

Hyppos. It principally consists of foure things, to wit; Science, Experience, Knowledge, and Handy-work.

Hyppiat. Letting passe the first three, tell mee what is Handy-work?

Hyppos. Handy-work is to heat the Iron well, to Sodder well, to Forge well, to turne a Shoo well, to make and point a Nayle well, to pare the hoof well, to Cauterize well, to let bloud well, to be light, and well-handed, bold, and hardy in dressing of a Horse well, of such Accidents as may happen unto him.

Hyppiat. *What are the principall members of the Creature?*

Hyppos. They be three, viz. the Liver, the Heart, and the Braine: and if the Creature be offended in any of these three, especially the Braine, which is in the top of the head, then I say he will dy.

Hyppophyl. I alwayes tooke the principall members of any living creature to be foure.

Hyppiat. Therein (Sir) you were mistaken, for any of these former three being hurt, there is evermore present death, especially the Heart, and the Braine: but if any other member besides these three be hurt, yet may your Horse live, and doe well againe. But which Member (I pray you Sir) do you hold to be one of the foure principall Members?

Hyppophyl. The Stones or Gignitors.

Hyppiat. *How doe you assoyle this Objection Hypposerus?*

Hyppos. Most easly Sir, that the Gignitors cannot bee any one of the principall Members, reason teacheth us: for you cannot so much as touch any of these three, but you doe either kill the Creature outright, or else desperately endanger him. Now supposing the Stones may fortune to receive hurt or damage, yet if I bee in despaire of healing or curing them, I can neverthelesse cut, or take them cleane away from the body, or cause the to fall away by other good means or by medicine, without perill of his life: he will only thereby loose his naturall heat, whereby hee will bee disenabled from having any disposition to Coity, or power of Procreation.

Hyppiat. *What is that which goeth from the Head of the Horse, and diffuseth it selfe through-out all the other Members?*

Hyppos. They are two Sinnewes or Tendents which are white, and have

have a Ligature beginning at the very end of the *Nose*, and extend themselves along the *Neck*, and along the *Back*, and maketh their extent to the foure *Legges*, and taketh their Ligaments in the fore-*Feet*.

Hyppophyl. I was in good hope *Hypposerus*, you would likewise have spoken of the number of the *Sinnewes*, and where every one is seated; for it is a thing very materiall, and I doe the rather desire it, for that I am not as yet perfect in that point.

Hyppiat. That was but forgotten both by my selfe and him Sir, wherefore *Hypposerus* make answer to the Gentlemans demand.

Hyppos. I shall doe it most gladly, wherefore as touching the *Sinnewes* we say, that there are in every Horse twenty nine or thirty, great and small. First, the two great *Sinnewes* which I named before, which have their first origin from the end of the *Nose*. Item two branches which are maine *Sinnewes* that proceed from the *Brain*, and runneth downe the *Cheekes* to the *Teeth*. Item there are from the *Shoulders* to the first joynt of the *Armes* or fore-*Legges* downwards, two great *Sinnewes*. Item from the *Knees* to the *Pasterms* are foure great *Sinnewes*, with the same number in the hinder part. Item in the fore-part of the *Breast*, and about it, as well within as without, are ten *Sinnewes*, some greater and some smaller. Item from the *Raines* of the *Back* to the *Stones* are foure great *Sinnewes*. Lastly, one great maine *Sinnew* which runneth along to the end of the *Tayle*. So as the full number of the *Sinnewes* are twenty nine or thirty, which are to be discerned.

Hyppiat. What is that which we doe commonly call principall or vitall Bloud?

Hyppos. Those be *Veines* which are vessells of quick or running Bloud, which men doe call *Vitall Bloud*.

Hyppiat. What is that which men doe call Vitall Bloud?

Hyppos. It is that which when the Creature sleepeeth, his bloud is in continuall agitation, and never ceaseth.

Hyppiat. How many *Veines* hath a Horse in his whole body?

Hyppos. To speake properly, a Horse hath but only one *Veine*, which is that which we call the *Median* or *Lives Veine*, which is in the Liver, being the true Fountaine, Source, and great *Tunne* from whence the *Canes* *Conduite-pipes*, and little *Veines* (as the smaller Rivers doe separate themselves) which doe run thorough all the parts and members of the whole body.

Hyppiat. What call you Separation?

Hyppos. Separation is of two kinds, viz. ascendant, and descendant: those which do ascend to the *Head* and body, are called *Veines Ascendant*; and those which doe run low, or to the *Legges* and lower members, are called *Hollow*, or *Descendant Veines*.

Hyppophyl. I did ever thinke and beleeve till now, that a Horse had more *Veines* than one; how then cometh it to passe that we open

Veines.

Veines in so many severall parts of the body, being so different *Veines* the one from the other?

Hyppiat. I answere you Sir, if you bee pleased to examine your paper, there you shall find how that *Hypposerus* told you that a Horse hath but only one *Veine*, and it is a most infallible verity, for that all those other *Canes* which you call *Veines*, are but the very same with that One, which evermore standeth full of *Bloud* up to the top, conveyed into him, which said great *Veine* is annexed unto the *Liver*; which *Veine*, doth resemble a great *Tunne* or *Cestern*, which conveyeth the *Bloud* into all the lesser *Veines*, by which meanes they continually remaine full, having no vacancy or want: Like as a *Cestern* (*V. G.*) receiveth its water from a Pump, and so conveyeth and bestoweth it into and among the smaller Pipes, oftentimes storeth with plenty of water, a whole Village, or Towne, or at least a whole Family.

Hypophyl. I understand you well; but now friend *Hypposerus*, tell me I pray you, in how many *Veines* may a man take *Bloud* from a Horse in case of necessity?

Hyppos. In many parts, to wit: In the *Neck*, in the *weeping-Veines*, under the *Eares*, and in six other places of and about the *Head*; as in the *Palate-Veines*, in the *Tongue*, in the *Flank Veines* in the *Breast* and *Spur-Veines*: in the foure members, to wit, the *Legges*, *Thighes*, *Pasterns* and *Feet*; also in sundry other places; according as necessity shall require it, and in places which may the better kill the Malady or Disease of the said Horse.

Hypophyl. But yet I was in good hope you would have delivered the reasons for which you doe open any *Veine*, as also which they be in particular.

Hyppos. The *Veines* which we doe usually open are; First, the two *Temple-Veines*, which easeth the paines in the *Head* coming of *Colds*, *Rheumes*, *Feavers*, *Yellows*, and *Stavers*, drowfinesse, *Frenzy*, the *Sleepy-evill*, *Falling evill*, or any grieve in or about the *Eyes* or *Braine*. Secondly, we open the two *Eye* or *weeping-veins*, being most soveraigne for such diseases whereunto the *Eyes* are subject; as *watery* or *weeping Eyes*, *Bloud shotten*, *Pin and w. bbe h w*, or the like. Thirdly, we open the two *Pallet veins* in the *Mouth*, and those doe Cure the *Lampas*, and any inward sicknes within the body; as the *Yellows*, *Stavers*, *Anticor*, *Surfets*, *Drowfinesse*, *Tyrednesse*, or wearinesse of the body; or if the Horse have any Malady in the *Throat*, as the *Strangles*, *Quincy*, *Kernells*, *Pustills*, either within or without, it many times helpeth *Inflamations*, *Glanders*, or the like: for the eating or swallowing of his owne bloud, is most wholesome and soveraigne in such cases. Fourthly, we doe usually open the two *Neck veins*, which helpeth *Farcins*, *Yellows*, *Stavers*, *Scabs*, *Mainges*, *Agues*, *Feavers*, *Colds*, *Surfets*, *Glanders*, or any other Malady, which may be any way noxious to the inward parts of the body:

And

The number
of the veins

The particu-
lar veins.

2 2

3 2

2 4

And it also preventeth sudden sicknes, if you have any suspect ther of.

2 5 Fifthly, the opening of the two *Plate* or *Breast Veines* doe help the Anticor, Sicknesse of the Heart, Morfounding, which is the foundring in the body by over riding. whereby the Grease of the Horse is molten; it also preventeth diseases in the *Liver, Lungs*, and inward parts grieved; and sometimes hurts in the *Shoulder*, which causeth lamenesse before.

2 6 Sixthly, we use to touch the two *Arme* or *Thigh Veines* before, which helpeth Foundring in the *Fore-feet*, Mallenders, splent, serewe, Ring-bone, and such like infirmities in the *Fore-feet*, and such other higher parts.

4 7 Seventhly, we use to take *Blood* from the foure *Shackle-veines* before; and this is very good for the Crown-scab, Ring-bone, and such like diseases.

2 Eighthly, we use to strike the two *Spur-veins*, which cureth the Farcin in the *Sides*, morfounding, swelling under the

2 9 *Belly*, which is a disease called the Feltrick, and the like.

10 2 Ninthly, we prick the two *Toe-veines* which do help Frettizing, Foundring, Hoof-bound, beating of the Horses Feet by riding upon hard and stony wayes, and the like.

11 4 Tenthly, we open the two *Thigh-veins* behind; and this doth help the griefes of the *Kidneys*, Swellings in the *hinder-legs*, Foundrings, Selenders, Scratches, Kybes. &c. and it helpeth also diseases in and about the *Belly*, as pissing of Blood, pissing oft after great and extraordinary labour, and the weaknesse of the *Reines*, the *Back, Belly, Guts*, or any other the inward parts, the Curb, Spaven, and such diseases which come of ranknesse of *Blood*.

12 2 Eleventhly, wee sometimes doe open the foure *Shackle-veines* behind; and this is very good against foundrings and other paines in and about the *feet*.

13 2 Twelfthly, we let *bloud* in the two *flanke* or *hanch-veines*, and this is most profitable for all kind of feavers, the *stones*, poverty, & the felter-worme.

13 2 Thirteenthly, we draw *bloud* frō the two *tayle-veynes*, which cureth the mainge in the *tayle*, falling off the haire, or the itch in the *tayle*. And these are for the most part all the *veines* which are usually opened, or that my selfe have ever known, or have seen my Master open, which are very great meanes to help these diseases by me mentioned. So as the full summe or number of *veines* which *Ferriers* use commonly to open, are thirty. Other *veines* there are which are of a smaller proportion, and therefore not fit to be opened. Nevertheless some *Ferriers* there are, who have fondly reported unto me that they have let horses *bloud* in many of those small *veins*, but I could never learne for what purpose the same was done: let this therfore which I have here set you down, suffice for this matter.

Scown-scab.

Hypophyl. I have heard you *Hypoferus* attentively, but yet I would most gladly understand one thing, which is, that whereas you say that the opening of these *veines* doth help and cure such diseases, I would gladly be satisfied herein, for if by the opening of these *veines* the horse will be cured, then we may spare much labour in applying drinks, purgations, clisters, and such other things, which we usually make and give to horses.

Hypofer.

Hyppos. Sir, I assure me you cannot be so ignorant as you speake; for this opening of *veines* and *bloud-letting*, doth not alwaies absolutely cure those diseases which I have named, but it doth sometimes alswage the malignancy of the malady, somtimes it preventeth diseases, and sometimes againe it prepareth the body the better to receive such physicall drinks which doe inwardly cure them, and such Salves, Oyles, and Vnguents which doe dry and heale up outward infirmities; but that *bloud letting* doth absolutely cure them, I lay it doth not, howsoever in some cases it may.

Hyppiat. What is that which departs from the head of the horse, and serveth him for his principall members?

Hyppos. I have shewed you that already: they be *sinewes* and *nerves*; these *sinewes* which depart and proceed from the head, give sense and feeling, arriving in the body of the creature, and so diffuse and spread themselves through all the principall members, which doe descend from the head unto all the other members, which make a conjunction of the *bones*, of the *legges*, of the body, and of all the other members.

Hyppiat. How many bones hath a horse, and how are they situated in the body?

Hyppos. There are in the body of every horse, two hundred fifty and seven bones.

Hyppiat. Name them severally.

Hyppos. All the bones which every horse hath whereby to make up an organall body, are these: *viz.* hee hath in his head, thirty nine, and forty teeth: the bones in his head doe comprehend the Crocks and Handles of the *scull*, albeit they be composed of parts and parcels of certain other bones, also the two flat Handles, which form the *Palate*; and the *Forke* or *Throat* hath five, the *chine* fifty two, the *breast* one, *ribbes* thirty fixe, the *fore-legges* and *fore feet* have forty foure, and the *hinder-legges* and *feet*, forty. So as the whole structure of the body of a horse whereby to perfect a full building of bones, consisteth of about 257. or 259. if they be rightly computed; which doe represent themselves altogether at what time the perfect *Anatomy* of the horse is laid open.

Hyppiat. What naturall composition hath the head of the horse?

Hyppos. He hath eyes to see, eares wherewith to heare, *nostrils* to smell or scent; a *mouth* and *tongue* to taste and eat, and wherewith to nourish him.

Hyppiat. What naturall composition hath the whole body of the horse in generall?

Hyppos. The whole body hath its heart, liver, lungs, spleene, stones, and *gignitors*: all which are called the noble parts, and that most justly: for when either the one or the other of any of these parts receive hurt, or damage, the poor beast is in perill of his life, except in the *gignitors*, according as I have declared.

Hyppos.

Of the bones

39
40

2
5
52
1
36
44
40
259

Hippiat. *What maladies or diseases are most usually incident to the horse?*

Hippof. Sundry diseases, as namely Auynes and Gripings, called in French, *Tranchaisons*, Foundrings, Farcins, Mainges, and very many more which severally to recite, would spend much time: Nevertheless I will handle briefly their natures, dividing them into two sorts, *viz.* Moyst, and Dry; the moyst doe proceed commonly from naughty *bloud*; the dry commeth of heat: as the Scab, Mainge, and such like diseases proceeding from moystnes; some againe are called Leaprofies, or the Elephantique mallady, by reason that Elephants are much troubled therewith; and every disease is known by its proper symptomes.

Hippiat. *What be the signes whereby to know the humid or moyst disease?*

Hippof. The humid or moyst malady is properly called the Glanders, which oft times proceeds from the *liver* and *lights*, when they be infected with putrefaction and rottenesse; or when they breed inflamed lumps, knots, or kernels under the *Chaule*, which all do come of cold taken by immoderate riding and labour, and want of care afterwards, which begetteth evill humours in the body, which when they shall begin to breake from the horse, by his running and purging at the *nose*, whereof other horses will have a desire to licke, and thereby they doe become infected.

Hippiat. *Many horses there be which doe runne at the nose, who have not the Glanders.*

Hippof. 'Tis very true, but this disease of the Glanders may be known by its knots, kernels, and pustils which arise under the *Jaw*. You may also know it by the colour of the corruption which the horse venteth: for, if that mattrative stuffe be green, and of a strong and offensive savour, or if it be white, and stinketh, as also viscous and slimy; then be you confident it is the Glanders, but if he shall cast forth corruption at his *nose*, which is white, and that by Bits and gob-bets, which doth not stinke or have any evill savour or smell, then it is not the Glanders, but some distemperature which commeth of a cold lately taken, which is easily cured, if it be not let runne too long, for there is great danger in delay.

Hippiat. *What be the arid or dry diseases?*

Hippof. They are an alteration of the body, which we doe commonly call Surfets and Purfivenesse, which is occasioned oft by riding of a horse beyond his strength or breath, especially presently after water, or by putting him to too much labour, or too violent running and straying, or by washing him when he is very hot.

Hippiat. *How commeth a horse to have the Tranchaisons or Gripings?*

Hippof. By suffering him to drink when he is too hot, or by overriding him; they also come of bad winde which ingenders in him, and not by suffering him to stale in his riding in convenient time, and of evill humours.

Hip.

Hippiat. *What signes have you of the scab or mainge?*

Hippof. We may with good reason say that this disease we call the scab, in ainge, or itch in a horse, proceedeth of too great abundance of ill blood, which when it is once inflamed by over-hard riding, causeth its leprosie to come forth upon the skin, which commeth to be an itch running over the whole body, beginning betwixt the flesh and the skin, insomuch as it will cause the haire to fall away, from whence ordinarily doth proceed a dry scurfe or scab, which is very contagious.

Hippiat. *How commeth the Farcin to the creature?*

Hippof. No way so soone as by a bad Stable, whither Swine and Poultry doe resort, for their doung is most pernicious: also by evill dressing, which may be a great cause, and by too much ranknesse of blood, and by some wound, hurt, or blow with a staffe, especially if the staffe have knags or knots upon it, sometimes by enter-firing, and hewing, and lastly by spur-galling.

Hippiat. *Which be the foure maladies which doe most appeare when a horse sheweth by his action that hee is in danger of death, by the said diseases?*

Hippof. That hapneth often by too much ventosity, or by eating too much raw meat, or to have drunk being very hot: it commeth also of the coldnesse of urine, or having ridden him too hard too long together, not giving him leave to pisse.

Hippoph. *I pray Hippocrates give me leave to demand of you, what you would doe in such a case, by your best endeavours, so save the life of the poor beast?*

Hippof. In a case of this nature, I would first take blood from him, if I found just cause for it, and then should I administer a laxative clyster, which should be both comforting, and yet operative, which is inferted in *lib. 2. chap. 6. § 8. clif. 2.* Or else I would give him a drink of good operation, which you shall finde in *lib. 2. chap. 7. § 8. clif. 6.* either of which, or both, are most soveraigne in this case. But if I shall finde, that the malice of the mallady doth not continue in the body, but falleth down into the foure legs, as usually it will do: then doe I use to open the veins in those places, and in the neck also, or in any other part I shall judge shall be most necessary, and of his blood I will make a restrictive charge, adding thereunto Wheate-meale, Bole, *Sanguis-Draconis*, Egges, the strongest white-wine Vineger, and such like, which I will more at large expresse in the place of Cures: this (I say) will I apply to all the foure legs, and over and against the kidneys, the breast, throat, feet, and the like places, then would I cup the bottome of the soles, I will also apply to the foure legges, Garters, which I will tye hard above the knees and hammes, and so govern my selfe in performing the Cure, according to the strength, vertue, and greatnesse of the horse, and as my judgement shall dictate unto me.

Hippiat. *By how many wayes may euill come to a horse?*

Hippof. Two wayes, viz. by nature and by accident against nature; as of those diseases which fall down into the legges and feet of the horse, from whence doe come Scratches, Splents, Squibs, Malenders, &c. with other kindes of humours and accidents, as well in the body of the creature, as in the members: and *saluo aliorum iudicio*; these things appeare unto me to comprehend in them the aforesaid accidents, which doe happen to the horse, even as soon by nature many times, as by accident or against nature.

Hippoph. Hippoclerus, I doe not well understand this point: you say that these things may happen as well by nature, as against nature, which are to my understanding a plaine contradiction. I pray explicate yet your selfe more fully.

Hippof. Those things which are against nature, I told you are by accident; but when I say that certain diseases may as well come unto him by nature as by accident; yea even in the selfe-same disease, my meaning is, that if the Stallion be troubled with the same disease at what time the Mare, who is the damme of this Colt is covered, I say that then the Colt himselfe shall be capable of the same malady. As if the Stallion or the Mare (parents to the same Colt) have for example a Spaven, I say that the Colt will naturally have a Spaven: and thus I have explicated my selfe, and assoyled your demand.

Hippiat. *But what call you accident, or against nature?*

Hippof. As thus, *verbi gratia*: if walking your horse in your hand in the fields, or else-where, and that he happen to be stricken with some cudgell, leaver, or heavy bastinado, or with some sword, hatchet, Bill, or other edge-toole, or that you should enforce him to doe more than what nature or strength were well able to compasse; or leading him upon plaine ground he might wrinch any member, or sway his back, or breake his leg, either by the stroke or stripe of some other horse, or otherwise accidentally, or should by misfortune fall downe some steepe precipice, whereby he may breake or dislocate some limb or member: all these disasters we usually doe call Accidental, and all such things of this nature.

Hippiat. *Which be the elements which doe give life and nutriment unto man, and all other living creatures?*

Hippof. They are foure in number, that is to say: Fire, Ayre, Water, and Earth; whose natures if you shall please, I will discusse elsewhere.

Hippiat. *No, I pray let us haue them both now and elsewhere: their natures, conditions, and qualities.*

Hippof. The nature of Fire is to be hot and dry; Ayre to be hot and moyst, Water to be cold and moyst; and Earth to be cold and dry.

Hippiat. *Doe you know the twelve Signes of the Zodiacke, and how they doe govern the body of man, and of all creatures?*

Hippof.

Hippof. Yes, I doe know them all perfectly; and thus are they called: *Aries, Taurus, Gemini, Cancer, Leo, Virgo, Libra, Scorpio, Sagittarius, Capricornus, Aquarius, Pisces*: These doe all governe the twelve Months of the yeare, and are placed above the *Zodiack*.

Hippiat. Doe you know the names of the Planets, and their numbers?

Hippof. That I doe very well, and they bee leven in number; to wit: *Saturne, Iupiter, Mars, Sol, Venus, Mercury, and Luna*.

Hippiat. What parts doe the twelve Signes before mentioned governe?

Hippof. *Aries* governeth the Head, *Taurus* the Neck, *Gemini* the Shoulders and Armes, *Cancer* the Stomack and Breast, *Leo* the Heart, *Virgo* the Belly and Guts, *Libra* the Reines and Buttocks, *Scorpio* the Privy parts, *Sagittarius* the Thighs, *Capricornus* the Knees, *Aquarius* the Legs, and *Pisces* the Feet.

Hippiat. In what daies is it best for a horse to be let blood?

Hippof. If there be no extraordinary cause, as in case of desperate sickness, or so; then *January* the third, and the fiftene. *February* the fourth, and ninth. *March* the seventene and eightene. *Aprill* the tenth, and sixtene. *May* the first thirteene. *June* fiftene and twenty. But for *July* and *August*, by reason that the *Canicular-daies* be then predominate, blood-letting, is not so good, but only in urgent case of necessity. In *September* the eleventh, and twenty eight, *October* the eight, and twenty three. *November* the fift, and sixtene, *December* the fourteene, and twenty six. And these daies doe wee hold to be the very best, unlesse dangerous or sudaine sickness doe cause us to alter the same, for in cases of necessity, no daies are to be regarded or observed: For

*Qui retinente vita, et non sit mortis imago:
Si semper fuerit vivens, morietur et infra.*

Hippiat. What medicine would you apply to a Horse, who may have any of the foure Maladyes?

Hippof. I would give him of the foure Cordiall waters, which I would make, of Buglas, Savin, Succary, Aquaviræ, Endive, and the like.

Hippiat. How would you make a comfortable drinke?

Hippof. I would make it of certaine Cordialls, to wit; of Sugar, Cinamon, Cloves, Nutmegs, Saffron, Licoris, Annyseeds; all these in fine powder, adding thereto white wine, and all these infused in a cleane earthen pot, and hereof would I make a drinke.

Hippiat. Whereof would you make an operative drinke?

Hippof. I would take white Wine, Sallet-oyle, Aloes, Rubarb, Agarick, Duke, or Duck-powder, Hony, Cordial powder; and of all these things would I put such a quantity as I should thinke re-

quisite, and according to the strength and corpulency of the Horse.

Hippiat. *Whereof would you make a laxative Clister?*

Hippof. Into a laxative Clister I will put either of Pellitory, Melote or Cammamile (but Pellitory is the best) and of this would I make a Decoction, and to this Decoction would I put Sallet Oyle, Hony, Aloes, and Verjuice of the Crab.

Hippiat. *What be the natures of your principall Drugs?*

Hippiat. Agarick purgeth the *Braine*, Allos the *Breast*, and body, Rubarb purgeth the *evill water*, and it openeth the *Liver*, and helpeth obstructions, and oppilations, Aristolochia-Rotunda mollifieth the *Breast*, *Liver*, and *Lungs*, and Bacchalaurei or Bay-berries, doe mortifie the peccant *Humours* which doe ingender in the *Breast*, or *Entrayles* nere about the *Heart*: and Saffron (if it be discretely given) doth marveyulously comfort and enlighten the *Heart*.

CHAP. II.

Of the causes of Sicknesse in generall: and the causes of Health, and long Life.

Hippiat.



Now that we have proceeded thus farre, in a discussion of the Office of the *Ferrier*; Let us approach yet nearer to intreate of the Cures, and that we may goe on *Pedetentim*, and *Gradatim*; Let us first discusse the causes of Maladies; and therefore I demand of you, *What are the true Causes of the sicknesse of the Horse?*

Hippof. Sir, that man which hath a desire to become an *Expert Ferrier*, must apply himselfe to understand the true nature of two things; *viz.* of *Generation* and of *Corruption*, in which I could never find the least discord in the Primary nature of Horses, albeit compounded of the contrary nature of the foure *Elements*. But I will proceed in Anatomizing unto you the verity hereof, more particularly, whereby you may the better understand my meaning.

Hippophyl. But friend *Hippoferus* in my judgement, you begin to assume too high a pitch for ordinary *Ferriers*, who are in a manner all or the greater number un-lettered persons; and therefore will never be able to understand what *Generation* and *Corruption* meaneth, for these are termes taken from the grounds of *Philosophy*; and therefore above their *Gewins* or *Sphere*.

Hippof. Sir, there be many things necessary to bee duly knowne, and as diligently to be observed in him, that desireth to be a perfect and able *Ferrier*, which whosoever shall be defective in, he may well bee

be an *Empyreticall-Horſ-Leach*, but ſkilfull *Ferrier* or *Marſhall* he ſhall never be. And for that you pleaſe to ſay, that I ſore too high, be-
 cauſe I began my diſcourſe with the termes of *Generation* and *Cor-
 ruption*: if you had not interrupted me; I ſhould have explicated my
 ſelfe ſo cleerely, as that a very reaſonable judgement might eaſily
 have apprehended me, for I hold it not a thing fitting to puffell mens
Braines, either with *Chimeras* which they are not able to underſtand,
 or with over-long, and tedious diſcourſes, of things meerly imper-
 tinent: but if you ſhall be pleaſed to heare me with patience, I will
 touch upon this ſubject, to wit: What are the cauſes of Sickneſſe in
 generall, as alſo of Health and long Life; and that *Laconica brevitare*,
 and ſo leave the reſt to your judgement, and practiſe: eſpecially
 conſidering what other Authours (my Maſters) have ſo learnedly,
 and no leſſe ſufficiently intreated in this very Art.

To begin therefore (and but to ſay, what I ſaid before) with the
 cauſes of ſickneſſe and death of Horſes in generall, in the true know-
 ledge whereof, conſiſteth their preſervation; I doe hold it a thing
 moſt needfull that we doe perfectly know that thing which wee doe
 cal *Generation* and *Corruption*, which all *Phyſicians* and *Philophers* have
 ſo much diſcuſſed both in their Schooles and Writings; and how
 the body of the Horſe (like alſo to that of Man) is compounded of
 the foure *Elements*, viz. *Fire*, *Aire*, *Water*, and *Earth*. The natures of
 theſe four *Elements* are different: for *Fire* is hot and dry, but it parti-
 cipates moſt of Heat. *Ayre* is hot and moyſt, but chiefly moyſt: *Water*
 is moyſt and cold, but moſt cold: *Earth* is cold and dry, but moſt dry.
Fire and *Ayre* are both light *Elements*; and *Water* and *Earth* both
 heavy. Four Humours alſo there are, which be as it were four Chil-
 dren to theſe four *Elements*: and theſe are; *Bloud*, *Phlegme*, *Choler* and
Melancholy. Theſe foure *Humours* are attendant upon the four former
Elements, without which a naturall body cannot be made: for *Bloud*
 naturally (if it be perfect) is hot and moyſt, but taketh moſt from
 heat, and therefore is ſubordinate to *Ayre*. *Phlegme* is cold and moyſt,
 but the principall quality thereof is coldneſſe, and therefore hath
 reference to *Water*. *Choler* is hot and dry, but his chiefeſt nature
 is heate, and therefore is governed by the Element of *Fire*.
Melancholy is cold and dry, but his chiefeſt condition is dryneſſe, and
 therefore ſubjects it ſelfe unto the element of earth. Now the foun-
 taine of the bloud is the Liver, which diſperſing it ſelfe by the helpe
 of the *veines* into all the parts of the body, nourisheth and preſerveth
 the ſame. Flgme preoccupateth the *braine*, being a cold and ſpongy
 ſubſtance, and the ſeat of the *ſenſible ſoule*. Choller inhabiteth the Li-
 ver, which being hot and dry, maketh a pleaſing harmony with the
 bloud. Melancholy reſideth in the ſpleene, which is the receptacle
 and diſcharge of the excrements of the Liver. From whence we may
 collect that it hath its proper uſe and end: as for demonſtration, Bloud
 principally nourisheth the body, Flgme occasioneth motion of the
 joynts,

Of the foure
 Elements,
 Fire, Ayre,
 Water, and
 Earth.

Of the foure
 Humours.
 Bloud,
 Phlegme,
 Choler, and
 Melancholy.

Hippiat. *By how many wayes may euill come to a horse?*

Hippof. Two wayes, viz. by nature and by accident against nature; as of those diseases which fall down into the legges and feet of the horse, from whence doe come Scratches, Splents, Squibs, Mal-fenders, &c. with other kindes of humours and accidents, as well in the body of the creature, as in the members: and *salvo aliorum iudicio*; these things appeare unto me to comprehend in them the aforesaid accidents, which doe happen to the horse, even as soon by nature many times, as by accident or against nature.

Hippoph. Hippoclerus, *I doe not well understand this point: you say that these things may happen as well by nature, as against nature, which are to my understanding a plaine contradiction. I pray explicate yet your selfe more fully.*

Hippof. Those things which are against nature, I told you are by by accident; but when I say that certain diseases may as well come unto him by nature as by accident; yea even in the selfe-same disease, my meaning is, that if the Stallion be troubled with the same disease at what time the Mare, who is the damme of this Colt is covered, I say that then the Colt himselfe shall be capable of the same malady. As if the Stallion or the Mare (parents to the same Colt) have for example a Spaven, I say that the Colt will naturally have a Spaven: and thus I have explicated my selfe, and assoyled your demand.

Hippiat. *But what call you accident, or against nature?*

Hippof. As thus, *verbi gratia*: if walking your horse in your hand in the fields, or else-where, and that he happen to be stricken with some cudgell, leaver, or heavy bastinado, or with some sword, hatchet, Bill, or other edge-toole, or that you should enforce him to doe more than what nature or strength were well able to compasse; or leading him upon plaine ground he might wrinch any member, or sway his back, or breake his leg, either by the stroke or stripe of some other horse, or otherwise accidentally, or should by misfortune fall downe some steepe precipice, whereby he may breake or dislocate some limb or member: all these disasters we usually doe call Accidentall, and all such things of this nature.

Hippiat. *Which be the elements which doe give life and nutriment unto man, and all other living creatures?*

Hippof. They are foure in number, that is to say: *Fire, Ayre, Water, and Earth*; whose natures if you shall please, I will discusse else-where.

Hippiat. *No, I pray let us have them both now and elsewhere: their natures, conditions, and qualities.*

Hippof. The nature of *Fire* is to be hot and dry; *Ayre* to be hot and moyst, *Water* to be cold and moyst; and *Earth* to be cold and dry.

Hippiat. *Doe you know the twelve Signes of the Zodiacke, and how they doe govern the body of man, and of all creatures?*

Hippof.

Hippof. Yes, I doe know them all perfectly; and thus are they called: *Aries, Taurus, Gemini, Cancer, Leo, Virgo, Libra, Scorpio, Sagittarius, Capricornus, Aquarius, Pisces*: These doe all governe the twelve Months of the yeare, and are placed above the *Zodiack*.

Hippiat. Doe you know the names of the Planets, and their numbers?

Hippof. That I doe very well, and they bee leven in number; to wit: *Saturne, Iupiter, Mars, Sol, Venus, Mercury, and Luna*.

Hippiat. What parts doe the twelve Signes before mentioned governe?

Hippof. *Aries* governeth the Head, *Taurus* the Neck, *Gemini* the Shoulders and Armes, *Cancer* the Stomack and Breast, *Leo* the Heart, *Virgo* the Belly and Guts, *Libra* the Reines and Buttocks, *Scorpio* the Privy parts, *Sagittarius* the Thighs, *Capricornus* the Knees, *Aquarius* the Legs, and *Pisces* the Feete.

Hippiat. In what daies is it best for a horse to be let blood?

Hippof. If there be no extraordinary cause, as in case of desperate sickness, or so; then *January* the third, and the fiftene. *February* the fourth, and ninth. *March* the seventene and eightene. *Aprill* the tenth, and sixtene. *May* the first thirteene. *June* fiftene and twenty. But for *July* and *August*, by reason that the *Canicular-daies* be then predominate, blood-letting, is not so good, but only in urgent case of necessity. In *September* the eleventh, and twenty eight, *October* the eight, and twenty three. *November* the fift, and sixtene, *December* the fourteene, and twenty six. And these daies doe wee hold to be the very best, unlesse dangerous or sudaine sickness doe cause us to alter the same, for in cases of necessity, no daies are to be regarded or observed: For

*Qui retinente vita, et non sit mortis imago:
Si semper fuerit vivens, morietur et infra.*

Hippiat. What medicine would you apply to a Horse, who may have any of the foure Maladies?

Hippof. I would give him of the foure Cordiall waters, which I would make, of Buglas, Savin, Succary, Aquavita, Endive, and the like.

Hippiat. How would you make a comfortable drinke?

Hippof. I would make it of certaine Cordialls, to wit; of Sugar, Cinamon, Cloves, Nutmegs, Saffron, Licoris, Annyseeds; all these in fine powder, adding thereto white wine, and all these infused in a cleane earthen pot, and hereof would I make a drinke.

Hippiat. Whereof would you make an operative drinke?

Hippof. I would take white Wine, Sallet-oyle, Aloes, Rubarb, Agarick, Duke, or Duck-powder, Hony, Cordial powder; and of all these things would I put such a quantity as I should thinke re-

quisite, and according to the strength and corpulency of the Horse.

Hippiat. *Whereof would you make a laxative Clister?*

Hippof. Into a laxative Clister I will put either of Pellitory, Melote or Cammamile (but Pellitory is the best) and of this would I make a Decoction, and to this Decoction would I put Sallet Oyle, Hony, Aloes, and Verjuice of the Crab.

Hippiat. *What be the natures of your principall Drugs?*

Hippiat. Agarick purgeth the *Braine*, Allos the *Breast*, and body, Rubarb purgeth the *evill water*, and it openeth the *Liver*, and helpeth obstructions, and oppilations, Aristolochia-Rotunda mollifieth the *Breast*, *Liver*, and *Lungs*, and Bacchalaurei or Bay-berries, doe mortifie the peccant *Humours* which doe ingender in the *Breast*, or *Entayles* nere about the *Heart*: and Saffron (if it be discreetly given) doth marveyulously comfort and enlighten the *Heart*.

CHAP. II.

Of the causes of Sicknesse in generall: and the causes of Health, and long Life.

Hippiat.



OW that we have proceeded thus farre, in a discussion of the Office of the *Ferrier*; Let us approach yet nearer to intreate of the Cures, and that we may goe on *Pedetentim*, and *Gradatim*; Let us first discusse the causes of Maladies; and therefore I demand of you, *What are the true Causes of the sicknesse of the Horse?*

Hippof. Sir, that man which hath a desire to become an *Expert Ferrier*, must apply himselfe to understand the true nature of two things; *viz.* of *Generation* and of *Corruption*, in which I could never find the least discord in the Primary nature of Horses, albeit compounded of the contrary nature of the foure *Elements*. But I will proceed in Anatomizing unto you the verity hereof, more particularly, whereby you may the better understand my meaning.

Hippophyl. But friend *Hippofserius* in my judgement, you begin to assume too high a pitch for ordinary *Ferriers*, who are in a manner all or the greater number un-lettered persons; and therefore will never be able to understand what *Generation* and *Corruption* meaneth, for these are termes taken from the grounds of *Philosophy*; and therefore above their *Geminus* or *Sphere*.

Hippof. Sir, there be many things necessary to bee duly knowne, and as diligently to be observed in him, that desireth to be a perfect and able *Ferrier*, which whosoever shall be defective in, he may well bee

be an *Empyreticall-Horſ-Leach*, but ſkilfull *Ferrier* or *Marſhall* he ſhall never be. And for that you pleaſe to ſay, that I ſore too high, be-
 cauſe I began my diſcourſe with the termes of *Generation* and *Cor-
 ruption*: if you had not interrupted me; I ſhould have explicated my
 ſelfe ſo cleerely, as that a very reaſonable judgement might eaſily
 have apprehended me, for I hold it not a thing fitting to puffe ſtill mens
Praifes, either with *Chimeras* which they are not able to underſtand,
 or with over-long, and tedious diſcourſes, of things meerly imper-
 tinent: but if you ſhall be pleaſed to heare me with patience, I will
 touch upon this ſubject, to wit: What are the cauſes of Sickneſſe in
 generall, as alſo of Health and long Life; and that *Laconica brevisate*,
 and ſo leave the reſt to your judgement, and praſtiſe: eſpecially
 conſidering what other Authours (my Maſters) have ſo learnedly,
 and no leſſe ſufficiently intreated in this very Art.

To begin therefore (and but to ſay, what I ſaid before) with the
 cauſes of ſickneſſe and death of Horſes in generall, in the true know-
 ledge whereof, conſiſteth their preſervation; I doe hold it a thing
 moſt needfull that we doe perfectly know that thing which wee doe
 cal *Generation* and *Corruption*, which all *Phyſitians* and *Philophers* have
 ſo much diſcuſſed both in their Schooles and Writings; and how
 the body of the Horſe (like alſo to that of Man) is compounded of
 the foure *Elements*, viz. *Fire*, *Aire*, *Water*, and *Earth*. The natures of
 theſe four *Elements* are different: for *Fire* is hot and dry, but it parti-
 cipates moſt of Heat. *Ayre* is hot and moyſt, but chiefly moyſt: *Water*
 is moyſt and cold, but moſt cold: *Earth* is cold and dry, but moſt dry.
Fire and *Ayre* are both light *Elements*; and *Water* and *Earth* both
 heavy. Four Humours alſo there are, which be as it were four Chil-
 dren to theſe four Elements: and theſe are; *Bloud*, *Phlegme*, *Choler* and
Melanckoly. Theſe foure *Humours* are attendant upon the four former
Elements, without which a naturall body cannot be made: for *Bloud*
 naturally (if it be perfect) is hot and moyſt, but taketh moſt from
 heat, and therefore is ſubordinate to *Ayre*. *Phlegme* is cold and moyſt,
 but the principall quality thereof is coldneſſe, and therefore hath
 reference to *Water*. *Choler* is hot and dry, but his chiefeſt nature
 is heate, and therefore is governed by the Element of *Fire*.
Melanckoly is cold and dry, but his chiefeſt condition is dryneſſe, and
 therefore ſubjects it ſelfe unto the element of earth. Now the foun-
 taine of the bloud is the Liver, which diſperſing it ſelfe by the helpe
 of the *veines* into all the parts of the body, nourisheth and preſerveth
 the ſame. Flgme preoccupateth the *braine*, being a cold and ſpungy
 ſubſtance, and the ſeat of the *ſenſible ſoule*. Choller inhabiteth the Li-
 ver, which being hot and dry, maketh a pleaſing harmony with the
 bloud. Melanckoly reſideth in the ſpleene, which is the receptacle
 and diſcharge of the excrements of the Liver. From whence we may
 collect that it hath its proper uſe and end: as for demonſtration, Bloud
 principally nourisheth the body, Flegme occaſioneth motion of the
 joynts,

Of the foure
 Elements,
 Fire, Ayre,
 Water, and
 Earth.

Of the foure
 Humours.
 Bloud,
 Phlegme,
 Choler, and
 Melanckoly.

The instrumentall
members.
The braine,
the heart, the
liver, and
the stones or
gignitors.

The foure
naturall fa-
culties.
To eate, to
retaine, to
concoct, and
to expell.

joynts and members, Choler exciteth and provoketh the *body* to avoyd it's excrements: and lastly, Melancholy disposeth the body to an appetite. Whereupon all the learned Philosophers doe with one unanimous assent agree in this, that in every *naturall body* there are foure principall instrumentall members, from which all the parts of an *organicall body* is said to be framed, and these are the *braine*, the *heart*, the *liver*, and the *stones* or *gignitors*; and each one of these doe performe its true function to all the particular members of the *body*: for the *sinewes* doe receive their sustentation from the *braine*, and these are called *animall spirits*; the *arteries* from the *heart*, which are *vitall spirits*, the *veines* from the *liver*, which are *naturall parts*; and the *seed-vessels* from the *stones* or *gignitors*, as the place of *generation*.

Now forasmuch as I have shewed you the foure elements with their true natures, the foure humours with their qualities, and the foure instrumentall members with their true conditions: It now remaineth that we intreat briefly of the foure *naturall faculties*, which is in every *body*, together with their true attributes: The first *faculty* is to *eate*, the second to *retaine*, the third to *concoct*, and the fourth to *expell*. And to answer to these foure faculties, you must understand that there are residing in the body, the afore-named *humours*, that is to say, *Bloud*, *Flegme*, *Choler*, and *Melancholy*, whereof *nature* maketh use of the service of but one of these onely to work upon, which is an *excrement* which we doe justly call *whey*, or *wheyish-bloud*, whose engendring is wrought in the *liver*, and so conveieith it selfe into the *veines*, at what time the foure humours doe take from the *body* that forme and substance it ought to assume: and of this very *liquor* doth *nature* serve it selfe, to resolve the *meat*, and so to operate that the same may passe through the straight *caves*, *conducts*, *pores*, and *passages*, carrying nourishment to all the parts of the *body*. You must therefore understand that the *veines* are the receptacles for the *bloud*, which is mixed with the *vitall spirits*, so as the said *veines* have their source or origin from the *liver*, whereby their office is to exhaust from the *liver* unto the *veines* the said *wheyish* substance and to inject part thereof through the passages into the *bladder*, and from thence againe forth of the *body*: by which meanes the *body* is freed from offence, and from sustaining damage: whereof two of the *veines* conduct part of the said *whey* from the *liver* unto the *coddes*, and so to the *seed-vessels*, where it remaineth with some small quantity of the purest *bloud*, by which meanes, the operation of the *stones* (whose quality are hot and dry) doe thereby effect a most perfect *seed*. Which two *veines*, *nature* (who is the most exquisite Artist, and *Quæ nihil habet vitii*) hath planted one in the *veines* on the right side, which endeth in the right *cod*, and another semblable in the left; both which take their issue from either of the *coddes* accordingly; besides, *nature* hath bestowed upon the right *cod* much heat and drynesse, so hath she also given unto the left, as great a quantity of cold and moysture, the right *cod* by meanes of its heat

heate engendering the male, and the left by reason of its cold engendering the female, and so likewise is it as well of the female as of the male of every creature. But now to come to the *heart* which is formed with the *liver* and *braine*, and maintained with the purest *blood*, which is so excessively hot, as whilst the creature liveth, if you put but your finger into its hollow part, it is impossible to continue it there long without burning or scalding the same, from whence it must necessarily ensue, that the *liver* being the fountaine of all the *blood*, must of necessity have great and abundance of pure *blood*, wherewith to support and maintaine the structure of the whole *body* and the *vital spirit* of any creature is none other thing than a *corporeall fume* or *vapour*, (to speake properly) very pure and subtile; begun in the *heart* by the operation of the naturall heat, spread by the *arteries* and *veines*, to refresh and comfort the whole *body*; which agitative or *subtile Spirit* proceeding from the *heart*, and *vital spirits*, being a continuall motion, by reason that motion and agitation is the true life thereof, which continually remaineth in all living creatures. But the *heart* which may be truly and rightly stiled the *fountaine of life* and *heat*, nature hath assigned it its proper plate, which is to be situate in the center, that is the middle part of the *body*: from whence proceedeth life and heat into each organ of the *body*, by which meanes they are preserved and enabled to perform their naturall and proper function. And as touching the *cods*, if the *liver* be not well stored, may full of pure and perfect *blood*, neither is the creature able to concoct and digest its meat, nor can the *cods* be hot: so as if there be in those parts a defect of heat, the *feed* of the beast cannot be perfectly concocted, by which meanes the Horse becommeth frigid and impotent, and without any power at all of *Procreation*. And this is as much as need be said of this subject: wherein if I have any way erred, or not delivered my self so cleerly whereby to be understood as I desire, the blame must light upon the great desire I promised to brevity: howsoever I have endeavoured what in me lyeth, to dilate and explicate my self at full.

Now will I begin to shew to you what meanes we have to preserve horses from all inward diseales; which consisteth of four wayes, *viz.* by *Purging*, *Sweating*, *Flebotomy*, or *Bloud-letting*, and *Vomit*. As touching the first, which is *Purging*, it is twofold, to wit, outward and inward. This *outward purging* is by cleansing the outward parts, which must be done immediately at what time you take up your horse from grasse, which would be about Saint *Bartholomewes* day, for then the heart of grasse doth begin to decline, and therefore after that day, the grasse he then feedeth upon, breedeth no good, but bad and corrupt blood, and so consequently sundry sorts of *maladies* and infirmities in his *body*; besides theyre beginneth then to grow sharpe, which is also very dangerous, yea and most contagious for him; and if you suffer him to runne after that time, his haire will grow long and rough, so as he will not have for that *winter* any

*Cleansing
and purging.
Of outward
Purging.*

any flicke or glittering coat. Of this outward *cleansing* or *purging* your horse, you shall finde taught you in *lib. 2. cap. 6. § 6.* and the manner how and when it would be done, *viz.* in a warme day in the Sunne, at what time every part and member of him would be soped, washed, dryed, and cleansed from all manner of *sweat, scurfe, dust, dirt, and filth*, yea and that all his whole *body* over, especially his Maine, Tayle, and Cods, who being thus cleansed and made dry again, and his yard drawne, cleansed, and annointed with tryed hogs grease, let his eares, his Maine (just so farre as the top of the head-stall will cover, and no more) and under the Chaule, be handsomely trimmed, then pull away by the roots all the smelling haire about and under his mouth and nose, and the long *stubborn hayres* under and about his *eyes*: which done, cut away about a handfull of the lower part of his tayle even and decently; then cause the Ferrier to shooe him up, but let him be carefull to pare him neatly, and to open the Heeles and Frush. Then cloath him up warme, and stopped with small wispes; this done, annoint all his hoofe, with the oyntment (having first washed them cleane, and made them dry againe) prescribed you in *lib. 2. cap. 11. § 9.* Then let his feet be picked cleane, and stoppe him with Oxedoung.

*Cleansing
and purging
inwardly.*

Now as touching his *inward purging*, this ought to be done evermore before you put him to any labour or exercise: and first let him be raked, by causing some one who hath a small hand and arme, to annoynt them first with a little sweet Butter, or Oyle de Bay, but some doe use Sope, which I doe hold too sharp, and so putting his hand into his *fundament*, let him bring forth all his doung, and while he is in so doing, let him try to feele for Bots or wormes, which may sticke fast unto the great *Gut*, and the place where the doung lyeth; which if he finde, let him pluck them away gently, and by degrees, and so bring them all out: this done, give him the Clister mentioned in *lib. 2. cap. 6. § 8. Clift. &c. 4.* and so soone as the horse hath received it Clister-wise, then presently clap his tayle close to his Tewel, and so cause him to keep it so long as you can; and this would be done, three or foure dayes before the Full or Change of the Moone. The next day after, give him his first drink, inserted *lib. 2. cap. 16. § 14. purg. 4.* the next day following, give him his second drink, shewed you in *liq. 2. cap. 16. § 14. Purg. 5.* and so follow such directions shewed you in those Rules.

*Drinke 1.
Drinke 2.*

Let blond.

Sweat.

Vomit.

The next day following you have thus given him his two drinks, let him *bloud*: if you shall finde the *bloud* to be very bad, take the more from him, if reasonable good, take the lesse, but if very good, then draw your cord, and so do but give the *veyne* vent, and no more, then afterwards keep him with warm Mashcs, as is taught you else-where. The next day after *bloud letting*, *sweat* him like as is prescribed you in *lib. 2. cap. 18. § 28. S.* And if you doe discover any cold in him by any symptoms, then give him the vomit prescribed you in *lib. 2. cap.*

cap. 20. § 1. V. And to prevent any Obstructions in the *liver* or *lungs*, or his *heart* any way oppressed, or otherwise to preserve the *blood* pure and from corrupting; all which inconveniencies may be a ready meanes to bring your horse to his end; give him in his Provender, such powders and other Simples which you shall find in sundry places of this Treatise: for this will refine his blood, and preserve his *liver* from infection, and keep him in perfect health.

Powders to be put into his provender.

Thus far Sir, I have declared unto you what I understand of the Cause of Sicknesse in generall. It remaineth now for me to inculcate what are the causes of health and long life, which to be brieve are twelve in number: *viz* The first is Nature, good digestion, and good Nutriment: the second is moderation in feeding and dyet: the third is, moderate labour: the fourth is, moderate use of sleeping and waking: the fifth is, moderate spending upon Mares: the sixth is, moderate journeyes: the seventh is, wholesome ayre: the eighth is, not to be exercised too soone after grasse: the ninth is, to be kept from raw and greene meats: the tenth is, not to be suffered to eat or drinke being hot: the eleventh is, not to be either washed or walked at the end of his dayes journeyes: the twelfth is to give him with his Provender, such powders and simples, as are prescribed you in all those Chapters which are by me mentioned.

12. Causes of health & long life.

Hippiat. *You have spoken well Hippocrates, but I would have you shew me, how long life is acquired by these causes, which as yet you have not done, for you have but onely delivered them in generall heads and termes: Wherefore I would gladly know what you can say of them in particular.*

Hyppos. I will Sir: These twelve causes of long life doe come to a hore either inwardly or outwardly, which howsoever they must be holpen either by Art, by Industry, or else by judgement and discretion.

Wherefore you must know that whatsoever is naturall must necessarily proceed from good temperature, and proportionate mixture of the foure qualities of the body: so as the just and adequate proportions of temperate mixture, are the true causes of long life, by reason that all mixtures of superfluities are against these three things, *viz*. Nature, good digestion, and sound Nutriment. For heat and nutriment are then well proportioned, when neither the moisture with its too great quantity is predominant, whereby it devoureth the heat; nor when over-much heat too suddenly consumeth and destroyeth the moysture; howbeit there must be a necessity that the heat must have a kinde of regality and dominion over the moisture, otherwise it will never be able to nourish the body as it ought.

1 What things do hinder nature, digestion and nutriment.

The second cause of long life, is the moderation of their naturall appetite of *eating*, it being availeable either in excesse to kill and destroy, or in moderation to save: whereby the horse shall daily repaire the decay of his humidity, by supply of moderate nourishment, and never over-whelme or suppress his heat with too great abundance

2 Moderation in eating.

H

of

of moisture, nor mixe his *Humidum Radicale* with too much superfluous impurities, for extreames are evermore perilous and ill, as well in excesse as in defect: For as too much eating (bee the meate never so good and wholesome) hindreth good digestion, and ingendreth Crudities, together with an evill habit of the Stomack; so likewise too spare a diet doth as much weaken and decay nature, by reason that the heat which, thereby will arise in the stomacke, will first over-charge, and afterward conquer the Radicall moysture; both which are friends to sicknesse and death.

³
Moderate
labour

The third cause of long life is moderate labour, a matter very much effectuall to digestion, and therefore to long life, dilating and spreading nutriment into every member of the body: for over-much rest, breedeth in the body superabundance of bad humours, which cooleth the body: for want of which moderate exercise, it is as it were cast into a sleep, and in a manner through lumpishnesse besotted and benumbed: from whence doth spring another mischief equivalent to the former, to wit: a collection of excrementall superfluities, occasioned through lazinesse and idlenesse, by reason that the horse for want of moderate Exercise, is not able to digest his received nutriment: by which meanes many maladies are ingendred in his body, proceeding from corruption in the blood, crudities in the stomack, and the like, because he hath in his body (as a man may properly say) a very sink or standing-pool of unnaturall humours. And therefore I give all men this caveat, *viz.* to be very carefull they do not put their horses to over-much labour and travell, untill such time as they have well digested their meat, for that by their immoderate exercise, they over-clog their stomack, and so they cannot have a true concoction, their stomacks being full, and their bodies cloyed and over-much stuffed with raw and cruded humours, which through violent exercise are dispersed, first, into all the Veins (corrupting the blood) and from thence into all the parts of the body, which ingendreth so many noysome infirmities within the bodie, and so many lothsome sores without the body, as will not easily be cured: and therefore it doth greatly behove a man, that his horse (if hee love him, and desire to keep him long) his exercise be neither too intemperate, nor too little, but ordered with judgment and discretion.

⁴
Moderate
sleepe.

The fourth cause of long life is moderate use of sleeping & waking, for these are the mayntenance of health and long life, if they be had with moderation, and both are very noxious otherwise beyond measure. For inordinate watching is a mayn enemy to health, for it wasteth and consumeth the vitall spirits, and it decayeth the *Humidum Radicale*, causeth maceration and sterility, it is an impediment to the operation of the *Brain* and sense, it begetteth siccitie in the *Brain*, and aridity in the *Marrow*, and worketh the like evill effects in the *Liver* and *Lungs*. On the other side, immoderate sleepe hindreth health, quencheth the natural heat, and consumeth the moysture in the *Body*:

for

for sleep is but a vapour ascending from the Stomacke to the Braine, which stupifieth the Brain for a season, and during that time it maketh the body senselesse; and the sooner it being provoked by over-much feeding, stuffing, and filling of the belly; and therefore it greatly standeth a man upon that he hath a vigilant care to his horse his sleep, that it be moderately taken, for as I laid out now, as too much sleep is noxious, so also too little is as prejudiciall.

What manner of things sleep is.

The fifth cause of health, and health and long life is that great care be had in keeping your horse from excesse in spending himself upon Mares for that is Death's Harbinger, by reason it doth after a most violent manner, consume the spirits, debilitateth the *stomack*, dryeth up the *brain* and *Marrow*; and therefore the reason why a Gelding (if he be kept free from furtets) is longer lived than the Stoned-horse: so likewise the reason why a Mule, being a mixed creature, (howbeit a Monster in nature) is longer lived than either of them; for that his justing (howsoever without fruit) in that kind is but once only in the whole course of his life: and therefore I could wish, that one Horse be not suffered to cover above three Mares at the most through out the whole ycer, and that from the yeers of his comming to sixe, untill he hath attained twelve, and no longer; for when a horse hath once seene twelve yeers of his age, nature will then begin to decay, wherby he shall not be able to beget Colts which can prove so good and serviceable, as those hee begat in his yong yeeres. For besides (hard and toylsome labour,) this act of coity with Mares, doth more weaken and dull him; for you cannot be ignorant of the old Proverb, which saith; *Omne animal post coitum triste.*

5 Moderation in spending upon Mares.

The sixt cause of long life is, moderate riding in long journies, for by intemperate driving his heat from the inward into the outward parts of the body, is the cause that the fire of *choler* will be enkindled, which will be so vehement as that it must needs prove an infinite horror unto nature, so inflaming the *bloud*, that if the Horse at the same instant be not very empty and clean in his *body* the *bloud* and *humours* being mixed together, will be through the violence thereof, dispersed into all and every part and member of the *body*, and then a sudden cold taken upon it (which rarely faileth) doth instantly putrifie and corrupt the *bloud*, and congealeth it to the unavoydable perill of the life of the Horse: especially if after this intemperate riding, he be either suffered to drinke, or ridden into the water, as many of your surly and lazy *Grooms* are accustomed to do. My counsell therefore is, that when you have any long journey in hand, let his travell be moderate, inhibit walking, washing or giving him cold water; but so soon as you shall dismount him, let his *Keeper* have him into the Stable well littered, and throughly rubbed through all the parts of his body till hee be thorow dry, let him be clothed and stopped up warm, and at a reasonable time, let him have white water.

6 Moderate journeying.

The seventh cause of health and long life, is; wholsome ayre and

7 Wholsome ayre.

foyle, clean keeping, painfull and good dressing, the Stable kept neat, sweet, and warm; his food old, sweet, clean, and dry, well sifted and shaken, and freed from dust and filth; his litter sweet and dry, and all wet and old litter removed from under his feet and manger, and let all evill favours be removed from about the Stable.

8
Not to tra-
vell too soone
after grasse.

The eight cause of health and long life is, not to suffer your Horse to be travelled or exercised too soon after you have taken him from grasse, untill such time as he be thorowly purged and cleansed from his superfluous and bad humours, which hee gat by being at grasse in time of his rest, and full feeding, which certainly are not a few; but hereof I have sufficiently spoken before in this very Chapter, and therefore I passe it over.

9
Not to eat
raw or green
meate.

The ninth cause of health and long life is not to suffer him to eat any raw or green meate whilst he shall be kept in the Stable, for that such diet doth beget many bad and humours oppugnant to nature; as Feavers, Surfets, Yellowes, Stavers, Anticors, Morfounding, and the like; all which will debilitate Nature, and endanger the breeding of many desperate diseases, to the perill as well of the Horses life, as health, if extraordinary care be not had (by way of prevention) in very good time, by the diligence of an *Expert Ferrier*.

10
Not to eat
whilst he is
hot.

The tenth cause of health and long life is, by keeping your Horse from meate and drinke whilst hee is hot, for that doth weaken the heart and spirits; it is an enemy to the Appetite, and digestion, engendreth Oppilations, and Obstructions, corrupteth and putrifieth the bloud, breedeth Feavers, and many other maladies, and is very often the occasion of suddaine death.

11
Not to be
walked or
washed.

The eleventh cause of health and long life is, to bee very precise that you doe not permit your Horse to be walked or washed after labour, or travell, if in his travell he hath been heat, but presently after you dismount him, let him be led into the Stable, well littered, warm clothed, painefully rubbed and dried; but hereof I have spoken sufficiently in the sixt cause, and else where.

12
To mix cer-
tain powders
with his pro-
vender:

The twelfth and last cause of health and long life is, to use some- times to put and mix with his provender, certaine powders, viz. the powder of Anniseeds and of Licoris, or of Fenugrick, Tumerick, Bay-berries or Brimstone, white-Lilly roots small chopped, Enula-campane roots, if green and newly gathered, otherwise dried and beaten to fine powder, or the roots of *Polipodium* of the Oke or its powder, Savin, Marsh-Mallowes, Rue, Isoppe, Hore-hound, or Colts-foote: these either small chopped if you give them green, or else dried and given in powder, which Simples will keepe him sound and in perfect health, for their vertues are to purifie the *bloud*, prevent Obstructions, open and resolve the *Liver*, coole the *Bloud*, and perserve the whole structure of the *Body* in excellent health.

Thus have I (as succinctly as I have beene able) declared the rea- sons of sicknesse in general together with the true causes of health & long

long life, the contrarieties whereof will engender in your Horse, infirmities and death : for the sensitive Bodies as well of all other creatures as of Horses, are often (upon the least cause given) disgusted & brought out of ioynt and temper, by reason of the assidual warfare of the never-ceasing-iarring Elements, that it not a little importeth a Masters care to looke very narrowly into the state of his body. For put case that time and experience doe approve the contrariety of the before named inherent qualities of Heat, Cold, Drynes, and Moisture, the formall causes of all intrinsecall diseases, the continuance and unperceivable lingring in them, together with the true cause of their suddaine and untimely death : Yet is there meanes as easily to be found, as well for the prevention of all ensuing sicknesse (if we will but apply our care and diligence) before it approacheth, as for the able curing of them when they are come, and palpably perceived; according to the opinion of famous *Galen*, who saith: He that preventeth the cause of sicknesse, preventeth the sicknesse it selfe : for, Take away the cause, and the effect followeth not.

Hippoph. You have spoken well *Hippocrates* upon this subject ; but yet your last Article is not without difficulty, in that you do advise to administer certaine powders, and other simples unto a horse in his provender, which should conserve him in health, and prevent all inward diseases in him. I cannot certainly but approve very much hereof, in that they be most soveraigne in such cases you speake of, but the manner of administering them, is the thing I much stand upon, knowing right well that these simples (or the greater part of them) are of strong and offensive scents and smells, and others are as farre disgustfull and unpleasent to his taste, whereby he may very easily be induced by disliking those powders and simples, to loath and utterly forsake his provender.

Hyppos. Sir, you object well, neverthelesse give me leave to tell you, that in cases of this nature, Vle (we say) makes perfectnesse: True it is, that horses will have an aversion from these kinde of drugs and simples, but what then? have you no feare, for rather than he will not eate his Provender at all, hunger will in time bring him to it, yea as well those powders, as his provender: provided you doe not offend him by putting in too great a quantity at once, but by degrees, and that by a little at a time, till custome hath made him perfect; and most certaine it is, that some horses are so coy, dainty, and choice feeders, as that you can hardly provoke them to eate any provender at all; whereas others there be who are so great feeders, as that they will make no bones to devoure what meat soever you shall lay before them; for it is very homely viands, which a good stomacke will refuse: neverthelesse if you shal finde that your horse cannot be brought to take these things with his provender, you may then sometimes administer of these powders and other simples, with good Ale or Beer, giving it him as you give drinks, and it will suffice: howbeit it will
doe

Liver to
preserve.

doe him more good to be given in his provender.

Hippiat. *What is the best thing to be given to a horse to preserve the liver from infecting, and to refine the blood?*

Hyppos. I have knowne many things administred in this case, but the very best is, to take the root of *Polipodium* of the Oke, to wash it, and to make it very cleane; then cut or chop it very small, then take Liver-wort, one handfull, small chopped also, and so much Rubarb as the weight of a tester, either cut very small, or grated: give him this in his provender three or four mornings together fasting, and give him no meat in three houres after, and let his drinke be white water for that day, and give him this monethly, and once in halfe a yeare: make tryall of his *blood* to see how pure or foule it is, and administer accordingly.

Hippoph. *I pray you Hippocrates, what is the true nature of Rubarb? whether is it purgative or binding?*

Hyppos. Truly Sir, Rubarb hath two contrary natures: for if you either scrape, grate, or cut it, then is it a loosener; for it dissolveth and openeth the *liver*, and expelleth the obstructions thereof; it expulseth all bad humours in and about the *heart*, *liver*, and *spleene*; it clenseth the *body*, and sendeth away the peccant humours among the excrements, and all such things as may annoy or offend the *intestines*: but if you shall pound or beat Rubarb in a Morter, or otherwise, the spirit thereof being a subtile *body*, will *Transfire* and fly away, whereby the operation thereof will be to bind, and be no way profitable.

Hippoph. Let this suffice for the present, I have detained you too long from your particular affaires; it now growes late, and therefore I will take leave till our next meeting, which (God willing) shall be to morrow at the same houre, at what time I shall not faile you; for that I desire a finall end of this businesse: wherefore for this present I will take leave, recommending you both to God.

Chap.

CHAP. III.

Of such things which are of necessity to be knowne by every expert Ferrier, before he doth adventure to administer.

Hippophyl.



hitherto *Hippiatrus* we have proceeded orderly, and your servant *Hippoferus* hath discoursed very accurately & pithily: Neverthelesse some things there be which yet he hath not put home enough, whereby I have not received that full satisfaction I desire.

Hippiat. Sir, Sithence we are met here againe to discusse such things wherof you desire to informe your selfe; my will is to have you fully and substantially satisfied (if it may be) in every point which might concerne this our subject; wherfore I entreat you to propose your doubts, and looke in what *Hippoferus* may faile, my selfe shall endeavour to supply to the utmost of our best skill.

Hippophyl. Sir, I thanke you, but withall one favour I must begge of you, and that is, that for that my memory may peradventure faile me (it being none of the best) if as things occurre to my thoughts, I should aske any question out of season and order, yet you will not take it ill that I should interrupt him or you in your discourses.

Hippiat. No truly, Sir, will I not, and therefore begin to make your demand, and *Hippoferus* shall give you answer.

Hippophyl. I thank you, then thus: As touching the composition of the *body* of the horse, more I grant might have been spoken in words, but not more to purpose; for a man to runne into divisions and subdivisions, were but to beget confusion in the unlearned Reader (such are your ordinary Smiths for the most part, for whose instruction I doe principally undergoe these paines) and to send him away worse satisfied in his judgement, than before. Whereas a plaine and succinct methode doth more edifie and instruct him than the other can doe. I therefore demand of yon *Hippoferus*, that forasmuch as you have spoken well of the foure Elements; to wit, Fire, Ayre, Water, and Earth, yet have you not demonstrated their natures, or where they are placed. For true it is, my selfe and all men do perfectly know, that these foure elements are not these foure materiall and visible elements which we daily behold and make use of, as things most usefull for us towards the sustentation of our livelihood: being creatures, without which we cannot live: but I would gladly have you shew what their true natures be, being things incorporate, and therefore concealed
from

The nature
of the 4. E-
lements.

1
Fire.

2
Ayre.

3
Water.

4
Earth.

from our eyes: I would also know in what parts they doe raign, and have their identity or being.

Hippof. Sir, as touching the natures of these foure Elements, I have sufficiently made appeare unto you in *Capitulo precedenti*, *pæne in initio*, but as touching the second part of your demand, I say, that these foure elements which be in nature so dissonant and distinct one from the other; as that nothing can be more, no white can be more opposite to blacke; neverthelesse that you may know these Elements, I thus averre. The Fire is highest, being neare neighbour or adjoyning to the Moone, and therefore naturally hot: Ayre is placed next unto it, and therefore naturally light. The Water is annexed to the Ayre, and therefore naturally moyst. And the earth is scituate next to the Water, but lowest, and out of that reason naturally heavy. As touching their vertues all the learned doe hold, that Fire by meanes of its heat, exciteth matter to Generation, and occasioneth warmth in every living body, and it doth ripen things raw and undigested, in such excellent and subtile wise, as that the Ayre, which is of a more grosse nature, may the better enter into the *body*, making a commixture with the Fire, whereby also it moderateth the heat of the Fire, the coldnesse of the Water, and the drynesse of the Earth, so as distemper may the lesse oppresse the *Body*. The Aire by reason of its moystnes maketh the matter apt to receive its naturall shape, and through the instinct of the Fire its naturall heat, causing the mixt *Bodies* as well subtile as penetrable, as well Light and moving, whereby they bee neither too grosse nor too heavy, and withall the Ayre cooleth and abateth the extremity of the burning heat of the *Heart, Liver, &c.* As touching the third Element which is Water, its nature is that through the coldnes thereof it congealeth, conglutineth, and bindeth in mixt *Bodies* both the parts and members together, to wit, *Sinewes, Bones, & Flesh*; so as the Water by meanes of its coldnes doth temper and assuage the violent heat of the Fire, and the condensity of the Ayre, collecting those things together which they otherwise would have dissevered. And as touching the Element of Earth, its nature is by meanes of its drynesse and Siccity, in mixt *Bodies*, so to harden and fasten them together, as that having once assumed their Shaps, it causeth them to retein and keep them, which otherwise by the force of the other Elements would be so lax and loose, as not to be able to hold together; wherein I could produce many familiar instances, which for brevities sake I am enforced to omit. But the opinion of the best *Physitians* is, that when any naturall *Body* dyeth, the substance thereof returneth back againe to those Elements from whence they came. Thus you may plainly see, that Fire is naturally hot, and therefore separateth: Ayre moyst, and therefore giveth Shape, Water cold, and therefore bindeth: and Earth dry, and therefore naturally hardneth, and keepeth its impression: Wherefore in any Malady in a *Horse*, observe but this one Rule, *viz.* that when at any time

an Inflammation shall arise in the *Body*, be you confident it proceeds of Fire, and therefore you must administer (if you will performe a right Cure) things contrary to that Element: to wit; what may be agreeable to Ayre and Water, whereby to moysten, coole, and allay the rage of the heat. If it be a *Flux* of *Bloud*, or the like proceeding from the abundance of moysture; which takes its origin from the Element of Ayre, then must you apply Medicines which may connive with the Earth, whose drynesse may harden such moysture. If it proceed of *Cold Rhumes*, or the like, whereby the infirmity hath its source from the Element of Water; you must then administer Medicines cohering with the Element of Fire and Ayre, which may be able through its heat and moysture to expell all cold and grosse humours. And lastly, if the grieve be Maingenesse, or the like, which cometh from the Earth, which be dry and arid infectious diseases, then must your applications be had from the Element of Fire, whose nature is to dissolve all ficcative humours: Wherefore (I say againe) that heat being too predominant is asswaged by the meanes of moystnesse and coldnesse: too great moystnesse by heat and drynesse, over-much coldnesse by heat and drynes, and too great a proportion of drynesse by heat alone.

Hippophyl. But then tell me I pray you, bee there no other Elements, or beginnings in Living Bodies, more then these foure before named?

Hippof. No Sir, not any other which have their beginnings: but there are two other which the Learned doe terme proper Elements: viz. the Ingendring of Seed, and Menstruall Bloud; but these (I say) doe assume their essence from the other foure Elements, whereby they become a *Body*, which otherwise they could not, and therefore are subordinate to them, and they take their place after them.

Hippophil. Having spoken sufficiently of the Natures and Qualities of these foure Elements; What say you to the Humours?

Hippof. I say that the Humours are also foure in number, which Physitians doe stile the first Qualities, according, as I have formerly intimated: and these foure are *Bloud*, *Phlegme*, *Choler*, and *Melancholy*: *Bloud* being sweet in tast, *Phlegme* neither sweet, bitter, nor sowre, and therefore of no tast, or it of any (like to that of good Oyle) rather sweet then otherwise: *Choler* is bitter in tast: and *Melancholy* is sowre in tast: So as by these tast you may distinguish them: and these Humours have reference or neere affinity unto the foure Elements; for like as I have before agnized. *Bloud* is of the nature of the *Ayre*; *Phlegme* of the *Water*; *Choler* of the *Fire*, and *Melancholy* of the *Earth*; and these Humours have their particular abode and residence in the *body*, absolute and peculiar to themselves; as *Bloud* hath his abiding in and about the *Heart*; *Phlegme* in the *Braine*, *Choler* in the *Liver*, and *Melancholy* in the *Spleene*, whereby we may

The 4. first Qualities.

the better come to know what Complexion raigneth in every Horse, as also how he is naturally qualified and disposed: for the Horse that is of a *Sanguine Complexion* is commonly a Bright Bay, who is of disposition joviall, wanton, or merry, agile, and of motion temperate, neither too fiery, nor too dull or melancholy: Your *Milke-white* is of *Complexion Phlegmatique*, whose property commonly is to bee lunt, heavy, and slow: your *Bright-Sorrell* hath commonly reference to *Choler*, and he is naturally for the most part, fiery, hot, and ever-free-mettled, but yet of no great strength: Your *Mousse-Dunne* and such like rusty and fust-colours are commonly of a *Melancholy Complexion*, and they be ordinarily cowardly, faint-hearted, subject to starting, slothfull, restive, stubborn, disobedient, revengefull, &c. but if these Complexions be rightly symbolized, and doe all meete in one and the same Horse, according to each ones proper nature, they doe performe their functions as they ought in a perfect harmony, whereby the Horse remaineth sound and healthy: but if there be discord or disagreement in the Elements and Humours, there must bee the like in the Complexions, and then doth the poore horse suffer for it to the danger both of Life and Health.

Hippophyl. I ever understood that there are certaine Spirits which doe remaine in the body of every Horse: doe you know them *Hippocrasus*?

Spirit Animal.

Spirit Vitall.

Hippof. Yes, I doe, and they be said to bee two in number, viz. The *Spirit Animal*, and the *Spirit Vitall*; the *Spirit Animal* hath its residence in the *Braine*, by which meanes it giveth motion, feeling, and power to the Horse, through the ayd of the *Sinewes*: and the *Spirit Vitall* makes abode in the *Heart*, which is the only cause of the excessive heat thereof, which disperseth the *Bloud* into every part, and member of the *Body*. For the *Heart* and the *Braine* are in equality absolutely different, the *Heart* being most violently hot, (as I have before shewed) and the *Braine* is as extreemely cold: and so hereof needs not any more be spoken in this place.

Hippophyl. But may not a man conjecture to what infirmities or diseases, Horses may probably be subject by their Complexions?

The disease known by the Complexion

Of the Sanguine Complexion.

Hippof. Yis Sir, very easily, yea and that with so great advantage and profit to the Cure, if the Ferrier be expert and skilfull in the making and applying of his Medicines, as that nothing can be more. For example, the horse that is of colour either *bright-Bay* or *dark Bay*, with a pleasant and cheerfull countenance, or if he bee a white *Flea-bitten*, *white-Lyard*, or *Black* with a *white-starre*, or race downe the face, or white-toot; if he be of eyther of these colours, we hold him to bee of a *Sanguine Complexion*, and in Horses of this Comple^{on} the Element of Aire is most predominant, and they be commonly of nature affable, well-metled, active, and of good strength; but the Maladies whereunto they are most usually incident, are Leaprofies, glanders, Consumptions, and the like, yet these Horses are frequently of so able

ble Constitutions ; as that they have vigour enough to endure good and strong Medicines : provided these Medicines be not too hot, but cooling. The *Horse* which is *Milke white*, *Yellow-dunne*, *Sanded*, or *Pie-bald* ; these take more from the Element of Water than from any of the other three, and these we say are of a *Flegmatique Complexion* ; and they are naturally slow, dull, heavy, and nesh or wash of their flesh ; and they be most enclined to Poses, Rhumes, paines in the head, Stavers, Yellowes, and the like, and these *Horses* can undergoe good strong Medicines if there be cause to administer such : provided these Medicines be not made of Ingredients, that be not over cold.

Of the fleg-
maticque
complexion.

The *Horse* whose colour is *Moufe-Dunne*, *Chest-nut* ; *Browne*, or of a *foote-colour*, or *Iron-Grey* ; these are commonly of a *Melancholy Complexion*, participating more of the *Earth*, then of any of the other Elements ; by which meanes they are of Nature dull, heavy, dogged, restife, faint-hearted, &c. and therefore most enclined to Inflammations in the *Spleene*, *Siccity*, and *Aridity* in the *Liver*, to the *Dropsey*, *Frenzy*, and the like ; these *Horses* are better able to endure stronger Medicines than any of the former : provided thole Medicines bee not siccatrizing or drying, but such as are both cold and moyst. The *Horse* whose colour is *cole-Blacke* without any white at all, a *deepe Iron-Grey*, a *Bright-Sorrell*, or the like, such coloured *Horses* we say be of a *Cholericke Complexion*, and they partake more of the Element of *Fire*, than of any other of the three former, for that they are by nature Fiery, hot, too free, and hare-brained, and therefore cannot bee very strong of constitution ; wherefore the *Ferrier* must be very carefull he doe not administer any strong Medicine to such a *Horse* at any time, for so he may loone destroy him.

Of the we-
lancholy
complexion.

Of the cho-
lericke
complexion.

Hippophyl. But yet *Hippocrates*, I would bee glad to know of what *Complexion* that *Horse* is, in whom all the foure *Complexions* doe joyntly meete, as namely in that *Horse*, that is either of a *Browne-Bay*, or a *Dapple-Bay*, *Dapple-Grey*, a *Black* full of silver haire, a *Black-Rone*, a *Red-Rone*, or the like.

Hyppos. Sir, as I cannot give you more elements than these foure before named, so I am not able to give you more than foure *complexions* ; but yet that one *horse* may participate of them all, is a thing possible enough, and this is the very best *complexion* of all other ; yea and the most perfect : for *horses* in whom the foure *complexions* doe meet, cannot but be the best and most able of all other, yea and the best for *shape*, for *colour*, and for *mettle*, the soundest and most healthy : for howsoever they may accidentally fall into infirmities, nevertheless they are not naturally inclinable to any, and therefore when a *Ferrier* shall at any time have occasion to administer unto them, he must be very circumspect the physicke be punctually administered according to the nature of the disease ; and he must examine both the cause and time of his first languishing : as whether it be a

Of the foure
complexions
meeting in
one horse,
which is the
best and most
perfect.

sicknesse newly taken, or long before, whether it proceeded of a Surfet, Hard-riding, Evill-dyet, &c. by which meanes he may administer his physicke (whether Pills, Potions, or Clusters) the more securely: for medicines given upon a first sicknesse, and before the horse be farre spent and weakened through the distemper of the malady, may be compounded the stronger, and will work to more effect, but after a long sicknesse, when as the *spirits* both *vitall* and *animall* are enfeebled, the *elements* are in open rebellion each one against the other, and the humours in a confused distemper; then (I say) must the physicall medicine be so tempered and ordered, so as that nature must be assisted, but no way further perplexed or troubled, whereby the evill *humours* must be sent away, the *body* cleansed and acquitted of the causes of its distemper, and then it will not be long before the poore *creature* may recover strength and sanity, and so repaire daily the decay of his former state of health.

Hippophyl. *How doe you hold the causes of sicknesse?*

The causes
of sicknesse
defined.

Hippof. If you meane the causes of sicknesse simply, you must understand, that all Maladies and Sicknesse of what nature soever they be, are *affects* and evill *dispositions* (as learned Physitians doe call them) unnaturall, which doe proceed, and are as it were, the Precursors which do most violently hale and pull sicknesse after them, and thus in a word doe they define the causes of sicknesse and not otherwise.

Hippoph. *How many sorts of causes be there?*

Two causes
of sicknesse.

Hippof. Onely two degrees, *viz.* *Intrinssecall* and *Extrinssecall*: the *Intrinssecall* are those which are ingendred within the *body*, and therefore cannot be made visible to the eye, but are made known by their symptomes: the second are *Extrinssecall*, and therefore are more easily discovered and known by outward object, wherefore they need no further discourse.

Hippoph. *How doe you define sicknesse as it is in its owne nature?*

Sicknesse
defined.

Hippof. *Aegritudo*, or *Infirmity*, is none other thing than that which is contrary to nature. For all intrinssecall infirmities most commonly possesse and seize upon the whole *body*; and those are most frequently Feavers, Pestilence, Convulsions, &c. Other infirmities again do attach, but only certain members or parts of the *body*, as colds which do perplex the *head*, Surfets which doe annoy the stomach, and Splents, Spavens, Pearls, and Hawes in the eyes, and the like extrinssecall sorances, but more sorts of infirmities and maladies I never knew, every severall of which may most easily and palpably be discovered as well by their inward as outward signes.

Hippophyl. *What is your opinion as touching the administering of Drinks, Potions, and Clusters to a sicke horse, to wit, whether it be better to apply them very warme, or but indifferently?*

How to ap-
ply inward
medicine.

Hippof. Sir, even in this very point is a speciall heed and care fit to be had and taken; for by giving Medicines or Clusters too warme, a
Fer-

Ferrier may easily undoe all, and utterly destroy the *horse* he would labour to cure; yea with as great facility, as if he gave him in the place of a wholesome *cordiall*, a formall *poysen*: for you must understand that a *horse* of all other living *creatures*, can worse indure to receive inwardly hot things, by reason that he is inwardly so extremely hot by nature, and therefore whatsoever thing is to be administred to him, ought not to be more than bloud warme at most, by any meanes, for that nothing can be more noxious to him than the endangering the scalding of his *stomacke* and *intestines*, besides let his drinks and inward medicines be given him in the most leisurely manner you are able, for feare of suffocating him; neither suffer any man, (as I have seene many use to doe) to pinch his *gullet* or *wind-pipe*, whereby he is provoked to cough most violently, for it is a thing most dangerous both to his winde, and causeth oft times fleshy stufie like to the *garget* to grow in his throat. Now for the administring of Pils, Bals, and such like medicines, little advice is required if they be not made too great, onely if you take forth his *tongue* first, and then put them up into his *mouth*, you cannot doe amisse, but of this methode no man can be ignorant.

Hippophyl. *What time is best wherein to administer your medicines to a sicke horse?*

Hippof. Evermore in a morning fasting, unlesse upon urgent occasion (as in case of sudden and dangerous sicknesse, which may happen to fall out upon a sudden accident;) and the longer he be kept fasting from meat and drink, as well before he taketh his physicke, as after, it will be the better, for by that means his medicine will work the more kindly in his *body*, for he ought to be kept from eating and drinking at least 3 houres before and after.

Hippophil. *Is it requisite he be exercised after the taking of his physickall medicines?*

Hippof. Sir, a little moderate exercise is very necessary whereby his physicke may worke the beter, and the sooner, as to trot him upon so easie a pace as you can cause him to take, otherwise to walke him up and down out of the wind in the warme Sunne, by the space of a quarter of an houre, but then so soon as he cometh into the *Stable*, let his *Stall* be littered before hand well, then presently cloath him up, and stoppe him warme, and keep the ayre from him, neither let his Keeper goe from him in three or four houres, but let him rivet his eyes upon him continually, observing well his postures, and as occasion may require, let him be at hand to help and supply the *horse* with all things necessary.

Hippophil. *May a man attaine to any knowledge of the healt or indisposition of the horse by observing his Ordure or excrements?*

Hippof. Yes may he Sir, and that very much, inso much as I would advise all carefull Ferriers who have a desire to attaine reputation by their Art, that before they doe administer any inward medicine, whether

The time
when to ad-
minister,

What exer-
cise is most
meet with
physicke.

Of Excre-
ments.

ther Purgations or Cordials; that they be carefull first (if possible) to see his *Ordure*: for I doe finde for the most part the *Ordure* is correspondent to the food the horse eateth, especially for the colour; for if he run at grasse, or be soyled in the Stable, then will his *doung* be evermore green, howbeit of a more bright, and sometimes again of a more darke colour, and it will be rather soluble than hard, but the indifferent colour, and freer from hardnesse is ever best, and doth make appearance of the more sanity and health of the *beast*, as also that he is thereby the lesse subject to costivenesse, and therefore in better state of *body*. But if his *Ordure* be very bright and laxative, it is an infallible signe that he hath eaten some thing that is against nature, as a Feather, or some naughty worme, some Spider or the like unwhole some thing, otherwise he scowreth of some inward cold which hath formerly lurked in his *stomacke or body*: but if his *doung* at grasse or soyle be very hard and costive, which hee putteth forth with round and hard trattles, then is it a great signe that he is very hot in his *body* and inward parts, which may endanger the Stavers, or else doth show that he hath a lurfet which he got (before his putting forth) through intemperate riding, washing, raw, or evill food, or the like, whereby the *horse* is in danger to become morfounded, to have the yellowes, or jaundise, or a feaver, which will otherwise hardly appeare in him in it's effects untill his comming into the Stable, at what time due order must be taken for speedy prevention. But if your *horse* doe feed upon Straw, then will the colour of his *doung* be yellow and somewhat hard, long, and well compact, all which be tokens of a healthy and a sound *body*; But if it be reddish, and exceeding dry, it is a sign of ensuing sicknesse, by means of a great drought in the *body*, and so also if it be thin: but if it be blackish, and doth not smell strong, then is it a signe that the *horse* is in danger of death. But if your *horse* doe feed upon Hay and Oates, and that he be sound in *body*, then will his *Excrements* be a brown yellow, moyst, and well compact, but if the brownesse be converted into reddishnesse, you may be then well assured that he hath some distemperature in his *body*, but when it converteth into blacknesse, then if prevention be not speedily had, death ensueth: and as touching the smell, that falleth out according to the quantity of the provender you give him, for the more provender, the stronger will be the smell of his *Ordure*, and Pease and Beanes will cause his *Ordure* to smell stronger than Oats, and bread more than any Grayne or Pulse; and the more bread and Provender you give him, the more perfect and sound shall you keep him in his *body*. But if his *doung* be brown and slimy, and shine withal, then be you assured he hath much greace which lyeth in his body, which Physicke must fetch away from him, for then also is his *bloud* putrified, corrupted, or enflamed. But if you doe finde by his *Excrements* that he voydeth undigested stuffe, which you may know by the whole cornes of Oates, Wheat, and other Grayne he sendeth forth in

in his *downg*, then perswade your selfe, that your *horse* hath lately taken a formall surfet, which may right easily bring him to his end, if a discreet course be not speedily taken : in a word, if his *downg* be black and hath little or no smell, then make you no question but that he is in danger of death, which wilfull soone after follow, if the greater care be not taken to hinder and prevent the same.

Hippophyl. Have you made the like observations of the Vrine or Water of the horse?

Hippof. Yes indeed have I, whereby I have not a little profited my selfe, and attained unto great experience, insomuch as I dare boldly averre, that that Ferrier shall never come to be an expert Artist, who shall not be very well versed therein, nor be able to administer his Medicines aright, who shall not be very observant of the *horses urine*: for if he shall finde his water to be either pale, whitish, or yellow, not much unlike to the color of whey, or fat Amber, or if it be not very cleere, but smelleth somewhat strong; let the *Ferrier* then be confident the *Horse* is not sick, but sound and healthy, and in perfect state of *body*; but if his *urine* be extreame cleere and white, and of the colour of Rock-water, and withall slimy, then hath he a tainte in his *Kidneies*, *Reines*, or *Back*, or else he enclineth to the *Stone*, or else hee hath some stoppage in his *Kidneys*. But if his *Water* be high-colored like to the colour of strong Beer, then is it a tokē the *bloud* of the *horse* is enflamed, and that he is subject to a *Fever*, or to some strong Surfet : but if it be red and of the colour almost of *bloud*, then is the *bloud* more inflamed, which came of over hard Riding, which may prove very dangerous to his life. But if it bee of a pale greenish colour thick, and viscous, then certainly his *Backe* is growne weake, and he is in danger of a *Consumption* of his *Seede*. But if it be high coloured and nebulated or mixed with small Cloudes, with a kind of blacknesse therein, then this doth demonstrate ensuing sicknesse and death, if it be not carefully prevented. But if the Nebulosity be disperfed into severall parts, and not combined as it were into one *Masse* or *Body*; this then argueth, that the malice of the disease beginneth to depart, whereby the *Ferrier* may have great hope of the health of the *Horse*: And thus farre I have by diligent observation found to bee most certaine, Whereby I have brought many a desperate Malady to it's wished Cure, which otherwise I could not so easily have effected.

Of Vrine.

Chap.

CHAP. III.

*The manner of handling the particular Cures.**Hippiat.*

Ir, I doubt not but that we have proceeded farre enough into this subject, for I cannot see what can be spoken more ; let us now come to the particular Cures, handling each one in it's proper place.

Hippophil. With all my heart : but I pray let me desire you, that we may not only handle the Cures themselves , but the severall Diseases to which a *Horse* is or may be subj^{ct} : together with the causes of such diseases, the signes how to know them , and the meanes and manner how to cure them.

Hippiat. All shall be done to your minde Sir : Wherefore I pray proceed.

Hippophil. I will : Neverthelesse I hold the best and cleereſt way wilbe to handle the Cures by way of *Alphabet* ; whereby whosoever doth desire at any time to informe himſelfe of any Cure , hee may the more readily turne thereunto, without looking over the *Index* or *Table*.

Hippiat. I thinke not that to be amiſſe.

§. I. A.

Hippoph. **T**Hen thus : Tell me Hippoſerus , doe you know the Receipt which is called *Acopum* ? Doe you alſo know it's Nature ? Whether it is a Medicine to be taken inwardly, or an *Vnguent* to be applyed outwardly ?

Hippof. Sir, to make anſwere to twothings in one, I ſay ; firſt, it is impoſſible for any man to become a perfect *Ferrier*, who ſhall not firſt know unto what diſeaſes a *Horse* is enclinable : ſecondly, what be the cauſes of every diſeaſe in particular : thirdly, how , and by what waies and meanes theſe diſeaſes doe accrew : fourthly , the ſignes how to know and diſtinguiſh them : and laſtly, the meanes and manner how to cure them. Secondly as touching this your demand of *Acopum*, and it's true Nature ; I anſwere, that I doe know it well, to be a moſt ſoveraigne thing in ſome cauſes ; for I have occaſion to make uſe thereof very often : It is both a medicine to bee taken inwardly, and an Oyntment to be applyed outwardly. Maſter *Blundevile* was the firſt that ever brought the knowledge and Uſe thereof into our Kingdome, who had it from the *Italians* when hee lived in *Naples*, as himſelfe told me, where it is very much uſed ; and he alſo affirmed

Two things
to bee ob-
ſerved in e-
very Cure.

affirmed that it was formerly in much use and high esteeme among the ancient *Grecian Ferriers*, who gave it the name of *Acopum*. Master *Markham* hath also in his *Master peece* the same Receipt, but he would make it his owne, for he giveth it no name, but stileth it in his ninth Chapter of his *Cures Physicall*, thus: *A most famous Receipt, which is both a singular Drench, and a singular Oyntment*: And in reciting the Ingredients, he maketh the quantities but the fourth part of what Master *Blundevile* setteth downe, which is in effect one and the same thing: and he relateth likewise the same Vertues thereof, which Master *Blundevile* doth; onely Master *Markham* saith that foure or five Spoonfulls hereof must be given with a pint of Sack or Malmesey: as also that the *lymbes of the Horse* being bathed therewith, it is good against wearinesse and tyrednesse; and lastly hee saith that being given in Wine, it cureth all kind of inward maladies; all which particulars, Master *Blundevile* nameth not.

Hippophil. *What is the reason that Master Markham doth set downe but a quarter of the Ingredients in the making of this famous Receipt?*

Hippof. His reason is good, Sir, and I will approve of his judgement therein: for if any man should make so great a quantity together as Master *Blundevile* doth set downe in his Receipt, it would not be spent whilst it were good, but only by such a *Ferrier* as hath daily use thereof, and such an one wilbe hardly found; for the newer and ofner such like Receipts are made, the better they be, and yeildeth more profit when they be administred.

Hippoph. *Is this Receipt hot or cold in operation?*

Hippof. It is hot in working, otherwile it could not hold good in cases of Surfets, Tyrednesse and of Convulsions and the like, wherein consisteth it's chiefest vertue, being administred outwardly; but being administred inwardly, it is not altogether so hot, for then the ancient *Ferriers* would not have prescribed to have it taken with Sack or Muskadine, both which are very hot; for it helpeth all Feavers for the most part; but yet I would not have it administred inwardly in so great a proportion as Master *Markham* adviseth, for hee (as I said before) alloweth foure or five Spoonfulls to a pint of Sack or Muskadine; unlesse it bee to bee given in very cold Causes, for the Wine it selfe is very hot. But both my Master and my selfe doe commonly administer two Spoonfulls at the most at a time, in a pint of white Wine, or with a quart of good Ale or Beere, which we hold to be much better and safer, and we have found it evermore to worke to our hearts desire: insomuch as wee have both wrought admirable Cures therewith, I doe assure you.

Hippohyl. *I pray deliver mee this Receipt, just as Master Markham hath it.*

Hippof. I shall Sir, most willingly: but then you must understand that the quantities will be more intricate to weigh forth, whereby to make it the more punctually.

Acopum.

Take *Euforbium*, halfe an ounce, *Castoreum*, one ounce, *Adrales* halfe a quarter of a pound, *Bdelium*, halfe an ounce, and halfe a quarter, Pepper one ounce, Foxe greafe halfe an ounce, *Opoponax* one ounce, *Lacerpitium* three quarters of an ounce, *Amoniacum* halfe a quarter of a pound, Pigeons dung as much, *Galbanum* halfe an ounce, *Nitrum* one ounce and a quarter, *Spuma nitri*, three quarters of an ounce, *Ladanum* a quarter of a pound, *Perethrum* and Bay-berries, of each three quarters of an ounce, *Cardanum*, two ounces, seed of Rue halfe a quarter of a pound. Seed of *Agnus Castus*, one ounce, Parlely-seed halfe an ounce, dryed roots of *Ireos*, or *Flour de luce*, one ounce and a quarter, Ilope and *Carpo Balsamum*, of each a quarter of a pound. Oyle of *Floure de luce* a quarter of a pound, and halfe a quarter, of Oyle de Bay as much, Oyle of Spikenard, three quarters of a pound, *Oleum Cyprinum*, three quarters of a pound, and halfe a quarter, the oldest oyle Olive, a pound and a halfe, *Piche* a quarter of a pound, and two ounces, Turpentine a quarter of a pound: melt of every of these that will be molten severally by themselves, and then mingle them with the residue of the ingredients being first beaten to fine powder, and after they have boyled a little on the fire, take it off, and straine it into a cleane gally-pot, and so keep it for your use, and when you are to administer of it to your horse, let it be given as before is shewed, and if by long keeping it waxe hard, then soften it with the oyle of Cypresse, so that it may be good and thick, +.

Hippophil. What are the vertues of this Receipt, called Acopum?

Acopum its vertues.

Hippof. Master Blandevile and Master Markham doe tell you, to wit: it helpeth convulsions in the sinewes and muskles, it draweth forth all noysome humours, and disburdeneth the head of all griefe, being put up with a long Goose feather annoynted in it into the nostrils of the horse: it healeth (I say) all manner of convulsions, cramps, numnesse, and stringholts, colds, and rhumes: it dissolveth the liver being troubled with oppilations and obstructions: it helpeth Siccity and Aridity in the body: it banisheth all wearinesse and tyrednesse, if his limbs be bathed with this medicine: and lastly, it cureth all sorts of inward diseases, if it be administred by way of Drench to a horse in Wine, strong Beere, or good Ale.

§ 2. A.

Hippoph. Doe you know another Receipt, which is called Arman?

Hippof. Yea sir, it is a confection in great request in France among the Ferriers there, and now we have it here in England: and it is a most soveraigne medicine to be given to a sick horse, and it is to be administred inwardly.

Hippoph. What be the principall vertues of the Arman?

Hyppos. It provoketh a good apperite to meat, and causeth good digestion; it taketh away all annoyances which doe either clog or otherwise

therwise trouble the *stomack*; it cooleth the inward heat in the *body*; it helpeth all Agues and Feavers; it is most excellent against Surtets; it is an infallible remedy for the Quinsie or Suinancy in the *throat* coming of cold taken; and very good against the Tranchaisons or gripings in the *belly* or *guts* proceeding of *winde* and such like inward infirmities.

Hippophil. *How doe you make this confection?*

Hippof. Take hony of roses a pound & half, the crums of the whitest manchet made into fine powder, *quantum sufficit*, then take Nutmegs, cordiall powder, & cinamon, of each an ounce & half: mixe all these being made first into fine powder, then put it into a clean glasse or gally-pot, and moysten it with Rose vineger, that it may be of a thicke substance like unto pap, all your Ingredients being very well incorporate together, and so keep it to your use. And when you have occasion to administer of this *Arman*, take some of it upon the end of a Buls pizell, and put it into his mouth, and let him champ thereon: but if you give it to a horse that hath a Quinsy, let him gulp down two horns full, as also to a horse that hath a Fever, and is much distempered therewith, and it will give him health, in two or three timestaking, and give him also an appetite to his meat. But then you must remember that he take this in a morning fasting, and let him fast three or foure houres after, and his drinke must be for some time either sweet Mashcs, or white water, and a spare dyet, till he be somewhat recovered.

Arman.
I

Hippoph. *I pray what is that thing you call cordiall powder, and whereof is it made?*

Hippof. Cordiall-powder hath not its name for nought, for its nature jumps right with its *Epitheton*: this we have also from the *French*, who use to giue it to their sicke *horses* which are farre spent and enfeebled with a consumption in the *flesh*, *liver*, &c. for it is a most restorative *Cordiall*, comforting the *vitall parts*, and *spirits animall*, and restoreth it to Sanity: and thus it is made.

Take Cinamon and Sugar, of each, foure ounces, and of fine Bolearmonack two ounces: let all these be made into very fine powder, and mixe them well together: keep this powder from ayre made up close till you have occasion to make use thereof. I doe use of this powder in very many of my Receits, as you shall hereafter understand.

Cordiall
Powder.

Hippoph. *Have you any other sorts of Cordials besides this?*

Hippof. Yes Sir, I have another powder which the *French* doe call *Duke*, or *Duche-powder*, which little differeth from the former *cordiall powder*, onely it wanteth the Bolearmonack. We have also another *Cordiall*, which is an *Electuary*, and is known by the name of *Electuarium Theriacum*, by reason it hath much treacle in it; and we doe compound this *Electuary* thus.

Take syrrop of Violets, syrrop of Lemons, and syrrop of Roses,

K 2

Electuariū
Theriacū.

of each halfe an ounce, adding thereunto of your best *London treacle*, one ounce, mingle them well together, and it is a most soveraign Cordiall to be administred unto Horses which are dangerously sicke and weake.

Hippoph. *Why doe you rather choose London Treacle before Venice Treacle, Treacle of Genoa, or our common Treacle.*

Hippof. This *London Treacle* I doe select for all medicines for horses, rather then any other Treacle whatsoever, by reason it worketh the best with them of any other, for that *Venice Treacle*, and that of *Genoa* are too hot; and your common Treacle is nothing at all worth, it being made onely of the drosse and excrements of *Molasses*, which is none other thing then the drosse of the refining of Sugar, for I have made tryall of them all: but this *London Treacle* I do finde to be most agreeable to the nature of Horses: wherefore both my selfe and my Master doe use none other, unlesse in some particular causes, wherein we administer sometimes the *Treacle of Venice*.

Hippoph. *What meane you by your white water?*

White water

Hippof. *White water* is none other thing then water made hot in a cleane kettle, and when it is hot enough, I use to put into it a quantity of *Wheat-bran*, and sometimes *Barly-meale*, which I commonly prescribe to sicke Horses in *physicke*, in stead of *Mashes*, for that when *Mashes* are either not to be had, or that they are not necessary for my purpose (as in some cases they be not) or to prevent giving of cold water; I make use of this *white water*, which must evermore be given bloud warme, according as our ensuing discourse shall declare.

Hippoph. *But now let us returne to this confection you call your Arman: What other vertues hath it more than what you have already delivered?*

Hippof. Truly Sir, I have shewed you before in a manner all its vertues: and to recite them again, I say, it is most soveraign for Horses that have taken a cold, or have inflammations or Pustils under their *Chauls*, or thereby are troubled with the *Quinsye* or *Squinansye*: These maladies this *Confection* will help, if it be given good and thick with a horne, for having the *Quinsye* in the *throat*, it in giving this *Arman*, it provoketh him not to cough, then take some of the *confection* upon the end of a *Buls-Pizell*, and put it a pretty way down his throat, by which meanes he straining to cough, may breake the imposthumation in his throat, whereby the Horse may be in the lesse danger of his life; and causing the Matterative stuffe to vent out, the Horse will be in short time perfectly cured.

Hippoph. *Are there any other kindes of Arman besides this?*

Hippof. Onely one more Sir, which also the French have brought amongst us, which is not altogether so operative as the former: and this it is, viz. Take hony one pound, and warm it a little upon the fire, then take half a pinte of Vineger, & a little Wheate flower, and one penny-worth of Pepper in fine powder, mixe all these, and administer

Arman.

2

ster it bloud warme, as aforefaid.

Hippophil. *With what manner of vineger doe you usually make up your medicines?*

Hippof. When we ſpeake in generall termes of *vineger* to be put into any medicines to be given, either for inward or outward diſeaſes, we alwayes intend it muſt be the ſtrongeſt and beſt *white wine vineger*; but if it be of any other kinde of *vineger* or *verjuice*, we then do give it in the *Receit*, its proper name.

Vineger.

Hippophyl. *As touching hony wherewith you make up your medicines, what manner of hony muſt it be?*

Hippof. That ſhould be made of *life-honey* onely, and of none other, unleſſe *common honey*, or *couſe-honey*, be in the *Receit* particularly named, as it many times is.

Honey.

Hippophyl. *Let us now goe on to ſomewhat elſe: what hold you good for the head-ach in a horſe?*

§ 3. A.

Hippof. **V**VE adminiſter according to the nature of the Diſeaſe, for that the pains in the *head* are ſeverall and diſtinct diſeaſes, and therefore have ſeverall cures.

Hippoph. *Which be thoſe ſeverall maladies, and how may a man know and diſtinguiſh them each from other?*

Hippof. A judicious and cautelous obſervation is it whereby we doe know and diſtinguiſh all ſorts of maladies: for the Horſe being a *dumb creature* without reaſon and ſpeech, is not able (like as *man* can) to tell you where his paine lyeth, and therefore it muſt be the eye and judgement of the Ferrier, to be able to obſerve his true *ſymptomes* whereby he may goe right to accompliſh the *cure*, otherwiſe he muſt of neceſſity faile. Wherefore as the diſeaſes of the *head* are of ſeverall natures, every of which doe beget his paine, even ſo are the medicines which we apply as different. Now theſe paines in the *head* doe proceed from the *braine*, or from the *panicles*, by which meanes they doe properly breed Megrims, the Night-Mare, Glanders, Rhumes, Cathars, Apoplexies, Convulſions, Palfies, Frenzies, the Takings, Sleeping-evill, Madneſſe, and the like: all which commonly doe proceed from the ſubſtance of the *braine*, or from the *panicles*; for that from the *cells* and *ventricles* through which the *ſpirits animall* doe give feeling and moving to all the parts and members of the *body*, the diſeaſes before mentioned doe engender.

Ach in the head.

Hippophyl. *From what grounds hath this head-ach its ſource or Organ?*

Hippof. The grounds and cauſes are many Sir: ſome being inward, and ſome outward, as by meanes of ſome *cholericke humour* which may be predominant, by which meanes it doth oft times breed in the *panicles*, or elſe of ſome heat taken through violent labour, and ſome-
times

times by some blow given him in the *Poule* or other place of the *head*; and some doe hold it cometh of some evill savour, which I also doe allow of; sometimes it cometh of *Crudities* and *raw digestions* from the *Stomack*, by reason there is so great a sympathy betwixt the *Stomack* and the *Braine*, whereby they doe continually participate as well of their good dispositions in health, as of their domages in the least of their infirmities and sufferings.

Hippoph. But many there be who do hold stiffly that a *Horse* hath no *Braines* at all, but only a kind of *windy liquid substance* not unlike unto a kind of jelly?

Braines.

Hippof. That opinion is most erronious, for a *horse* hath a most perfect *brain*, like as hath any other living *Creature*, albeit indeede not in so great a proportion as other *Animals* have. For naturall reason doth dictate that if a *Horse* had not his *Braine*, it were impossible for him to have semblable diseases in the *Head*, which both *Man* and all other living things have, who are (I say) likewise subject to such *Maladies*; which could not proceed from any other *Causes* but only from those before premised. Neither were it possible for a *Horse* to endure so great labour and toyle, or to undergoe so great and so many waies, such extreame violences as daily he doth, if Nature had not endowed him with his organal parts correspondent to his strength ablenesse, and activity of *body*: neyther could he have any memory at all, but appeare a *Lump of flesh* and *bones* without motion. But not to verberate the Ayre; I affirme that a *Horse* hath his *Braines* in as compleate measure, albeit (as I have but now touched) not in so great a quantity as other *beasts* have, but in as ample, solid, and sufficient manner as any other living *creature*, together with the *skinne*, which Artists doe call *Pannicles*, which doth adhere to the *bones* conducted by the *Cells* or *Conducts* by which the *Vitall Spirits* doe give some feeling, sense, & motion to the *body*, from whence proceeds the causes of diseases and sicknesse. And for your better satisfaction if you please I may be present when at any time your *Huntsman* is to cut up a *horse* for your *Hounds*, I will let you see most plainly both the *Braine* and the *Pannicles*.

Hippoph. How shall a man come to know when a *Horse* hath any pain in his *Head*?

Hippof. The Symtomes are most evident, if you eye him well: for his eyes will swell and become watry, and oftentimes Matterative; he will hang downe his *head*, as if he were sleepey; he will pricke his *eares* upright, forsake his meate, and his sight will be dim.

Hippoph. What cure have you for the *Head-ach*?

Hippof. Some use to perfume his *head* with the stalkes of *Garlick* and *Frankinsence*, two or three severall times, which will bring much liquid stufte forth of his *Nose*, which indeed is very good, and I doe practise it sometimes as occasion is offred; but then withall after I have perfumed him, I use to let him *bloud* in the *Palate vein*, & in both the

the *weeping veins*: And when I do not perfume him, I take the longest feather of a Goose, and moysten it well, in Oyle de bay, which I put up into his *Nosthrills*; and this doth both open and purge his head abundantly, and then keeping his *Paule* warm, together with moderate dyet, for three or foure daies after, I then take *bloud* from the *Neck-veine*; and give him all the time of his Cure either good *Mashes* or *white-water*, and undoubtedly he will doe well. But somerimes if I find his *head-ach* cometh of cold taken, wherein he may bee enclining to an Ague or Feaver, I then besides drawing *bloud*, do both apply *Acopum* to his *Nose*, like as I laid for Oyle de-Bay, and also give him thereof to drinke, as I have formerly prescribed. If he be Feaverish: take a pint of Muscadine, the yolke of five new-laid Egges, and a head of Garlick picked, pilled, and brused, Pepper, Cinamon, and Nutmegges, and somuch as well I can take up upon a Tester or six-penny peece: these all made into very fine powder; give him to drinke bloud warme three daies together, and let him fast six houres after. +.

§. 4. A.

Hippoph. **H**ow doe you make *Aegyptiacum*?

Hippof. Wee have two sorts of them; the first we doe call *Black-Aegyptiacum*; the second *Red*, both *Corrosives*; for their natures be to corrode and eate away al manner of dead, prond, rotten, and naughty flesh out of any old Sore or Ulcer, and they do also cleanse and prepare a Sore, make it apt to be healed with carni-fying or healing Salves. The first is thus made.

Take course English Hony two pound, Verdegrease, Diers-Gals, and Green Coperas, of each four ounces: Let all these be made into powder and mixed together, and so put into an earthen pot, and set upon the fire, keeping it with continuall stirring; but so loone as it beginneth to boyl, take it from the fire, & let it cool; for by suffering it long to boyle, it will become red, which will not be so good. This black *Aegyptiacum* besides what I have said before of it's vertues, is also very good to dissolve the *hooves* of the *Horse*, if they bee too dry or hard: so as it will cause the corruption if any be in the *Foot*, to ascend above at the *Crown* where the haire is, and also to restore and repaire the *hoofe* of the *horse* when the *Sole* is taken out: and in this nature you must use this Vnguent, but onely at the third dressing after you have taken out the *sole*, +. Now the second *Aegyptiacum* is made thus.

Take course Hony two pounds, Verdegrease foure ounces, green-Coperas two ounces, beate the Verdegrease and the Coperas very small to powder, then put it into an earthen put, and put unto it a little Vineger, and so boyle it very well till it become red, and keepe it for your use. +. Another.

Aegyptiacum.

1

Aegyptiacum.

2

§. 5. A.

Hippophil. *What is your best cure for a Horse that is Accloyed?*

Accloy.

Hippof. Sir, this Malady so called by the *French*, is the same we call prick't with a *Naile* in the Shooing, and it is easily cured if the *Ferrier* be skilfull, and that it be also taken in time. And thus wee worke, *viz.* First, take out the sole, and cut the hoofe round about the place pricked that no corruption be remaining behind, fil it up againe with hurds steeped in whites of Egges, dresse him thus three dayes together, then heale the sore up with salt made into fine powder mingled with Vineger, or else with Diers Galls, or with Mirtle, or Lentils, and annoint the outside of the *hoofe* with black *Aegyptiacum*. +. Another.

Take a litle cotten or bumbast and steepe it in browne Sugarcandy molten, and apply it with a hot Iron to the place. And if the foot be bruised with the shoo, or that the femall horn be hurt or bruised, then cleane and prepare the place first, and then apply unto it a quick or live Spider with a hot Iron, and so tack on the shoo, and let him not come into any wet till he be fully cured. +. Another.

Take Salet Oyle, Turpentine, and Rosinpitch, all molten together; put it very hot into the hole where hee is pricked, and so stop the hole with Hurdes. +.

§. 6. A.

Hippophyl. **W**hat Receipts have you for all inward diseases?

Hippof. The *Spaniards* have one Medicine with which they Cure all Diseases; and albeit I say they doe cure all diseases with this one *Receipt*, yet my meaning is, that looke whatsoever the infirmity be, they administer none other thing but that one, whether it cure or kill: and this they call a *Cataplasme*, of which they make no small account, which they give as Pills.

All diseases
a Cata-
plasm.

1

Take wheate meale twelve pound, Anniseeds foure ounces, in fine powder, Brimstone in powder three ounces, Fennugrick in powder three ounces *et sem.* Comin in powder three ounces, Honey two pound, good Sallet-Oyle one pound, *et sem.* of good Sack as much, or so much as will suffice to make it into a *Cataplasme* or *Paste*. This *Cataplasme* (say the *Spaniards*) or Medicine, is all of it to be put into a stone pot well nealed, and so boyled untill it be thick, so as when it is cold it may bee made up into Pills or Balls; whilst it is in boyling it must be kept with continuall stirring, otherwise it will burne too; and being thus made into pills, give him of them every morning fasting, for foure or five dayes together, or longer if you shall see cause; for that (say they) it is most soveraigne against many Maladyes. It killeth all sorts of wormes within the *body* of the *horse*; it also

so helpeth the diseases of the *Lungs*, and inward parts, and it is generally good for any inward cause: and an excellent locall plaister to be applied outwardly. It is the *Spaniards* principall *Physick* for their *Iennets*, and *Barbaryes*. I have made tryall thereof sundry times, and I doe find it to be most usefull in all cold Causes: and truly it is most Cordiall, for it doth bring a leane and poor *Horse* into flesh and good state in a little time. +.

A second *Receipt* I also have, which cureth all inward Diseases, which I had of a *Rurall Smith*, who was cryed *Yp* for a famous *Ferrier* all the Countrey about: So I having heard so great a report of his skill, addrested my selfe unto him, & when I had conferred with him, putting him hard to it in the matter of his Art; he at last ingenuously confessed unto me that he had but this one only drinke, which gat him all his knowledge and credit, which with much pressure I wrested from him, under condition that I should never make him knowne, wherein I have precisely kept my word. And the Cure and Drinke is this: *viz.* Take wheate meale six pound, or as much as will bring the Ingredients into a stiffe paste, Anniseeds two ounces, Comin two ounces, wild or bastard Saffron one dramme & half, white Wine foure pints, Fennugreke one ounce & two drammes, Brimstone one ounce & half; good Sallet Oyle one pint & two ounces, English hony one pound & half; powder and searce what is to bee powdred and searced, then compound them together, and make it into one body into a stiffe paste, and so keep it in a cleane Gally-pot close covered for your use. And when you have occasion to use it, make a Pill or Ball thereof, of the bignesse of a mans fist, and so lave and dissolve it into two Gallons of faire water; till it bee all molten into the water: Let your *Horse* drinke hereof so long as you please both morning and evening, and let him have none other water to drinke, to the end he may be the better compelled to drinke of the Water, which in the end he will doe, and like it very well. +.

Of this *cataplasme* I have made often use, and I doe finde it to be a soveraigne *Receit* for many infirmities; it also preventeth much inward sicknesse; it raiseth and batteth a *Horse* much better than either *Grasse* or *Provender*; and it giveth him Life, Spirit, and Stomacke, and keepeth him in perfect health.

Our ordinary Country *Smiths* have yet another drinke, which they administer upon all inward causes, and truly it doth oft times hit right, especially in cold causes, *viz.*

Take Fennugrick, Turmericke, Graynes, Anniseeds, Licoris, Long-Pepper, Comin, of each halfe an ounce, and of Saffron one dram: and of hearbs, take Selendine, Rue, Pelamontine, Isop, Time and Rosemary, of each, like much, but yet no more then will make of them all but halfe a handfull, First chop small these hearbs, and put them into a quart of good Ale, and when they have boyled a while, put in your spices finely powdred, and then boyle them a-

L

gain

All diseases,
a Cataplas-
me.

All Disea-
ses.

3

gain with a small fire; then take it from the fire, and straine it, and put to the liquor the quantity of an egge of sweet butter, and halfe an ounce of *London Treacle*, give this to your Horse bloud warme, and and ride him moderately after, and then set him up warme and well littered, letting him fast foure houres after, and let his drink be either a sweet Mash or white water. This is very good against Feavers, Colds, and the Yellowes. +.

§ 7. A.

Hippoph. *I Met not long since with a disease called S. Anthonies Fire, I pray is there such a disease?*

Hyppos. Yes Sir, there is such a disease, but it so seldome comes to a Horse, as that few Ferriers have had occasion to cure the same; by reason very few know it, and therefore marvell not in that they cannot cure the same. Saint *Anthonies Fire* is that burneth in the flesh most extreame, and hath in it so great malice, as that look what you do apply to the place (unlesse you hit the cure right) it will doe it no good, but more harme, much after the nature of a *Noli me tangere*, or *wild-fire*. This disease is also called by some the *shingles* in a Horse, and like as the Disease it self is very rare, and seldome known in a Horse, so also is the cure as uncouth and strange. For my part I will not professe my selfe to be any whit more skilfull then indeed I am: this disease I never yet observed to be in any Horse: I only have heard some Ferriers talke thereof, but yet I never heard but of one man, who was ever truely able to make a Cure thereof; and this was a Knight of very good worship who taught it me, he averring confidently unto me; how that he had cured three severall Horses of this very malady. I asked him whence this disease proceedeth, and what are the symptomes whereby to know the same; he answered me, that he could never rightly come to be mathematically assured how it breedeth, or occurreth to the Horse, but by guesse onely, and that himselfe thought it came from some *cholericke bloud* passing to his head into the *braine* and *pannicles*, which causeth the Horse to become starke mad, yea so truely mad, as to be deprived of his memory, in not knowing his *Keeper*, or any other body else; yea his fury is so great, as to resist stripes, to slight and contemne correction be it never so severe, he will endeavour what in him lyeth to perpetrate what mischief he is able, by biting, striking, and endangering whom or whatsoever thing commeth into his way, and when he cannot have his minde of living *creatures* whereupon to wreake his malice, then will he doe it partly upon dead creatures, by biting and gnawing the Manger and Racke-staves, and by striking the posts and barres with his *beeles*, and partly upon himselfe by beating his head against the wall and ground; he will also forsake both his meat and sleep, or naturall rest, untill he dyeth, if he be not in time cured, which is thus.

S. Anthonies fire.

Take

Take first help enough, and cast him, which done, take a *worme* which groweth in a *Fullers Teasell*, and put this *worme* alive, and without any hurt into a *quill*: then slit the *skin* of the *fore-head* of the *horse* under the *fore-top*, and open the same round about with your *cornet*, making a concavity an inch round every way and better, betwixt the *skin* and the *bone*: which done, blow the said *Worme* out of the *quill* into the place which you made hollow as aforesaid; but take heed you doe not kill the *Worme* in stitching up the *skin* againe, because that the *Worme* may not get forth: and after twenty dayes the *Worm* will dye, and in that time the *Horse* will be thoroughly cured. This cure was taught me by the aforesaid Noble *Knight*, with which he affirmed to me, that he had cured 3 or 4 *horses*.

§ 8. A.

Hippoph. **V**What say you to an Anticor?

Hippof. Sir, I say it is a disease whereunto *Horses* are oft times enclined, and it commeth sundry wayes, to wit, sometimes with too much feeding without exercise, sometimes of too hard and immoderate riding or other labour; both which waies the *bloud* of the creature becommeth corrupted and inflamed, which maketh its residence in and about the heart, which if it should not have a way to make its vent, it would quickly kill him, by which meanes many good *Horses* dye suddenly, and the cause unknowne. This Disease is apparent to the *eye* by a swelling which will arise in the middle of the *breast* just against the *heart* from whence it taketh its name, which if it be not soone prevented, will ascend to the *throat*, and then it is certaine death. It commeth likewise by surfets taken by heats and colds, sometimes also by Feavers, which are malignant, and sometimes againe by feeding upon unwholesome meats. The signes to know this disease before the swelling doe appeare are these: he will be sicke and grone many times when he is layed, he will hang down his head, and forsake his meat; and then if he should desire to eate, what meat he loveth best, whether Hay, Grasse, Provender, or Bread, lay it upon the ground before him, and if he hath a minde to eate thereof, albeit he make proffer to bring his *mouth* towards it, yet he shall not be able to reach it, but will sooner famish: when you doe perceive the swelling to appeare, first draw bloud from both the *Plate-veynes*, but if you cannot finde them, then let him *bloud* on both sides of the *necke* to a good proportion; which done, you may give him the drinke of *Diapente* with Beere or Ale, putting therein one ounce of browne sugar candy, and halfe an ounce of *London Treacle*, which will drive the sicknesse and grieve from his *heart*; which done, annoynt the swelling with this Oyntment.

Take Hogges grease, Bores greace, and Basilicon, of each three ounces, incorporate all these well into one body, and annoynt and

Anticor.

rub the swelling therewith every day till it come to a softnesse, and then open it, and let forth all the corrupted matter: then wash the Sore with your Coperas water mentioned in *lib. 2. cap. 10. § 4.* and then put in your green Oyntment prescribed you in *capite ibidem*, and it will be soon whole. + Thus have I cured many Horses of this Disease, and I never failed if the Horse had not been swelled too high towards the *throat* or *necke*, before I took him in hand. + But Master *Blundeviles* and Master *Markhams* cure for an *Anticor*, is thus.

First they let him *blond* in the *plate-veins*, and then they give him this drinke. Take a quart of Malmesey, and put thereto halfe a quarterne of Sugar, and of Cinamon two ounces, and so give it him bloud-warme, and keep him warme in the Stable, especially his *breast*, that no winde doe offend him; and for his drinke, let it be warm Mashes, and such meat as he will eate. And if the swelling doe appeare, then besides letting him *blond*, they doe strike the swelling in divers places with their flegme, that the corruption may goe forth, and annoynt the place with warme Hogges grease, and that will cause it to weare away, or else grow to a head if it be kept warme. Thus Master *Blundevile*, and Master *Markhams* cure is in effect the very same. Master *Markham* also prescribeth Malmesey and *Diapente*, which is used also by others, and it is very good: and he also saith that some do administer *Doctor Stephens water*, which he affirmeth he hath seen to have wrought in this kinde strange effects. For my part I submit, for that these *Receits* seeme very probable; howsoever I never did experiment any but that onely which I first inserted, which I had of a famous Ferrier in *France*, and therefore I finding mine to be infallible, made tryall of none other.

§ 9. A.

Attaint
upper.

Hippof. **V** Vhat is that you doe call an Vpper Attaint?

Hyppos. It is none other thing but a swelling of the master or *Back-sinew* of the *fore-legge* above the *Pasterne-joint*, and most commonly commeth by an over-reach; that is, when the Horse in running either down a hill, or upon deeps, or upon or over-thwart high furrowes of plowed lands, or upon other evill or uneven grounds, doe strike the *toe* of his *hinder-foot* against the great *sinew* of the *fore-leg*. This I say, we terme an *Vpper Attaint*.

Hippophyl. How may a man come to know assuredly that the grieve lieth in that sinew?

Hippof. Your eye and hand (Sir) will shew it you very palpably; for the *sinew* will swell, and burne, and be sore, and the Horse will halt therewith.

Hippoph. What cure have you for it?

Hippof. We use to apply to the place a charge restraining which must be ficcative.

Hippoph.

Hippoph. *I should rather think that by applying suppling or mollifying Oyles or Unguents, you might cure it sooner and much better.*

Hippof. Herein Sir, under your favour you are much mistaken: For all things that are suppling are most noxious unto these kinde of Maladies, by reason that all Oyles and unguents will cause the *Sinew* to swell much more than otherwise; and therefore we do apply siccative and drying things. Some use Cauterizings, which indeede will cure, and let the *Horse* upright againe, but therein are two inconveniences; to wit: First, albeit it taketh away his paine so as hee desisteth from hauling, yet will the place be ever after swelled, which wilbe a continuall eye-sore, during his life; Secondly, the marks and stroakes where the Iron went wilbe ever after seene, making the haire of a different colour; both which are great blemishes to the *Horse*.

Hippoph. *Wherein then consisteth your best Cure in this case?*

Hippof. I alwaies use for a Sorance of this nature to apply this ensuing Charge.

Take Cantharides two ounces, Masticke foure penniworth, Venice Turpentine two penniworth, Euforbium foure drammes, Black-Rosin six ounces, Aqua-fortis two drammes: beate the Cantharides and Euforbium into fine powder; then first melt the Masticke and Black-Rosin, then put in your Turpentine, which so soone as it is molten, put in your Cantharides and Euforbium, and let all boyle together, keeping them stirring, and have a speciall care it boyle not over; and when you have taken it from the fire, put in your Aqua-fortis, and so stir them well together, and put it into a glasse or gally-pot, and so keepe it for your use. And when you have occasion to use the same, first wash and bath the grieved place well, then with your Splatter, spread it upon the place being made warme, and clap flox upon it of the same colour, and give him rest, and he will doe well. But he must have time, and after a weeke that hee hath beene thus charged, let him be put forth to grasse if it be not in Winter, or the Winter or cold weather approaching. +. Another.

Take the whites of two new-layed Egges, and the powder of Bole-Armonack, and the best and strongest white Wine Vineger, incorporate these very well together with the powder of Sanguis draconis, and having shaven away the haire as aforesaid, spread it good and thick upon the grieved place, adding still more every three daies for fiftene dayes together, and then put him forth to grasse, and let him run a whole March, and after so long as you shall thinke to bee sufficient, and he wilbe sound againe. +. This I have also made try-all of, and I have found it to be right good.

A French Marshall taught me a Medicine for an *Attaint* or *Overreach*, whereof I did never make use; howbeit he protested unto me he thought it one of the best cures that he could ever know, and I my selfe saw him dresse a *Horse* therewith, but how the *Horse* became cured

Attaint upper or back-sinew sprain.

cured I had not time to know, by reason I departed from *Orleans* before the Cure was performed. And the Cure was this. Take one or two handfulls of Saxafrage, and all the Sewet of a Loine of Mutton, and a pint of white Wine ; chop the Hearb, and mince the Sewet very small ; and so boyle all these together, which being thus well boyled, take a sufficient quantity of *Horse-dung* newly made by a *Horse* that goeth to grasse, and putting it to the other Ingredients, worke it to a Salve, and apply it plaister-wise to the place good hot, renewing it twice every day for so long time as you shall think to be convenient.

Now Master *Blundevile*, and Master *Markham* doe both agree in the Cure of an *Attaint* which is thus : First, wash and bath the place with warme Water, and shave the haire so farre as the swelling goeth ; then scarrifie the fore place with the point of a Razor, that the blood may issue forth : Then take Cantharides and Euforbium, of each halfe an ounce, powdered, and mingle them together with a quarterne of Sope, and with a shy spread some of the Oyntment over all the fore, suffering him to rest in the place where you dressed him for one halfe houre after, and then you may take him into the Stable, there letting him stand without Litter, and so tyed that hee may not touch the fore with his *Mouth*, and then the next day use him in the same manner againe ; then the third day annoint the place with fresh Butter ; continuing so to doe by the space of nine dayes, and at nine daies end, make him this bath.

Take Mallowes three handfulls, a Rose-Cake, and Sage of each a handfull : boyle them together in a sufficient quantity of faire water ; and when the Mallowes are become soft, put in halfe a pound of Butter, and halfe a pint of Sallet Oyle, and then being somewhat warme ; wash and bath the fore place therewith every day once, till it be whole. This Medicine I confesse I never tryed, but I think it very good. Master *Blundevile* hath only this, but Master *Markham* hath sundry others : some of which, I will relate, to the end the *Ferrier* may make his choyce. Another.

Take Dialthea, Agrippa, and Oyle, and mixing these together lay it to the swelling. Another.

Take also Frankinsence, Rosin, Tarre, Euforbium, Turpentine, Fennugrick, of each a quarter of an ounce, of Sewet one ounce, of Oyle one ounce, of Wax three ounces, & three quarters of an ounce of Myrrh ; mix and melt all these together, and plaister-wise lay it to the place till it be whole. Another.

Take also Sanguis Draconis three quarters of an ounce, Bole-Armonack one ounce, Oyle as much, Mastick three ounces, Suet, as much, and as much Swines grease : melt and mix all these together and lay it to the swelling, and it will take it away.

Another Cure I found in an old Manuscript, with which I have cured many *horses*, which have been much swelled, which is this: *vis.*

Take

Take Turpentine, of Venice one ounce, and Aqua-vitæ, three Spoonfulls: beat them together in a Bladder, or some other convenient Vessell, untill they come to a perfect salve, then annoynt the fore very well therewith, and heat it in with a hot Brick, or a hot Iron: and thus doing foure or five times, it will set him upright. +. This I have often tryed and it is very good.

*Probat
oyl of Turpentine will also doo it*

§. 10. A.

Hippoph. **W**hat is that which you call a Nether Attaint?

Hippof. It is also an Over-reach sometimes, and sometimes againe it cometh by a Wrench, sometimes by a Strayne, sometimes by treading upon a sharp stone or stub, and sometimes it cometh by a blow, and it is called properly a *Neather Attaint*, by reason it being commonly upon the fore-legge like as is the other; it is neverthelesse placed lower than the other is; for whereas the other is above the *Fet-lock Ioynt*, this is under it, for it is commonly upon the *Heele* or *Frush*, nor is it oftentimes visible to the eye, howsoever it may be felt, as well by the heat and glowing which will be upon the *hee*le, as also by the softnesse, for there wilbe a *Bladder* or blister of viscus corrupt matter liketo Ielly, which will grow in the place; and besides it will make the *Horse* to complaine, and it wilbe also somewhat swelled. I have cured sundry *Horses* which have had this Malady, and they have done well againe. The cure is thus,

*Attaint
Neather.*

Take a peece of Filliting and bind it above the *Paster-n-joynt* a little good and hard, which will cause the blister or swelling the better to appeare more visible to the eye; make incision with your Incision-knife, and crush out all the corrupt Ielly, and congealed matter. Then heale it up by washing the sore with Coperas water, declared in lib. 2. cap. 10. §. 4. and after annoynt it with the Greene Oyntment mentioned in capite et §. *Ibid.* and so in short time it will bee whole and sound againe. +. This is a very hard Cure for your ordinary Country *Smiths* to take in hand to performe, if they bee not well acquainted with the nature of this Malady. Master *Blundevile*, and Master *Markham*, have both this manner of Cure, only they differ from me in the healing Salve.

§ 11. A.

Hippoph. **W**hat Cure have you for the Avives?

Hippof. This terme *Avives* we have also gotten from the *French*, which our *Ferriers* doe call the *Vines*. It is a disease which growes under the *Eares*, and *secundum vulgus*, it is called the *Fives* or *Vives* from the *Eares* it creepeth downe towards the *Throate*, which when they begin to enflame will swell, and not only paine the *Horse* very much, but also prove mortall, by stopping his

Avives.

Wind

Wind they will kill him out right, if it be not in time cured; and I my selfe have seene and knowne *Horses* dy of this malady. It proceedeth most commonly of Ranknesse of *Blond*: in the cure, care must be taken that you doe not touch the Graynes or Kernells with your fingers The *Avives* or *Vives* are certaine flat Kernells, much like Bunches of Grapes which grow in a cluster, close knotted together in the place; the most certaine cure is to cut the *Skin* longest wayes, and to lay the Kernells or Graines open, and then with an Instrument made like to a paire of Pliers to pinch forth the Graynes, then to apply unto the place eyther a linnen-cloth, or a few hurds steeped well in whites of Egges well beaten, and so bound on, and renewing it daily, it will cure it: but you must heale up the *Skin* with the Greene-Oyntment before spoken of in *Cap. & §. 16. +*. But the common cure is to draw downe the fore with a hot Iron just in the midst, so farre as the swelling goeth, and then under the roote of the *Eare*, draw two other strokes of the fashion of an arrowes head, then open the *skin*, and with a small payre of plyers, pull out the kernels, and so cut them off, but have a care of the *veine*: that done, fill the place with Bay-salt made into fine powder, and after heale up the fore with the aforesaid Oyntment. +. This have I also practised, and performed the Cure, but with greater difficulty than the former, by reason of the Fire which I put to the place, and therefore I doe hold my former Cure the better, safer, and speedier. +.

Master *Blundevile* and Master *Markham* doe say, that the *Italians* use to take a sponge well dipped in strong wine vinegar, and bound to the Sore, renewing it twice a day till the kernels doe rot; then they open the neathermost part of the softnesse, and so let the corruption forth, and then fill the hole with salt finely brayed: and the next day they wash away the filth with warme water, and the next day after, they annoynt the Sore with Honey and Fich flower mingled together till it be whole. This Cure I never made tryall of, but it seemeth to me to be a very good and probable Cure. Another for the *Avives*.

Take Tarre, tryed Hogges grease, Bay salt, and Frankinsence powdred, of each so much as will suffice, melt these on the fire all together, then with a clout fastened to the end of a sticke, boyling hot scald the places 4 or 5 mornings one after another, untill the enflamed places doe become soft and ripe. Then with your incision knife slit the skin, and let forth the corruption: then to heale up the forances, take tryed Hogges grease and Verdigrease made into fine powder, melt them upon a gentle fire, but suffer it not to boyle more then a waume or two at the most, then take it off, and put to it of ordinary Turpentine, as much as will suffice, and so stirre all together untill it be cold. And herewith annoint the forances daily, till they be whole: + This is very good.

Master *Markham* in his *Master piece*, hath a Cure for the *Avives*, which

which he intituleth; *A most rare and certaine approved Medicine, which will cure the Vives without either burning, melting, roting, or any such like violent exercise.* But as yet I did never experiment the same. The cure is this.

Take a penniworth of pepper, beaten to fine powder, Swines grease a spoonfull, the juyce of Rue a handfull, and of Vineger two spoonfuls, mixe all well together, and convey it equally into both the eares of the Horle, and so tye or stich them up, then shake his eares that the medicine may sinke downwards: which done, you shall let him bloud in the neck-veyne, and in the temple-veine. And this (saith he) is an infallible cure.

§ 12. A.

Hippoph. **V**What disease is that which we doe call the Arraistes?

Hippof. Arraistes is also a French Epitheton, which is a disease we doe commonly call the *Rat-tayles*, engendring in the *beeles* of a Horle, not much unlike to the *Scraches*, but that it is much more venomous and malignant. It commeth of too much rest, and the *Keepers* want of care in the not rubbing and dressing him, as also by reason that the Horle standeth continually in the Stable, his fore-feet being higher than his hinder-feet: for by reason of his great rest and pampering, the *bloud* corrupting in his *body*, falles down into his *hinder-legges*, and breedeth this disease, which now we doe call the *Arraistes*, or *Rat-Tayles*. The best Cure for this Malady is, first, to let the Horle be ridden till he be warme, whereby the veines will swell, and the better appeare. Let him bloud in the *fetlocke veins* on both sides, making him to bleed well; and the next day after, wash the sores with warme water, and then clip away all the *hayre* from about the Sores, then annoynt the grieved places with this Oyntment, *viz.*

*Arraistes or
Rat-tayles.*

Take greene Coperas, and Verdegreece, of each two ounces, and of common honey foure ounces; beat your Coperas and Verdegreece very small, and so worke them with your honey to a perfect unguent, and herewith annoint the Sores daily till they be whole. +. And thus we doe conclude this Chapter.

CHAP. V.

§ I. B.

Hippoph. **V**V *What is your best way to breake and heale the backe of a Horse that is swolne?*

Hippof. We have many wayes to cure a Malady of this nature: if the place be swelled, and yet not ripe enough to be opened, then apply that remedy which you shall finde taught you hereafter, to resolve or ripen the same: and when it is ripe, put your incision knife unto it, or a hot iron, and so open it in the lowest part, so as the putrifaction may the more easily passe away; then every morning inject this *Lotion* with a Seringe; which is thus to be made, *viz.*

Backe swelled.

Take Honey-suckle leaves, Plantine, Ribwort, Yarrow, Burfa-Pastoris, Knot-grasse, and Cumphrey, of each halfe a handfull, boyle these in a quantity of running water, till a moiety be consumed, then straine the herbs from the water, casting away the hearbs, and then let the water upon the fire again, and so soon as it beginneth to boyle againe, put into the said water hony of Roses, one ounce, Allum and Alkenet, of each two drams, stirre all these well together, and let it boyle till these latter ingredients be well dissolved, then take it from the fire, and when it is cold, put it into a cleane glasse, keeping it close stopped for your use. Use this water every day five or sixe dayes together, and it will cure any Sorance in the *backe*, or other part of the *body*, provided that to *skin* the sore, you apply a rag made wet in the said water. + Another Receit I have wherewith I have cured many galled backs, and other sorances: which is as followeth.

Take water and salt, and boyle them well together, and first wash the sore place therewith. Then take Pepper made into very fine powder, and strew it upon the sore, & it will heale it in very short time. + A third I have much more soveraigne than the two former, which cureth not onely all galled *backs*, but any other wound whatsoever.

Take Rosin, and common Pitch, of each sixe ounces, Masticke, and Incense, of each one ounce, Turpentine, Galbanum, Bolearmonacke, of each three ounces, melt, dissolve, and incorporate all these together upon a gentle fire, and as they doe begin to coole, make them up into rolles, and when you would use this Salve, spread it upon a cloath or leather, somewhat thin; but if you be to use it without either cloath or leather, to any outward part that is not yet broken, then lay it on much thicker than you use to doe plaister-wise, and whilst it is warme, clap *flocks* of the same colour upon it. This *Emplastrum* as it cureth any swelling, gall, wound, sore, or hurt; so it ripeneth, breaketh, and healeth all impostumations, biles, and pustils. It is also a most excellent *defensative plaister* for the staying and drying

drying up of all evill humours, and also very soveraign for asswaging of swellings. +.

Another Receipt I have taught me by a worthy *Knight*, but I never made use thereof.

Take the leaves of *Asmart*, and wash them, and lay them all over the place; and albeit you ride him every day, yet will he heale very fast. But if he doe remaine in the Stable without exercise, if you put the water of the leaves upon the place, it will heale him speedily.

Another Receipt I have which was taught me by a *French Marisball*, howbeit I made no tryall thereof, but he commended it to be *tres-bonne*; which is this, *viz.* Take three parts of sheeps-dung, and one part of wheate or Rye-flower, and dry the flower, and then knead them together, and bake it a little, and apply it bloud warme to the place.

§ 2. B.

Hippoph. **I**s there a disease in a horse called the Barbes?
Hippof. Yea Sir, there is such a disease, and it groweth in the *mouth* vnder the *tongue* naturally, for every Horse hath them, nevertheless there is no harme in them, untill they doe become inflamed, and then they will swell with corrupt bloud, proceeding from naughty *humours*, and become raw, and so trouble and pain the Horse, so as he cannot feed without much griefe: for it commeth by meanes of evill *humours*, and inflamed *bloud*. I never heard of more Cures than two for this malady, which is to take hold of his *tongue*, and on either side under it of the *jaw* you shall see two teats or paps; clip them away close, and then wash the place with a little water and salt, and they are cured. The other Cure.

Barbes.

Take a paire of Sizars and clip them away from under the *tongue*, and let them bleed, then prick him in the palate of the *mouth* with your Fleame, that he may bleed the better, then wash the places with white wine vinegar, Bolearmonacke, and Bay-salt, of each as much as will suffice, and for three or four dayes after, let him see that no hay-dust sticke upon the places so clipped, and he will soon be well againe.

§ 3. B.

Hippoph. **W**hat good Receipt have you to dissolve and dry up all ill humours in the body?

Hippof. The best thing that I could ever know, is a certain Bath which I make, wherewith I bath him, and I doe finde it to be right good, which I make thus, *viz.* Take Sage and Rosemary, of each a handfull, of the barke of the root of Beech, three pound, and of the barks of young Elmes, Oakes, and Ashe, of each a handfull, of Nettles, Penny-

Bath for Humours to dry them up.

Penny-Royall, and of Chest-nuts, the rindes being taken away, of each a handfull, three or foure white Onions cleane pilled and cut into small pieces or slices, red wine three pottles, strong white wine vinegar two pottles: boyle all these together, and cause your Horse to be walked a quarter of an houre before, a good pace, that he may be onely warme, then let him be presently bathed with this *Bath* good and hot, and then set him up warme, and let his drinke be either sweet Mashs or white water: bath him thus three dayes together, and feed him with such meat as is sweet and wholesome, and let him not be ridden into any water in eight or tenne dayes after, and this will dissolve and dry up all his bad *humours*. +. This I learned of an *Italian Rider* in *Bruxels*, whom I saw practise it very often whilst I was there, and rode with him. And since I have my selfe administred it to many good Horses here in *England*, with which I have done very much good.

Hippoph. Now that we speake of Bathes, I would gladly know what are their vertues.

Hippof. Bathes have been much more in use in former times than now they are, howbeit I and my Master doe use them often, and we doe finde great profit by them: for they are fomentations, which be the most comfortable things of any to the *joynts* and *limbs* of a Horse. Bathes dissolve all ill *humours*, and gives heat and warmth unto all the *members* that are benumbed with cold, or for want of *blond*; it comforteth and strengtheneth them; and it giveth very great ease to the pained *sinewes*. Besides, it asswageth swellings in or about any outward parts of the *body*; for *legges* swelled, stiffe or benumbed, or for any other joynt pained or grieved, or for any *string hault*, *crampe*, or *convulsion*. I commonly use a *bath*, which doth in short time cure all such like Maladies. And my *bath* is this.

Take Muskadine and Sallet oyle, of each a pinte, Bay-leaves and Rosemary, of each two handfulls, let them boyle halfe an houre, and when you are to bathe your Horse therewith, rubbe and chafe the grieved place with a wispe or hayre-cloath a pretty while, then put the foot into some broad bowle or payle, whereby to preserve the liquor and heatts, and lave and bathe him thus a quarter of an houre which ended, binde upon the place a piece of Sheeps or Lambs skin, with the woolly side to the *legge*, and let him stand so four and twenty houres: apply this five or six times, and it will be a perfect Cure. +.

Another *bath* I have which is most soveraigne to cure all gourdy, gowty, and swoln *legges*, which cometh either by farch, scratches, or the like, wherewith I have cured very many Horses. And thus it is made.

Take the grounds of a Beere barrel with the Barne, Smallage, Featherfew, Winter-savory, Camtry, Mallowes, Rue, Set-well, Penny-Royall, Wormewood, Arch-angell, of each a good handfull,

s M

and

Bath for
stiffe legges.Bath
1Bath
2

and of the leaves and Berryes of Mistletoe three or foure good handfuls, Sheepes Tallow one pound, tryed Hogges-grease halfe a pound, three or foure handfuls of Rie or Wheat Branne : boyle all these together untill all the hearbes and Mistletoe become soft : but be sure you have liquour enough, and a little before you take it from the fire, put into it some Hay : With this, bathe his Legges; first one, then the other, putting still that *Legge* which you are to bathe into a broad Bowle or Payle, as is afore shewed; and when you have bathed that *Legge* sufficiently, then take of the hay in the Bath, and making a Thum-band thereof, rowle it about the *Leg* above the uppermost or middle *Ioyns*, and put off the hearbes betwixt his *Legge* and the Thum-band: and so use the other *Legge* or *Legs* which are swelled and need bathing : Which done, powre of the liquour remaining upon the thum-bands : and thus let him bee bathed herewith every day once for so many dayes together as you shall thinke requisite, and it will bring downe the swelling quite, and make him sound. +

Another Bath I have no lesse excellent, wherewith I have done many rarecures. *viz.*

Take Smallage, Oxe-Eye, and Sheepes Sewet, of each like much, to a good quantity: Chop them small together, and after stamp them in a stone Morter; then boyle them with mans Vrine, and bathe the grieved parts herewith warme, doing as before with a Bowle or Payle : then with Thum-bands of soft Hay made first wet in cold water, rope up the member, as well above as below the grieve. Use this as oft as you shall see cause, but if the grieve happen in travelling then by bathing him thus over-night and roping him up, he will be able to travell again the next morning without complaining. +. This I doe assure you is a most excellent Bath, and it cureth any Lameness which cometh eyther by stroke; strayne, or other Accident. W

One other Bath I have whereof I never made use, taught mee by a Gentleman, who was well versed in Horse-leech-crafts. And his Receipt is this : *viz.*

Take Savine, and the Barke and Leaves of the Bay-tree, Pellitory, Rosemary, Sage, Rue, of each three ounces, boyle these in a Gallon of white Wine, untill halfe be consumed : herewith bathe your Horse as before is shewed, and whether the Griefe be visible or not use it and you will finde it an approved Medicine. After this manner hath the Gentleman delivered me this Receipt, which he protested to me to be most soveraigne; which I can neither commend nor praise by reason I never yet had experience thereof. And thus much of Baths, now let us passe to other matters.

Bath.
3

Bath.
4

Bell's

§. 4. B.

Hippoph. **I** Pray you Hippoferus, can you shew me what is good to cause a Horse in the Stable to Belly well?

Belly gaunt.

Hippof. That can I fir, for many horses by being kept long in the stable (especially yong horses) wil feldome have good bellies, for their bellies will shrinke up towards their Flankes, and they become as great as Running Horses use to be, when they are dieted for a Course; which doth betoken great Costivenes in them, which proceedeth of much unnaturall heat in the body; and such Horses never thrive or like well, for they be naturally tender, and wash, or flew of their flesh: and therefore such a Horse I could wish you not to keepe, but to put away so soone as may be. For if he come once to hard labour, you cannot possibly keepe him sound, but be often sicke and unhealthy. The best cure which I have, was taught me by a French Marshall, who told me that every horse hath about his Cods two small strings, which extend from his Cods to the bottome of his Belly, to wit, of each side one; which said strings you must breake with your finger, a thing very easie to be done by those that have practised it; and when you have broken them, you must annoynt that place every day with fresh Butter and *Vnguentum Populeon* mixed together; this done, in short time he will come to Belly well.

This I never my selfe tryed, but he that taught it me did much practise it, and hee brake many of those strings of sundry horses in my sight.

§. 5. B.

Hippoph. **W**hat meanes have you to helpe the payne in the Belly of a Horse?

Belly paine.

Hippof. This disease is that we call the Collick, which the Italians do call Colon, from whence our English Ferriers derive the word Collick: the French call it *Tranchaisons*, which is a paine or griping in the Belly, comming sometimes of cold and wind, and sometimes of grosse Humours which ly in the small Guts; sometimes by reason of abundance of Billions or sharp Humours; and sometimes by inflammations in the Body caused by feeding upon raw and bad feedes, which occasioneth Crudities. But of this we shall have cause to speak more in its proper place of the Collick. Only thus much, that whereas paines and Gripings in the Belly do proceed oftentimes from the Liver, and the working of the Spleene, which is most ventrosus. But I thinke it not amisse to give you one Receipt wherewith to cure any Gripings or paynes which may at any time proceed eyther from the Liver, Spleene, or Milt. Neither have you any Signes whereby to know this disease, but only the same for the Collick. And the cure is this.

Take

Take Iſope, Cowſlips, Liver-wort, Lung-wort, of each like much, ſo as all when they be together, they doe not exceed halfe a handfull. Then take Gentiana, Ariſtolochia Rotunda, Fennugrick, Enula-Campana, dried long-Pepper, of each halfe a ſpoonfull, and one ſpoonefull of Honey: chop the hearbs ſmall, and make the other ſimples into fine powder, and boyle them in a quart of Ale or Muſkadine which is much better, and give it him bloud warme, and ride him an houre after, then ſet him up warme, and foure or five houres after, give him boyled barley, and for three or foure dayes, let his drinke be either Maſhes or white water. ✠ With this I have done many good cures.

§ 6. B.

Hippoph. **W**hat is good to heale the tongue of a Horſe, which is hurt with the Bit or Haulter.

Hippof. If the tongue of your Horſe be hurt or cut with his Bit or Haulter, or by any other accident or miſhap, the beſt way to cure and heale it, is:

Bit where-
with the
tongue hurt.

Take Mell-Rofarum, and annoynt it therewith, with a linnen rag faſtened to the end of a ſticke, let the Sore be ſo annoynted three or foure times a day, and let him alwayes after dreſſing ſtand upon the Trench one houre, and in ſhort time it will be whole. With this I have cured many Horſes, ſome of which have had their tongues cut more then halfe through. ✠ Another Cure I have, which a French-man taught me, which is as followeth.

Take red honey, the marrow of powdered porke, quick-lime and pepper all made into fine powder, of each like much, boyle all theſe together, ſtill ſtirring it till it come to an Oynement, with which annoynt the ſore twice every day till it be whole. With this Receit I have cured fundry good Horſes, and I do know it to be very good. ✠

§ 7. B.

Hippop. **H**ow may a man ſtanch the bleeding at the noſe, or when a veine is cut, or a wound given, whereby a Horſe is in danger to bleed to death.

Hippof. We have many wayes wherewith to ſtanch bleeding, as well at the noſe as elſewhere. As thus, Take the tender tops of Iſop, and ſtamp them to maſh, and put them up into his noſe, or lay and binde it to the wound or veine cut or broken, and he will be ſuddenly ſtanch. ✠ Another:

Bleeding to
ſtanch.

Take Burſa-Paſtoris bruized, and apply it to the place, and this is very good. Another:

Take the powder of the ſtone called Emachile, and blow it up into the noſe, or lay it to the veine or wound, and the bloud will be ſtanch. Another.

Take

*If he bleed from the fore parts Tye the contrary leggs
behind about the Cambrill with a ſmall cord ſtraight*

*If he bleed from behind, as with docking or gelding,
Tye one or both of his fore leggs about the knee
or ball.*

Take his own *bloud*, dry it, and make it into fine powder, and apply it as is aforesaid, is very good. +. Another :

Take the tops of the angriest and youngest red nettles, and stampe them very well, and laid to the place, will stanch bleeding. +.

Another :

Take Hogges dung, and apply it as is aforesaid, is very good, +.

Take also Bumbast-cotten, woollen cloath, filke, felt, all these burned, or the hearb called Clownes-all-heale, will doe the like. +.

All of these I have often tryed, and doe finde them right good.

§ 8. B.

Hippoph. **V** *What is good against blindenesse ?*

Blindenesse.

Hippof. *Blindenesse* may come many wayes, and therefore if it be that which commeth of filmes or thicknesse in the *eyes*, which of all other kindes of this nature is easiest to be cured; I will remit them to their proper places. But for filmes onely I will give you one or two Receipts. But first it were fit you should understand how this disease commeth to a Horse. If he be subject to have a thicknesse or white filmes in his eyes; it commeth most commonly of a *rhume* which passeth into his *eyes* from his *head*, which you may soone perceive by his continuall weeping, and sending forth watery moysture which will run from his *eyes* upon his *face*: which when you shall observe, let then his *Keeper* sundry times every day wash and bath his *eyes* with cold water newly drawn from the Well; and this will prevent his *filmes*, and cure that *flux* or *rhume*: but if the *films* doe come before you observe that he had any such *rhume* or running at the *eyes*: then

Take mans dung, and put it into a Fire-pan, and so burne it untill it come to be a cole, then beat it to fine powder, and put thereof into a Goose quill, and blow it into his *eyes* twice a day; and this will cleer his *eyes* againe. +.

Take also the tops of the angriest young red nettles, a handfull, and stamp them very well, then put it into a fine linnen cloth, and then dip it into beere a little, and so straine forth the juyce, which done, put a few graynes of salt, bay or white to it, and when it is dissolved, drop of this liquor into the grieved *eye*, one drop: and do thus morning and evening, and it will take away not onely a *filme*, and other such like thicknesse which may hinder his *sight*, but it will also take away a Pearle. These two Receipts I have often practised, and I have found them very good. +

Hippoph. *I have heard some say that they can make a Horse suddenly blinde, and yet after restore him to his perfect sight againe: but I think they doe boast and cracke of more then they be able to doe, how thinke you Hippoferus ?*

Hippof. Why truly Sir, this is easily done, and I will briefly discover

ver

ver unto you the secret, which is thus.

Take Saffron, and dry it, and make the same into very fine powder as much as will suffice, and put of this powder into a quill, and so blow it into his eyes, and when it hath remained there by the space of halfe a quarter of an houre, wipe this powder from his eyes so cleane, as that it may not be discerned, and this will make him stone blinde. But if you be desirous to have him to reassume his sight again, then.

Take Garlicke, and chew it in your mouth, and then whilst it is still in your mouth, breath into his eyes, and in five or sixe times thus doing, he will againe see very perfectly. + But this latter must be administered within eight dayes after the Saffron was blowne into his eyes, otherwise his sight will never be recovered. ✠

Hippoph. **W**hat is good against the biting of a mad dog?

Hippof. I have onely three cures for it, whereof I never had occasion to make tryall; howbeit they were all recommended unto me for speciall good: the first is.

Take the tendertops of Rue, Boxe-leaves, and Primrose-roots, of each a handfull, pound them together in a mortar, and put them into a quart of new milke, with London Treacle one ounce, and so give it him bloud warme. This proportion will serve very well for two Horses. Another,

Take Hobgoblin, perewinkle, and Boxe leaves, of each one handfull, first mince them small, and then stampe them very small in a stone mortar, and with milke or beere administer it, both at the Change or Full of the Moone. A third cure I also have, which is this:

Take the hearb which groweth in dry and barren hills, called *The Starre of the earth*; you must give it three dayes together; the first time you must gather three of these hearbs with all the whole roots, and wash them cleane, and wipe them cleane, then pound them well, loosing no part of them; which done, give it your Horse in Milke, Beer, Ale, or white Wine; but be carefull the Horse take all the hearbs and roots: but if you will, you may make up these hearbs and roots in fresh or sweet butter which will doe as well: the second day give your Horse five of these hearbs and roots, like as you gave him them the day before; and the third day give him seaven. Doe this punctually as I have here prescribed you, and be you well assured your Horse will be perfectly cured: for albeit I my selfe have never tryed this medicine, yet I doe know the party of whom I had this Cure, hath cured much cattell of all sorts therewith, for it cureth all sorts of living creatures which shall be bitten by a mad Dog; I my selfe can say thus much of this Receit, that I knew it cure a whole kennell of Hounds of a Gentlemans, one Beagle excepted which they did not suspect

Biting of a
mad Dog.

Star of the Earth

suspect to be bitten, which indeed was bitten, so he fell mad and dyed, but all the residue escaped and did very well. Another time a *Gentlemans* sonne of my acquaintance was unfortunately bitten by a mad Dog, who was cured by the party who taught me this Receipt, and this young *Gentleman* (for he was then but a boy of ten yeares old) was so farre spent with the rancor of the disease, before this man tooke him in hand, as that his *head* began to be addle, and he to talke very idly, yet he cured him, so as he lived and did well, and is at this houre living, he being now come to mans state, and a very handsome and proper man, whose Parents whilst they lived, I very well knew, and with whom I was very intimately acquainted. ✠

§ 10. B.

Hippoph. **V** What remedy have you for a Spaven?

Hippof. We have two sorts of *Spavens*: the one we call a Through wet, Bloud or Bog-Spaven; the other a Dry, or Bone-Spaven: the first of these two is easily cured; the second may be cured, but such a cure is not for every Ferrier to take upon him to compasse: for that it is a Cure of very great difficulty, and of no lesse danger. To speake therefore first of the *Bloud Spaven*, it is a Disease which groweth upon the *haugh*, with a swelling which is full of *bloud*, which though it be greatest upon the inside, yet the swelling appeareth also upon the outside, being fed and nourished by the great *veine* which runneth along the inside of the *thigh*, and so commeth along the inside of the *haugh*, and so downe the *legge* to the *pastorne*, and so from the *pastorn* to the bottome of the *foot*. This malady cometh by meanes that the bloud is corrupted through hard riding, especially when the Horse is very young. Now the *bloud* being through over much heating too much stirred, it begetteth a fluxible *humour*, which being marvellous thin, falleth to running downwards towards its center, but it is stopped in its passage in the *haugh*, where it resideth, and by that meanes swelleth, and so becommeth a disease, which pestring that place, makes the *joynt* stiffe, whereby he becommeth starke lame, not being able to goe, but with great difficulty and paine. The signe is most easie, being most apparant to the *eye*. The best way to cure it, is; first, to shave away the haire on both sides the swelling, so farre forth as the swelling goeth: then take up the *thigh veine*, and let it bleed well; which done, tye the *veine* above the *orefile*, and let the *veine* bleed from below what it will; whereby the bloud which was assembled about the Spaven place, which caused the former swelling, is by this meanes sent away: then with your fleame or incision knife, make two incisions in the lower part of the swelling, and after prick two or three holes in each side of the *haugh* where the Spaven is, that the medicine may take the better effect, and when the *bloud* and *water* hath vented away so much, as it will doe, bind round

Bloud-
Spaven.

about

about it, plaister-wiſe the whites of Egges and Bolearmonack very well beaten together, either upon hurds or linnen cloath, and make it faſt about the *hough*, ſo keep on the plaifter. The next day take it off, and waſh and bathe the ſorance with this *bath*, viz. Take Mallowes and the tops of nettles, and boyle them in water till they be ſoft, and therewith *bath* him. Then take Mallow-roots, Brancha Vrina, Oyle, Waxe, and white Wine, ſo much as wil ſuffice, and boyle them, binde this warme to the ſorance round about the *hough*, and ſew a cloath about it, and ſo let it remaine three dayes more; and every morning ſtroke it downewards with both your *hands* gently, to the end the *bloudy humour* may iſſue forth. The fourth day *bathe* and waſh it very cleane with the former *Bath*. That done, Take Carana, and ſtone Pitch, of each one ounce, and of Brimſtone a quarter of an ounce made into very fine powder: melt theſe together on the fire, and when it is almoſt ready to be taken off, put into it of Venice Turpentine halfe an ounce, and make a plaifter thereof, ſpreading it upon leather, and apply it to the place warme, round about the *hough*, and ſo let it remaine untill it doe fall away of its own accord: or if it doe come off ſooner than you might thinke fitting, then make another plaifter of the like ingredients, and apply it as before. ✠ This is the beſt cure that I could ever know for this malady, with which I have cured many *Blond-Spavens*. ✠ Another for a *Bloud-Spaven*.

*Bath for a
Blond-
Spaven.*

When the ſwelling doth appeare upon the inward part of the *hough*, take up the thigh veine, and let it bleed from the nether part of the leg, till it will bleed no longer, and after give fire to the *Spaven* both longſt-ways and croſſe-ways, and then apply a reſtringent charge to the place, and thus it will be cured. This I never tryed, but poſitively ſpeaking, I hold it to be a very good Cure.

§ II. B.

Hippoph. **H**ow doe you cure the dry or Bone-Spaven?

Hippof. This malady is not eaſily cured but with great difficulty and danger: it is a great hard cruſt, yea as hard as a *bone* if it be let runne, ſticking or indeed growing to the *bone*, much cloſer than the barke of an Oake to the body, and it is upon the inſide of the *hough* under the *joynt* neere to the great *veine* of which I ſpake of before in the Cure of the *blond-spaven*: by which meanes the Horſe that hath ſuch a *Spaven*, cannot chuſe but halt. This *bone-spaven* commeth two wayes; the firſt, through hard riding, or other kinde of intemperate labour, whereby the *blond* diſſolving, falleth downe and maketh its reſidence in the *hough*, which doth in ſhort time become dry and hard as any *bone*, from whence the ſorance taketh its denomination. Secondly, the Horſe may have this malady by inheritance or kinde either from the Sire or Damme, as I have before ſpecified in the ſecond Chapter of the firſt Booke,

*Bone-
Spaven.*

where I doe intreate of *Breeding*.

The Signe to know it, is evident enough; *viz.* by your *Eye* and *hand*, for it is both visible and palpable enough, and as easie to be seene and felt as the *Legge* it selfe. The best way to cure it, is first by taking up the *thigh-veine*, which caused it, and fed and nourished it, and let him bleed will, and so put him into the Stable, and doe no more to him for that day; the next day, shave away the haire from off the *Spaven*, and rub it hard with a Rowling-pin (having first annoynted the place with *Petroleum* and chafed it well in with your hand) or some other round and smooth stick, morning and evening for foure daies together, and at the fourth dayes end, slit downe the skin with your Incision-knife, the full length of the *Spaven*; but bee very carefull you do not touch the great *Artery* or *Veine*, both which do ly very neere; for if you do never so little hurt the great *Artery*, you utterly maime the *horse* past all recovery; having thus done, lay to the place the Hearb called *Flamula* bruised, and bind it on that it fall not off, for two dayes more; then for three daies after: Take Cantharides & Euforbium, & incorporate them well together, (being before beaten into fine powder) with black Sope, and Bay salt, and lay this to the place, and thus dresse it every Morning: this will lay the *Bone* and *Crust* bare. After take Fearn-roots, Hounds-tongue, and Bore-grease; incorporate all these together, and lay it to the place, untill you perceive the *Crust* to be loose, and to bee wasted; assay now and then to loosen the same with your Cornet or other Instrument, and if you can with conveniency take it off quite, doe so: Which done, heale up the wound with your Greene oyntment prescribed you in *lib. 2. cap. 10. §. 4.* you may also apply to the Sorance after the aforesaid Corallives, a Plaister of strong *Aegiptiacum* till it hath fretted off the flesh upon the *Crust* so bare as possibly may be, and so you may the better attempt the taking away of the said *Crust*, or by rubbing it with a Rowling-pin, or a Hasell-stick annoynted with *Petroleum* till the *Crust* be converted into a mattrative substance, or other thinner kind of corruption, which may very easily be drawne away. And thus have I cured the *Bone-Spaven* severall times: Which disease I cannot easily commend to be cured by any, but those who have before hand seene some other skilfull *Ferrier* to do it before him, and the Method he useth in the working, by reason that the Cure is so extreemely difficile, and over-dangerous. ✠. But when at any time you doe perceive a swelling begin to be in the *Spaven-place* of your *horse*, whereby you may suspect it may prove a *Spaven*; for prevention whereof.

Take Naturall Balsome, and having first shaven away the haire, annoynt the place with the said Balsome, for two or three daies: and after you shall repress the *Humours* with this Charge.

Take Oyle of Roses three ounces, Bole-Armonack one ounce, wheat flowre halfe an ounce, and the white of one Egge; make all these

these into one body, and every day (having first annointed it with Balsome) lay on the said Charge. ✠.

Hippophyl. *But let us looke backe againe to the Eyes. What say you to Bloud-shotten Eyes?*

For a *Bone* or *Dry-Spaven* or *Curbe* : First take up the veine that feedeth it (whether *Spaven* or *Curb*) as well below as above, then give it fire, then charge the place with pitch made hoat, & clap flax upon it, then foure daies after, you must dulcifie the sorance with the Oyle *Pampiteon* and fresh Butter molten together upon a gentle fire, and when the scarre shalbe falne away, you must applie unto it a kind of stufte which is called *Blauco* or 'white, made I think of Ies-foe, and so continue it untill it be whole. ✠. This is very good.

§ 12. B.

Hippof. I Say Sir, that *Bloud-shotten Eyes* may easily be holpen, if a right Cure be taken, and the *Ferrier* perite : for as touching *Eyes*, they are a tender *Member*, soonest hurt and offended of any part about the *body* of any living *Creature*; and therefore there ought the greater care to be taken in the Cure thereof: and take this by the way for a point of good Counsell, and for a good Rule, that in administering to the *Eyes*, you be very carefull that your Medicine bee not too old, but often made and renewed; for by using old made Medicines, either their Vertues do passe away, whereby the *Member* dressed receives no good; or else, by being too old, the Medicines may most easily putrifie and corrupt, and so by that meanes do much more harme than good to the *Member* you hoped to cure; in-
somuch as if you be not very cautelous in making and compounding your *Receipts* for the *Eyes* aright, you may most easily endeavouring to cure one *Eye*, not faile in putting out both. All diseases in the *Eyes* come only of two Causes: *viz.* First, either inward, or outward; Secondly, by meanes of some Blow, Stripe, Prick, Cut, Bruise, or some such like accident. The Inward Causes do either proceed from evill *Humours*, which do make their resort to the *Eyes*, or else by the meanes of some cold taken, which breaketh forth at the *Eyes* into some great *Flax*; or else by meanes of some hot, sharp, or salt *Humours* which doe make their resort to the *Eyes*; all which doe and will engender *Bloud-shotten*, weeping, or watery *Eyes*; and these doe proceed from Inward causes. Now these Maladies which have their source from outward Causes, are (as I have before mentioned) cy-
ther by a Blow, Stripe, Prick, bruise, or the like, which will cause paine and anguish, and such like inconveniencies, whereby the *Mem-ber* being distempered through heat, burning, glowing, &c. will weepe and send forth much moisture, which will produce not only *Bloud-shotten* and *Weeping-Eyes*; but also (if Art and Care be not ad-
ded in time convenient) Dimnesse of Sight, Filmes, Pearles, Pin and web

Bloud-shot-ten Eyes.

Blond-shotten
Eyes:
a Charge.

web, Dragons, Serpentine, and such numberlesse Sorances, yea and direct *Blindnesse* it selfe, without speciall providence and care used by way of prevention. Wherefore for Maladies of this Nature, I will prescribe you a few Receits, which shalbe very good and approved. First therefore, whereas the common cure in practise among our ordinary *Ferriers* and *Smiths* is, to draw *bloud* as well from the *Temple-veines* as for the *Neck veins*; my Counsell is, which experience is taught mee by my *Master* here, and it hath not a little profited and pleased me) to be very cautelous how you draw *bloud* from weake and enteebled *Eyes*, as *blond-shotten* and *Rhumatique-eyes*, must bee (unlesse in cases of extreme necessity) for by so doing, I have known *Horses* in like cases which before they had *bloud* taken from them were able to see a little, but after *bloud-letting* they have become so blind as a *Beetle*; nor were they ever able (no Art wanting) to see more, so as they after became very notable strong, & able *Millhorses*. First therefore I aver, that instead of opening a *veine*, I counsell you to lay unto the *Temple-veines* a Charge, whereby to stay and hinder that *Flux* of noxious *Humours* which were the cause of this Malady; and let this Charge bee made thus. Take Pitch, Rosin, Mastick, of each like much; melt all these together, and either apply it upon a Plaister made of Leather cut round, or of Velvet, of that color or as nere to the colour of the *horse* as may bee, or else lay it good and warme to the *Temple-veines*, with a cloth fastned to a sticke, and before it be cold, clap Flockes of the same colour to the place, and let it so remaine on, till of it selfe, it fall away. Then dresse the grieved *Eyes* with these ensuing things.

Take the white of a new-layed Egge, Hony, Selandine, and red-Fennell of each so much as will suffice: stamp them all well together, and so bind it unto the grieved *Eye*. ✠. But if you do find, that the sight waxeth thick; and that you observe dimnesse of sight in him, through his weeping: Take then *Lapis Calaminaris*, and put it into the fire making it red-hot, which infuse or quench in a pint of white Wine; which done, let the stone be made red-hot, and quenched in the same Wine the second time, and so in like manner the third time; and after the third quenching, when it is through cold, dry it; and beat it into fine powder, and put the powder thereof into a glasse Vi-
all, and put thereto your white Wine wherein your Stone was quenched, and after it hath stood and infused one whole night at the least; put one drop of the cleere of the Wine into the *eye* of the *horse*, and so into the other *eye* also twise a day, till you have staied the *Rhume* & quite cleered his *Eyes*. ✠. Another.

Take the Iuyce of Selandine, Red-Fennell, Vervine, and Rue, of each a like quantity, viz. one Branch, or Sprigge of eyther; stamp them together, and straine it through a cleane fine linnen ragge into a little cleere running water; then put into it as much grated Ginger, and Bay-salt finely powdred, of each so much as will lie upon a two
pen-

penny piece, putting all these into a glasse-viall, let it stand to settle, and when you doe see it as cleere as it will be, drop a drop of this water into either eye, morning and evening bloud-warme, &c. ✠ Another;

Take also Ale-hoofe (which is indeed your true ground-Ivy) and stampe it well in a stone mortar, and if it be too dry, put therein a little white Rose water, or the water of Eyo-bright distilled, then straine it into a glasse, and annoynt, wash, bathe, and taine (if need be) the sorance therewith, and in short time it will cure the eyes perfectly. ✠ The residue of Receipts I reserve to their due places.

§ 13. B.

Hippoph. **V**What good cure have you for a bloud-running itch?

Hippof. This sorance cometh to a Horse commonly by meanes of some extreame heate given him in the body through over-violent exercise; whereby the bloud is inflamed, some whereof getteth betwixt the skin and the flesh, which running too and fro, being salt and billions, it there doth itch and smart, provoking the Horse many times to rub, scrub, and bite himselfe: Which disease if it be let run long, will come to be an Elephantique leprosie, or at least a terrible mainger: by which means he will soon infect all the Horses which are in the Stable where he standeth, for it is a contagious malady and loathsome. The best way to cure this itch before it proceed further, is, Take Chamberly newly made, two quartes, Bay-salt a handfull, unslaked Lime a handfull, Erule campana root dried and finely powdered, a handfull, but if not dried, then green, cut into thin slices, Hens dung a handfull: boyle all these together a while; then with a sticke with a clout fastened to it, wash the Horse all over so hot as he may well suffer the same: use this three or foure mornings together, and it will cure him, keeping him to a spare diet, and giving him white water. ✠

Bloud-running itch.

§ 14. B.

Hippophyl. **V**What is good to prevent Blowing and Purfvenesse in a Horse?

Hippof. You must first understand Sir, the true nature of this griefe, as also how he came by it, whereby you may the more easily know how to cure the same; for that there be sundry wayes and meanes whereby a Horse may come to be breathlesse and short of winde, and every one of them may be a severall disease, and so require a distinct remedy. But if you meane a shortnesse of winde onely, then know that many Horses are naturally thicke winded, as being crick-throated, narrow Chawled, &c. Also shortnesse of winde may come unto him accidentally, as when being fat and over-laden with flesh, or by being

Blowing & Purfvenesse.

too rank of *bloud*, or by too much glut and foulness in the *body*, then is he subject to shortness of breath and purfiveness; so as upon any motion or exercise he will sweat, pant, blow, and heave at the *flanks*; and this cometh upon him by immoderate riding, eating, drinking, and rest. And such like exercise causeth the *punch* of the Horse (if he be put to any sudden motion or exercise) to be so hard and struted out, as that he must so straine his *lungs*, (*the bellows of the body*) as to cause a dislocation in them, by means whereof they cannot execute their office or function as they ought; and if care and remedy be not speedily had, he will in short time be past all recovery; and then hee is brought to that disease which the vulgar doe call *broken-winded*: wherefore to prevent it, administer unto him this ensuing Cure.

Let all the hay he eateth, (nor let him eat all he desireth, for such Horses are commonly great feeders) be sprinkled and moistened with water, which will assuage his excess of drinking, and very much coole his *bloud*, which cannot but be inflamed. Then give him every morning for foure or five dayes together, two egges steeped twenty foure houres in the strongest white wine vinegar you can get: give him (I say) these two egges, and then the vinegar after, then ride him softly an houre after: which done, set him up warme, and three houres after, give him hay sprinkled with water, and at night when you do give him his Oats, wet them in Beere or good Ale, and let his drinke be white water. ✠ Doe this ten dayes together, so that about the beginning of *May*, and about *Michaëlmass*, he may be in breath: and so keep him to spare dyet, but with discretion. ✠ This medicine will both purge him, and scowre from him much flegme and filth as well at *nose* as *mouth*, and he will be both sounder and in better health a long time after: provided he be also kept to moderate exercise. And if after you have thus drenched and dyeted him, you doe not perceiue his blowing and lifting at the *ribbes* and *flanks* to cease, then be you confident your Horse is past all cure, onely still moisten his meat as before is inculeated, and he will hold out the longer. ✠ Another Receipt I have for the same malady, which if he be not past all cure, will infallibly doe him much good, which is this, *viz.*

Take wheate meale, the powder of Lung-wort, *alias* Mullet, Gentiana, Anniseeds, Comin-seeds, of each three drammes, make them into fine powder, and make paste with them with honey, and fresh butter, of each like quantity, so much as will suffice, and put to it the yolkes of two new laid egges; make this paste into pills, and every morning fasting give him three or foure of these pills rowled up in the powder of Enulacampana, and the powder of Licoris, of each like much. These pills preserve the winde of the Horse mervailously, and keeps him alwaies in breath, and therefore good they be often used.

✠ Of these two Receipts I have had great experience, and a third I was

was taught, whereof I had not oft made triall, yet with that little experience I have had of it, I doe find it to be right good, being as followeth.

Take the Excrements of a sucking child, and put unto it a pint of white wine; let it boyle till the one halfe be consumed, and so give it him blood-warne. This will cause him to forsake his blowing for 15. dayes; so as when hee beginneth againe to blow, give him the same medicine againe, and so keep him with this from time to time so oft as you shall have cause, and by this meanes you shall have his wind good. ✠ But then you must beware you put not into the wine too large a proportion of the Excrements, for it will make him to be very sick, and peradventure endanger him, for howsoever when at any time you doe administer it, it will make him very sick. Remember also to sprinkle his meat, and to give him white water.

§ 15. B.

Hyppoph. **W**hat is your opinion of Botts, Trunchions, and Wormes, their severall sorts, and how doe you kill them?

Hyppof. The generall Opinion is, that there are but two sorts of these kind of creeping Creatures, to wit, Botts, and Wormes, for they hold that *trunchions* and *bots* are both one and the same thing, but they are much mistaken; for *bots* are of a different shape and colour from *trunchions*, and of different natures, for *bots* doe breed and reside in the great *gut* adjoyning to the *fundament*, but *trunchions* doe breed and make their abode in the maw onely, and if they be suffered to remaine any time within the *body* of the Horse, they will make their way through the aforelaid great *gut*, and the *trunchions* through the maw, both which *vermine* doe bring death to the Horse. Now I doe averre, that there is a third sort, which have none other denomination than plaine *wormes*, unlesse you will adde the word *maw-wormes*, and so stile them *maw-wormes*, which name indeed is most proper to them, by reason that they select for their resting place the *maw* onely, from which they never depart, where they doe eat small holes quite through the *maw*, by meanes whereof the Horse dyeth.

The *Bots* are a kinde of little wormes with great heads and small tayles, they breed and live as I said before in the great *gut*, adjoyning to the *fundament*, and they may be taken away most easily by putting in your hand, and by picking them from the *gut* to which they are fastened.

Trunchions are in shape short and thick, and of a pretty bignesse, and they have blacke and hard heads, but they must be sent away by medicine.

Maw-wormes are long, red, and slender, much like unto earth-wormes, most of them of the length of a mans finger, and some are longer;

Bots, &c.

Three sorts of vermine which doe engender in the body of the Horse.

1
Bots.

2
Trunchions.

3
Wormes.

longer; these must also be taken away by medicine. All these three sorts doe ingender in the *body* of the Horse, by meanes of evill, raw, and flegmatique meates, which have turned to bad digestion, whereby putrified matter hath bred in the *maw*, and from thence these three sorts of evill creatures have engendred. You may very easily know when your Horse is troubled with them: for he will sweat with paine, stampe with his *fore-feet*, and strike at his *belly* with his *hinder-feet*; he will also turne his head towards his *belly* to looke upon it, and forsake his meat, he will also grone, tumble, and wallow; he will also rub his tayle as if it were troubled with the itch. Now how to kill these wormes is very difficile, for feare of endangering the life of your Horse: onely medicines must be given which must cause them to distast the maw, and to feed upon such drinckes being sweet, whereby he may voyd them with his *dung*. I will here give you many Receipts, some of which I have very much experimented; and the first is this, *viz.*

Take of Egremony one handfull, chop and stamp it small, and put unto it a quart of new milke, with brimstone made into very fine powder, halfe an ounce: give this to your Horse fasting bloud-warm, and keep him upon the trench fasting three houres at the least, and at night give him white water. ✠ Another.

Take the guts of a well-growne chicken, (all but the gizzard) and rowle it up warme in the powder of brimstone, and bay-salt, and put it downe his *throat*, and trot him up and downe halfe an houre, doing as before. ✠ Another.

Take new milke, and the powder of brimstone, this doth the like. ✠ Another.

Take Saven and Worme-wood chopped and stamped small, put to it a pinte of Muscadine, and give it him warme. ✠ Take also a quart of *brine* newly made, and give it him to drinke. ✠ Another:

Take as much *Precipitate*, alias *Red-Mercury calcined* as will lye upon a two-penny piece of silver, and convey it into a piece of sweet butter the bignesse of an egge, in manner of a pill: give him this in a morning fasting, the Horse having stood all night in his *Mussell* at the empty *racke*, unlesse extremity doe compell you, for in such a case you may administer it at any other time. When you are to give it him, take forth his *tongue*, and make him swallow the whole pill, then ride him a while up and downe, and after set him up warme, causing him to fast three houres after: and with this medicine you may kill all manner of *Bots*, *Trunchions*, and *wormes*, of what kinde soever. yet at the giving, you must be wondrous circumspect and carefull; for this *Precipitate* is a very strong poyson, wherefore you must be very observant of your proportion, wherein you ought not to exceed, except with good caution. Again, if you mixe your *Precipitate* before hand with a little sweet butter, the quantity of a hasell-nut; and then afterwards lap it up in the greater lump of butter, it may be received by the

the Horse to his lesse danger, and it will besides very much allay its evill quality. But this I leave to your own discretion, assuring you that there is hardly any thing comparable to this, for this disease.

✠ This Receit I have administred unto three Horses onely, whereof the first and last I cured, but the second dyed under my hands: but I doe assure you not for any want of care. ✠ Another:

Take Sublimatum so much as can be taken upon a two penny piece of silver, and made up in butter will kill the Bots in a Horse, if it be administred as was the former Receit. This I did never try. Another.

Bots.

Take a quart of good Ale, of Rue, and Saven, of each a quarter of a pound, of Stone-Crop halfe a pound: bray all these in a mortar, and put them to the Ale, and boyle it well, then straine it, and give it him bloud-warme, and he will voyd them. Another;

Take of new milke a quart, and a penny weight of brimstone in fine powder, and twenty of the long haire of his taylor, cut them very short, and put it all together into the milk, and give it him to drink, and then throw a handfull of bay salt into his mouth, and he is cured.

✠ Another.

Take a quart of strong Wort, and give it him to drinke bloud-warme, and let him fast eight houres after. Another;

Take the first day a quart of new milke, and put to it halfe a pinte of honey, and give it him warme: this will cause them to give over from gnawing and feeding upon the maw for a season, by reason they will drinke and sucke the milke and honey for a time: the next day, give him this drinke:

Take a quart of sweet Wort, or of your strongest Ale, specially if it be new, then take a quarter of a pound of Ferne roots, of Saven halfe a pound, of Stone-Crop halfe a pound; stampe them all together, and put to it of brimstone and of foot, of each two spoonfulls, both well powdred, and let all these be well steeped in Wort or Ale two hours, then strain it, & give him of this two good horn-fulls, then bridle him, and let him stand upon the trench fixe houres, but this will not kill them; the third day give him these purging pils. Take of Lard one pound, let it be laid in water two houres, then take nothing but the pure fat thereof onely, beat it well in a stone mortar, and put thereto of Anniseeds, Licoris, and Fennugrick, all made into fine powder, of each halfe an ounce, Aloes powdred, two drams, and of Agaricke one ounce: make all these well mixed into one body, and divide them equally into fixe Pils or Bals, then the Horse having fasted over night, give him in the morning three of these Pils, annointed first with honey, then cloath him up, and litter him well, and keep the Stable warme, and at night give him a sweet Mash, and for three dayes after, let him have none other drinke then white water. These Bals will so purge the bad humours that breed and nourish these vermine, that the Horse will be perfectly cleane and free from them,

them, of what kind soever they are : and you shall find them to come away in his *Dounge*, and the most of them to be living ; for no Medicine (but those two only of *Precipitate* and *Sublimate* before remembered, in which is so great perill) can kill them. †. This Receipt before any other I have made most use of, & I find it to be the very best, and most infallible of them all ; and this will hardly leave one *Bot Trunchion* or *Worme* in all his *Body* : I forbear to report unto you, what quantity of these *Vermine*, a *Horse* hath voyded at a time, for I love not to relate *Wonders*. Another Receipt I will deliver you, howbeit not equivalent to the former, which is this, *viz.*

Take the tender tops of greene broome, and of Saven, of each halfe a handfull, chop them very small, and work them up into Pills with fresh or sweet Butter ; and having kept the *Horse* over night fasting, give to him three of these Pills in the Morning early, then set him upon the Trench, and let him fast two houres after, but give him no Water till night, and that white Water. †. This also have I experienced, and have found it to be very good, for it hath caused the *Horse* to voyd many of these bad *Cattle*. I will conclude with this : *viz.*

Take a quart of Milke warme from the Cow, and put to it of Hony halfe a pint, and give it him the first day ; the next day take Rue and Rosemary, of each halfe a handfull, stamp them well together, then let it infuse, together with the powder of Brimstone, and Soute, so much as will suffice, foure houres in Wort or Ale a quart, then straine it, and give it him bloud warme ; then let him bee walked or gently ridden an houre or two, and so set him up warme, and give him Hay an houre before you give him any drinke, which let bee white Water, and you must not give him Hay in foure or six houres after you have given him his foresaid drinke. And you must withall remember, that in all Medicines as well for this kind of Malady, as for any other his drinke must be either a sweet Mash, or else white Water. †. This also is a very good Receipt, and I have had good experience of it, and it hath evermore wrought well. †.

§. 16. B.

Hippoph. **W**hat helpe have you for a Brittle Hoofe ?

Hyppos. This cometh two waies, to wit, by nature, or by accident : it cometh naturally when the *Stallion* who begat him, or the *Mare* which did Fole him, was subject to the same infirmity ; and therefore I doe advise all men to forbear Breeding with such a *Stallion* or *Mare*, for all their *Colts* will bee in danger to partake thereof. If it come Accidentally, then must it fall out to come either by some Surfet that fell downe into the *Feet*, which caused a siccity in the *Hoofes*, or else in that he had beene formerly Foundred or heat in the *Feete*, and not well cured. I need not shew the Signes where-

Brittle hoof

whereby to know this Malady, being it is most apparant. As touching the Cure, I will give you but only one Receipt for the present; by reason I shall have occasion to handle it more largely when we come to intreate of the *Hoofes*. And the Cure is this; *viz.*

Take a Rape, or a Drawing-Iron, and with eyther of these make the Coffin of the *Hoofe* fine and thin, in all such places as you shall see caule, and pare the *Soles* very thinne also; then apply to the *Feete*, as well *Soles* as *Coffins* this ensuing Charge. Take Ry-bran, or for default thereof, Wheate-bran, *Oxen* or *Cowes*-dunge, of these so much as will suffice; then take Sheepes-Suet, and Hogs-grease tryed, Tarre, and Turpentine of each halfe a pound, mince the Sheepes Suet very small, and melt it on the fire, then put to your Hogs-grease, and when these be molten, put in your Oxe or Cow-dung, stirring them well together, then by degrees put in your Bran, continually stirring them, and lastly your Tarre and Turpentine, and when you have kneaded al these so well together as that they are become one body and like to paste: take them from the fire and so keepe them for your use, and being only warme, stop his *Soles* therewith, but tack on his *Shoes* first: but for his *Coffins* make Bagges of course cloath, and first covering all his *Coffins* good and thick, fasten those bagges over his *hoofes* to his *Pasterms*, but take heed they be not too hard tyed, yet so as they may stay on; dresse him thus every day once for fiftene or twenty dayes together, and let him not in all that time touch any Water with his *Feete*, and his *Hoofes* will become firme and tough againe. After if you turne him forth into moyst ground, it will be the better, if the season will permit it. You must during the time of his cure give him continually white Water. ✠. This cure I have often tryed, and it is very good. †.

§. 17. B.

Hippoph. **W**hat doe you hold good to be applyed to the Heeles and Feete of a Horse, that is bruised and beaten with travail?

Hippof. Sir, I will give you only one Receipt for this cure, which I have often used, and it is so truly a good one, as that it's equall can hardly be found. And thus it is.

Take of the tender tops of the most angry, and stinging Nettles you can get one handfull, stamp them very well in a Morter, and when they be thoroughly beaten, put unto them of Turpentine and tryed Hogs-grease, so much as will suffice, to bring it to a formall Vnguent: Apply this to the *Feete* and *Heeles* of your *Horse*, in bags or cloutes, and let this bee done the very next morning after you come where you may rest him, renew this every day once, and in short time he wilbe sound, and well againe. †.

*Bruised
heelles and
feete.*

§ 18. B.

Hippoph. **VV** *What is good to allay burning with Shot, Gun-powder, or Wilde-fire?*

*Burning
with shot.*

Hippof. For this malady I use evermore to take varnish, and to put it into faire water, and to beat the water and varnish very well together, then I powre away the water from the varnish, and so with a feather I annoynt the place burned, and in few times dressing, it will kill the fire; which done, I heale the sorance with carnifying and healing salves. + This is very good.

But I will now give you two or three other unguents, which are most precious against all sorts of burnings, which is this.

Take Hogges grease as much as will suffice, set it upon the fire, and let it boyle well, and as the skimme ariseth, take it away with a feather or such like thing, untill no more will arise; that done, and that it hath boyled enough, then put it forth into an earthen vessell, and set it forth into the open ayre foure or five nights, after which time you must wash it in a great quantity of cleere running or fountaine water, to the end it may be free from salt or other filth, and wash it so long in sundry waters in some great bowle, until it come to be very white, Then melt onely this oyntment, and so keep it for your use, where-with annoynt the places grieved, and in short time it will cure them. + This I had of a famous French Marishall, and I have often used it, and I ever found it to be most soveraigne for all sorts of burnings. But if Hogges grease may not be had, then take the fat of Bacon, and wash it well, and it is marvellous good. + Another,

Take fresh butter, and the whites of egges, of each as much as will suffice, beat them well together, till you bring them to a formall unguent, and annoint the places burned therewith, and it will speedily take away the fire and cure them soundly. + This is also speciall good. Another.

Take a stone of quick-lime which must be well burned, (that which is best burned, will be lightest) dissolve it in faire water, and when the water is lettled, so as all the Lime remaineth in the bottome, straine the cleereft of the water thorow a fine cleane linnen cloath, then put unto this water either the oyle of Hemp-seed, or of the oyle of Olive, of like quantity with the water, and so beating them well together, you shall have an excellent unguent most precious for all sorts of burnings. And the nature of these three unguents be to leave no scarres. Wherefore we apply them for most soveraign remedies as well for man as beast in cases of this nature. + This also I have often tryed, and I have found them all to be most singular.

§ 19. B.

Hippoph. **H**ow doe you take away bunches, knots, warts, and wens, from a Horse?

Hippes. These kindes of sores doe come to a Horse, by meanes of much ranknesse of bad bloud, which is engendred of peccant humours, which humours doe proceed of naughty meat. They are so apparant to the eye, that any man may point at them with his finger. The way to free your Horse of them, is first: take up such veines as you may know to feed them; then shave away the hayre from about the places, and for foure dayes together, lay *Aegiptiacum* to them; at foure dayes end, wash and bathe the places with strong wine vinegar made hot; then take wine vinegar one pinte, green coperas and Dyers gals, of each foure ounces, cantharides two ounces, bay salt one handfull, make these into fine powder, and let them boyle on the fire with the vinegar a little, and so wash the sores therewith scalding hot, and every third day continue thus to doe till you perceive them to dry up. Let the scurfe fall away of its own accord at leisure, if any more shall happen to grow forth afterwards, apply the same medicine againe, albeit it was formerly cured by the same thing: yet I have not seen any Horse to fall into the same malady againe, and during the time you have him in cure, let him not come in any water, but keep him in the stable warme. + Another cure is this: First (as before) shave away the hayre, and take up the veins which feed those sores, then fixe dayes after, let him bleed in the heeles to draw away the humours downwards: then wash and bathe him well with hot vinegar; which done, take a quart of oyle of Nuts, and Verdegreece powdred two ounces, and a quarter of a pinte of Inke; mixe all these well together, and apply it cold to the places, rubbing and bathing them well therewith, and if the knots and warts doe not begin to dry up at the first dressing, then must you begin again every fourth day untill such time as they be thoroughly cured. ✠ Another, Take course honey one pound, Verdegreece in powder three ounces, mixe these well together with the finest wheat flowre, and so bring it to an oyntment, and after you have cleansed the sores as before is shewed you, apply this oyntment to the place with a rowler: if there be any warts among the knots, cut them away cleane before you doe apply the said oyntment, and thus doing ten or twelve dayes every other day, he will be perfectly cured. + Another: Shave away the hayre, and take up the veins as aforesaid, then wash and bath the place well, then take mutton sewet, mallowes, and brimstone, make a decoction hereof, & when you have very well bathed the sores with the said decoction, take the substance thereof, and putting it between two linnen cloaths, make it fast to the place over night, and in the morning take it away, which done, apply unto the place this unguent,
viz. Take

Bunches,
Knots, &c.

Take vineger and mutton suet, the gumme of the Pine-tree, new waxe, and rosin of each like much : melt all these together (but put in your Gum last) and so annoint the sorances with a feather twice every day till they be whole. Of this Cure I never made tryall, but it seemeth to be a good one. You must not forget in every of these Cures to take up such *veines* which in your judgement you may finde to feed those sorances, and to shave away the *hayre* from about them cleane. Now with this other Cure, I will conclude. Wash and bathe the places with the decoction last before mentioned, and lay the substance to the sores. Take then new Waxe, Turpentine, and Gum Arabicke, of each like much : melt them to an unguent, and herewith annoint the sorances; during which time, let him come into no water, and the Poultis of Mallowes, &c. must be every night applied till he be whole. Another :

Take (and to conclude) blew slate and brimstone, of each four ounces, Verdigrease one ounce, made into fine powder, then take fresh butter four pound, melt it in a small kettle or Posnet, and so loon as the butter is molten, put into it all the former ingredients, and so let them boyle wel; and when you have brought it to a perfect unguent, take it off, and keep it for your use. And when you would use it, warm thereof upon a chafing dish and coles, and annoynt your Horse therewith upon the sorance, and that but once, and it will suffice. But you must let him *bloud* the day before you doe annoint him in the *necke veine*. And at the end of eight dayes, take a quantity of cold Lee, and three ounces of blacke sope, and wash the sorance therewith. This quantity of oyntment will serve but onely for two Horses. Of this Receipt I never had occasion to make tryall; but it was taught me by a famous *Marishall* of *France*, who commended it unto me for an extraordinary good Receipt; and truely it seemes to me so to be.

CHAP. VI.

§. 1. C.

Hippophylus.



What is good to bee applyed to a Horse, that hath cast himselfe in his Halter?

Hippof. This commonly commeth to a Horse which being tyed down to the manger, his *care* or *Poule* itching, with his hinder *Foot* scratcheth the place that itcheth, so as when he taketh away his *Foot*, the Halter catcheth into the *Pasterne* *Joyn*t; which he feeling, falleth to striving, whereby he casteth himselfe downe, and by meanes of the hardnesse of the Cord, he is gauled even to the very bone, and many times (if he be not opportunely rescued) the Halter doth strangle him, and he found starck dead. But if the Horse do escape with life, he will be neverthelesse terrible gauled, which will soone rankle and swell, unlesse cure be presently administred. The signe whereby to know it, is apparant enough. I will give you only two Receipts for this sorance, whereof the first shalbe this; *viz.*

Take the leafe of the hearb called *Saubsucus*, stamp it and strayn it, and take only the juyce thereof, and apply the said juyce to the sorance by washing it therewith, after take a linnen cloth, white and cleane, and make it into three or foure folds, steeping the cloath in the said juyce, and bind it on to the place grieved: but in Winter when the said Leafe is not to be had, you must take the second rinde thereof, and do therewith as before; but then note, that before you wash and apply the saide juyce to the wound, you must first wash the sorance with warme Water, and then apply your said juyce, and he shalbe perfectly cured in short time. This I never yet experienced, by reason I could never yet meete with the Hearb. This second I have often tryed, and I have found it to bee infallible, *viz.* Make a Rowle of fat Wooll, and steepe the same in Vineger and Sheepes Suet so much as will suffice, boyled together till it commeth to bee very thick, and let the Rowle bee full as long, or rather somewhat longer then the place gauled: apply this to the sorance Plaister-wise, and bind upon it a cleane Linnen cloth, changing it twise a day, and in short time it wilbe whole. This is right good. +.

Cast in a Halter.

§ 2. C.

Hippoph. **VV** *What Cure have you for a Canker?*

Hippof. This is a very loathsome Sorance, which if it be suffered to run long will so fester, and corrupt the place where it hapneth, that it will violently eate, even to the *bone*: if it fall upon the *Tongue*, it will eate the very roote in sunder; if in the *Nose*, it will eate the very *Gristle* through; You may easily know this Sorance, for that the places wilbe very raw, and bleed often, and many times you shall perceive a white Scurfe to grow upon the place grieved. For it is a most *Cankerous Ulcer*, which oftentimes is engendered of a fretting humour. It commeth two waies, that is, eyther of naughty, and corrupt *blond* procured by meanes of unwholesome meate, or by some *Bilious Humour* which came to the *Horse* by an extreame cold not long before taken, which will cause his breath to stinke loathsomely. I will deliver unto you sundry cures for this sorance, which my selfe have experimented, and have found them to be very good.

Canker.

Take white Wine halfe a pint, Roch Alome the quantity of a Wall-nut, Bay-salt halfe a Spoonfull, English Honey one Spoonfull, Red-Sage, Rue, Ribwort, Honey-Suckle Leaves, Yarrow, Plantaine, Bramble-leaves, of each like much, but of every one a little: boyle all these in the white Wine so much as will suffice, till a quarter be consumed, and then first inject of this Water into the sorance, or else if the *Canker* be in the *Mouth*, wash the place with a clout fastened to a sticks end, and so dresse him therewith twice a day or oftner if you shall see cause, till it be whole. †. Another

Take greene Coperas, and Alome, of each one pound, white Coperas foure drammes, boyle these in a pottle of running Water untill almost the one moiety bee consumed, then take it from the fire, and put into it of Honey half a pound, then holding up his *Head* with a Drenching Staffe (but yet not too high) with a Pewter or Elder Serring or Squirt, inject it into his *Nose* (if the *Canker* be there) bloud warme; which done, give presently his *head* liberty, whereby hee may snuffle and blow forth the corruption, and faile not to inject him thus three or foure times one after the other at every dressing; and do thus Morning and Evening till it bee whole; which will not be long. †. But if it be only a sore Mouth, and that it come to be a *Canker*, then.

Take of the strongest white Wine Vineger, and make it thick with powdred Alome, and so wash the sorance therewith two or three dayes together, for this will kill and destroy the *Ulcer*; then heale up the Sorance thus; viz.

Take of faire Water a quart, Alome, and Honey, of each foure ounces, Maudeline leaves, red Sage, and Columbine leaves of each

a handfull : boyle all these in the Water till halfe bee consumed and every day twice, that is, Morning and Evening, wash his *Mouth* therewith bloud-warme, and it will heale him. +. Another.

First make this strong Alome Water. *viz.* Take Alome halfe a pound, Hony halfe a pint, red Sage, and Wood-bind-leaves, of each a handfull : boyle all these in faire water, till halfe bee consumed : with this Water and Hearbs, wash and rub the Sores till they become red and raw, then take white Wine Vineger halfe a pint, Alome powdred two ounces, Ginger powdred halfe an ounce, and of life Honey halfe a pint, mix all these well together, and therewith annoynt the sore Morning and Evening, and it will cure him. +.

All these Receipts I have made tryall of, and have found them to be right good. Another.

Take the juyce of the Root *Asphodill* seven ounces, Quick-lime, & Arsnick of each two ounces, beat and incorporate all these together, and put them into a new pot close stopped, and let it boyle till it come to ashes ; these ashes you shall apply to the Sorance twice a day, but the sore must be first washed with strong Vineger, as before is taught.

§. 3. C.

Hippoph. **H**ow cure you that Horse who hath cast his Hoofe ?

Hippof. This is a troublelome Sorance, yet with care it may be cured : it commeth either by meanes of some Foundring, or by an Accloy, Prick, Stub, Graveling, Quitterbone, or other hurt within the *Foot*, which breaking out above round about the *Cronet*, and in time the *Hoofe* breaking, it falleth from the *Foot*. I neede relate no Signes whereby to know the same. The Cure is thus.

Take Aquafortis the strongest you can get, and first with a Rape or Drawing Iron, file or draw away the old *hoofe* somewhat neere, then touch the *hoofe* so prepared with your Aquafortis, three or foure severall dressings and no more : This done, annoynt the *Foot* with the Vnguent we doe commonly make for *Horses Feet* : *viz.* Take Hogs-grease three pound, Pach-grease two pound, Venice-Turpentine one pound, new Wax halfe a pound, Sallet-Oyle one pound : Melt and mix all these upon the fire, and herewith chafe, rub, and annoint the *Coffin* of the *Hoofe* up to the very top ; and this will bring a new *hoofe*. +

Take also Turpentine halfe a pound, Tarre halfe a pint, new Wax halfe a pound, Sallet Oyle one pint : Melt all these except the Turpentine together till they be well mixed, and a little before you take it from the fire, put in your Turpentine, and so stirre it till it be cold ; but before hand make him a Buskin of Leather, with a thick sole, made fit for his *hoofe*, but wide enough, that it may be tyed about his

*Casting the
hoofe.*

Pasterne, and dresse his *hoofe* with this medicine, laying Tow or Hurds upon it, and so put on the said buskin, and fasten it to the *pasterne joint*, or a little above, but so as that the buskin may no way offend or trouble the foot, renewing your medicine every day once till it be whole. †

This Receit is also most soveraign for a Horse that is *hoofe bound*: and as the new *hoofe* beginneth to come, it behoveth you carefully to observe where it groweth either harder or thicker in one place more than in another, or crumbleth, or goeth out of order or fashion any where about the Hoofe, which when you shall perceive, file the place with your Rape, and so keep the *hoofe* in good fashion, by which meanes there will come a very perfect *hoofe* againe: which being, put him out to grasse into some moyst Pasture or Meadow, for that is the onely way to cause the *hoofe* to become tough.

Hippophyl. *What is the reason that in all your medicines in which you use Turpentine, you put that in last, and not when you put in your other ingredients?*

Hippof. Sir, I shall give you in a word a sufficient reason for this demand: to wit, if the ingredients which I doe put into any medicine be to be molten upon the fire; as Gums, Pitch, Tarre, Rosin, and the like; if I should put in my Turpentine together at once with the residue before it could be sufficiently molten or boyled, the Turpentine (being a drug so subtile) would consume it selfe into *vapour*, and by that meanes leave the medicine imperfect, and that is the cause why I doe put in my Turpentine evermore a little before I take it from the fire.

§. 4. C.

Hippoph. **I**N what cases doe you Cauterize, and what be its vertues?

Hippof. *Cauterization* or giving of fire is of two natures, viz. *Actuall* and *Potentiall*: your *Cautery actuall* is made by hot burning instruments, with which you seare and burn those places which be requisite for the perfecting of the Cure you have in hand, which cannot be peradventure otherwise well cured, but by giving of the fire: as in case of great impostumations, stanching of *bloud* in wounds, or in searing of *veines*, *sinewes*, or the like: or else in case of dismembring, if other meanes be not at hand, whereby to stay the flux of *bloud* without danger of bleeding to death, and so likewise in very many cases of this nature, wherein I doe advise all men that are not very perfect in giving the fire, that they doe not practise upon Horses of price, but first upon Iades, and low-prized Horses, to the end they may the better come to know how to carry their hand, and to understand themselves in this Art the better: as when they are to use the lighter, and when the heavier hand; as also that they do make their circles round, and their lines streight and even, and not crooked

or

Cautery
actuall.

or waving. For this *actuell fire* is a thing most necessary for them that doe truly know and understand the true use and vertue thereof, and therefore it ought to be very carefully, judiciously, and moderately applyed, and never but upon good and very considerate grounds: which in so doing, you shall finde it to be a most soveraigne remedy to hinder and stay all manner of corruption whereunto any member may be enclined, provided that in the handling of your instrument, you touch not *Muscles, Arteries, Sinewes, Ligaments, Cords*, or the like, for so you may utterly lame where you would set upright, and destroy where you would cure, excepting onely in cases needfull. For by applying this *actuell fire*, you shall joyne and conglutinate parts and *members* severed, dry up superfluous moysture, and sinke *members* swelled: you shall besides bring forth all evill and putrifaction matter congealed and gathered into knots, as Wens, Biles, Pustils, Exulcerations, and the like: you shall also assuage old griefes, and make perfect all such parts of the *body* as be any way corrupted: neither shall you need feare the increase of any evill *humours*, by reason that the *skin* being severed by meanes of the hot iron, it doth ripen and digest all manner of putrifaction and matrativ stuffe, whereby it venteth and passeth away much more easily, healing and qualifying all grieve and paine, causing the *member* which before was subject to festring and to gangrene, to become the sounder, and by much the stronger, so as nothing of disadvantage will be remaining, but the *scar* onely, where the iron passed, and the worst that can be made thereof, will be but a little *eye-sore*. But then you must have a very great regard unto your Instruments that they be made according to the nature and quality of the place and *member* which is to be seared: for one fashion will not serve in all causes; for as the places which are to be *cauterized* are commonly different in shape and proportion, so also ought the shapes and fashions of your instruments to be made accordingly. You are also to have a speciall care to the heating of your instruments, which ought to be done with a right good judgement; for as they must not be too cold, so ought they not to be too hot, for by that meanes you may easily enflame the *cauterized* places too much: Againe, in giving the fire great care must be had to the bearing of the hand, for therein consisteth very great cunning, and as I have before admonished you to be carefull that you touch not any *sinew* or *ligament*, so no fire is to be given to the dislocation or fraction of any bone. And as touching the *mettle* whereof your iustruments are to be made: some commend and prefer *gold, silver, and brasse*, or *copper* before *steele* or *iron*: but I will not controule any mans knowledge confessing mine own to be the least; Onely thus much I may averre of that little I have (through Gods permission) that having made tryall of them all, yet I have ever in all my practise found *iron* and *steele* to be the very best, and most certaine to worke with, of all the other *mettals*, and my reason is, because *steele* or *iron* will retaine
its

Cause y
potentiall.

I
Corasive.

Causticke.

Putrefa-
ctive.

its once received heat longer than any other *mettle*, whereby I cannot be so much deceived in my work; for *gold*, *silver*, and *brasse*, as they be sooner made hot than *iron* or *steele*, so are they as loone cold: now *steele* and *iron* mettals are much more substantiall and harder of nature then the other *mettals* be, and therefore as they are somewhat longer before they be hot, so they retaine their heat much longer, which during the time of their agitation, workes more surely: againe, a man cannot tell when those other mettals are hot enough, as also when they be too hot, if you put never so little water to them whereby to allay their over-much heat, they suddenly turne and become so cold as not to be able to make them worke at all; the contrary whereof you shall finde to be in the nature of *iron* and *steele*. And let this suffice for *cautery actnall*. Now I will in a word handle *cautery potentiall*, which as the *cautery actnall* burneth the *flesh* by the hot instrument; even so doth *cautery potentiall* burn the *flesh* by medicine, of which there are three sorts or degrees, namely by *corasive*, by *causticke*, or by *putrifaction*. *Corasive* is when that is applyed to the wound wherein is dead or proud *flesh* to corrode or eate it away, by which meanes the wound is prepared and made the more fit for Emplaisters, Waters, or Vnguent which doe carnifie and make good *flesh*, by which meanes the wound which before was foule, is now become cleane, healed up, and made sound, and these corroding things are commonly Precipitates, Sublimatum, Arsnick, Resalgar, Leads white and red, Verdigrease, Allome, Coperas white and green, Vitreall, Saudaracchia Chrysocollo, Origanum, Mercury, Aconitum, Capitellum, Romane Vitriall, Shavings of Oxe or Heartshorne, Red-coral, Spunge of the Sea somewhat burned, Vnguentum Apostolorum, Vnguentum Aegyptiacum, Vnguentum Caraccum, Magistra, Sal-niter, Cantharides, Apium, Aqua-fortis, Ciclamine, Melanacardinum, and many more, which I am enforced to leave out partly for want of memory, and partly for want of time; all which doe burne, eate, and corrode the *flesh*, putting the poore *beast* to micle paine. A *Causticke* is a greater burner, for that being once put to the *skin*, will in short time make a wound where none was before, for therewith we doe use to make issues, and where it is set to the *flesh* or *skin*, it maketh its way in, whereby we may in shorter space administer our *Emplastrum*, for *Causticks* are stronger and more violent than either *Putrifactives* or *Corasives*; for whereas *Corasives* doe work onely upon *skin* broken, and to corrode and eat out dead, proud, spungy and naughty *flesh*: and *Putrifactives* doe ripen, mollifie, and prepare the wound for the *Causticke*; so *Causticks* do breake *skin* and *flesh* and all; and therefore it is more violent, and burneth worse than any of the two former. Now your *Putrifactives* are such medicines as we do commonly apply to Swellings, which we doe make for the most part of medicines compounded; as Poultesles, roasted-Sorrell, white Lilly roots, and the like; for such things are drawers and ripeners, causing

causing swellings which be hard and fleshy, to become soft, and putractive, and to prepare Sorances for the *Cauticks*, whose nature is to breake and open, what before the *Putractive* had ripened, which otherwise must have beene done by *Cautery Actuell* or by incision. And this I doe hold sufficient to be handled upon this subject; howsoever much more, and many other particulars may be delivered, yet in this consisteth the substance of all, for by reason I aime at brevity, I refer you to Master *Blundeviles Offices*, and to Master *Markhams Master-peece*, who have intreated hereof very accurately.

§. 5. C.

Hippoph. **V**What good Charge have you to be applyed to the Feet, wherewith to stop them, when the Horle is eyther Surbated or in danger of Foundring?

Hippof. This commeth commonly to young *Horses*, which are sorely ridden before their *Hoofes* and *Feete* be hardned, as also sometimes when *Horses* upon hard riding and long travell are ill shod, this doth not only cause them to bee *Surbated*, but also hazardeth their *Foundring*; which so soone as you do perceive, the first thing you do, is, to cause his *Feete* to be cleane pickt, that no Gravell be remaining betwixt the Web of the Shoo and the Sole, then wash the *Feete* with water and salt, and about an houre after let his feete bee thoroughly well stopped with the Charge prescribed you in Chapter the tenth, §. the sixteenth of this Booke; and hee will bee well in short time.

Charge for
Surbating.

§. 6. C.

Hippophil. **V**What is the best way to Cleanse and Purge a Horle from all filth, as his first taking up from grasse?

Hippof. This I have shewed you in the seaventh Chapter of this Booke; but yet I will once againe reiterate it unto you in few words. First therefore, he having beene had into the Stable, the next day, if it be a hot Sunne-shiny day let his Keeper take him out of the Stable into a place convenient, and there let him hanfomely trimme him (a thing which every *Groom* and *Keeper* knoweth well enough how to do;) then let him take ordinary soft washing Sope, and annoint his *Head* all-over therewith, taking a great care that none of the sope or suds, get into his *Eyes* or *Eares*, then wash him with warme Water, and so purge and wash all manner of filth from his *Head* and every part thereof; that done, first wipe all his *Head*, *Eares*, *Eyes*, and *Face* with a warme linnen cloth; and then wipe & rub him dry with wollen clothes: then Sope his whole body all over *Capapee*, leaving no part thereof free, especially his *Maine* and *Taile*, then wash him very cleane with Buck-lee, with a wispe or wollen cloth, and when you

Cleanse a
Horle.

you have sufficiently cleansed him, let him be wiped, rubbed, and made dry, as before you have done his *Head*, & when he is thoroughly dry, let him be led into the Stable and so clothed up with a cleane thin soft cloth, and shod up at your pleasure. And by this kinde of *Purging*, trimming, and cleansing of a *Hoofe*, I have in three or foure houres space so altered a *Horse*, as that his owner hath not on the sudden knowne him.

§. 7. C.

Hippoph. **I** Have knowne Horses troubled with sundry sorts of foule or fore heeles, all which carry the name of Scratches in generall, some whereof have Clifts crosse, and overthwart, some Clifts with Cracks, and some long Cuts, &c. What doe you say to these Maladies?

Hyppos. I say Sir, that every of these sorts are very foule Sorances, yet loone cured, if the *Ferrier* bee so well skilled as to take up the *Veines*, before hee apply his Medicines and Remedies. The Maladies do come by Surfets taken by over-heats, by washing his *Horse* when he commeth home hot, by naughty meate, or by corrupt blood, the *Peccant Humours* falling downe-wards and settling in those parts where the Sorances are, whereby they prove most troublesome to the creature, and no lesse noysome to the beholders, for the heeles be very raw, and do run with loathsome water and matter which doth stinke very offensively. The signes need no description. The cure is, first to take up the *Thigh-veines*, whereby to stop and hinder the falling downe of these bad humours which do feed them; then clip or shave away the haire close from about the sores, then wash the places with broken Beere and Butter warme, and dry them againe, which done, apply this Plaister to the places grieved.

Take Sheepes-suet, or Deeres-suet which is much better, and being molten upon the fire, let it coole till you may hold your finger therein; then put to it so much Ry-bran; or (for want thereof) Wheate-bran as will bring it to a salve, lay it to the place Plaister-wise upon Hurds or Tow, and binde a cleane linnen cloath over the Plaister to keepe it on, and so let it remaine foure or five daies without medling with it, by which time the Sores wilbe thoroughly purged, and the scurfe will easily come off; then take old Bores grease well rotted, and melt it upon the fire, and when it is so cold as was the Sheepes, or Deere-suet, put to it the yolkes of Egges so much as will suffice, and a little Verdegrease in fine powder; incorporate all these well together, bringing them to an Unguent, with which annoy at the sores every day once, untill they bee thoroughly and perfectly whole. +. Another.

Take Oyle de Bay foure ounces, Verdegrease, and Litarge of Gold both in fine powder, of each two drammes, make all these in-

to

(Clifts and
cracks in
the Heeles.)

to an unguent, and annoynt the sores therewith morning and evening, till they be whole. In every of these Cures, let your Horse come in to no water. + Another:

Take Soot five ounces, Verdigrease in fine powder three ounces, Orpin one ounce, beat all these together into fine powder, and then adde thereto as much common honey as of all the residue; boyle all these together well, putting into it as it boyleth quick-lime, as much as will suffice, keeping it alwayes stirring till it be well boyled, and is become thick: with this oyntment annoynt the Sores twice every day, untill they be sufficiently cured. + Another:

Take hot wood Ashes and Quick-lime, and with common honey and white wine; make it into one body to a perfect Vnguent, and herewith annoint the Sores; and if this malady have not been long upon the Horse, this oyntment will certainly cure him, but if they be old and have run long upon him, then give him the fire, and then dresse the Burning with the oyntment prescribed you in the former Cure. Another:

Take a round iron, and give the fire towards the extremities or ends of the *chops*, and annoynt them every day as before, and assure your selfe the *clifts*, *chops*, and *rists*, will not increase but diminish, and so in short time he will be whole and sound. ✠ This is speciall good.

§. 8. C.

Hippoph. I Would gladly know Hippoferus something of Clifters, and their true natures.

Hippof. As touching Clifters, there be sundry kindes of Purgations, and therefore to the end you shall the better understand them and their proper vertues; I will first anatomize unto you the severall degrees of Purgations: and by reason I have been much, and that for a long time versed in this subject, I am not ashamed to discover unto you from whence I had my first grounds and principles; for every man (as the Proverb is) must have a beginning; to wit, he must be a *scholler* before he can be *Master*: for as *Seneca* saith very well, *It is great temerity in any man to take upon him to be a Master, who did never know what it was to have beene a Schollar*. My first rudiments therefore I received for Master *Blundevile*, and after somewhat I attained unto by the help of Master *Markham*, both very well travelled in this Art, the rest I atchieved partly in my travels, and partly from my particular practise and experience. Now Master *Markham* followeth Master *Blundevile* in many things *verbatim*, in the rest in substance, wherein Master *Markham* doth more largely dilate and deliver himselfe, making thereby oft times many things more cleare and apparant, yet they both assent in what they say; viz. that Purgation is defined by the learned Physicians to be the emptying and voyding of superfluous

Of Clifters.

Purgation defined.

The Expert Ferrier.

perfluous *humours*, which doe cumber, pester, and disturb the *body* with their peccant condition: affirming that such ill *humours* do breed much bad nutriment, which the learned doe call *Cacochymia*, which when it will not be corrected or amended, either by faire meanes, or by the help of nature, then must it be compelled, forced, and driven away by *Purgation*, *Vomit*, *Clyster*, or *Suppository*. And whereas Master *Blundevile* saith, that Hories are not used to be purged by *Vomit*, as men be; I in conference with him once asked him the reason thereof; he answered me, for that the necke of the Horse was of that length, as not to be able to purge by *vomit*, which for the present I tooke for satisfaction; I then imagining the thing not to be knowne, untill such time as I travelling into remote parts, where I had frequent commerce with famous *Marishals* and *Ferriers*, I at length fastned upon one eminent for his faculty, who upon occasion offered, used to administer *vomit* to Horses as frequently as he did either *Purgation* or *Clyster*: which thing when I well observed, I demanded if a Horse could *vomit*, and to what purpose he did administer in that kinde; he answered me that a Horse could *vomit*, and that he oft times administred for the same end, and thereupon both gave me his Receipt, and did administer in my presence, and made me an eye-witnesse to the working, not in one Horse alone, but in sundry others. But now leaving this to its proper place, I come to assoyle your demand as touching *Clysters*, their natures and vertues. *Clysters secundum vulgus* are called *Glisters*, but the more learned assume the name *Clyster*, borrowed from the latine word *Clyster*, from whence the French hath it *Clystere*. Now whereas all other kindes of Physick is received in at the *mouth*, *Clysters* and *Suppositaries* are administred *per Anum*, whose natures for the most part are to purge the *guts*, and to caule the Horse to voyd, (and to throw forth of his *belly* such *humours* as doe offend him in matter of his health, to allay the sharpnesse of bad *humours*, to cleanse ulcers, to asswage the grietes and paines in the *belly* caused by winde or otherwise, and so likewise in many other cases. Now *Clysters* are not all of one and the same nature, neither are they all *laxatives* (as many doe imagine) or do serve to one and the same end: for some must be made to give ease, some are *restringent*, and doe binde, some do loosen and *purge*, some are to cleanse *ulcers*, old and long running sores, and some to prepare the *body* the better to receive its *Physicke*, whereby it may the better worke, which otherwise cannot be administred without much perill to the life of the sicke creature. So that a *Clyster* is (I say) commonly given for a *Preparative* or beginning to *purgation*. And a *Clyster* by cleansing the *guts*, refresheth the *vitall parts*, and prepareth the way before. Wherefore I doe admonish every *Ferrier*, that when at any time they are to administer *Physicke* to a Horse, whether *Purgative* or otherwise, if the Horse be not at the time soluble in *body*, that after blood-letting the next day he give a *Clyster*, and then may he be the bolder

bolder to administer what he shall thinke most requisite: lest otherwise by giving medicine, without further preparation, he stirre and provoke the *peccant humours*, which by reason they cannot finde present way forth, being hindred by oppilations in the *guts*, through costivenesse and ventosity, and other impediments do attempt to make their passage by a contrary way, which cannot be done, but with great hazard to the life of the poore beast.

Hippoph. *But of what ingredients doe you make your Clysters, Hippoferus?*

Hippof. We doe usually make our Clysters of Decoctions, of Drugs, of Oyles, and sometimes we adde salt.

Hippoph. *What is a Decoction?*

Hippof. A decoction is a broth made of certain herbs, as Mallows, Marsh-Mallows, Palletory, Camomile, and sometimes of white Lilly roots, and other such like things, which we do boyle in water to a third part, and sometimes we use in stead of hearbs and water, to take the fat of beefe broth, or the broth of a Sheeps head, Milke, Whay, and some such kinde of liquor.

*A decoction
what it is.*

Hippoph. *What quantity of Broth or Decoction doe you usually put in, whereof to make your Clyster?*

Hippof. That we doe administer according to the age, strength, greatnesse, and corpulency of the Horse; for if he be a Horse of a strong and able *body*, of large growth, and stature, fat and lusty; we use to put into his Clyster of the decoction three pintes, but if he be of a small growth, weake, sicke, feeble, or leane, then we doe put in but a quart of the same at most: of oyle we use to put in halfe a pinte, of salt two or three drams at most, and sometimes we put in Verjuyce, sometimes Honey, as we shall finde cause: *drugs* we use, as Sene, Cal-fia, Agarick, Anniseeds, oyle of Dill, oyle of Camomile, oyle of Violets, Sugar-candy, &c.

Hippoph. *What quantity of drugs is needfull for one Clyster?*

Hippof. You ought not to exceed the quantity of three ounces in one Clyster at most, neither must you exceed of butter foure ounces, and you must be very carefull your Clyster be not administred more than bloud-warme.

Hippoph. *What time is fit for a Horse to keepe or retaine his Clyster?*

Hippof. When you give it him, let him be somewhat empty, but before he doe receive it, let him be raked, and then having administred it, let him keep it at least halfe an houre, to the end it may work in his belly, and so do him the more good, and to cause him the better to keep the same; let his Keeper (so soone as the Horse hath received it) hold his *tail* close to his *tuell* for halfe an houres space, or more, for the longer he keepeth it, the more effectuall it will be unto him; the best instrument wherinto give it to a Horse, is a Clister-pipe made of purpose, which ought to be 12 inches in the *shanke*, which must also be put home, and when the Clyster is assumed, let the giver

draw away the pipe by degrees, and not all at once.

Hippoph. *I pray set me downe some good Receipts of Clysters.*

Clyster.

Hippof. That shall I Sir most willingly: the first *Clyster* that I ever gave, was to a small *Nag* of a *Gentlemans*, which being very costive in his *body*, and refusing his meat, did droop, languish, and pine away; insomuch as the owner fearing his *Horses* life, repaired unto me for counsell; when I had well considered the nature of his infirmity, together with its symptoms, I held it most requisite to administer a *Clyster*, which I did, and it was this: *viz.* Take the fat of beefe broth one pinte and an halfe, of good English honey halfe a pinte, adding thereto of white salt two drams, mixe all these well, and so administer it bloud warme *Clyster-wise*, and so soone as he hath taken it, clap his *taile* close to his *twell*, by the space of halfe an houre together at least, and if then it doe not worke, as I am confident it will, then let one take his backe, and ride him up and down a reasonable round trot some times, (but not so as to cause him to sweate) for halfe an houre more, and set him up warme cloathed and littered, and so let him stand upon his trench foure or five houres; during which time he will *purge* kindly; then unbit him, and give him sweet hay, and an houre after he hath eaten, give him white water, nor let him drink any cold water in a day or two after. And this you shall finde to be the best remedy for this malady.

This I have administred *sape et sepius*, and have done great good therewith: for the nature of this *Clyster* is, to open and loosen the *Body*, to bring away with it all offensive *Humours*, to remoove Obstructions engendred in the *Body* by meanes of excessive heat; it cleanseth the *Guts*, and slieth away all slimy substance which is residing in the *Guts*.

Hippophyl. *Why but Hipoclerus I observe a contradiction in you, as touching the quantity of your Decoction; for where as you did before affirme that you use to put into your Clysters as the most but three pints, and at the least but a quart; you say that you did administer to this Horse, but a pinte and halfe only, which is under quantity of what you did before prescribe?*

Hippof. Sir, in answer hereunto you must understand that in cases of this nature, *Physick* ought with judgement to be administred, and the reason why I put into the *Clyster* of this broach so little; was for that the *horse* was growne very weake, poore, and low of his *flesh*, and in good yeeres, & was besides a very small *Nag*, fetched out of *Scotland* from the mountaines of *Galloway* or *Gabwin*, and therefore if I should have made his *Clyster* so strong, and have added so great a quantity of *Decoction* to him, as I might peradventure have put to a *Clyster* for a great, large, fat, healthy, or corpulent *Horse*, I might have repented it; and therefore I made it as I told you, whereby it wrought most kindly, & did him that good which I hoped, & desired: But passing from this now, let us proceed to intreate yet farther of *Clysters*,

Clysters, and of their severall kinds. Another.

2
Clyster
Laxative.

Take Pellitory two handfulls, or for want thereof Melelote two handfulls, or if that may not be had, then Camomile two handfulls, but Pellitory is the best if it may be had; boyle it to a *Decoction*, and then adde to it, of Sallet-oyle, and of Veriuce of the Crab, of each halfe a pint, of Honey foure ounces, of Cassia two ounces, mixe all these well together, and so apply it bloud-warme *Clyster-wise*. +. This we do call a *Clyster Laxative*, for this will open the *Body* and *Guts* of the *Horse* very well, it will take from him all noxious and offensive *humours*; it will carry away all spungy matter: it will allay the biliousnesse and sharpnesse of *humours*; it will cleane old *Ulcers*; it will refresh and comfort the *Vitall parts*, &c. But if you doe finde that by giving too great a quantity, your *Horse* purgeth and scowreth longer and more violently than you would have had him to have done, or for feare it should stir up in him upon the suddaine more bad *humours* than you may easily know how to allay, then give him this *Clyster*, viz. Take the aforesaid *Decoction* one pint, adding thereto as much of Cowes milke, (as it commeth warme from her) and put also thereto the yolkes of three new-layed Egges well beaten and well mixed with the said liquour: and so give it your *Horse* bloud warme. This is called a *Clyster Restraining*, for this is only to be applyed to a *Horse*, that is very *Laxative*, or that doth empty himselfe too much, which is occasioned oft times through overmuch debility, and want of strength, or when nature is very much offended: you may apply this so oft as need shall require. + Another:

3
Clyster
Restraining.

Take Mallowes three handfulls, marsh mallow roots cleaned and bruised, and Violet leaves, of each two handfulls, Flaxe seed three spoonfulls, so many of the cloves of white Lilly roots as you may easily hold in your hand: boyle all these in faire water from a gallon to a wine quart, then straine it, and put thereto of Sene one ounce, which must be infused or steeped in the liquor three houres standing upon the hot embers; then put thereto of Sallet oyle halfe a pinte, and being bloud warme, administer it *Clyster-wise*, causing him to keep it at least halfe an houre or longer if you may: and the best time to give this is thre or foure dayes before the Full and change of the Moon, howsoever it may be given to very good profit (as occasion may profer it selfe) at any other time. + This *Clyster* is to be given to a Ketty or fat *Horse*, which otherwise cannot be kept cleane, for it purgeth *glut* abundantly, and it is also principally to be given to a *Horse* that is newly taken from grasse. Another:

4
Clyster for a
fat Horse.

Take of Whey a quart, of Anniseeds in fine powder, two penniworth, of the leaves of Mallowes one handfull, boyle these till the Mallowes be soft, then straine it, then put to it of sweet Butter foure ounces, which when the butter is molten, administer it bloud-warm. + This purgeth melancholy, it causeth a good appetite which before was wanting, it refresheth the *spirits* dulled, and occasioneth good

5
A Clyster
for melan-
choly,

good

6
Clister in
case of despe-
rate sicknesse

good digestion if the Horse be kept warm, and well tended. Another:
Take of the oyle of Dill, of the oyle of Camomile, of the oyle of Violets, of Cassia, of each halfe an ounce, and of browne sugar candy in powder, three ounces, then take of Mallow-leaves halfe a handfull: boyle the Mallows first to a *Decoction* in faire water, then straine it, and put to the broth all the forenamed ingredients, administer this bloud-warme *Clister wise*. This is a most soveraigne *Clister* to be given in case of desperate sicknesse; it helpeth all Feavers; it is good against the Pestilence, and all languishing diseases, most excellent against Surfets, either by Provender or otherwise, and it will occasion great strength in short time, if it be rightly made, and carefully given. + Another: .

7
Clister for
the Pestilence.

Take the pulpe of Colliquintida, halfe an ounce, (I meane the seeds and skin taken away) of Dragantium three quarters of an ounce, of Centuary, and of Wormwood, of each halfe a handfull, of Castoreum a quarter of an ounce, boyle all these in three quarts of water to a quart; then straine it, and dissolve into the broth of Gerolundinum three ounces, and of white salt three drams, of Sallet oyle halfe a pinte, and bloud warme administer it *Clister-wise*. +.

This I have often proved, and doe finde it to be most excellent for the Pestilence, and to helpe all Feavers. Another:

8
Clisters
Lenitive.

Take the decoction of Mallows, and put to it either of fresh Butter foure ounces, or of Sallet oyle halfe a pinte, and give it him *Clister-wise*. + This is the gentlest *Clister* of any before prescribed; for it is both a *Lenitive*, and a great cooler of the *body*, and doth infinitely ease paine. It is the best thing can be given to a Horse that is taken, or against Convulsions, or Cramps, and most singular against Costivenesse proceeding from any sicknesse or surfet by Provender, foundring in the body, &c. Another:

9
Clister for
the Collick.

Take salt water or new made brine 2 pints, dissolve therein a pretty quantity of Sope, and so bloud-warm administer it *Clister-wise*. This I never did experience, howsoever I have been oft perswaded by many able Ferriers, who have averred it to be the most excellent that may be had for the Collick, or any sicknesse or gripings in the *guts* or *belly*. And let this suffice for *Clisters*: onely by way of advise I counsell you that before you administer any *Clister*, you first rake him; that you put in the Pipe (being first annoynted with sweet Butter or oyle Olive) gently and by degrees, and that you also draw it forth very treatably; that you make him keep it at least halfe an houre; that you doe administer it but bloud warme at most; that you squeeze and presse between your hands the bladder strongly; and lastly, that you let him not drink any cold water in a day or two after, but let it be either a sweet Mash, or else white water.

§. 9. C.

Hypoph. **V** *What is good to be applyed to a Horse that is cloyed, prickt, or hath other hurt in the hoofe?*

Hippof. You must first with your Butter, Drawing iron, or Paring knife, lay the wound bare as may be; then

Take waxe, Hogs greafe, and Turpentine, of each one ounce, Verdigreafe two ounces, boyle these upon a gentle fire, your waxe and Hogs greafe being first put in and molten, then put in your Turpentine, and lastly your Verdigreafe in fine powder, and being indifferently warme, dip Tow or Hurds into the oyntment, and so lay it to the Sore, then stop and splent it up, and dresse him twice a day, and this will make him whole and sound in short time. † But of this more in its due place.

Cloyed.

§ 10. C.

Hippophylus **V** *What say you to a Horse whose Cods and Stones are swelled?*

Hippof. This infirmity proceedeth from sundry causes, as sometimes by being bitten with a Dog, or with another Horse, or by being stung with some venemous or evill creature: The French do call it *Enflure de Coullon's*: It commeth also by meanes of some evill humours and corrupt blood which doe fall down to the cods, sometimes after sicknesse, and sometimes of ranknesse of blood and seed, for want of a Mare. If it come by ranknesse of seed or of blood, then let him have a Mare, and cover her two or three dayes together, and halfe an houre after, ride him into the water above the cods or stones, against the streame, and he will doe well. † But if this disease come by other causes, then

Cods swelled.

Take the Lees of Claret Wine, and Comen-seed, made into fine powder, and a little Wheat or Beane flower; boyle these together to an unguent, and so warme as he may well endure it, annoint the cods therewith, which done, draw forth his yard, and wash it, and his sheeth also with white wine vineger; and three or foure houres after, ride him into the water above the cods, and let him also stand in the water some short time, and sometimes ride him against the streame: doe this every day till the swelling be asswaged. † This is a very good Cure. Another:

Take the roots of wild Cucumbers, and white salt, so much as will suffice, boyle these in faire water to an oyntment, and annoynt the cods therewith warme: and then apply this oyntment.

Take Goats greafe, or for default thereof, Deeres suet, the white of an Egge, and Sallet oyle: boyle these over a gentle fire, and herewith annoynt the cods, but this must be applyed after he hath been ridden

ridden into the water and dry againe : doe this every day once till he be well. + This I have often tryed, and have found it to be right good. Another :

First, annoynt and bathe the *cods* in the juyce of Hemlock, and when it is dryed, then

Take Pigeons dung, and new Milke, and boyle it till it be as thick like to a Poulteffe, and therewith annoynt the *cods* every day once. Another :

First let him *bloud* in both the *spur* or *flanck veines*; Then take oyle of Roles and vineger, of each a pinte, and of Bolearmonack in fine powder two ounces: make all these into one body, and being lukewarme annoynt the *cods* therewith; and the next day ride him into the water up to the *cods* against the streame; then bring him into the stable, and when he is through dry, annoynt him againe : thus continuing to do, till he be well. But if the *cods* be swolne by meanes of any hurt, bite, or stroke, then apply to them this following charge :

A charge
for swelled
cods.

Take Bolearmonack in powder, vineger, and the whites of Egges as much as will suffice, well beaten, and wrought together, and annoynt him therewith daily till it be abated, and if it impostumate, where you finde it to be lost, open it either with a hot iron, or with your incision knife, if it breake not of it selfe, and so heale it up with the oyntment taught you in *lib 2. cap. 10. § 4.* and it will soone be whole. + This is very soveraigne.

§. 11. C.

Hippoph. **V** Hat say you to the Collick ?

Collicke.

Hippof. It is Sir, a disease which commeth of winde, and therefore we generally call it the *winde collicke*; the *French* call this disease the *Tranchaisons*; it causeth great gripings, and extreame paine in the *belly* of the Horse, so as he will oft times lye down and tumble; he will also strike at his *belly* with his *hinder feet*, and stamp with his *fore-feet*; and the paine will be so great as to cause him to forsake his meat: these signes I have often observed in Horses perplexed with this malady; and albeit I have sundry Receipts for it, and all or the most of them by me tryed and approved good, yet one of Master *Blundeviles* and Master *Markhams*, I hold inferiour to none of mine, for I have often tryed it; and this is it.

Take a quart of Muscadine, or of sweet Sack, of Cloves, Pepper, Cinamon. of each halfe an ounce, Sugar two ounces, make all these into fine powder, and give it him *bloud warme*: then annoynt his *flankes* with oyle de Bay; (but I often use to annoynt them with the oyntment of Acopum, I finding it to be much better) then bridle him up, and trot him out a good round trot, or gallop him softly sometimes the space of an houre untill he doe dung, but if he will not, then rake him, or else put an Onyon pilled and jagged into his *fundament* :

fundament: then for three or foure dayes, let his drinke be either sweet Mashcs, or white water, and keep him warme, and he will doe well againe. + Another: Keep him fasting over night, and in the morning give him this drinke.

Take of white Wine a quart, Fenugrick foure ounces, Bay-berries, and Pepper, of each foure ounces, Graines, and Ginger, of each one ounce, Water-Cresses two handfulls, Sage one handfull, Sengrene one pound, Mints a handfull, stampe the hearbs, and pound the spices, and put them into the wine, and let it boyle a little, then straine it, and put to it of life Honey two spoonfulls, and so give it him bloud-warme. + This I have also found to be very good: notwithstanding if he be a *stoned Horse*, the best cure for him is to have a *Mare*, especially if he be so troubled with the *collicke*, so as that he cannot pisse; besides it helpeth and preventeth sundry sorts of sicknesses and diseases, and strengtheneth nature. + Another:

Take of white Wine one pinte, and three or foure Cantharides: and make them into very fine powder, and give this to the Horse (well brewed in wine) bloud-warme. This I never tryed, for that these flies being a strong *corasive*, have deterred me, howsoever I have been often invited thereunto by many good *Ferriers*, who have averred unto me, that they have often used it, and have found it to be right good. Another:

Take Cloves, Pepper, Cinamon, of each one ounce; all made into fine powder, and well mixed, then put it into a quart of Muskadine, and let it boyle a while; then take it off, and put to it of Honey one spoonfull; give it him bloud-warme: which done, cloath him up, and litter him, and so let him stand upon his trench foure houres; then give him meat, and an houre after a sweet Mash, or white water. This was taught me by a *Noble Knight*, who said he had often used it. But if your Horse hath the *collicke* and *stone*, then

Take of white wine one pinte, of Burr-seeds eight ounces, made into fine powder, of Parsley-seed two ounces, in powder also, of Ilope, unset Leekes, and Water-Cresses, of each halfe a handfull, of black Sope halfe an ounce; stamp all the hearbs in a mortar, and straine them with the Wine, then put to that liquor, your Burre and Parsley seeds, and so give it him bloud-warme; this will breake the stone, and bring it from him with much ease, and cure his *Collicke*. ✠ This I have often administred.

Collicke and Stone.

§ 12. C.

Hippophyl. **W**hat Disease is that which is called the Colt Evill? *Hyppos*. It is a disease in the *yard*, *sheath*, and *cods* of a Horse or Gelding, and it commeth to Horses by meanes of heat and ranknesse of seed; and to a Gelding, by weaknesse and coldnesse of seed, to the Horse through too great abundance of seed, which cau-

R

feth

Colt-Evill.

leth a stopping in the *pipe* or *conduct* of the *yard*, and to a *gelding* for want of heat and strength to send it forth, whereby the *yard* and *sheath* swelleth very much. The best way to cure a *Horse* is to give him a *Mare*, whereby he sendeth forth his *seed* freely, and then two or three houres after swimme him, or else ride him up to the *flankes* to and fro a pretty while against the streame. This disease is knowne by the swelling of the *yard* and *sheath*; I have cured many *Horses* and *Geldings* with this ensuing Receipt. First swimme him, but specially against the streame soure or five dayes together, then apply this *Plaster*.

Take Beane-meale, and Mallowses, of each one handfull, Hogs grease halfe a pound, chop the Mallowses small, then put to the Hogs grease, and so boyle it with a pinte of white Wine, and when it is boyled, put it into a cloath, and wrap his *coats* therein; and so order it as that it may gather like a purse, and make it fast so, as it may neither fall off, nor hurt him: dresse him herewith every day till he be well. + I have had great experience of this Receipt: but if you be desirous to have variety, then looke over Master *Blundevile* and Master *Markham*, who are well stored.

§ 13. C.

Hippoph. **W**hat is best to be given for a cold?

Cold.

Hippof. There are so many and so good, as that I am to seeke almost to know how to begin, they be of so many, and sundry sorts of them, for some are for *colds* newly taken, some for old *colds*, some for *colds* that bringeth the *Glanders*, &c. Wherefore for *colds* newly taken at first, you must understand (Sir) that a cold newly taken (a thing not to be prevented, by reason it oft times cometh by meanes and wayes unknowne) you must observe first, that if your Horse be propense to many bad *humours*, whereof some Horses are more than others, you must first then labour to expell them by purging his *head*, then search betwixt his *jawes*, and if there you do finde any small kernels, then be you assured he hath a new-taken cold, but if he have great kernels, then was not the cold so lately taken as you might have imagined; also if he doe rattle in the *head*, it is a signe his cold is newly taken, or if he doe voyd any thinne matter forth of his *nose* or *eyes*, or if he hold his *head* into the manger; or if when he drinketh, the water commeth out of his *nostrils*, or that he cougheth oft, and sometimes perhaps cheweth mattrative stuffe betwixt his *teeth*, &c. These and many others be certaine signes of a Pose, Catarre, and newly taken cold, wherein is no danger if it be taken in time, otherwise it will come to a worse matter; I will now give you sundry good Receipts, most of which I have often tryed and found to be right good. First, I hold moderate exercise, and seasonable ayering to be marvellous good without further applying of

of medicines; but if you finde that he is much stopped in the head, then,

Take a small quantity of fresh or sweet Butter, and of brimstone made into fine powder; work them together till they be one entire body, & of a deep yellow gold colour, then take two long wing-Goose-feathers, and annoynt them herewith to the very quills on either side; which done, rowle them in more of the powder of Brimstone, and so put them up into either *nostrill* one, and at the but end of the quills, put a strong packthred, which must be fastned over his *pole*, like to the headstall of a Bridle: and then leap his back, and ride him moderately up and down an houre or longer, and this will provoke him to snort and snuffle forth of his *nose* and *head* much of the congealed filth which is in his head, then tye him to the Racke for an houre after, and this will purge his *head* very cleane: then draw forth the feathers, and he will doe well, keeping him warme, and giving him Mashes or white water every day for foure or five dayes after. This Receit was taught me for more than 30 yeares since by a famous *Marishall of France*, which since I found in Master *Markhams Master-piece*, but I hold it one of the best things can be prescribed for this Malady. + Another very short, but as good.

Take of Time one handfull, boyle it in a quart of strong Ale, till it come to a pinte, then straine it, and adde thereunto of ordinary Treacle two spoonfuls, and give it him bloud-warme. ✠ Another.

An excellent drinke to be given to a Horse for a new-taken cold, provided he be young, that is, not above five yeares old.

Take of French Barly halfe a pound, put it into a posnet, and put thereto of faire water one quart, and let it upon the fire, and let it boyle a little, then take it off, and draine the water from the Barly, and cast away the water, then adde the second time the like quantity of water, and boyle it as much as you did the first time, and then draine it from the water, & cast away the water again, then adde once againe the like quantity of a quart of water, as you did twice before, and boyle that also so long a time as you did the two former waters, draine this also from the Barly, but cast it not away, but keep it, and then adde to the water of Anniseeds and Licoris, of each halfe an ounce, make them into very fine powder, and searce them, and put the said powder into the boyled water, and adde to it of white sugarcandy, foure ounces, then set it upon the fire in a cleane skillet, and so boyle it up untill a third part be consumed, then take it off and straine it, and give it your Horse bloud-warme; drench him thus three mornings together, and it will ripen his cold and cause it to come away. This is very good. ✠ Another:

Take of white wine vineger the best and strongest, five spoonfuls, and put to it of oyle de Bay one spoonfull, warme it upon the fire, stirring it well; this must be made and given in the morning: but when you doe administer it, you must first put your drenching horn

into faire water that is good and hot, to keep the medicine from sticking to the horne, then taking it forth out of the hot water, before the horne can be cold, and whilst it is yet moyst with the water, put the one halfe of your medicine into the same, and so as speedily as may be, convey it into one of his *nostrils*, and after the other moiety into his other *nostrill*; this done, ride him for halfe an houre moderately, then set him up, and cloath and litter him warme, and let him stand upon the trench three or foure houres before you give him any meat, and after doe as is accustomed to be done to sicke Horses in *Physicke*. + This I doe approve to be equivalent to either of the two former. Another:

Take water and salt so much as will suffice, brew them well together, it then being made bloud-warme, give it him, and doe after as is usuall. + This for a new taken cold I have often used, and I doe finde it to be singular good to be given to a young Horse. Another:

Take of oyle de Bay, of Anniseeds, and of Licoris, of each one halfe penny worth, and of browne sugar-candy a penny worth, make all these into fine powder, and being well mixed, sew it up into a fine linnen rag, and so fasten it unto the Bit or Snaffle of the Horse, and so ride a journey, and travell him, and in short space he will be cured, if it be a new-taken cold onely. + This I have also proved, and I doe finde it good, for it will cure both cold and cough if it be rightly applied, to wit, with riding and exercise. Another:

Take of white Wine one pinte, Sallet oyle a quarter of a pinte, Rubarb and Aloes, and Saffron, of each two drams, Nutmeg, Sene, Agarick, Bay-berries, Duke or Dutch powder, and of Cordiall powder, of each halfe an ounce: mixe all these together, and then adde to it of Honey foure ounces, warme them well in a Pipkin, and give it him to drinke bloud-warme, but let him stand upon the trench at least three houres before, and three houres after, neither let him for all that day eate any Oates, but in its stead, let him have Wheate-bran, and let his drinke be that day either a warme Mash, or white water, and no cold water, but this whire water for foure or five daies after, and put into his Provender for some time Fennugrick made into grosse powder. + This is a most soveraigne drinke to be given for a cold. But if you do finde, that his *head* is very much oppressed with a *Pose* or *Catar*, then give him this drinke twice a day, *viz.* Take Fennugrick one ounce, and boyle it in a good quantity of water till it burst, then mixe with the decoction thereof wheate meale, as much as will suffice, and give it him to drink. Another:

Take a quart of the best Ale, and warme it upon the fire, and put into it so much Tobacco made into fine powder, as you can take up upon a shilling at twice, and as much dried Rosemary in fine powder as you may take up upon a shilling at once; give him this to drink bloud-warme in a morning fasting. This drinke is called *Potio-*

Necotiana,

To be on
the Snaffle.

Necotiana, but I did never make tryall thereof, for that I once saw it given by a *Ferrier* to a sicke Horse, which so wrought with him, as that with all his *Lenitives* and *Cordials*, the *Ferrier* had much labour to save the life of the poore Horse; this potion was so violent, which notwithstanding drove the Horse into a most dangerous *Calentura*. But the next is better.

Take a Hens egge, and make a hole in the top thereof, no bigger than that you may get forth the white and yolke: Then take Tarre and sweet Butter, of each like much, as much as will suffice, incorporate these well together into one body, and so convey it into the egge shell, and give it your Horse three or foure mornings together, and either journey him gently, or else ride him three or foure houres after it; which done, bring him into the Stable and cloath him up warme, and litter him well, and let him be well rubbed, and so keep him upon the trench two houres after, and then give him Hay, and an houre after give him either a warme Mash, or white water; and this will help a cold newly taken. * This will not make him sicke, for I have often made tryall of it. Another as good as this.

Take the long white mosse that groweth upon an old dry Parke pale, one handfull, chop it small, and put it into a pottle of good Ale or Beere, till one halfe be consumed; then take it off, and straine and presse it hard, and put into the liquor of Anniseeds and Licoris, of each halfe a spoonfull, and a piece of sweet Butter, and so give it him three mornings together fasting, and it will cure him. X Another, if he hath taken a cold or poze in the *head*.

Take a quart of Muscadine, or sweet Sacke, of Nutmegs, Pepper, Cominseed, Graines, Bay-berries, of each three drams, all made into fine powder: boyle these a waume or two, then take it off, and put into it a piece of sweet Butter, and give it your Horse three mornings together bloud-warme; let him all those three dayes be kept warme, neither let him drinke any cold water, but either a sweet Mash, or white water, yea and that three or four dayes after; and during these three dayes, let him fast three houres after the receipt of his said medicine. Also three dayes after when you perceive the cold to begin to breake from him, and to rot, cause him to sneeze, by blowing into either *nostrils*, either the powder of Tobacco, or of Pepper, or of Elebore. X Another which will cure a longer-taken cold, yea though it be accompanied with a dry cough and shortnesse of breath, or purfivenessse, which I had of Master *Markham*, and I have often made tryall thereof, and it hath done cures which have been held impossible to have been effected.

Take of the conserve of Elecampane three quarters of an ounce, and dissolve it in a pinte and a halfe of sweet Sacke, and so give it your Horse with a horne in a morning fasting, and ride him gently a little after: and thus doe sundry times untill you doe finde the infirmity to decrease.

But

Tarre Butter

Mosse



Hippoph. But Hippoferus, this Conserve of Elecampane I doe suppose is hard to come by, for surely every Countrey Apothecary hath it not; how then may a Man make this Confection you so much commend?

Hippes. Sir, this Conserve I make my selfe, and I will give you the receipt hereof. You must understand that there bee two kinds thereof, the one is called particularly a *Preserve*, and the other an absolute *Conserve*. The first is *Simple*, the other *Compound*, both very soveraigne for this Infirmitie, but the *Conserve* is evermore to bee esteemed the better, and I do counsell you never to be without either of them: for they will keep the whole yeere through, if they be reserved close stopped. Wherefore as touching the first which is the *Simple*, you must preserve it like as you doe all other greene rootes, and so keepe them in a Gally pot or Glasse in a good quantity of its owne Sirop, till you have occasion to use the same; and when you are to use it, let it bee beaten well in a Morter together with its Sirop and refined Sugar made first into very fine powder. Now your *Compound* or *Conserve* is thus made: First, let your roots of Elecampane be neatly Candied, and made very dry and hard, and get the best and youngest Rootes can be had, which must be kept also in a Gally pot or Glasse close stopped, in a dry and warme place where they may not give againe; and when you would use them, take so much as will suffice, and beat it in a Morter with the Sirop of Colts foote, and the powder of refined Sugar, still working it till you have brought it to be a perfect *Conserve*, and so given to your horse in good sweet Sacke or Muscadine. The first of these two, to wit, the *Simple*, is of most excellent use, for it helpeth any ordinary cold or stopping, it comforteth the *Lunges*, enlargeth his *Winde*, purgeth the *Head* from all filthy matter, and dissolveth many other obstructions, as well in the *Body*, and *Head*. But the *Compound* or *Conserve* worketh better effects in the *Body* of the *Horse*, especially if the Malady be old and dangerous, or if there be any taint, in the *Lunges*, *Liver*, or inward parts: This *Conserve* in time, by frequent use thereof will cure all dry Coughs which are held to be incurable, it helpeth the heaving of the *Belly* and *Flankes*, it causeth the *Horse* to take his *Wind* kindly, and temperately, and freeth him of his dry Cough which before did greatly annoy him; but if you have not these *conserves*, take this other Receipt little inferiour to the former for these Maladies.

Take of the sirop of Colts-foote, one ounce, of Elecampane rootes dried, Anniseeds, and Licoris, of each halfe an ounce, all made into fine powder, browne Sugar Candy powdred one ounce, which must be divided into two parts, then take sweete Butter so much as will suffice, and so make this into three Pills good and stiffe; which done, rowle them in the other moyty of your powdred Sugar Candy, and so give them your *Horse* fasting, then ride him gently for halfe an houre, and after set him up warme, and let him fast three houres after, causing him to be well rubbed: let him drinke no cold water

Conserve of
Elecampane

water, unlesse it be with exercise, and let his Hay be sprinkled with water, and his Oats wet in strong Ale, or else with Beere. †. Another very good.

Take the cankerous Mosse of an old Pale, or of the lymbes of an old Oake two handfulls, chop and shred it small, and boyle it in a pottle of new Milke, and with it a roote of Alecompane, let these boile together till halfe be consumed, then straine it, and presse the Mosse and Roote very well; which done, put to it of sweete Butter the quantity of a Ducke-Egge, and so give it him in a morning fasting bloud warme, and ride him moderately an houre after: then set him up, cloath him and litter him warme, and order him as is accustomed with *Horses* in *Physicke*: Let him have this drink three mornings together, and it will cure both his Cold and Cough wet or dry, or his Poze if he have it. But if you find your *Horse* to be stopped in the *Head*, and that he voydeth filth, and stinking matter out from his *Nose*, then shall you every morning administer this fume.

Take of *Auripigmentum* and of Colts-foote made into powder, of each two drammes, then with Venice Turpentine worke them into a stiffe paste, and make them into small Cakes the breadth of a sixpence, and dry them a little, and then put fire into a Chafing-dish with coales, and so put one of these Cakes upon the coales, covered with a Tunnell, and so fume him, and this not only during his *Physicke*, but at other times after, and let his drink be either sweet mashies or white water. †. Another, if your *Horse* hath a new taken cold, then give him this Caudle, which I have often used and do find it to be very good.

Take the yolkes of foure new layd Egges, and beate them well together and dissolve them with a quart of good Ale, then take three good Nutmegs with a little Anniseeds & Licoras, made all into fine powder, and as much Pepper in fine powder as you can take up upon a sixpence; put these into the Ale, with a peece of sweet Butter so much as will suffice, and two spoonefulls of ordinary Treacle, and of browne Sugar Candy foure ounces, warme all these upon the fire till the Treacle and Butter be molten, then give it him bloud warme, foure or five mornings together; and this is an infallible cure. †. Another very good.

Take a pottle of sweet Wort, three heads of Garlick pilled, of ordinary Honey halfe a pound. boyle these till one moiety bee consumed, and give it your *Horse* three mornings together: Then for three mornings together after, give him these Pills. Take Boxe leaves and Harts-tongue, of each so much as will suffice, stamp them well together, and with sweet Butter make it into Pills; and so every morning give him three of these Pils. †. But if he hath a cold which breaketh and runneth from him, then must you be carefull to keepe his *Head* and *Pole* warme, by putting on a double Hood, and every Morning

Page
224.

*Polipodium
to make him
warm.*

Morning fasting, ride him with two long Goose-feathers put up into either *Nostrill*, well dipped before hand in Oyle de Bay, and with a strong Packthread from the ends of the quilts fastned over his *head* like a Headstall of a Bridle, so as the feathers may not get forth, and fasten also to his Bit or Snaffle one Rooteor two of *Polipodium*; having beene all night before laine steeped in the oyle of Spike, and every time you ride him annoint the Bit thus before hand prepared with the said Oyle, and when he commeth home, put upon his *pole* his double hood, and rub him against the hayre all over, especially his *Neck* and *Pole*, (for friction in this case is most soveraigne) then whilst he is yet warme perfume his *Nose* with Frankinsence, Storax, and Benjamin, of each like much; do this nine daies together, and let his drinke be white water: for all Rhumes having had time to worke their malice will become dangerous, yea and many times curelesse. +. Now if your *Horse* hath taken an extreame cold; then:

Take Cloves, Nutmegges, Ginger, Galls, or the fruit of the Oake and Cardimums, of each like quantity so much as will suffice, and of Fennell-seeds more than any one of the other Ingredients, make them into fine powder, and searce them, then put two Spoonfulls of this powder to a quart of Sack or muskadine, and straine these into two penny-worth of English Saffron, and the yelkes of two new laid Egges well beaten together, give this to your *horse* bloud warme fasting, and let him have none other drinke than white water for three or foure daies after, and let his Hay be sprinkled with water, and every day at noone give him the blades of reed, or the leaves of Sallows to eat out of your hand, for they be very good for him, and cooling for his *body*: do this divers mornings together, and it will not only cleanse his Cold, but also open his Pipes, and set his wind at liberty. But if your *horse* have an inward cold, which lyeth lurking in his *Lunges* or *Stomacke*, then give him this Medicine.

Take Oyle de Bay and good Tar, of each the quantity of three Wallnuts, halfe as much Hony, browne Sugar-candy in fine powder halfe an ounce, mixe these with a quantity of powdred Brimstone so much as will suffice, and sew them into a fine linnen cloth, and ty it to his Bit or Snaffle, and so ride or journey him moderately till all be dissolved into his *body*, then bring him into the stable, and cloth and litter him warme, and three houres after give Hay, and after a warme Mash; use him thus three mornings together and longer, if you shall see cause. +. Another.

Take bloud from him, if you have ground for the same, otherwise not, then instead of giving him Oates, you shall give him bran boyled in water after this manner, *viz.* Set a Kettle over the fire almost full of water, & when it beginneth to boyle, put in your bran, and let it boyle a full quarter of an houre at least, then take it off, and let it stand till it bee almost cold, and about foure or five a clocke in the morning, give him this Bran so hot as he can eat it; then for his drinke,

Bran prepared.

*To give upon
the Staffe*

drinke, give him the same water, and at night give him Oates and white water, and let him be covered and littered warme; if it be in Summer, let not the Stable be too hot, for that will take away his *stomacke*, and make him faint and sweat too much; and at night give him the quantity of what you can put into an Egge-shell among his Oates of this powder following, to which you must keep him for eight dayes together or longer, if you shall see cause. You must understand that the boyled Branne is that which dryeth up all his grosse and corrupt *humours*, which was the cause of his cold. Now the powder is this, *viz.* Take of Comen-seed, Fenugrick, Silleris-Montani (*alias* Sifileos) Nutmegs, Cloves, Ginger, Linseed, of each two ounces, Quick Brimstone fixe ounces, make all these into fine powder, and let them be well mixed: this must be given with his Oates, as is before inculcated; but he must first be watered; and then presently let him be well rubbed, *body, necke, pole, legges, breast and belly*, and cloathed and littered warme, and an houre before you give him his Oates, put into his Rack a little sweet wheat straw, and so (I say) let him eat thereof the space of one houre or better, and then give him his Oates mixed with this powder, which having eaten, give him Hay at your pleasure; and thus doing in short time you shall perceive his Cold to be quite gone, and the sooner if he shall be moderately ayered an houre after Sun-rising, and an houre before Sun-set, if the Sunne doe shine. Now if this Cold bring with it a violent cough, as is often seen, then give him the aforesaid Wheat Branne boyled, together with the said powder with his Oates, but then not above three or foure dayes, for that the said powder disperseth the corrupt and grosse *humours* that are in the *body*, which doe occasion the said cough, and when you doe perceive that he hath purged sufficiently, keep him notwithstanding to his white water, but an houre before you doe water him;

Take a sticke of the bignesse of your thumb or better, of well nigh a foot long, and wrap a linnen clout about it four or five times, first dipped in oyle de Bay, and put it into his *mouth*, and with some piece of leather thong, or other small cord fasten it to either end of the sticke, and so fasten it over his *eares* like the Headstall of a Bridle, like as Smiths use to do when they burn a Horse for the Lampas, and let him drinke with this sticke in his mouth; which done, let him stand with it thus in his mouth an houre after at the least, to the end he may licke and sucke up the said oyle, and when he is to eat his Oates, put among them this other powder following, *viz.*

Take Fennell seed four ounces, Fenugrick two ounces, Cardimuns one ounce, pound these grossly, otherwise he will blow them away in eating his Oates, and with his Oates put every night of this powder one spoonefull, and keep him warme, and so use him as before is prescribed. † Another.

Take Ivy-berries and dry them, and make them into powder, and

so give it to your Horse in Ale or Beere. This I never tryed, and this is onely for a cough. Another for a cough. Take of salt one pinte, of Sallet oyle halfe a pinte, oyle of Anniseeds one ounce, browne sugar Candy, in powder three ounces, give this with your horne to your Horse three mornings together, and it will rid him of his cough, and heale any putrifaction in his *lungs*, or any other inward parts whatsoever. This also I never tryed, but it was highly commended to me. Another Receipt for a cough, which I have found to be very good.

Take two new laid Egges, and open the crownes, and get forth some of the white, and then put into these Egges so much of the powder of Brimstone as you can take up upon a shilling into either Egge: give him this every morning for some time, or till you see the cough to goe from him. Another:

Take three new laid eggs, and put them into a pinte pot, then put so much of the best and strongest white wine vinegar into the pot as will very well cover the Egges, and let them lye in the Vineger 24 houres at least, then beat the Vineger and Egges together shels and all, and so give it your Horse cold, and then ride or walke him an houre, and against his comming in, have this drinke in a readinesse, and give it him, *viz.*

Take Ilope, Anniseeds, Licoris, Graines, Long Pepper, Gentiana, Elecampane dried, of each three drams, make all the spices into fine powder, and stamp the Ilope well, and so put all into good Sack one pinte, and of good Ale also one pinte, and of Honey one spoonfull, and so boyle it, and give it your Horse bloud-warme, and set him up, and cloth him, and litter him warme, causing him to fast three houres after it, and give him no cold water, but sweet Mashies or white water; and this will cure him, for it is an approved good receipt. + Another very good.

Take Wheate meale, Anniseeds, Licoris, Polipodium of the Oake dried, Elecampane dried: make all these into powder, and mixe them well: Take two spoonfuls of this powder, with a head of Garlick pilled and bruized, mixe all these well together, and with your Wheate meale and honey as much as will suffice, make pils thereof to the bignesse of a great Walnut, and give your Horse every morning three or foure of these Pils, and so soone as he hath taken them, give him two new laid Egges with their shels. X Another:

Take of life hony three spoonfuls, of the best and whitest refined loafe sugar one spoonfull and an halfe, made into fine powder, dried Elecampane root made also into fine powder one spoonfull, and of Amber-greece two graines, mixe all these very well together, and put it into an Egge-shell, and give him hereof at night late, and in the morning fasting, and so let him fast for three houres after, and be the cough never so violent, it will both stay and cure the same. X

This is right good, for I have had very great prooffe thereof. An-
other: Take

Take Benjamin and Brimstone made into very fine powder, of each halfe an ounce, give this your Horſe with one pinte of Muskadine, putting into it two new laid Egges ſhells and all, broken and well beaten together, let it be given three mornings together. This was commended unto me for a ſpeciall good Receit, but I never did make tryall thereof. Another:

Take Nettle-ſeeds, Annifeeds, Reyſins of the ſunne ſtoned, Elecampane in fine powder, of each halfe an ounce, make all the ſpices and ſeeds into very fine powder, and cut the Reyſins very ſmall, and ſo boyle all theſe in Muskadine or Sacke a quart, with three ſpoonefuls of life Honey, then ſtraine it, and give it him three mornings together bloud-warme. This I never proved. Another:

Take of Rue one handfull, chop or ſtampe it very ſmall, and put to it a penny worth of Annifeeds in very fine powder, make it up into Pils with ſweet Butter, and ſo give it your Horſe. ✕ This I have found to be moſt ſoveraigne for a Horſe that hath a cold whether newly or formerly taken, either wet or dry cough; it is alſo moſt excellent for a Horſe that hath been over-ridden, or any way wronged by labour. Now if his cough be ſo violent as that it may endanger his *winde*; then,

Take Calamint, Gentiana, Comin-ſeed, Licoris, Elecampane, of each two drams, make all theſe into fine powder, and conſect them with life Honey and Butter mingled together and molten; and when it is cold, make it up into Pils; then rowle them in the powder of Annifeeds, and give him of theſe Pils three or foure every morning, for two or three mornings together faſting, and after keep him warme, and let his drinke be Maſhes or White-water. +. But if hee hath a Cough of the *Lungs*, give him theſe Pills. Take the Rootes of Malloes newly gathered, Elecampane Rootes newly alſo gathered, of each one handfull, ſlice them thin, and boyle them in faire water with Barly two handfulls, till the roots be ſoft, then ſtraine forth the liquor, and put into it a penny diſh of ſweet Butter, of life Honey three ſpoonefuls, and as much Beane meale as will make all into a paſte; then make it into Pils, and rowle them up in the powder of Annifeeds, and give him three or foure of them every morning faſting for three or foure mornings together, keepe him temperately warme, and during the time he taketh theſe Pils, let his drinke be either ſweet Maſhes or white water, and every day about mid day, give him boyled Barly or Brewers graines. ✕ Another for a Horſe that hath his *winde broken*.

Take the leaves of Mullet, *alias* Mullen, *alias* Horſe-Lungwort, and dry them, and make them into fine powder, and then make them up in Bals or Pils with ordinary Hony ſo much as will ſuffice: let theſe Pils be made of the bigneſſe of an Egge, and give him of them three at a time, fourteen or fifteen dayes together, or longer if you ſhall ſee cauſe, and let him not drink any cold water, during the time,

Probab.

and for a while after the giving of his Pils, and let his exercise be very moderate, and his Hay sprinkled with water, and his Oates wet with good Ale or Beere, and in short time he will be well and sound againe. + This is a most approved good Receipt, with which I have done cures held impossible to have been effected. Another :

Take Comen halfe an ounce, Anniseeds and Licoris, of each two ounces, dried roots of Elecampane three ounces, make them into fine powder, and then boyle them in a pottle of Ale or Beere to a quart, then straine it, and give the liquor to your Horse in a morning fasting bloud-warme, and ride him moderately upon it, two or three houres, then set him up warme, and use him *ut supra*. This I never tryed, but he that gave it me did highly commend the same unto me. Thus have I given you many Receipts for a cold, and such diseases which are thereof dependant, whereof many are to my knowledge right good, and by my selfe experimented, with which I have done cures which have been held very strange, and beyond expectation.

Hippoph. Truly Hippolercus as touching these maladies, something there is in them, wherein I doe earnestly desire to be yet better informed; and first I would gladly know what be the diversities of the diseases which doe proceed from Colds; and how wee may come to know one malady from another.

Hippof. Sir, in answer hereunto you must understand, that from a cold taken doth issue many infirmities, if the said cold be not speedily prevented; as namely, first Coughs, as well wet as dry, Catars, Murs, Rhumes, Pole, Ratlings in the head, Kernels, and inflamations under the *Chaule*, with Bunches, Knots, Pustils, &c. It causeth also Hide bound, Feavers, Head-aches, Frenzy, Sleeping-Evill, weeping-Eyes, Canker in the Nose, Strangles, Quinsy, to have Gourded or swolne legges: It will cause the *hayre* to stare, it will in time cause the mourning of the *Chine* (if there be such a disease) shortnesse of breath, purfivenesse, purtisick, broken winde, (also if there be such a disease) Frelised, broken and rotten lungs, glanders incurable, if it be not in time prevented, grieve and paine in the *breast*, Antecor, it will also cause the evill habit of the *stomacke*, dropfie, loathing of meat, foundring both in the *body* and *feet*, tyrednesse, putrifaction and inflamations in the *bloud*; it will also cause many diseases and inflamations in the *liver*, together with the siccity and aridity thereof, obstructions, opilations, costivenesse and stoppings both in the *body* and *pores*, a consumption in the *liver*, the overflowing of the *gall*, the unnaturall working of the *spleene*, the Yellowes, Stavers, the Collick and gripings, *belly bound*, laxe and *bloody-fluxe*. All these and many more diseases and maladies doe depend upon this one onely infirmity we call the *cold*, and therefore how needfull a thing it is for a man who is the true-lover of his *Horse*, to be carefull what in him lyeth both to keep his *Horse* from cold taking, as also to know how to cure the same

same so loone as it shall appeare, in performance whereof no small diligence and art is required.

§. 14. C.

Hippoph. **Y**ou make question whether or not there bee such a disease which is so commonly called the Mourning of the Chine, why is there not such a disease?

Hippof. No truly, there is no such disease, for that which is called the mourning of the *Chine*, is none other thing than a plain and rank Glanders, which very few of our *English Ferriers* doe know how to cure, which hath its first source and origen from a cold which being let run long, commeth to be a Glanders, which in time doth waste the *liver* of the *Horse*, whereby he dyeth; for if for your better understanding you shall be pleased to open *Horses* which doe dye of this disease, you shall evermore finde the *chine* and *pith* of the *Horse* to be found and whole, but the *liver* perished, and his *lungs* putrified, by reason whereof the *Horse* long before his death casteth forth of his *nose* much corrupt and stinking matter and filth; wherefore this malady cannot in reason be stiled the *mourning of the Chine*, but meerely the Glaunders; and for remedy thereof, you shall have sundry excellent Receipts when we shall come to handle this disease, and therefore till then I forbear to speake any more thereof.

Hippoph. You question also another disease called a broken winde, why this is so generall a malady as that no man but giveth it that name, what doe you call it?

Hippof. Sir, as touching this infirmity, I say there is none such, for you must understand that this disease so vulgarly called a *broken wind*, is truly a shortnesse of breath, or a taint or defect in the *winde*, Pur-sivenessse, the *Asmat* or *Purtisick*, as Artists doe call it. Three causes there be of this infirmity, two whereof proceed from a cold formerly taken, and the third from another cause, as shall presently be demonstrated. The first is an exulceration of the *lungs*, which doth begin from a cold; the second by clinging and growing together of the *lights*, whose origen came also of cold; and the third is a dislocation of the *lungs*, and this last commeth by meanes of some violent or sudder act or motion of the body, or by some fall whereby the *lungs* were become dislocated, displaced, or turned in the *body* of the *Horse*, every of which doe occasion *shortnesse of breath*, by reason the *lungs* have not power sufficient (being the bellowes of the body) to open, shut, and play at pleasure; and this is the cause why the *Horse* heaveth at the *ribs* and *flankes*, fetcheth his breath short and hot at the *nose*, wheeseth, and oft times reeleth when he is put to little that doth straine his *winde*, and therefore so long as he is kept in the stable at dry and hard meats, he heaveth more then when he is at grasse, for if you doe wash his Provender in Ale or Beere, and sprinkle his Hay with

with water, you shall perceive him to heave the lesse: but when he runneth at grasse, he heaveth so little, as hardly to be seen, and the reason is, for that the *Horse* having naturally a very moyst body, the cold which he hath taken doth so condense and make thicke those *humours* which before were thinne, which doe (whilst they were *tenues*) passe most easily through the pores, but now they are become thick, viscos, and slimy, stopping the pores in such sort, as hardly to be able to *breath*, but with great labour and no lesse paine, which doth provoke him to heave and lift, by reason that the *lungs*, *pores*, and *pipes* are so stopped and opprest, as not to be able to performe their function and naturall office, for which nature hath created them, and besides those stoppings doe constrain him to cough and labour so extreame, as to endanger oft times the breaking of a *veyne*, from whence ensue many more inconveniences then this one: nevertheless you may have meanes to help his *winde*, but to recover him perfect and sound againe, I dare not absolutely promise you, and if you be solicitous to understand more of this subject, to save both your owne labour and mine, if you will be pleased to peruse Master *Blundevile* and Master *Markham*, they are able to give you ample satisfaction.

§. 15. C.

Hippoph. **V**What meanes have you to helpe a consumption?

Hippof. We have two kindes of *consumptions*, the first is called the dry malady, the other the consumption of the *flesh*: as touching the first, which commonly commeth at the first of a cold taken, then it exulcerateth the *lungs*, which in the beginning sendeth forth thinne matter from the *nose*, but after when it is growne more tough and viscos, it runneth no more, but causeth a maceration and leanness through the whole *body*, whereby he droopeth and pineth away, and albeit he eateth and drinketh, yet it is without appetite, his meat doing him little good. The signes to know it are these; his *belly* will be gaunt, and he will be Hide-bound, his *flesh* will consume almost to *skinne* and *bones*, if you strike him on the *belly*, it will sound hollow, his *haire* will stare, neither will he cast it in due season, when other *Horses* which be sound will doe, he will cough hollow and faintly: the *Horse* that is troubled with this disease, well may he be kept for some time alive, but long he cannot be, for the malady is incurable, if it be too long let runne, and therefore I leave him to Dogs and Crows in his languishing plight. The other *consumption* is that of the *flesh*, which also beginneth of a cold formerly taken, which for want of remedy in time, occasioneth a generall dislike and maceration throughout the whole *body*: it commeth from immoderate labour or travell by violent heat and cold taken upon it: it commeth also by riding him into the water after a great heat given, and then
set

Dry Malady.

set up presently negligently ; as once it hapned to a young *Nagge* of good mettell and spirit, and of very great hope, the owner of which *Nagge* delivered him to an *Ambler* to pace, who whilst he had him in agitation, hearing Hounds abroad made in to them, who rode him hard all day to the death of the Hare, then coming home hot and all in a sweat, neere to the *Ablers* House was a River with a Water-Mill, where he set him up to the skirts of the Saddle, & then brought him into the Stable where was neyther cloath, litter, or other thing to keepe him warme, or wherewith to rub him, at which time hee tooke so desperate a cold as never after to be cured : for in short time after, he brought him to the *Gentleman* that did owne him, when upon his coming home the *Nagge* drooped, forsooke his meate, and became very sick ; the *Gentleman* desired me to endeavour the best I might for his recovery, for that he loved the *Nagge* well. I ignorant of the cause of his Malady, went as I thought according to Art, I tooke blood from sundry *veines*, I gave him a *Suppository*, and after certaine *Clysters*, which I assured me were most needfull for him, all that I did administer wrought very kindly and well, but yet nothing could provoke in him an appetite, or be the meanes of any amendment, I then sayed him then with frictions, and Cordialls, but all was cast away, ayreing or ought else would not prevaile ; then I perswaded the *Gentleman* to turne him to grasse, it being in the middle of *May* and a very seasonable time, for I found him to bee inwardly sound, he ran at grasse about a month, but still grew weaker, and every day more meager then other, and at length he grew to be so much enfeebled by continuall languishing as that being downe, he was not able to rise, but with helpe, in fine, shortly after the *Nagge* died : then for my better experience I would needs have him opened, which being done ; a sounder *body* in a Horse could not be seene, but I discovered the cause of the disease and death of this *Nagge* in his *skinne*, for it being taken from him, you might most evidently see the *Fat* which did ly next unto his *belly*, *brisket*, *ribs*, and *sides*, to be so caked and hard, as that it, not being dissolved, the *Nagge* could never after enjoy himselfe, which caused him to wast and dwindle of his *flesh*, and languishing dy, which so soone as I espied, I presently told the *Gentleman* the owner of the *Nag*, that the *Ambler* had given him that Infirmitie (the *Nagge* being then very fat) and after in his heate put him into the water, which the owner examining found to bee most true, as well from the report of honest neighbours who lived adjacent to the *Ambler*, as (after some small pressure) from the ingenuous confession of the very *Ambler* himselfe. And this I think fit to bring you for an instance, to the end you may be the more carefull in avoyding the like inconvenience, and be the better able to judge of a Malady of this nature. But now as touching the best cure for a *Consumption* of the *flesh* (albeit there be many) yet I can recommend but only this one, which both Master *Blundevile*, and Master *Markham* have

Consumption.

Consumption
of the
flesh.

have recorded, which is this, viz.

Take a Sheepshead with the wooll on, cleave it, wash it, very cleane, and boyle it in a gallon of faire water, untill the flesh come from the bones, then strayne the liquor from the flesh, and put into the broath of refined loafe-Sugar halfe a pound, of Cinamon, conserve of Roses, conserve of Barberies, conserve of Cherries, of each three ounces, and give your Horse of this broath a quart, every morning fasting blood warme, use this till foure or more Sheepsheads be spent, and after every of these drinks let him be walked abroad, (if the weather be warme and not windy) otherwise walke him in some barne, or warme place, and let him fast two or three houres after, & let him not drinke any cold water in fiteene daies after at the least, but let his drink be eyther sweet mashes, or white water, and for his Diet let that be what himselfe best liketh, and that given by little at once and often: and by this meanes he may recover both *Flesh* and strength againe in reasonable time, ✠. Neverthelesse when he hath gotten *Flesh*, depart with him so loone as may be, least upon any hard travell he happen to relaps, as is most probable he may. With this Receipt I have recovered three Horses, whereof one was a Horse of a high price.

Hippoph. But tell me I pray you, were it amisse (for this disease) to take blood from him before you drench him?

Hippof. Yea, that it were Sir very much amisse, for so to do, were certaine death, for in cases of *Consumptions* you must take no blood at all, but rather labour to cherish the blood he hath, for his debility and feebleness wilbe such, as that he consuming so much in his *Flesh*, you must rather endeavour to procure his strength then any way to hinder the same, which the losse of blood may most easily do. Neither must you be too busie in administering unto him *Purges*, but *Cordials*, as *Diapente*, *Diatefferon*, *Duke powder*, *Cordiall powder* and such like restoratives, also by giving him good meat, as good strengthning bread and hartning, well made and of purpose for him, if he will eate bread, sometimes boyled Barley, and Oates, also boyled Beanes, and such like hearty meat, as will restore him, and to give him sometimes about midday a quart of strong Ale or Beere, is very good, and will greatly comfort him. And thus keeping him warme, feeding him, and ordering him well, you may in time recover him againe. ✠. And this is the best Counsell I can give you for this Infirmary.

§. 16. C.

Hippoph. Now what say you to a Convulsion? How doe you cure that?

Hippof. A *Crampe* and *Convulsion* is one and the same Malady, which is a violent contracting or drawing together of the *Sinewes*, and

and *Veines*, and *Muskles*, as well through the whole *Body*, as in any one member of the same: yet doth it not alwaies apprehend or seaze the whole *body*, but takes one member or other as, sometimes it laieth hold upon the *Eye*, sometimes upon the *Tongue*, the *Jawes*, *Lips*, *Legs*, &c. which albeit it commeth by severall meanes, yet principally it comes eyther through cold in the *body*, or else for want of *bloud*, or lastly by over much *purging*. The signes to know this disease are most easie, for that *horse* that is therewith troubled, will have that member (for the time the fit is upon it) so stiffe, that a man with the utmost of his strength is not able to stirre the same, by reason that the *Sinewes* and *Muskles* wilbe so much contracted as not possibly to bring the limb to its pristine state but only by rubbing and chafing, the limbe or member with warme cloths, and after the fit is over, it were very requisite to sweate him in the Stable in his cloaths, for two or three houres together, and if the Malady bee in the lower parts, as in the *Legges*, then let that member which is taken be wisped up with thumb-bands of Hay made wet first, and after when the member is thus wisped, to cast thereon cold water, and after this his sweating, let his whole *body* (but especially the member taken) be annoynted with the oyntment of *Acopum* before mentioned in the second booke cap. 14 §. 1. A. and to give him some of it inwardly with sweet Sack, or Muscadine: and thus have I recovered sundry *horses* perplexed with this disease, giving him two or three drinks after of *Diapente* & then to keepe him warme, and to continue him for some time with sweet mashies or white water, but when you come to give him cold water againe, let it be with exercise and aydings after Sun rising, and before Sunne set, the Sunne shining, and when there is no wind, or other cold nipping weather. But if you have not of this *Acopum* in a readinesse, then apply this *bathe* or oyntment to the greived place or member, viz.

Convulsion.

Take Pinpernell a good armefull, Primrose leaves, Camomile, Crow-foot, Mallowses, Fennell, Rosemary, of each six handfuls, & fine up-land Hay, cut & made about Midsomer, when the strength and heart of grasse is at the best, a good quantity, put all these into a Lead or Chalderon, and fill up the Chalderon with faire water, and so let it steepe eight and forty houres, then boyle it untill the hearbs be soft, and *bathe* the the greived member therewith foure daies together, morning and evening warmed, which done, apply some of these hearbs to the places or limbs greived and keep them on with a thumb-band of Hay, wet in the said decoction, and every day about noone annoynt the said visited member with Petroleum, and Nervall, and Oyle of Spike, mixed together, and keep him warme, give him good meat and mashies or white water, not only during the time of his cure, but a good time after, and let his aydings be temperate, and his exercise moderate, and take heed of washing him after labour, for that probably was the cause of his *Convulsion*. †. Another.

T

Take

Take strong white Wine vinegar, and Patch-grease, *alias* Peece-grease, of each like much, melt them upon a gentle fire, then with Wheat-flowre make it into a Poultisse, and apply it to the grieved *member* good and warme, renewing it morning and evening, but before you doe administer this charge (by holding a barre of iron, or a chafing dish of coales neere) let him be annoynted with Petroleum, Nervall, and Patch-grease, and oyle of Spike, of each like much) very well, and after binde on the charge all over the grieved place, dresse him thus morning and evening, and give him moderate exercise and aydings, and let him have Mashes and white water to drinke, and keep him warme. This is very good ✠ Another:

First rake him, then give him the Clister prescribed in booke 2. chap. 11. § 8. Clister 4. then let two men (on either side of the *horse* one) rub him well with soft cloaths all his *body* and *limbs* over, especially the diseased *limb*, then cloath him up warme, and let him stand upon the trench foure or five hours, to the end the Clister may work the more kindly, after give him meat and white water, and so feed him for that day. But I must tell you, that so soon as you have given him this Clister, and before his friction, give him this drink whereby to cleanse his *body*, viz.

Take of white wine one pinte, Aloes halfe an ounce, Agarick half an ounce, all beaten very small, and infused in the Wine, putting thereto of the purest clarified Hogs-grease one spoonfull, or for want thereof (and which is much better) of sweet Butter sixe ounces, and give him this bloud warme. The next day prepare in a readinesse this unguent.

Take of strong Ale two quarts, and of black Sope two pound, boyle them together till they look black like Tarre, and herewith annoynt, rub, and chafe him all over that the unguent may sinke in: that done, cloath him up, and stufte him warme that he may sweat well, but stufte *head*, *necke*, and *breast* well, let him sweat thus two hours, then coole him by degrees, taking now a little from him, then a little. till he be brought to a good temper againe, then keep him so, and about one of the clock at afternoon, give him a warm Mash, or white water, and then some Hay, and an houre after that Proven-der. Let not this drink be given him above once during his whole Cure, but his *Clisters*, *Sweats*, and *Frictions* till he be well; yet the *Clisters* not every day neither, and let his drinke be white water, wherein Mallowses have been boyled, unlesse sometimes you give him wherewith to comfort him a sweet Mash, but if he will not drink his white water boyled with Mallowses, then let him have it without, and let his food be that which is sweet and very good. This did I never try, but two severall *Ferriers* who lived more then 100 miles distant the one from the other, gave me this Receipt *verbatim* without scarce altring one word, and they both protested unto me they have cured sundry *Horses* which have been forely perplexed with this disease.

Hippoph.

Hippoph. *What meane you by moderate and temperate ayering of a Horse?*

Hippof. I doe meane by moderate ayering, that he be not forth in ayering too long, and by temperate ayering, that a sicke *Horse* if there be cause why he should be ayered, it be not done too late in the evening, nor too early in the morning, for that such kinde of ayerings will take too much from a *Horse* that is feeble or sick, but in such cases, let him be walked to his ayerings in a warme evening, an houre before sunne-set at least, and in a morning an houre after the sunne is up, especially if the winde be not too high, or blow too cold, and that the sunne shine warme: for by ayering before sunne rising, and after sunne set (like as is to be used with Running and Hunting *Horses*) will make a fat strong *Horse* both so poor and leane, as not to have a Crow of *flesh* on his back, as the proverb is, and so feeble as not to be able to arise being layed, and therefore give not such kinde of ayerings to a *Horse* that is infirme; but those which I do tearme the temperate ayerings, will greatly comfort the spirits of your *Horse*, give him a very good appetite to his meat, and encrease his *flesh* and good liking, whereas the late ayerings will be (as I said before) very noxious to sicke, diseased, or leane *Horses*.

Ayering.

§ 17. C.

Hippoph. **H**ow doe you helpe a *Horse* that groweth *costive* or *belly-bound*?

Hippof. The nature of this disease is such, as that the *Horse* that is therewith troubled, cannot discharge himselfe but with great paine and trouble, his ordure coming from him both very dry and hard. *Horses* that are kept too much to hard, dry, and hot meats, are most incident to this malady; sometimes it commeth by eating too much Provender, especially Beanes, Pease, Tares, or Wheat, which albeit these graines be more hearty then any other, yet they siccate and dry up the moysture, because they beget more heate and costivenesse in the body, then other graines doe, yea and winde too, and bad *humours* causing obstructions: and sometimes this costivenesse commeth to a *Horse* by reason he hath been kept to too spare a dyet, as is usually seen in *Horses* in dyet; for this hot and dry food doth suck up (like to a sponge) the *flegmaticke* moysture of the *body*, giving way thereby that *cholter* is become the more predominant, so that the meat he eateth cannot be so well digested. This is a disease very perillous, and the origine of many maladies: and it is easily knowne by its symptomes. And you may cure him after this manner, *viz.*

Take the decoction of Mallowes one quart, Sallet oyle halfe a pinte, or fresh Butter halfe a pound, *Benedicte laxative*, one ounce, give him this bloud-warme clister-wise, and then clap his *tayle* to his *tuell*, and so cause him to keep it halfe an houre at least, being walked

*Costivenesse
or Belly-
bound.*

up and downe, then set him up warme, and it will worke, whereby he will empty himselfe, and in due time give him a sweet Mash, and after Hay, and so keep him to Mashes or white water two or three dayes, but withall faile not to rake him before you administer your Clister. ✠ This is a most excellent Receit which you shall finde in *lib. 2. chap. 6. § 7.* Clister i. c. ✠ There be many other good *suppositories*, and Clisters, which I have already and will hereafter set you down, which be very soveraigne for this malady.

§ 18. C.

Hippophyl. **W**hat disease is that we call the crowne-scab;

Hyppos. This sorance is a scab or crust which groweth upon the coronet or top of the *hoofe*, next unto the *hayre*; it is a filthy stinking and cankerous disease, and not onely troublesome, but painefull to the beast, and it commeth commonly in the winter, whilst the *Horse* is in the Stable, like as doth the Scratches, and it is ingendred first by reason the *Horse* from a *Colt* till he came to be handled, was for the most part kept in moyst, wet, and cold grounds, for no *Horses* are inclinable unto this disease, but those that are bred up in such like grounds. The signes to know this malady is, that the *hayre* will stare about the *coronet*, and become thinne and brisly. The way to cure the same is,

Crownscab.

First to wash and bathe the place well so farre as the scab or sorance goeth, which is commonly round about the *coronet*, then shave or clip away the *hayre* close; then

Take Turpentine, tryed Hogs-grease, and honey, of each like much, a little of the powder of Bolearmonacke, the yelkes of two Egges, with as much wheate flower as will thicken it by working it to a salve, and apply this *plaster-wise* with a linnen cloath to the sorance, renewing it every day once till it be whole, but let him not come into any wet during his cure. ✠ This is a very good one. Another:

Take old Chamberly, and set it upon the fire, and as the scumme ariseth, take it off, then put to it of white salt as much as will suffice, and as the scumme ariseth the second time, take it away; with this liquor wash and bathe the sorance three or foure times a day till it be whole. ✠ Another very good which I have often used.

Take soft sope, tryed Hogs-grease, of each halfe a pound, Bolearmonacke in fine powder, as much as will suffice, Turpentine foure ounces, make all these into one body, and so plaster-wise apply it to the place, binding it on with a clout that it come not off, renewing it daily till it doe leave running, then wash and bathe it in vineger warmed, till the sorance be cleane dried up. ✠

§. 19. C.

Hippoph. **H**ow doe you take away a Curbe?

Hippof. This is a swelling a little beneath the *Elbow* of the *Hough* upon the great *Sinew* behind, and above the top of the *horne*, which caused the *Horse* to halt especially when he beginneth to be hot, for by rest it payneth him the lesse: it commeth either by a straine, or by carrying of some heavy burthen, or else he taketh it hereditarily from his *Sire* or *Damme*. The signes to know it is, by the long swelling in the place before mentioned. The cure is.

First, shave away the hayre, then with an Incle or Filliting bind the *Hough* straight above the joynt, then with a small sticke beat, rub, and chafe the *Curb* like as you use to doe in the cure of the *Splent*, then with a Fleame or Knife pierce the *skinne* through in two or three places, and so with your *Thumbe* thrust forth, and crush out the corrupt *bloud*, and after convey so deepe as you can get into every hole the bignesse of two barley-cornes, of *Arsnick*, and so having bound up the place let it so remaine by the space of foure & twenty houres, then open the place, and anoynt it every day once with molten Butter, till it be whole. ✠. Another.

Curbe.

Take Wine Lees one pint, a porrenger full of Wheate-flower, of Cummine in fine powder halfe an ounce, mixe all these well together, and being made warme upon the fire, charge the place therewith, renewing it every day once, by the space of three or foure dayes together, and when you do perceive the swelling to be almost gone, then draw it with your hot Iron, and charge the burning with Pitch and Rosin molten together, which must be applyed warme, to the end, the charge may stick on the better, and then presently clap on Flocks, and let it so rest till of it self it fall away, and let him come in no wett or water by the space of twelve or foureteene dayes after, and he wilbe perfectly cured. ✠. Another.

Take a Barre of Iron, heat it red hot, and hold it neere to the place till it become warme, then with your Fleame prick six or seven holes through the *Skinne*, and anoynt the Sorance with Nervell, then take of salt a Sponefull, and of Verdegreece a penny weight in fine powder, with the white of an Egge, let these be well incorporated together, then take a little Flax or Hurds, and wet it in this Medicine, and bind it to the place, renewing it every day once, and in short time it wilbe perfectly cured. ✠. All these receipts I have used, and I have found them to be right good.

Chap.

CHAP. VII.

§. I. D.

Hippophylus.

*Dangerous
sicknes: how
it commeth.*



Ell now that we have made an end of this Chapter, let us proceede on to another : Tell me I pray, how may a Dangerous Sicknesse come to a Horse ?

Hippof. Sir, that which you call *Dangerous Sicknesse* is of divers natures, proceeding from fundry causes, having everyone its distinct symptoms, and therefore do require severall remedies ; wherefore that you may the better know how and when any sicknesse commeth, observe I pray, but these foure principles following, and you shall never erre. *viz.*

1 First, that all sicknesse commeth either by heates in over violent exercise, as when the Horse (*v. g.*) hath his grease molten, the *heart* overchaged, the *vitall blond* forced from the inward parts, and the large *Pores* and *Orifices* of the *heart* so obstructed, and stopped, that the *spirits* cannot returne backe to their proper places, so as the *Organs* of the *Body* cannot rejoyce, but by this meanes the *body* must of necessity languish, founder, and mortifie.

2 Secondly, dangerous sicknesse commeth also by colds, as by indiscreete or negligent keeping, as well before as after long and violent exercise, and then is the *head* perplexed, the *eyes* dulled, and pained, the rootes of the *tongue* inflamed and swelled, the *lunges* with rhumes tickled and offended, occasioning strong, and laborious coughing, and the *Nosthrills* often distilling and powring forth filthy and corrupt matter.

3 Thirdly, dangerous sicknesse commeth also by surfet of foode, either by eating too much, or too little of what is good, or also of that which is not wholesome, so as the first killeth, or at least debilitateth the *Stomacke*, oppresseth the *Heart*, and sendeth up those evill fumes into the *Head* by which are ingendred the *Stavars*, *Frenzies*, and other mortall diseases, the second putrifies the *blond*, and converts all its nutriment into corruption, from whence proceedes the *Yellows*, *Farcin*, *Feavers*, *Mainges*, and other such like pestilent, leprous and loathsome diseases, which suffocating the *heart*, and clogging the *Stomacke*, dilates and spreads it selfe universally over the whole *body*, leaving no *member* free, and confoundeth every *faculty*, and *member* thereof.

Fourthly, and lastly, dangerous sicknesse comes also by *accident*,

as when a *Horse* (v. g.) receiveth some deep or perilous wound or hurt, either in his *body* or elsewhere in some *vital* or dangerous part, by meanes whereof nature is so farre offended, as that incontinently a general sicknes seizeth upō the *Horse*, which (not in opportune time prevented) death suddenly ensueth; and these infirmities are called by the more expert *Ferriers*, *Accidentall feavers*: for if you be pleased to observe well, you shall finde the *Horse* sometimes trembling, sometimes sweating, sometimes cold, sometimes burning, but never in good temper. And thus much briefly of these foure points or grounds, which be the occasion of most *dangerous sicknesse Accidentall*.

Hippoph. What meanes hath a man to know the signes, whereby to distinguish these severall sicknesse the one from the other?

Hippof. Very easily Sir, for if sicknesse doth proceed from the first of these foure principles, to wit from heats, then are the signes these, viz. The heaviness of his countenance, swelling of his limbs, especially of his hinder legges, scowring and looseness of his body, in the beginning of sicknesse short, and hot breath, a loathing and forsaking of meat, &c.

If from the second, viz. cold, then the signes are, a dejected countenance, dulness or sleepiness of the eyes, Pustils or hard knots under the *Chinle*, yea and many times inflamed kernels and swellings so high as to the very roots of the eares, a rotten or moyst inward hollow cough, he many times chewing betwixt his teeth, some loose, filthy, and flegmaticke matter, immediately after his coughing, which in some cases is not an evill signe by reason that thereby the cold rotteth and goeth away; whereas on the contrary side for a *Horse* to cough cleare and dry, doth demonstrate a dry cough, which hath long time lurked in his *body*, sorely festring and tormenting him inwardly, which is very difficile to cure, but at length discovers it selfe by reason the creatures languishing, and generall falling away of his *flesh*, for his *belly* will be shrunk up, and when he drinketh much of the same, water will issue forth of his *nose*, his *eyes* will be either watry, or materative, and runne continually through paine which he hath in his *head*, procured by meanes of this cold, and his *hayre* will be rough and staring, &c.

From the third, to wit from surfet by meate, either naturall or unnaturall; the signes be these, a dulness of the *head*, *eyes*, and countenance, yea and that in such a violent manner, so as the *Horse* will be hardly able to lift up his *head* from the manger, a dull and dead eye, and sunk into his *head*, his *eares* prickt upright, and the tops of them cold, as also his upper *lips* and *sheath*, his pace reeling and staggering, and (if the disease be farre gone) he will be of a frenetike and mad comportment, as by biting and gnawing the Racke and Manger, or whomsoever shall come within his reach, and sometimes by biting of himselfe, and by beating his *head* against the wall and floore, and other

1

2

Dangerous
sicknesse
how to know

3

other such franticke postures and passions : but if the malady be not yet gotten into the *braine*, or doe not occupy that place; but that it hath settled it selfe more intrinsically in the *body* or *heart*, then you shall perceive by the whites of the *eyes*, the *lips* and *tongue*, this disease to be the plaine yellowes, and if the disease be farre gone, then will the Yellowes be dispersed all over the whole *skinne*, and the *Horse* sweate in the morning when first you come to him, as if he had beene sorely ridden, or had an *Arcticke feaver*, and have a desire rather to be lying then to stand, and when he standeth, it will be with his *fore-legs* straddling the one from the other, and he will also have a loosenesse or scowring, especially if the *Horse* hath taken his surfet by eating too many Oates, or other provender, and by drinking suddenly, which you shall the better know, because the *Horse* will in his *ordure* voyd some of his Oates or other graine whole, as not being digested, by reason that the cold water so suddenly taken, upon his over-hasty eating (not being all chewed) will coole his *stomacke*, and make him to swell: besides the *Horse* will have a generall loathing and forsaking of his meat, which is likewise the common symptome of every kinde of surfet, and almost every degree of sicknesse.

4

The fourth and last ground or principle is, that if his infirmity and sicknesse doe proceed from *accidentall* meanes, then are the signes, a perplexed and troubled *body*, sometimes sweating at the roots of his *eares*, in the *flankes*, and behinde the *shoulders*, against the *heart*, sometimes he will be taken with a trembling all his *body* over, and sometimes with a glowing and burning in his *vital parts*, as in the *temples* of his *head* against his *heart*, on the inside of his *fore-legs* next to the *body*, and on the inside of the *hinder-legs*, also his mouth will be dry and hot, his *tongue* will be subject to be enflamed and furred; in fine he will have a loathing and aversion from meat; but onely that he must eat, and a great draught and thirst, and a great longing to drink cold water, and when he hath drunke what him liketh, yet will he nevertheless desire to keep his mouth continually in the water. Many other signes there be, whereby a man who is any thing at all skilfull and cautelous, may by observing, discover when his *Horse* falleth into any infirmity and sicknesse, as when you doe perceive that his countenance and postures do alter from their usuall customes, then be you well assured, your *Horse* doth alter and decay in his health. Also you must observe his feeding, and how he doth eat, as whether with a good *appetite*, or with a weake *stomacke*, the first being good, the second unkindely and unhealthy, as also how he doth discharge or empty himselfe, and how his *urine* and the colour of his *doung* or *ordure* doe alter, which if his *doung* or *excrements* be pale, and full of graines, then is it good, but if blackish and dusky (according as I have before in its due place handled) then be you confident, he hath much heate and drynesse in his *body*, by which meanes probably ensueth great and dangerous sicknesse: very many other signs of sicknesse

ness there are, as the not casting or shedding of his hayre, in its due and proper season, *hide bound*, costiveness, laxativeness, the clinging up of his belly to the flanks, continuall dislike, drowiness, dullness and heaviness, when he hath wanted due ordering and feeding, &c. all which symptoms are so well known to every man, as that they need not be handled further in this place.

Hippoph. But now Hippocrates, since you have thus farre discoursed, what are the causes and signes of dangerous sickness, I would gladly you would shew me how I may either prevent sickness before it cometh, or cure the same at first appearance?

Hippoph. Sir; in this case two things are principally and diligently to be considered. The first is to prevent sickness before it shall approach, whereby it shall not offend at all, and the second is, to take it at the first appearance, and so to prevent and hinder it, whereby to prevent the danger thereof. As touching the first, the best way will be three or foure dayes before you put forth your Horse to grasse, to take blood from him, and the next day to give him the drinke of *Diapente* halfe an ounce, with a pinte and a halfe of sweet Sacke, which you shall finde mentioned in lib. 2. & sequent, and so by degrees to abate his clothes if he have had any, and it is also very good that when you doe take blood from him, you doe receive it in a bason or bowle, and therewith annoint his backe, loynes, fillers, breast, and all such like places about him with the said blood, for it is most wholesome, and doth comfort the body very much, cleanseth the skinne, and begetteth a generall rejoycing throughout all the vitall parts of the Horse. But if you have no intent to put him forth to grasse, and yet would prevent inward sickness, then faile not (when you have best meanes) to give him rest, take no blood from him at all, (unlesse you may justly suspect his blood not to be very good) but give him onely a drinke of *Diapente* or *Diatesseron*, for either of these are the greatest and best refiners and purifiers of the blood of any thing can be administred, and doe cause the Horse to avoyd all yellow-cholerick-matter, and all evill indigested humours, which may any way putrifie, inflame, or corrupt the blood. And observe moreover, that in administring of these drinks, if Sacke or Muscadine be not at hand to be had, that then in the place of a pinte and a halfe of either of these (which is the proportion I limit to a Horse of a strong, able, and corpulent body, but to a small or weake Horse one pinte) you doe take of good Ale or Beer, one quart, and the same quantity of *Diapente* or *Diatesseron* formerly prescribed: and if the Ale or Beere be made warme upon the fire, it will be the better. And thus much as touching the first poynt, to wit, the prevention of sickness before it come, that it may not offend your Horse at all. Now I come to the second poynt, viz.

To take sickness at its first appearance, whereby to send it packing before it hath taken deep root in the body of the Horse, so that it shall never come to danger of life or limb, then thus in a few words.

V

You

I

Dangerous
sickness
how to pre-
vent.

2

Dangerous
sickness
how to cure.

You must be very cautelous and vigilant in observing your *Horse* well, and to pry into him so narrowly, as to discover the least symptome of sicknesse, that may be able to peep out its head, which so soon as you shall descry, then presently (if reason so require) let him *blond*, and three severall mornings together, give him the drinke of *Diapente*, and let him be kept warme, well rubbed, and have Mashes or white water during that time, and some dayes after, which will be a very good meanes for him to remaine in perfect health, strength, and good estate of body; But if this *Diapente* or *Diateffum* be not to be had on a sudden, then

Take Selendine halfe a handfull, as well the roots as the leaves, well washed and picked, Worm-wood and Rue of each halfe a handfull, boyle all these in strong Ale or Beere, from a pottle to a quart, and then straine it well, and put into the liquor of sweet Butter halfe a pound, and of ordinary Treacle two spoonfuls, and so give it him bloud warme. ✠ And this is most effectuell to the ends before recited.

§. 2. D.

Hippoph. **Y**ou speake very much of *Diapente*, giving it very great commendations, I pray how doe you make the same?

Hippof. The receit of *Diapente* doth merit many more *Encomiums* than I am able to give it, for that it is so pretious and soveraigne a powder for *Horses*, and it is compounded of five severall simples if it be rightly made. It is (I say) the most soveraign thing which can be given to a *Horse* by way of drench, whereby to cure him of very many inward diseases. It is good against all infectious maladies, as feavers of what nature soever, all sorts of Pestilences, or contagious colds, Coughs, wet or dry, Glaunders, Surfets, inflammations in the *blond* or *liver*, Frenzies, Yellowes, it purifieth, refineth, and purgeth the *blond* from all infection and corruption, it easeth the overflowing of the *gall*, and the working of the *spleene*, and in a word it cureth whatsoever diseases the *body* of the *Horse* may be inwardly inclined unto, And it is thus made, viz.

Baccalauri.

Take Aristolochia Rotunda, Gentiana, Baccalani, Myrrha, Eboraci, of each alike much, let these be first pounded severally and finely searfed, and after weighed, so as the quantities may be just and even, not any one lesse, or more then another, and after so well mixed as may be possibly, and so put into a Gally-pot pressed as hard as may be done, and after so close stopped, as that no ayre can get into it; and thus you must make it, and reserve it for your use. This must be administred to a *Horse* in Muskadine, if you drench him for a cold or Glanders. If for other maladies, then in sweet Sacke, and the quantity must be a pinte and a halfe: but if Sacke or Muskadine be not to be had, then give it in strong Ale or Beere, and the quantity of this

powder

Diapente.

powder of *Diapente* must be two or three spoonfuls, unlesse to a small, sicke, or feeble *Horse*, then the lesse quantity, according as in your owne judgement and reason you shall thinke to be most requisite. ✠ And thus is this so excellent powder of *Diapente* made, and such are its vertues.

§. 3. D.

Hippoph. **H**ow doe you make also your *Diatefferon*?

Hippof. This *confection* I have heard some call *Horse-Mithridate*, and some *Horse-Treacle*, by reason of the inward vertue thereof, whereby to expell all poysonous and contagious annoyances, and to drive them, and all manner of sicknesse from the heart. And thus it is made, viz.

Take first of the powder of *Diapente* two ounces, and put it into a cleane stone mortar, that is not over-great, and put thereto of life or clarified honey the like quantity, let the mortar be made hot against the fire, before you doe put in your powder or honey, and then with a pestell of wood worke it, till it come to a very *Treacle*, which when you shall finde to be sufficiently compounded, then take it forth, and put it into a cleane gally-pot or glasse, and so keep it very close stopped for your use, and when you have occasion to make use of it,

Diatefferon.

Take of this *confection* halfe an ounce, and dissolve it in Muscadine or sweet Sacke a pint and a halfe, and so give it your *Horse* bloud-warme, and as occasion is profered, adde to it of *London Treacle* one ounce. ✠ This *Diatefferon* is a *confection* so soveraigne, being as I said before, an *antidote* against all infectious diseases, it is a present cure for all sorts of Feavers, or any other desperate or dangerous sicknesse, taking first *bloud* from the *Horse* if there be cause.

§ 4. D.

Hippoph. **I**s there nothing good besides these in case of desperate and dangerous sicknesse, supposing that neither *Diapente* or *Diatefferon* can be had?

Hippof. Yea Sir, if neither of these may be gotten, and that you are fearefull of the life of your *Horse*, then doe I counsell you thus.

Take of the best Tarre two ounces, of honey one ounce, blacke sope two drams, and bay salt a handfull, incorporate all these well together, then fill two egge shels, the crownes onely being broken, so as you may get forth the meat, and fill them up againe with this medicine, and put them downe his throat, and walke or ride him gently up and down a quarter of an houre or more warme cloathed, that done, set him up warme, and litter him well, and let his drinke be either Mashies or white water for foure or five dayes after, but let him fast three houres after his medicine, and let his Hay and Pro-

Desperate and dangerous sicknesse

vender bee sweete and good, ✠. This I have often experimented.

§. 5. D.

Hippoph. **I** should thinke Hipposerus, that for change, Bread were good to be given sometimes to a Horse; I pray you what is your opinion thereof?

Hippof. If you meane such ordinary *Horse-bread*, which our common Bakers used to make for *Horses*, (which is now long since out of date and use) I say it cannot be good for a *Horse*, by reason it was ill made, and the Materialls whereof it was compounded, nourish very little, nay it hurteth a *Horse* much more than it can do him good, for it breedeth evill *humours*, and worse *bloud* in his *body*, it being made of bran and chifell for the most part with a little course Rye meale, to make it stick together, and so made up and kneaded with cold water, and after the outside of the loaves or roules are rowled in ground or rather bruised pease, which can in no case bee good or wholesome. But if you have a desire to give your *horse* bread, whereby hee may the better endure labour, eyther in his travell or long journeys, or in Tilting, Hunting, or otherwise, then if you please to give him this bread which I do heere prescribe you, it will give him strength of *body*, be very much helpfull to his *winde*, keep him from fainting in his labour and exercise, be it never so sore.

Horse bread

Take Wheate meale, Oate meale, and Beanes, all ground very small, of each one peck, Anniseeds foure ounces, Gentiana, and Fenugrick, of each one ounce, Licoris two ounces, let all these be finely powdred and searced, and ad the whites and yelkes of twenty new layd Eggs, well beaten together, and put to the other ingredients, and so much strong Ale, as will knead it up, then make your loaves like to *horse-bread*, but not too thick, and let them be well baked, but not burned, let not this bread bee given to your *Horse* too new, and when you doe give it too him, let it be five or six mornings together without other provender; and thus you shall have him well *winded*, lusty, strong, hardy, and healthy, whereby to be able to hold out and retaine his mettle to the last. Also when he is to bee used or employed:

Take a thinne linen cloath, and put therein of white Sugar candy, one ounce, and as much powder of Anniseeds, sew up this to the Bit or Snaffle in a fine linnen cloath, when you are to take his backe, first dipped in White or Claret Wine, and so let him bee exercised, or travelled with this in his *mouth*: this giveth moysture to his *mouth*, and *stomacke*, it expelleth inward heat, and faintnesse from his *body* and *heart*, and causeth him to forget his labour and travell, for it doth revive his *vitall spirits* ✠. Another kind of bread I will give you

you not much unlike the former, but somewhat better and a greater cooler.

Take Wheate-meale one peck, Rie-meale, Beanes, and Oate meale, both ground very small, of each halfe a peck, Anniseeds, Lycoris, of each one ounce, and white Sugar candy foure ounces, all in fine powder, the yelkes and whites of twenty Egges well beaten, and so much white Wine as will knead it into a past, make this into great loaves, bake them well, and after they be two or three dayes old, let him eate of this bread, but chip away the outside. ✠.

Hippoph. *What is the reason you choose of these graines, meale rather then flower, wherewith you doe make your bread?*

Hippof. Sir, I preferre Meale far before Flower, by reason Flower is much more hot, and binding, and therefore the courser the bread is, the better it is for the Horse, and the more wholesome; and the reason, why I doe put Rie into my latter bread, is, because Rie is a loosener, and a cooler, and therefore it will make him the more soluble.

§. 6. D.

Hippoph. **VV** *Hat is good to dissolve and mollifie Tumors and hard swellings in the Legges, or other parts and members of the Horle?*

Hippof. Tumors and swellings sometimes comes by heats gotten with over hard riding, whereby the creature being over much heat, the grease falleth downe, and settling in the Legges and other parts, doe grow dry and hard, this breedeth Splenis, Spavens, Curbes, Ring-bones and the like Sorances, which in trueth are none other thing then proper Tumors, besides it doth occasion other knots and swellings, which are to be cured after this manner, viz.

Take of the roots of Mallowes, or of Holliocks of each two ounces, of Linseed, and of Fenugrick, of each six ounces, of the fat or grease of Hennes or Capons, or for want thereof, of Neats foote oyle, a Wine quart, of Waxe six ounces, steepe the rootes and seedes being bruised, in a pottle of white Wine, when it is scalding hoat, for three dayes and three nights, and the fourth day boyle them in the same liquor, and adde thereto when you beginne to set it upon the fire, your grease and waxe, putting also thereunto of Rosin three ounces, then let all these boyle together a good while, and at the taking it from the fire, put thereinto of Venice Turpentine two ounces, and so stirre them together, and thus it is made fitting for your use, which being well reserved, will dissolve all hard swellings and Tumors, the Sorances being dayly anoynted therewith, ✠. This I have by much practise found to be very good. Another.

Dissolve
Tumors.

Take white Lilly roots, Hemlock, Mallowes, Beares-foote, Scabious, Cuccoe-pits, of each one handfull, chop them small, and infuse

fuse them for twelve daies together in white Wine, and Sallet Oyle, of each one pint, then take wax foure ounces, and Beane Flower, twelve Spoonefuls, and so boyle it, and after straine it, and bring it to an Vnguent, and therewith anoynt the *Tumors* and swelled parts, which being done, apply this Plaister to the places. Another.

Take Darnell and red Docks, of each two handfuls, bruise them, and then boyle them in wine, and Salet Oyle, of each one pint, and Beane Flower foure Spoonefuls, and put thereto of Asses or Oxes dung, so much as will suffice, when it is boyled to a pultis, apply it *Playster-wise* and use this every day once, till it be well, ✠. This is also very good. Another.

Take Linseed and pound it in a Morter, and of Fenugrick in powder, of each foure ounces, Pitch, and Rosin, of each three ounces, Damaske Rose leaves dryed, two ounces, Pitch of Greece six ounces, boyle all these together, and when you are ready to take it from the fire, adde thereto of Turpentine two ounces, Honey six ounces, and Sallet Oyle, so much as will suffice, and thus applying this Salve Plaister wise to the place, it will mollifie any hard substance. ✠. This I have often tryed and have found it to bee very good.

§. 7. D.

Hippoph. *But Hipposcerus, is there any cure for a sick Horse? whose infirmity is so desperate, and he so farre spent, as to bee generally judged to be almost at the poynt of death?*

Hippof. Truly Sir, both my Master and my selfe have done such cures upon *Horses*, which have beene so desperately sick as you speak of; infomuch as the beholders have pronounced sentence of death upon them, and the owners would have beene well content to have beene satisfied, and well appayed with their skinnes and shooes, and I will shew you what our cure is.

First open the neck veine, and let him bleed well, then two houres after his bleeding,

Take of *Diatefferon* halfe an ounce, and give it him bloud warme in Muscadine a pint, or Sack, for want thereof, or else if these be not on the suddaine to be gotten, then take good Ale or Beere, with the like quantity of *Diatefferon*, then having given it, walke him halfe an houre (if he be able) in the warme Sunne, or if there be not Sunne-shine, then in some warme Stable, or Barne, then set him up warme cloathed, and littered, and let him be rubbed all over, as *Head, Pole, Neck, and Legges*, and especially twixt the *Eares*, for that greatly easeth the payne in the *head*, by reason it dissolveth and disperseth the *humors*: at noone unbridle him, and offer him a little sweet Hay, sprinkled with water, which if he shall refuse to eate, (as tis likely he will)

Desperate
sickness.

will) then offer him so much bread as the quantity of a penny loafe, and let him eat it all if he will, but if he do refuse to eat thereof also, then give him one gallon of the strongest Ale-wort you can get of the first runnings so soon as it is mashed, but let it not be over-hot, and before barme be put unto it, give him this I say bloud warme, but if that cannot be gotten, then provide him in a readinesse against the same houre, a sweet Mash, which when he hath taken, fume his head with Olibanum, Storax, and Benjamin, and then let him be rubbed againe as before, and see him warme kept as is usuall for sicke *Horses* in *physicke*: and thus doe for three dayes together in all poynts (*bloud-letting* excepted) for that must be once onely (unlesse extraordinary cause doe require the same) and assure your selfe your *Horse* will mend daily, and recover his health and strength in short time, and at three dayes end, give him no more Mashs, but in their stead, let him have white water onely: if by meanes of this sicknesse he hath any Pustils or inflammations risen under his *chaule*, then clip away the *bayre*, and apply such things thereunto, as may ripen them and bring them to a head; and after breake them with Shoemakers waxe, or other such like good things, and so let them runne and heale at pleasure. Also if you doe finde your *Horse* to be costive by meanes of his sicknesse, as commonly *horses* will be after *Physicke*, then first rake him, and finding his doung to be hot, dry, and hard, give him the suppository of a candle, shewed you in chap. 18. § 27. Suppos. 1. of this second Booke. And this is the best Suppository can be given him in a case of this nature. ✠ But if contrariwise you finde him to have a strong and violent laxe, or scowring upon him, whereby he purgeth overmuch, and so continueth, then be you assured that hee hath something in his *body* wherewith nature is offended, which you must labour to remove, and for remedy thereof,

Take of new milke one quart, and put to it of Beane flower two spoonfuls, and as much of the powder of Bolearmonack searfed, boyle these untill the milke thicken, and so bloud warme give it your *Horse*, and in a morning or two fasting with a horne, and it will stay his loosenesse: ✠ but if this doe it not, then shall you

Take of red Wine one pinte, or Tinto the like quantity, and put into it of Bursa-Pastoris, one handfull, and of Tanners Bark in fine powder, half a handfull, the outside being first taken away, then boyle it till the hearb do begin to be soft, then straine it, and put thereto of Cinamon powdred two spoonfuls, and so give it him bloud warme, one or two mornings, and this will infallibly stay his fluxe: and if you cannot get *Diapente* or *Diatefferon*, then give him this drinke.

Take of *Dragon-water* one pinte, *London Treacle* one ounce, warme it till the Treacle be dissolved, and so give it him bloud warme; give him this drinke three mornings together, and for his drink otherwise, let him have sweet Mashs three mornings onely, and after till he be well recovered, let him have no cold water by any meanes, but onely

onely white water, and through Gods assistance he will be soone restored to his former health. ✠ These things I have often practised to good purpose.

§ 8. D.

Hippophyl. **W**hat is to be done to a Horse that droopeth, pineth, or languisheth?

Hippof. This disease commeth by a cold taken, or by some unnaturall surter, by reason of over-hard riding, or by being washed after an extreame heate; the signes to know it, is, he will feed, but with no appetite, neither will the meate he eateth, digest well with him, for, give him Oates and you shall finde many of them come forth whole in his *ordure*, besides, he will be lanke in the *belly* and *flankes*, and his *flesh* will fall away. The cure for such a malady, is first to

Drooping.

Take *bloud* from him as well in the *necke* as *spurre veines*, for that the *bloud* is most corrupt, and naught, the next day rake him, and administer unto him the *Clister* prescribed you in *lib. 2. chap. 6.* and § 7. *Clift. 3. C.* the next day after he hath taken his *Clister*, give him this drinke.

Take of new milke warmed as much as will suffice, the yelkes of three new laid Egges, of pepper, made into very fine powder, a halfe penny worth of Anniseeds, Myrra, Bay-berries, Turmaricke powdered also, of each halfe a dram, of ordinary Treacle one penny worth and a little saffron powdered, pound all the simples that are to be pounded, every one by it selfe, and mixe them well with the residue, and let them infuse in the milke a whole night, and the next morning give it to the *Horse* bloud warme, and after order him as you are accustomed to doe to sicke *Horses* in *Physicke*, but let him have this drink five mornings together, and keep him to Mashies or white water, and if during that time you doe not finde his appetite to come unto him better then before, then let him rest foure dayes, and at foure dayes end give him this drinke, *viz.*

Take Bay-berries, Iuniper-berries, Aristoloch. rot. Ivory, Myrra, of each two ounces, make all these into fine powder, and searse them, and let them be well mixed, boyle of this powder two spoonfuls in strong Ale one quart, or Muscadine or Sacke one pinte, which is much better, adding thereto when you take it from the fire, so much Pepper finely beaten, as will lye on a fixe pence, and so much grated Ginger as will lye upon a shilling, and so bloud warme administer it to your *Horse*, then so soone as he hath taken this drinke, trot him gently a mile or two upon faire ground, and then set him up warme, and cause him to sweate in the Stable an houre, but not too violently, and after coole him discreetly, and by degrees, and give him this drinke and sweats three times, to wit, every other day, and after the taking of these three drinckes, Take of burnt Sack one pinte,

pinte, and put to it of Alement two good lumps made first into fine powder, and give it your *Horse* two mornings, that is to say, having given it him once, let him rest, and then give it him for the second drinke foure dayes after. ✠ And thus have I cured sundry horses of this infirmity.

§ 9. D.

Hippoph. **V**What cure have you for a Dropsie?

Hyppos. This disease hath an apparant ground more then conjecturall, for it never commeth to be knowne by any symptomes, but onely when the *horse* falleth into dislike, and loseth the true and perfect colour of his hayre and skinne, and when he loseth his *spirit, mettle, strength, cheerefulnesse*, and *stomacke*, and therefore we see it commeth principally for want of good nourishment and digesture, which passeth into melancholy, it proceeding either from the *spleene*, or from the *liver*, or both, the *bloud* being corrupted, and converted into a thin and watry substance, and sometimes it commeth of over-much rest, for want of moderate exercise, which I doe judge to be the more probable. Some *Ferriers* doe affirme that there be three kindes of this disease, but I could never observe more then one only, which hath its origen either of *melancholy bloud, water*, or *winde*, but chiefly of water, by reason that the *belly & legs* of a *horse* will swell, and that a *watry humour* runnes 'twixt the *skin* and the *flesh*, and if you lay your finger hard upon the twolne places, when you shall take it away, there will be in the place a pit for a small time after. The signes to know it are, that he will be swelled both *body* and *legges*, he will be also short-breathed, lose his *stomacke*, have in his *body* a continuall drought, but yet when he commeth to drinke, he will not drinke much, but pudder long with his *nose* in the water, he will be as if he had a generall consumption over all his *body*, and in time he will pine and fall away to the very *bones*, and his *flankes* and *buttocks* will be dry, and his *hayre* will shed and pill off with every rubbing, &c. The cure is, first let him *bloud*, to take away the cold, thin *watrish* or *wheyish bloud*, that better may come in its place, then cover him warme, and give him a sweat in the Stable, but if he will not be brought to sweat in the Stable (as many times it so falleth out) then exercise him abroad till he sweat, and bring him into the Stable againe, and cloath and litter him warm, and let him be well rubbed, and give him Sallow leaves, or the leaves of the E'me tree greene, Rye blades, Sedge, or Grasse, to keep his *body* open, and when you doe give him Hay, let it be sprinckled with water; then give him this drinke :

Dropsie.

Take of Ale one gallon, set it upon the fire, and scum off the froth as it riseth, then put into it of Worm-wood, and of Rue the tender tops and leaves without stalkes carefully picked, of each a handfull,

and so boyle the Ale to a quart, then take it off, and straine it well, and dissolve into it of the best *London Treacle* three ounces, and put also unto it of long-Pepper and Grains both made into fine powder, of each one ounce, then brew all these well together till it be but bloud warme, and so give it him to drinke, then bathe and annoynt the legs that be swelled with Trayne-oyle twice a day, till the swelling goe away; and give him Mashies or white water, and feed him with such meate as he will best eate, changing his dyet daily, and give it him by little at once, and after some small time thus spent with him, if the weather be seasonable, turne him to grasse, and he shall doe well and become sound againe. ✠ This is all the Drop-sie I doe know, howsoever many *Ferriers* doe talke much of another kinde which they doe call the *Feltrick*, which is not truely a Drop-sie, but a discaise distinct from the Drop-sie, unto which young *Horses* are inclinable, that from *Foles* and *Colts* are bred in Fennes, Moores, Marshes, moyst and wet grounds, and Commons, by meanes whereof they will swell exceedingly under the belly, and so soone as they doe come to be handled and backed, whereby they may be provoked to sweate, they will presently have inflamations under the *Chaule*, runne at *nose*, fall into an incurable Glanders, and in a word become inwardly rotten, The cure is,

Feltrick.

First with your fleame strike him in sundry places under the belly, where the swelling is most ranke, and so let the corrupt *bloud* and filth issue forth, by the space of an houre or two, then wipe the places cleane and dry, and then

Take of Buck-lye made very strong with chamber-lye, and the ashes of Ashen wood, and dissolve into the lye of Vnguentum Populeon, and Dialthea, of each one ounce, or as much as will suffice, according to the Lye you have, and being made good and hot, wash, bathe, and annoynt the swelling therewith morning and evening till the swelling be quite gone, and after every dressing, trot him up and downe by the space of a quarter of an houre, which will be a very good meanes to cause the *humour* to dissolve, and so to depart the sooner and the better, and for two or three dayes, give him fasting a quart of good Ale, and of *Diapente* two spoonfuls, which must be immediately before his trotting forth, after his dressing, and so let him up warme, and give him white water. ✠ And thus have I cured many *Horses* of the *Feltrick*.

§ 10. D.

Hippoph. **W**Hat is good to take dead flesh out of a sore?

Hippof. We use sundry sorts of corrosives wherewith to cleanse foule wounds, and to eate away dead, proud, and naughty flesh out of sores to the end they may heale and carnifie the better and more kindly: but yet omitting all sorts of powders and

and other corrosives to corrode and cate away dead flesh, I will teach you a most precious Vnguent, which will take off any dead, proud, spungy, or bad flesh, in the *foote* or any other part of the *Body*, be the wound never so deep or ulcerated, and it will not only take away all proud, dead, and naughty flesh, but it will also cleanse, and heale up the same very soundly in short space, And this Vnguent is thus made and compounded.

Take of common Hony two ounces, Roach-alume, Verde-grease and Vinegar, of each one ounce, sublimat two drammes, let all be made into fine powder, and boyle it a few waumes, keeping it still stirring, and then take it from the fire, and keep it in a gally pot stopped, for your use. Apply this Vnguent upon lint or fine hurds, to the Sorance once a day, and it cureth speedily, and soundly, but then observe that every day before you dresse the sore, you cleanse, wash, & inject into the wound the water taught you in the next §. which I will shew you for a Puncture or deepe wound, †. And this is an approved cure, and beyond all peradventure.

Dead flesh.

§. 11. D.

Hippoph. **V**V^{ell} shew mee then, what is good for a Puncture or deepe wound?

Hippof. If it be in the *foote*, or any other part of the *Body*, if you can come well unto it, or if it be an Impostumation unbroken, scald it first with the medicine of red-Tarre, Hogs-grease, Bay-salt, and greene Copporas, described in *lib. 2. cap. 16. §. 10.* for the *Poll. evil*, then wash the wound with this water.

Take red-Sage, Plantane, Ribwort, Yarrow, Bramble-leaves, Rosemary, Ilope, and Honey-suckle-leaves, of each one half a handfull, boyle them in white Wine one pint, and as much of Smithes, or coletrough-water, then adde thereunto in the boyling, of common Honey one Spoonfull, and as much Alumne, as a wall-nut, and a bright black peece of Sea-cole, the bignesse of an Egge unbroken, then let this boyle till the one moiety be consumed, then strayne it hard, and wash the Sorance therewith, and if the wound be deepe, inject of this water with a firing or squirt every day: when you dresse him, and by thus doing you shall cleanse the wound, take away all dead and bad flesh, and heale up the wound, both soundly and speedily. †. This is a most approved Receipt.

Deepe wounds.

§. 12. D.

Hippoph. **V**V^{hat} is best to be applyed to a desperate Straine?

Hippof. If it be so desperate an old Straine as that it be holden incurable, if it lyeth in the *Shoulder*, or other hidden

Desperate
straine.

and fleshy part of the *Body*, or that the *Horse* have a *Fistula*, *Poll-evill* or other inflammation, or swelling, then use but this one Medicine, and it will cure the same. *viz.*

Take a large earthen vessell, or crock of one, two, or three gallons or more, and fill it almost to the top, with *Asmart* and *Brooke-lime*, of each like much, and mix them well, then fill it up to the top with old chamber-lye as can be gotten, so that all the herbs be quite covered and more, then stop it close with a board or some such like thing, and so keep it for your use, for it never can bee too old; now when you have occasion to use this Medicine for any griefe afore-said, then take an earthen Pipkin, and put therein as well of the liquor, as of the hearbs so much as shall suffice, for your present use, and boyle it well upon the fire. Then if it be for a strayne in the *shoulder*, you shall take an old boote, and cut of the foote, so as you may draw it over the *Horse-foote* and bring it up above the *knee*, almost to the *Elbow* of the *Shoulder*, keeping the neather part of the boote as close and straight to the legge as may be, but the upper part which is to cover the *shoulder* must be wide and spacious; then into this boote thrust all this mixture, so hot as the *Horse* can suffer it, and lay it fast, and close about the *shoulder*, especially before and behind; then drawing up the upper part of the boote, so fasten it to the *Mane*, and about his *Neck*, as that it may not by any meanes slip downe, but keep constant and firme; and thus you must apply this Medicine to the place, till the griefe depart; this is the most violent of all medicines, and fit for no creature but a *horse* to endure, yet in short time it will bring forth whatsoever evill matter lyeth in the *Joints*; and if you have occasion to apply this to a *Fistula*, *Poll evill*, or any Impostumation, or swelling, then may you spare the boote, and only lay on the medicine in manner of a *Pultis*, and it will be sufficient. ✠ This is a very approved Receipt.

§ 13. D.

Hippoph. **VV**hat meanes have you to dissolve Grease or Glat in a fat or ketty Horse, after a strong beate or violent exercise?

Hippof. For a thing of this nature, I have seene this scowring administred, *viz.*

Dissolve
grease.

Take of sweet Sack one quart, and set it upon the fire, eyther in a Basin, or open Skillet, and when it is scalding hot, put into it of *Rosin* one ounce, made into very fine powder, then by degrees a little after a little, convey it into the Sacke, continually stirring it as you put it in, for feare of clotting, and when the Sack and it is very well incorporate, take it from the fire, and put into it of *Sallet oyle* halfe a pint, and so stirre them well together, and as it cooleth, put also in to it of browne *Sugar-candy*, made into fine powder one ounce, and when

when it is only bloud warme, give it to your *Horse* so loone as hee commeth from his exercise, and then being set up, let him bee well rubbed, and cloathed warme and well littered, and let him fast three houres after it, and let the *Groom* remaine continually with him during these three houres, till you do give him meate, yea and an houre after, neyther let your *horse* all that time stand still long, nor sleepe, but be kept stirring, and mooving, for that the medicine will by that meanes worke the more kindly, and when you shall give this or any other scowring, be you sure that neyther the same day, nor the next, you give him any cold water, but eyther a sweet mash or white water. This scowring I once did see made, and given by a *Jacky* to a strong, lusty, able hunting *Horse*, which he had in agitation for a hunting match, but it wrought so violently, and made him so extreame sick for more then twenty foure houres after the taking thereof, as that I never durst be so hardy, as to put the same in ure, nevertheless the *Creature* did very well recover againe, and wonne his match.

§. 14. D.

Hippoph. **H**ow may a man come to know, what are the diseases of the Liver?

Hippof. Assuredly Sir the diseases of the *Liver* are many, but yet the true and certaine grounds, how to discover them is beyond every *Ferriers* skill to compasse; nevertheless that there be many, and those severall and distinct Infirmities in the *Liver*, no man needes make doubt: for if the *Liver* be eyther too hot, or too dry, too moist, or too cold, may easily be diseased, which must needs occurre to the *Horse*, eyther by intemperate riding or labour, or by evill foode, or by meanes of evill and corrupt *humors*, which do gather to the place, or by the overflowing of the *Gall*, or when *Choler* is predominate, it being cheifly ingendred through heat, like as cold begetteth *Flegme*, which causeth the sicknesse and ill disposition of the *Liver*, together with its payne and anguish, whence proceede inflamations, and Impostumations, stoppings, obstructions, knobs, yea and very pernicious *Ulcers*, every of which do cause the generall Consumption and disease thereof. If the disease of the *Liver* do proceed from any hot cause, it is more easie to bee discovered, then if it came from any cold cause, for that it doth discover it selfe by these apparant signes *viz.* He will bee leane and fall away of his *flesh*, hee will loath his meate, and that which he eateth doth him little or no good, for want of ready digestion, his *ordure* wilbe very offensive, his thirst great, and he will be very much subject to a loosenesse: whereas on the other side, if the disease ariseth from any cold cause, you cannot discern it by any of these signes, for that he will be in very good liking & state of *body*, eate his meat with a good appetite, his *excrements* will have

have no evill favour when he dischargeth himselfe, he will drinke orderly and temperately, neither will he be loose or coſtive; wherefore if it come of any cold cauſe, we muſt then endeavour to finde out its ſymptomes. Now if a *Horſe* be diſeaſed in his *liver*, the infirmity muſt (I ſay) proceed from an inflammation and impoſtumatation, or from an ulcer. If it come from a cold cauſe, it cannot be an inflammation, nor an impoſtumatation, for that theſe two doe both come from a hot cauſe, as all the learned doe know full well, and therefore of neceſſity it muſt be an *ulcer* which proceedeth from a cold cauſe, and the ſignes to know it is, continuall coldneſſe of his *body*, his *hayre* will ſtare, and he will be ſubject to great feebleneſſe, faintneſſe and debility of *body*, and the reaſon is, for that the exulcerated matter doth diſſuſe throughout the whole *body* its evill vapours, which corrupteth and very much offendeth the *heart* in ſuch wiſe, whereby to occaſion and haſten the death of the poore beaſt: if in time the malady be not diſcovered, and ſkilfully and by Art cured. I have intreated ſufficiently upon this ſubject, to wit, of the nature of this infirmity, and the ſignes how to know the ſame. And therefore I thinke it time we doe goe to the Cure.

*Disease of
the Liver.*

So ſoone as you have diſcovered this diſeaſe: firſt let him *bloud* on both ſides the *necke* the firſt day, and the next day let him *bloud* in both the *ſpurre veynes*, then give him this drinke, *viz.*

Take Hoſe, Cowes-lip-leaves, Liver-wort, Lung-wort, alias Molin or Molet-leaves, Harts-tongue, of each a handfull, then take Gentiana, Ariſtolochia rotunda, Fenugrick, Enulacampana dried, and long-Pepper, of each likemuch, ſo as when they be pounded and ſearſed, you may have of each a ſpoonfull; chop the hearbs, and then mingle them with this powder, and put to it of life honey one ſpoonfull, then boyle all theſe ingredients in a quart of ſtrong Ale, untill a moyety be conſumed, and ſtraine it well, and ſo give it him bloud warme, and keep him warm, and having made him faſt three or foure houres after this drinke, give him Barly boyled, but if he ſhall reſuſe to eate thereof, by reaſon the drinke hath made him dry and thirſty, then give him a warme Maſh, and after the boyled Barly againe; but let him not have this drinke, but the day after he hath been let *bloud* in the *ſpurre veynes*, give him this drinke three times, but let him alwayes reſt three dayes betwixt every drench, and give him white water for fifteen dayes after his laſt drinke, and let him every day be well rubbed, and this will cure him. ✚ I have often made tryall of this cure, and I have found it to be very good, and it is alſo ſingular for the *lungs*; but if you doe ſuſpect the *liver* to be waſted, then give him this drinke, *viz.*

Take of ſtrong wort, either of Ale or Beere, and give it him to drinke in a morning, having faſted all night from meate and drinke, and three houres after he hath drunke his Wort, give him Oates baked in the Oven, and doe thus for three or foure dayes together or longer

longer, as you shall see cause, and he will be found againe. ✠ But if you doe suspect his *liver* not to be very sound, then

Take a good root or two of Polipodium of the Oake, made very cleane, and of Liverwort, *alias* Mullet one handfull, cut them very small, then take of Rubarb scraped or grated into fine powder, sixe penny weight, and three or foure dayes in a moneth give it him in his provender early in the morning two or three houres before hee drinketh, and let his drinke be white water during his cure, and once in sixe moneths make tryall of his *bloud* by opening a veyne, whether it be pure or corrupt, so as you take it from him accordingly, that is, the greater quantity if the same be bad, and the lesse if it be good, and administer helpe as cause shall require it. ✠ This is also a most soveraigne receipt.

§ 15. D.

Hippoph. **Y**ou have formerly delivered me many good Receipts for colds, but yet would I gladly have something which should be good for a Horse that runneth at the nose.

Hippof. Very well Sir, I will therefore give you that which shall be very good, and which I have often my selfe proved. First then if you shall finde your Horse to have taken a cold, and therewith he runneth at the *nose*, whereby he may be in danger of a Glanders, let him bleed at the *necke veine* well, then

Take of Assefetida, the quantity of a hasle nut, and dissolve it in a saucer full of white Wine vineger, then take Lint or fine Hurds, and dip it into the medicine, and so stop it into the *eares* of the Horse, and with a needle and threed stich up his *eares*, so as the medicine get not forth: the next day, take the dry mosse which groweth upon an old pale of a Parke, or other pale, or upon the limbs of an old Oke, one handfull or better, chop it small, and boyle it in a pottle of new milke, together with a green root of Elecampane cut into thin and small slices, and so let it boyle till halfe the milke be consumed, then straine it and presse it thoroughly, and before it be cold, put into the milke a good piece of sweet Butter, and of ordinary Treacle so much as will suffice, and so give it him bloud warme. ✠ This is also good for the *head-ach*, Frenzy, Stavers, Pose, Cold, Cough, wet or dry, shortnesse of breath, rotten *lungs*, Glaunders, mourning of the Chine, Laxe, Loosenesse, Bloudy-fluxe, of the like diseases.

Cold or running at the nose.

§. 16. D.

Hippoph. **W**hat may a man apply to a Horse to cause him to draw up his yard?

Draw his
yard.

Hippof. This is a disease which commeth of weakenesse in the backe, or kidneyes, either through over-riding, or some leap or strain; or by meanes of a cold; and sometimes it commeth by a terrible stripe given him upon the loynes against the kidneyes, or upon the yard it selfe, or by wearinesse or tyrednesse; the signes to know it, is by the unseemely hanging of the member, and the cure is thus:

First wash and bathe all the yard and sheath with white Wine made warme, and after that annoynt it with oyle of Roses, and life honey mingled together, and so put up the yard into the sheath, and with a loft boulder of Canvas, keep it from falling downe, and dresse him thus every day once till hee we well, and let his backe and fillets be kept warme, and annoynted with Acopum, or if you have not Acopum, then apply this charge unto his backe and fillets.

Take Bolearmonacke, the whites of Egges, Wheate meale, Sanguis Draconis, Venis Turpentine, and strong white Wine vineger, of each of these as much as will suffice, mixe them well, and charge his backe therewith, his sheath and his stones, and he shall be well. Another:

Take the ashes of Ashen wood, the whitest, finest, and best burned, and searle them, one pound, or red-clay dried, and made into fine powder, halfe a pound, Bolearmonacke halfe an ounce powdered, boyle all these in as much Verjuyce of the crab, as will make it liquid like pap, and with it, annoynt his yard, sheath, and stones morning and evening, and he shall be presently cured. ✠ This is speciall good.

§. 17. D.

Hippoph. **W**hat is good to draw a thorne, stub, iron, splinter, naile, or what else out of the flesh of the horse?

Draw a
thorne.

Hippof. If the stub, thorne, or whatsoever else it be, that is gotten into the flesh be so deep as that you cannot come to it to plucke it forth with your fingers or plyers, then lay to the place a good quantity of blacke sope, and so let it lye all night, and in the morning it will make it to appeare, so as you may come to take hold of it with your Instrument: but if it be gotten into the flesh so deep, as that the sope cannot doe it, then must you open the flesh by the way of incision, so deep till you may come to take hold thereof with your Instrument, and so plucke it forth, which done, heale up the wound with the oyntment taught you in lib. 2. cap. 10. § 4. G. and so heale it up, but be you certaine that you doe heale it from the bottome, lest

it

it breake out againe. ✠ This is the most certaine way for this cure that I doe know.

§. 18. D.

Hippoph. **V**Vhat good drinke is to be given, whereby to preserve the lungs?

Hippof. If you have no great occasion to feare your *horses lungs*, then you may administer to him in his Provender onely such powders as you shall finde prescribed you already in *lib. 2. cap. 2. § 43.* but if you have just cause to suspect that his *lungs* may be rotten, fretized or broken, then to heale or make them sound againe, or at least to give him great ease, for you may know it by these signes, *viz.* his *flankes* will beat when he cougheth, which he will often do, but principally when you give him riding or exercise, and the slower they beat, the older and more dangerous the disease is; he will also draw his *winde* short, he will grone oft, but most in lying downe, and rising up, and be very fearefull and loth to cough. The cure is,

Drinke to
preserve
lungs.

Take Tartar made of white Wine Lees, which you may have of the *Apothecaries*, or if you please you may make it your selfe, (for it is none other thing then the thickest of the Lees of white Wine well dried and made into powder.) Take (I say) of this one ounce and a halfe, of Ilope and of Colts foot, of each halfe a handfull, of Horehound one handfull, of Elecampane in fine powder, Anniseeds, and Licoris of each one ounce, of browne sugar candy foure ounces, boyle all these together in good Ale one quart, and when it is halfe boyled, put into it of Ilope water, and of Colts-foot water, both twice distilled, to take off their crudities, of each one pinte, and so boyle all againe together, and then straine it, and give it your *Horse* bloud warme. ✠ If your *Horse* have been exercised, being foule, or having been in dyet, then he hath been over-much used to Clusters, Drinckes, Rakings, Purgations, Sweats, Vomits, and the like; give him this drinke then, and you shall finde it to be most soveraign for him, and the cleaner he is within, the better is its operation, and will worke more kindly in his *body*; and at what times you are to Tilt, Hunt, Travell, or exercise him, give him but one pinte of this drinke in the morning fasting before his going forth, for it will so helpe his *breath*, whereby (through moderate exercise) he will be much the better able to goe through with his worke, then otherwise he could have done. ✠ And this drinke I have often proved. Also if you doe finde him to be either diseased, or sicke in his *lungs*, or that they be any way fretized, then give him this drinke.

Take of tryed Hogges-grease two ounces, and of *Diapente* three spoonfulls, put these into a quart of water, wherein Barly hath been boyled till it burst, and warme it in the fire till the Hog-grease be dissolved, and so bloud warme give it your sicke *Horse*, and three
Y
houres

houres after, give him of the Barley warme to eate, and either sweet mashe, or white water to drinke, ✚. This was taught mee by an *Italian* Rider in *Paris*, and I have often made use thereof, and have found it to be speciall good, howbeit for the time it will cause him to bee very sick, but have no feare, for it is right good for this Malady. Another.

Take Muskadine or sweet Sack one pint, life-honey three Spoonfuls, Myhrre, Saffaron, Calcia, and Cinamon, of each like much, make all these into fine powder, and mixe two Spoonfuls of this powder with your Muskadine and Hony, and give it him warme with a Horne, give him this drinke fifteene daies together, continuing to give him mashe and white water, and this is a most certaine Cure, ✚. But if you do find that his Lungs be rotten and impostumated, then

Take of the juyce of Purslaine halfe a pint, and mix therewith of the Oyle of Roses so much as will suffice, and put thereto a little *Tragacanthum* steeped before in Goates, Ewes, or Cowes milke, and give him thereof to drinke seven mornings together: but this drinke will but only ripen and breake the Impostume, which you shall know to be done, by his exceeding stincking breath, then shall you give him in fine powder Cassia three ounces, and seaven Raisins of the Sunne stoned, boyle these in Muskadine one pint, and bloud warme give it him, and it will heale up his Lungs againe. ✚. This is very good

§. 19. D.

Hippoph. **I**s there no good thing to be given to a Horse, wherewith to prevent diseases all the whole yeare?

Hippof. Astouching the prevention of all diseases, I have spoken before, I thinke, sufficiently, but yet I will teach you one thing, (for that you are desirous to learne, and learning is no burthen) which may bee worthy your notice, for I will keepe no secret from you; Sithence it is my Masters pleasure, I should dilate the utmost of my skill and Art.

First, therefore the spring of the yeare comming on, a time when new bloud beginneth to come, and that ere long grasse wilbe able to take heart, whereby the better to give nutriment to a Horse; The first day of *April* open a veine in the Neck, to see the better how the bloud is: if good, take the lesse, if bad then the more: then from that day untill the first of *May*, give him this which I shall prescribe you, and let him have it every day without fayle, Morning and Evening during the whole month of *April*, from the first day to the last, which is before his turning out to grasse, or foyling, which should be about the middle of *May*, and let him have the same also all the whole month

month of *October* (like as you must do in *April* after you have taken him from grasse, about *Bartholmewtide*, and do as you before have bin taught in all poynts. That which I prescribe is this.

Diseases to prevent.

Take a Bushell of old Rie, sweet and cleane, well purged, or sifted, from dust, stones, lome, feathers, cobwebs, or any such like filth, and put it into a cleane iron pot, dry, and without water, I meane such an iron pot, in which usually flesh meat is boyled, for such a like vessell, is best for this our purpose, it taketh least harme, and is much more wholesome then Brasse, Copper, or any other mettall: set this pot thus dry, and without water over the fire, and put into it your Bushell of Rie (for a lesse quantity you cannot well have) and as it beginneth to wax hot, keepe the Rie with continuall stirring, even from the bottome, without any intermission, untill you have so parched the Rie, that it becommeth black and hard, which to be so, will aske good heat, and no lesse labour to stirre it up and downe in the pot, when you do find that the Rie is sufficiently parched, which you shall know by its blacknesse, drynesse, and hardnes, take it from the fire, and put it into some other cleane, and dry vessell, which so soon as it is cold, let the vessell be kept close stopped, and so kept for your use. Now when you are to use of this Rie, take two or three good handfuls of it, and let it bee beaten to fine powder and given to your Horse mingled with his Provender, at every wating, morning and evening, or other times when you usually give him Oates; doe this these two entire months of *April* and *October*, for that all men doe hold, that in these two months the *bloud* turneth and altereth, as wee alter his diet from hard and dry meate, to grasse; and so likewise from grasse to dry meate, for this Rie thus parched and ordred, doth refine the *Bloud*, coole the *Liver*, and purgeth the *Spleene*, so as the whol structure of the *body* is thereby the better eased and freed, from all such bad and unnaturall *humors*, which would otherwise make the *body* inclinable to sundry Maladies and diseases, which this Rie preventeth, and therefore if you bee willing to keepe your *Horse* sound, and free from diseases, order him in these two months according as I have prescribed you, and you shalbe secure, ✠. This I have oft made use of, and it is good.

§. 20. D.

Hippoph. **H**ave you any comfortable drinke to administer to a Horse that is very sicke?

Hippof. I have heretofore shewed you divers, but yet I will give you one more.

Take of good white Wine one pinte, of white Sugar Candy, and of Cinamon, of each one ounce, of Cloves halfe an ounce, Saffron three drammes, of Sugar refined three ounces, make all these into fine powder, then take Mithridate two ounces, Honey of Roses

Drink comfortable.

The Expert Ferrier.

four ounces, mixe all these well together, and put it to the Wine, and make it bloud warme over the fire, and so give it him, and now and then as he standeth upon the trench, let him chew upon the end of a Bulls pizell, some *Arman*, let him be cloathed and littered warme, and remaine fasting upon the trench three houres, and after give him a sweet Mash, or white water, and after order him as is usuall for a sicke horse. ✠ This is one of the best preservative drinckes that I know, and I have had great prooffe thereof.

§. 21. D.

Hippoph. **VV** *What remedy have you for a dislocated joynt?*

Hippof. Let it be first put into its right place, then in the binding up apply this plaister.

*Dislocated
joynt.*

Take Wheate Bran, and Hogs-grease, of each as much as will suffice, make them into one body, and make thereof a Plaister of Hurds, and so apply it to the place, and after binde and swathe it up, and the joynt and member will be well againe having rest.

§ 22. D.

Hippoph. **W** *What disease is that is called Tranchailons?*

Hippof. This tearme we have from the *French*, which is onely a paine or griping in the belly, caused partly of winde, and partly of cold, and estloones of both, and our *English* tearme is, the *Chollicke*, which is a most grievous paine, ingendring many infirmities, as I have before declared in its due place: notwithstanding because you have given me the *French* tearme, I will give you two or three *French* Receits for the same disease, albeit I did never experiment any of them, yet I doe hold them to be good.

*Disease of
Tranchai-
lons or the
chollicke.*

Take of Arquequamis one ounce, make it into juyce, and put to it of white wine one pinte, and so give it to the *Horse*, which done, annoynt his *privy members* with this unguent, Take of Garlicke unpilled, as much as will suffice, and stampe it well, and mixe with it of Sallet oyle as much as will suffice, and so bringitto an unguent, and therewith annoynt the *yard*, *sheath*, and *cods*, and it will both give him ease, and caule him to stale suddenly, by which meanes he will amend. Another:

Take Cinque-foyle halfe an handfull or Pantaphillon, beat and stampe it well, and moysten it with warme water, and so give it him to drinke. Another:

Take of the powder of Siliris Montani, D' quare, and of Comin, of each an ounce, and put them into white Wine one pinte, and so give it him, then so soone as he hath taken this drinke, trot him out for halfe an houre, a good round trot, especially up the hill, and after bring him into the Stable, and cloathe and litter him warme.

Another:

Take

Take of Femugricke and of Comin, of each one ounce, make them into fine powder, and with white Wine a pinte, give it him bloud warme, and trot him out as before.

§ 23. D.

Hippoph. **H**ave you no way to dry soares?

Hippof. Yea Sir, and I will give you some receits for that purpose. Take egge shels and burne them almost blacke: take also the upper leather of old shoes, and burne them to a cole: take also a Char-cole, quick lime, and greene coperas, burned in a well nealed earthen pot, untill it be red: Take of each of these a like quantity, and beate them together to fine powder, and strew this powder upon the soare or galled place, and every time you dresse the soare herewith, wash it well with strong vinegar or chamber-lye warmed. ✠ But if it be an old ulcer, or cankerous soare, then take Masticke, Frankincense, Cloves, greene Coperas, Brimstone, of each like much, Myrra double as much as any of the former ingredients, beate all these by themselves to fine powder, and mixe them well, then take of this powder and burne it upon a chafing-dish and coles, but be carefull it flame not, then as the smoake or fume thereof ariseth, take of fine lint a good handfull or two, and hold it over the said smoake or steame, so as it may receive all the said steame into the said lint, then when it is thoroughly well perfumed, put the lint into a box, pot, or glasse, and be sure to stop it up so close, as that none the least ayre can possibly come into it (for the least ayre will deprive the lint of its vertue) and so keep it for your use; and when you have occasion to make use thereof, first wash the soare with new made chamber-lye warme, either as it commeth from the man, or else warmed upon the fire, then dry the soare againe, and lastly lay some of this lint to the soare, and so make it up, and doe this twice every day, and you shall finde it to be a speedy and perfect cure. ✠ But if you would dry up the scratches in the *heel*s of your Horse,

Take then chamber-lye which is old made, or stale, and rock or roch-Allum as much as will suffice, boyle them together, and reserve it thus well boyled in a glasse, or other cleane vessell well stopped, then take of greene nettles the strongest, most angry and keene, two handfulls, and lay them thin upon some plate, or other broad thing, and so dry them either before the fire, or in an Oven, after household-bread is drawne, then make it into powder very fine, this done, take of Pepper, and make it also into very fine powder, being finely searfed, so as it may be of like quantity with the powder of nettles, and so mixe them well together, then keep this powder in a dry glasse, close stopped, and when you may have occasion to use this powder, first wash the soare with the said liquor of Allome and Chamber-lye made bloud warme, and so having purged, cleansed, and dried the
forance

*Dry up
soares.*

*Lint where-
with to heale
ulcers or old
soares.*

forance well with a cleane linnen cloth, strew and lay on your powder, and thus doe after travell or exercise every day once during the time of his rest, and this will cure him thoroughly. ✠ This cure I have often practised.

§. 24. D.

Hippoph. **VV** *Hat disease is that which is called the Arraistes, and how is it cured?*

*Arraistes
or Rats-
tayles.*

Hippof. This is also a *French Epitheton*, which we call the Rats-tayles, being a kinde of scratches: of this disease I have spoken before in the letter *A.* and therefore I will now leave entreating further thereof.

CHAP. VIII.

§. 1. E.

Hippoph.



W *Hat is to be given to a Horse that hath eaten a Taynt?*

Hippof. A *Taynt* is a kinde of red worm which many *Ferriers* will say can doe a *Horse* no harm, but they are much mistaken, for I have knowne *Horses* to dye with eating it; but if he have eaten a *Taynt*, the signes will be, that he will be sicke, and forsake his meat, and he will swell in all his *body*, also his *eyes* will so swell that you would thinke they would fall out of his *head*, he will draw in and out his *breath* very short, and his *tongue* and mouth will be very dry and hot, and peradventure blistred, but he will be easily cured, for so soone as you shall perceive him to forsake his meate, and that he doth begin to swell, then be you confident that he hath eaten some unwholesome thing, for this inconvenience seldom commeth to any *Horse* but at grasse onely. The cure is,

*Eate a
Taynt.*

Take of the urine of *man* as it commeth warme from him, one pinte, and of bay-salt one handfull, stirre these well together, and give it him with a horne, and after walke him up and downe halfe an houre, and he is cured. ✠ This I have sundry times tryed, and it is a certaine cure.

§ 2 E.

§. 2. E.

Hippoph. **W**hat cure have you for a Horse that hath eaten a Feather?

Hippof. This may be gotten aswell in the Stable, as abroad at grasse: in the Stable through the negligence of the *Keeper* or *Groome*, in not dusting, shaking, or picking, and searching his Hay and Provender well, and by not looking narrowly, that no Feathers bee among his Hay, Oates or Provender, when he giveth him his meate, eyther in the Rack or Manger, he may also get a Feather at Grasse, as hee feedeth in a Meadow or Pasture, where Swannes, Geese, Ducks, Turkeys, or other Poultry or Foules doe lye and feed, they in the Summer season, mowting, and mewing their Feathers, whereby the Horse grasing and feeding in those places, may easily and unware eat a Feather, which being taken into the *Wesand*, will stick fast there, which will so suffocate him, as that it will provoke him to cough so vehemently, as if his *Heart* would breake, for it will stick so fast in his *Throre* or *Wesand*, as that he can neither swallow it downe into his *Body* nor cast it up at his *Mouth*. The cure is.

Put the cord of your Drenching Staffe into his *teeth*, and hold his head up on high, then take of Verjuyce of the crab one pint, and two new laid Egges, and beate them together, shels and all, with the Verjuice, and so give it him with a Horne, and so soone as hee hath swallowed the same, give him a few small branches of Savine, and this will carry away the feather into his *stomacke*, ✠. This I have very oftentimes done, and made him well againe.

Eate a feather.

§ 3. E.

Hippoph. **B**ut then what Cure have you for a Horse that hath eaten a Spider? which I take to be much more perillous to the life of the Horse?

Hippof. The signes to know this, is like to that of the *Taint*, but only that he will swell much more, and this may befall him rather in Winter then in Summer: for which give him this drinke.

Take Vrine of a Man newly made one quart, of Rue, Bittony, Scabious, Pimpernell, Dragons, of each a like much, but in such a quantity, as in the whole, all will amount but only to one handfull, chop these hearbs together small, and let them boyle together in the Vrine a little, adding thereto of Bay-salt, and Sallet-oyle of each one Spoonfull, and so give it him bloud warme, ✠. Now if it be in Winter,

Eate a Spider.

Take of Vrine one quart, Arement one lumpe, *Aristolochia rotunda*, Mithridate, of each one dramme, *English* Saffaron, one scruple; Sallet-oyle one Spoonfull, Bezar-stone three graines, let these bee
set

set on the fire and given him bloud warme, if it be in Summer, turne him to grasse, and if need be rake him, and then convey into his T^u-ell a ball of fresh Butter. But if it be in Winter let him be also raked, and give him of the blades of Greene Rie, to a good quantity, and for his Provender, let it be for two or three meales, of scalded bran and Hempseed, and let his drinke for three or foure dayes bee white water. ✠. These are all approved medicines.

§. 4. E.

Hippophyl. **VV** *What is good for a blow on the Eye, whereby aswell to save the Eye, as to assuage the swelling thereof?*

Hippof. This needes no study as well to find out the meanes how it commeth, as the signes how to know it, for both are apparant enough, there only remayneth to treat of the Cure.

Shave off the hayre from off and about the place swelled, having first well bathed it in warme water. then

Eye a stroak

Take the tenderst tops of wormwood, Pellitory, and Branca-Vr-
fina, of each halfe a handfull, chop the hearbs very small, and then beate them to an oyntment with old Boares-grease so much as will suffice, then put to it of life hony, and Wheate flower, of each one Spoonfull, and of Lynseed-oyle three Spoonfull, boyle these o-
ver the fire very well, keeping it with continuall stirring, and when it is sufficiently well boyled, straine it into a gally pot, and keepe it stopped, and as occasion is offered, anoynt the place swelled here-
with ✠.

§. 5. E.

Hippoph. **VV** *What remedy is to bee had for the Eye that is charged with a Filme, Pinne and Webbe, or with Dragons, &c?*

Hippof. These diseases in the Eye, do come sometimes by meanes of some payne in the head, which causeth a Rheume to fall into the Eyes, and sometimes by meanes of Rheumes themselves, which causing the Eyes to water, do ingender these diseases, and sometimes againe it is occasioned by meanes of a strip or hay-dust, or some hame which may be gotten into the Eye. I need not deliver you the signes whereby to know them, they are visibie to your sight. The cure therefore is thus.

*Eye Filme,
Pin and web
Dragons.*

Take Camfire or Sol-*Armoniacum*, or for want of eyther of these, white-Sugar-Candy: any of these three being made into very fine powder, and blowne into the Eye, three times a day, are most sove-
raigne to cure these diseases in the Eyes of a Horse, but Sol-*Armonia-
cum* is the very best of them all. ✠. But if a Filme or Pearle, with-
out

out a Pin and Web, do grow in the *Eye*, then, take up both the two *weeping-veines* first, which are under the *Eyes*, and then give a *Cauterize* to cyther place, *viz.* to open the *skinne* all along to the very *Eyes*, and put in to each of them, a quill cut in the middle, then oft-times cleanse them, and comfort the places *Cauterized* or *roweled* with *unguentum-Populeum*, and wash the *Eyes* every day three times with *Eye* bright water, mingled with the juyce of Smallage, and about fiftene dayes after, take away the quills, and after wash the *Eyes* with cold Fountaine-water. Another. But if it be a Pin and Web, then

Take Cuttle bone, Tartar, Salt-Gemme, of each like much, make them all into pure fine powder, and with a quill blow of this fine powder well mixed, into his *Eye* two or three times a day or oftner. +. This have I tryed, and have found it to be speciall good. But if be a Pearle, that the *horse* hath in his *Eye*, then

Take the angriest tops of red-Nettles, and stamp them well, and put them into a fine cleane linnen Rag, then dip the Nettles as they be in the Rag, into Beere, but yet very slightly, and so wring forth the juyce of the said Nettles, into some cleane thing, which done, put to it a little salt so much as will suffice, made first into fine powder, and when the salt is dissolved, convey one drop of the medicine into the grieved *Eye*, morning and evening, and this will take away the Pearle, and the *Eye* will become as cleare as the other, ✕. This I have often tryed, and found it to do rare cures in this kinde. Now for a Pin and web, any of these ensuing will cure it.

Take the sword of a Gammon of Bacon and dry it, and make it into powder, & blow thereof into the grieved *Eye*. +. This is good. Another.

Take the juyce of ground-Ivy, alias Ale-hoofe, Selendine, life-hony, and womans milke, of each of these so much as will suffice, mixe all these well, and put it into the *Eye* of the *Horse*, ✕. Another.

Take the powder of the bottome of a Brasse pot, the outermost black being first taken off, & the next powder let it be blown into the *Eye* of the *Horse*, and it will helpe him. Another.

Take the powder of burnt Alume, or of a black flint, or the powder of Ginger, eyther of these made into fine powder and blowne into the *Eye* of the *Horse*, will helpe a Pinne and webbe. Another.

Take salt Arment, and make it into very fine powder, and put thereto of life-honey and fresh butter, of each so much as will suffice, incorporate all these well together, and so convey of this medicine into the *Eye* of the *Horse*, and this will cure a Pin and web. ✕. But if there be a *Hawe* in the *Eye*, this every *Smith* can take away; nevertheless whereas all other *Ferriers*, that ever I saw worke upon this disease, do use to take it away from the out-side of the *Eye*, I doe

Pin and web

Pearle or Filme.

Pin and web

Hawe.

take it away from that part which lyeth next of all to the *eye*, and I doe finde my way to be much better, and a safer way, as well whereby to preserve the *sight* of the *eye*, as also the *wash*, and so soone as I have cut out the Haw, I doe use to wash the *eye* with white Wine, and the juyce of selendine mingled together, of each a like much, for this healeth the sorance, and keepeth the *eye* from rankling. Now I have oft times seene the *French Marshals* take up the *wash* of the *eye* with a Spanish needle, threaded with a double brown threed, and to pluck forth the Haw so farre as he well can, then with a payre of sizers to clip off the Haw so close as he can: but I cannot commend this manner of curing the Haw, for by that meanes he cutteth away the *wash* of the *eye*, which indeed is the beauty of the *eye*, whereby the *Horse* becommeth *bleare-eyed*, which is in him a very great eye-sore, he being thereby very much disfigured. + But if your *Horse* have gotten a *canker* in his eye, then

Eye a Canker.

Take Ale-hoofe (which is indeed your true ground Ivy) and stamp it well in a mortar, and if it be very dry, then moysten it with a little white Rose-water, or the water of Eye-bright distilled, as much as will suffice, and so straine it into a cleane glasse, and therewith wash, bathe, annoynt, and taint the sorance therewith, and in short time it will cure it. ✕ This is very good to cure a Canker, a Pin and Web, *bloud shotten eyes*, or any such grieve in or about the *eyes*; and I have often made use of this medicine. Another much better.

Take of stone Coperas (a thing knowne to few, and therefore very hard to get) but in the stead thereof you may use ordinary white Coperas, make it into fine powder, as much as will suffice, (for I must leave the quantity to your owne discretion) and put it into a small Pipkin, and put thereto so much very faire, cleare running, or Well water as will fill up the Pipkin to the very top, then set the Pipkin upon a few coales, and cause the water to boyle, but so treatibly, as it may but onely simmer, and as the scum doth arise, take it away with a feather, continuing so to doe, till the scum doe leave to arise any more, and when you have sufficiently well boyled it, take it off, and let it stand till it be through cold, then poure away the cleare from the bottome, which ^{bottom} must be cast away, and the cleare kept in a glasse viall, very close stopped and bound up for your use, which being thus carefully kept, the water will remaine in its perfection long, yea a whole yeare together or longer. This water cureth almost all diseases in the *eyes*, as Filmes, Pearles, weeping eyes, Pin and Web, Dragons, Cataracts, dimnesse of sight, Blindenesse, Rheumaticke, watry, stroake, blow, or stripe of or in the *eye*, and so consequently in many other cases of the like nature. ✕ And of this water I have had great experience. Another:

Take Sal-Armoniack, Lapis-Tufia prepared, Sagina, called in Latine Panicum-Indicum, and of Ginger, of each halfe an ounce, and of white sugar-candy two ounces, powder all these and searse them, and

and being well mixed, put this powder into a cleane and dry boxe very close stopped, and so keep it that no ayre come to it for your use, and when you have occasion to use of this powder, take a little thereof, and mixe with it of the juyce of ground Ivy, *alias* Ale-hoofe, as much as will suffice, and so twice a day convey thereof into his eye with a feather, till it be thoroughly whole. ✚ This is a principall good receit; I will give you another speciall good receit, which will cure all manner of sore eyes.

Take the leaves and roots of Vervine, ordinary honey, and Roman Vitrioll, of each like much, beat, bruise, and mixe these together, and put it into a stillitory glasse, and distill it by Balnea-Maria, with a gentle fire, and the water you take into your Receptacle, put into a viall glasse, and keepe it very close stopped, that no ayre get into it, and when you are to use of the same water, poure of it a little into a silver spoone, and mixe with it of the fat of a Henne or Capon, a small quantity, and therewith annoynt the sore eye twice a day, and it will cure the same perfectly. + I will give you another receit which will take the filme from off the eye albeit there be a very great and thicke *skin* growne.

Take the gall of a Hare, and life honey, of each like much, put them together into a spoon, and hold the spoone over the fire, till the medicine be bloud warme, and with a feather convey part of this medicine into the eye of the Horse, and thus dresse him morning and evening, and in short time it will take it quite away, so as the eye will become as bright and cleare againe as ever it was before. + This receit I doe hold no whit inferiour to any of the former, for I have often made use thereof. But if your Horse have gotten a stripe in the eye, then let him *bloud* in the necke, and in the weeping veyne, on the same side where the stripe is, then

Take white Rose-water, and the white of a new laid egge, beat them very well together, then wash and bathe the eye well therewith, and lay round about it with your splatter this charge restraining.

Take Masticke, Bolearmonacke, Sanguis Draconis, the white of a new laid egge, and white wine vineger of the strongest, beat first the hard simples to very fine powder, and then searse them, and they must be beaten severally, then mixe them all together with the white of the egge, and the vineger so well wrought, as that the medicine come to a thicke oyntment, and with this charge the sorance round about the eye, and this will keepe off the *humour*, and when that you finde that the eye doth begin to amend, then wash and bathe the eye twice or thrice a day, or oftner, with cold fountaine or Well water, so fresh as it is taken or drawne out of the Well or Fountaine, and if after you shall perceive that there doth grow a *filme* or *skin* over the eye, then take it away by blowing, or putting the powder of Camphire, or Sol Armoniacum, or white sugar-Candy in fine powder, according as I have before prescribed you. ✚ This is a most sove-

Eye a
charge.

raigne receit. Also if your *Horse* in his *eye* have gotten a stripe,

Take of fresh Butter wherein never came salt, the quantity of a Walnut, and put it into his *ear* on that side where the stripe is, and it will helpe him. Another :

Take Lentels or Gray-Pease, and champe or chew them in your *mouth*, and then whilst they be in your *mouth*, blow and breath into your *Horses eye*, but not any of the Pease by any meanes, doe this every day often, and a little after wash the sore *eye* with cold Fountaine water till it be whole. ✠ But yet I will teach you another receit which will take off a Pin and Web, Filme, Thicknesse, or any other foulness which may be in the *eye* whatsoever, whereof I have had great experience, and have done many rare cures in this kinde, viz.

Take the shels of seven or eight egges, cleanse them from all manner of inward slime, and dry them well within, then lay those shels betweene two new Tyles, or old, so they be made very cleane and free from Morter, and then lay them in the glowing embers, and cover them all over, and on every side with burning hot embers, and so let them ly a good space, untill the moyst substance be quite taken from them, then take them up, and beat the shels to very fine powder, and searse the powder, then with a goose quill blow of this powder into your *Horses eye*, doe this twice every day, and it is a certaine cure. ✠ But if you doe finde the *eye* to be fed with any Rhumaticke *humour*, or that it be inflamed, or that it hath gotten a bruise, stripe, or the like, then

Take of the purest and whitest refined loafe sugar, one spoonfull and a halfe, let it be made into fine powder and searsed, or else of the best white sugar-Candy (which is much better) the like quantity, let it be finely powdred and searsed, and mixe with it so much May or sweet butter (wherein never came salt) as a Walnut, and adde also to it so much of the former powder of Egge shels, as of sugar-Candy, make these into one body, and bring it to a salve, and put thereof into the *Horses eye*, morning, evening, and noone, and this will make the *eye* to be cleare, sound, and whole againe. ✠ This unguent doth purge, cleanse, coole, and comfort the *eye* of the *Horse*, and helpeth greatly his *sight*; make use of this, for it is very good. But if the *eyes* be inflamed, which you may easily know by the red strakes which will be in them, then

Take Thuris Malculi, the marrow of a Lamb, Saffaron, Cuttlebone, of each one ounce, of the oyle of Roses one ounce, and the whites of ten new laid egges, beat and incorporate all these very well together, and then with a feather put some of this medicine into his *eyes* once every day. + This receit is very good, for I have had great triall thereof. Another :

Take of white Starch made of wheate, Frankincense, life-honey, of each as much as will suffice, make all these into one body, and with

a feather apply it to the grieved eye. + Another:

If the inflammation be great, let him *bleed* in both the *temple veines*, and in the *weeping veines*, and then wash his eyes with *womans milke* and *life honey* mingled together. + Another for a wart or *spungy excretion* growing neere to the eye of the *Horse*, which commonly doth proceed from a condensed *flegme* that descendeth to the eye, which in time will cause the eye either to consume, or to grow little, if it be not prevented, which must be done thus.

Take *Roch Allum* and burne it, and then adde unto it so much white *Coperas* unburnt, grinde them together to very fine powder, then lay a little of this powder just upon the top of the wart, but take heed none get into the eye, for it is a strong corrasive, and will corrode; let the Wart be thus dressed once every day, and in short time it will consume and cate it quite away never to come more. + But as touching *Lunaticke eyes*, this word *Lunaticke* is derived from the *Latine word Luna*, which signifieth the *Moone*, and the reason why this disease takes its denomination from thence, is, for that at certain times of the *Moone* he will see well, and at other times a little, but then at other times no whit at all; and therefore this disease is called *lunaticke*, and this kinde of blindness we do hold to be the very worst of all other, but when he doth see, you may know it by the colour of his eyes, for then they will be dimme and yellowish, but when he seeth nothing, then will they looke fiery and red. This disease commeth sometimes naturally, taking it hereditary, either from the *Stallion* his *Sire*, or from the *Mare* his *Damme*, by whom he was begotten and foled: it commeth also sometimes by meanes of evill *humours* which descending from the head, make their residence in and about the eyes, and these naughty *humours* are occasioned by the meanes of intemperate riding, drawing, or other laborious exercise, in which the poore creature hath bin put to doe more then nature was well able to performe; wherefore by one of these wayes, this malady commeth; the cure is thus.

Take *Pitch*, *Rosin*, and *Masticke*, of each like much, melt them together, and having before hand provided in a readinesse two round plaisters of leather, the breadth of a 20 shilling piece of gold, lay and spread the medicine hot upon these two plaisters, and so hot as the *Horse* can suffer them, apply them to his temples, causing them to stick fast to the skinne, and let them there remaine, untill they shall fall off of themselves, then rowell him on the face just under his eyes with a very small *French Rowell* the bredth of a three pence at the most, and let it be turned every day once, the space of 12 or 15 dayes, then take forth the *Rowell*, and heale up the orifice with the greene oyntment prescribed you in *lib. 2. cap. 10. § 4. G.* and this will undoubtedly very much help his sight. + Another:

Shave away the *hayre* the breadth of a shilling on either side of the head upon the temple veines, and after apply to the place this charge.

Take

Eye a Wart.

Lunaticke eyes.

Take Taca-Mahaca, and lay it upon those places which were shaven, and clap upon them flocks of the same colour, then make incision and put in two *French Rowels*, as is shewed in the cure going before, to bring downe the peccant *humours*, and let the *eyes* be washed twice every day with the medicine before taught you, made of ground Ivy, Honey, Selendine, and womans milke. ¶ This is very good for this disease, and this I can boldly commend unto you to be a very good medicine, for I have often used. Now as touching *sores* eyes which must be cured by medicine, you must understand that the eye is the most delicate part of any one *member* in all the whole *body*, it is the *Torch* or *Candle* which doth give light to the whole *body*, it is the guide which doth usher the *body*, and to carry it from danger, so as it shall not at any time either stumble upon rockes, or blockes, or fall into any precipice; wherefore great regard ought to be had, how you doe at any time tamper or meddle with this so choyce a *member*, lest in stead of endeavouring to cure one *sores eye*, you put out both, a thing often seene and knowne, and therefore the medicines which you apply to the *eyes* ought evermore to be new made, yea in a manner every day, for that when once they begin to grow stale, they become sharp and asper, perplexing the poore beast, much more then otherwise, neither are they so wholesome, nor so powerfull whereby to performe their office for which they were made and compounded. If you have a *Horse* which is but weake of sight, the lesse *bloud* you take from him, the better it will be for the continuance of his *sight*, for by taking much *bloud* from a *Horse* weakly sighted, will on a sudden cause him to become *stone blinde*, like as by experience I have often knowne and observed. But now to conclude this Paragraph, because I have not yet handled one part appertaining to a *sores eye*, viz. for an eye which by an *unlucky stroke* or *stripe* is broken and beaten out of the head of the *Horse*. I will give you one onely receipt, which can never be paralleled: to wit,

Eye broken.

Take Allum, and first burne it in a fire-pan, and after when it is burned so, put it upon the hot coales, and let it burne there till all the moysture be quite consumed, that it becommeth as light as a feather, and as white as snow, and so brittle as that it will breake with every touch, unlesse it be very carefully handled, when it is so brittle as that it will runne to ashes with every small pressure, and that the tast of Allum remaineth little in the said Allum, then is it sufficiently burned, then take of this powder as much as will suffice, and mixe it with life-honey, and stirre them well together, as that you do bring it to an unguent; put of this every day morning and evening into his eye with a feather, and so hold your hand upon the eye a pretty while, that the medicine cannot suddenly get forth, and by thus doing, in few dayes it will be thoroughly cured, though the eye be utterly lost.

§ 6. E.

Hippoph. **V**What is good to take away a bony excretion, or a fleshy?

Hippof. This malady of a *bony excretion* commeth most commonly by the meanes of *causticks* and burning *corrosives*, which be laid to wounds that are neere to the *bone*, as when the wound is either in the *legge*, or about the *pasterne*, for that the flesh being extreemely burned and mortified by such *causticks* and *corrosives*, it doth cause an *excretion* to grow upon the *bone*, which through the unskilfulnesse of the *Ferrier*, the wound is healed up, but the *excretion* doth remaine still upon the *bone*, which becommeth an *eye-sore*, unlesse it be afterwards taken off, which occasioneth a new cure, and over and above it enforceth oft times the *Horse* to halt: sometimes againe an *excretion* commeth by the *Horse* being galled with a Locke or fetters, having beene long continued upon the same *foot*, without changing or removing in time convenient. But howsoever it commeth, the cure is,

Take Elecampane root newly gathered, and cleanse it from its earth, and wrap it up in a brown paper, then wet the paper, and so heale it in the hot embers, and so rost it as you would doe a Warden, when it is thoroughly well rosted, that it be like to pap, so hot as your *Horse* can suffer it, (for it must not scald him) after you have with a sticke, (like as you doe a splent) rubbed, knocked, and chafed the *excretion*, binde this rosted root close unto the place, and so let it remaine on 24 houres before you doe remove it, and in two or three times thus dressing it, the *excretion* will rot and consume to nothing, and this will also take away a splent. ✠ This is very good. Another:

Take the oyle of Origanum, and every morning and evening, or oftner, take a little upon the brawne of your thumb, and rubbe the place, and it will therewith in time consume, and quite take it away.

✠ And this will also take away a splent.

§. 7. E.

Hippoph. **V**What will cure an Impostume in the eares of a horse?

Hippof. This disease proceeds from sundry causes, as by means of some blow with some staffe or other such like thing, which he receiveth about the *eaes*, or *poll*, or else by meanes of some hurt he may get, by being wrung or galled with a new or hard hempen halter, specially if a knot be neer or upon the place; sometimes it comes also of a cold taken in the *head*, and sometimes againe by meanes of bad and *peccant humours*, which residing in the *head*, doe make its passage by the *eaes*; it is easily known by its much burning, glowing, and swelling, and by the *Horses* unwillingnesse to be touched and handled about that place; if it be an impostumation, then thus it must be cured.

Take

Excretion.

*Eares im-
postumated.*

Take Linseed and make it into fine powder, and Wheate-flower, of each halfe a pint, ordinary honey one pint, tryed- Hogs-grease one pound, mixe all these well, and warme them upon a fire, keeping them continually stirring: then take of this oyntment and spread it upon a linnen cloath, or upon a plaister of leather, the breadth of the swelling only, and apply it warme to the place, and renew it once every foure and twenty houres, till it eyther do breake or be so ripe, as that it may be opened; which must be so done downewards, that the corruption may easily issue away, then heale it up with this salve.

Take Mel-Rosatum, Sallet-oyle, and ordinary Turpentine of each two ounces, incorporate them well together, and make for the *Horse* a biggen, or night-cap to keepe on the medicine, taint the fore to the bottome dipped in this oyntment, and apply also a plaister of the said stuffe upon the fore, renewing it every day till it be whole and sound. +. But if the Impostumation be broken of its own accord before you do perceave it, then

Take oyle of Roses, Venice Turpentine, and common Honey of each like much, mixe them well together, and so making it bloud warme upon a few embers or coales, dip some black wooll in the medicine, & so stop up that *Eare* therewith, which is grieved, renewing it once a day till it be whole. +. But if the *Eares* be only inflamed, then stop of this foresaid medicine into them, and it will both ease him and take away the inflammation, +. Another.

Take of pepper made into fine powder dist. tryed Hogges-greasse one spoonefull, the Iuyce of Rue one handfull, the strongest white Wine Vinegar two spoonefull, beate all these very well together, and if the swelling, Impostumation, or Inflammation, be eyther in the *Eares*, *Face*, *Head* or *Throte* of the *Horse*, if you take eyther black-wooll, fine lint, Flax, or Hurds, and dip it into this medicine, and so stop both his *Eares* therewith, and then stitch them up, that it get not forth, renewing it once in two dayes, till the swelling bee cleane gone, your *Horse* will be certainly cured ✠. But if the grieve be in any other part of the *Body*, then with this Vnguent, you shall anoint the grieved or swolne place, once or twice a day, till it depart. ✠. But if the swelling be neere or about the *Coads*, or privy parts, then

First Bathe the place well with cold water, and after being made dry againe with a cloath, anoynt it with the said oyntment, every day once or twice, and you shall find it to be a present cure +. This also cureth the *Vlcer* and *Canker* in the *Nose*, and it is a sure Cure for the *Vives* ✠. I have often cured all these maladies with this Receipt.

CHAP. 9.

§. I. F.

Hippophylus.



What cure have you for the Farcin?

Hippof. Of all the diseases wherunto *Horses* are inclinable, this of the *Farcin* is the most loathsome, the most stinking, and the most filthy, wherefore for the same I shall let you downe many cures, but first I intend to discourse somewhat of it's Nature, and how it comes to a *Horse*; This disease we here in *England* do for the most part call the *Farcy*, and (*Secundum Vulgus*) it is called the *Fashions*, for so Master *Markham* doth stile it; But Master *Blundevile*, the *Italians*, and the *French* do give it the name of *Farcin*, to which denomination I doe the rather incline, by reason we take the said name from the *Italians* and the *French*, for that truly I do find that to be the proper name of the said Infirmary, derived from the word *Farcina*, which is a disease most infectious, poysonous, and dangerous, being never so little let alone, or neglected: It is a kind of creeping *Vlcer* beginning with hard knots, and Pustils, and after dilating and spreading it selfe into branches (like to a Vine or Ivy) doth not cease from running, untill such time as it hath visited every part and member of the *Body*, for *Quasi Cancer serpit*, it commonly beginning either in a veine; or neere to some *Master veine*, which feedeth and nourisheth the disease, that is the cause of it's diffusion. It is ingendred sometimes of corrupt *bloud*, which heats and surfets have occasioned in the *Body*, sometimes by hurts and wounds received, as also by some Cankorous & poysonous thing, as rusty spurres, snaffles, bits, or the like, it is also taken from another *horse*, which is faine into the same disease, also by hewing one *legge* against another, and being smitten with some staffe, whereon are hard knots, and sundry such like meanes and wayes; it comes also to a *Horse* by surfets given him, which finding no other way of avoidance, lais hold of this disease, wherby the *bloud*, being over much heat, his grease molten, and his taking a suddaine cold, which is most frequent after great heates, then growing in the *body*, and especially in the *bloud*, such obstructions, corruption, and putrefaction, not having any meanes to vent it selfe, or to voyde, or evacuate, but by this way only, by growing into knots, Pustils, *Vlcers*, or the like, which be so contagious and infectious, so as if but any other *horse*, doe but gnaw or lick with his teeth or tongue, upon the place infected, hee

Farcin,

1

2

will be assuredly within a short time after himselfe infected also, and when once a *horse* is stricken or infected with this leprous malady, if he be not presently and skilfully cured, it is as infallible death to him, as if he had eyther his *throate* cut, or his *braines* beaten out, with a *Butchers Axe*; wherefore if in this case, your *horse* be visited with this finistrous disease, I could wish you would carefully observe two things: the first is, that so soone as you doe perceive this Malady to appeare upon him, that you presently sequester him from his fellows, into some other Stable or stall by himselfe alone, for feare he might infect them, for that it is catching; And secondly, to be very diligent in omitting no time or opportunity, in getting him administered unto for his Cure: The signes of this disease are so plaine and familiar, as that it needeth no description. I will passe to the cure. To the end therefore you may go the more securely to work, wherby you may make it an able and perfect cure, especially if you do finde the *Puils* to be malevolent, and greatly inflamed, then the first day let him *blond* in or neere to that *Master veine*, which doth most feed and nourish the *Farcin*, then so soone as you have well *bloudsed* him, give him this purge, viz.

Take of Aloes, made into fine power one ounce, and a quantity of London Triacle so much as will suffice, and of life hony so much as will suffice, mixe these well together, and give it him in a morning fasting, and six houres after, give him white water, neyther needeth this *bloudying* him, or Purgation, any way hinder him from being dressed for his disease, for that *blond-letting* doth but only hinder it from running any farther for that time, and the Purge sendeth the disease from the *heart*, to the end it may no way annoy that place, wherefore for the perfecting of the cure,

Take of oyle de-Bay two ounces of Eusorbium made into fine powder one ounce, incorporate both these so well together, that they may become but one body, then searck for the first origin, or spring, where the first knots did begin, and so continue searching till you find out the last, clip away the *hayre* from off, and about all these knots, and annoynt them very well with this oyntment once every three dayes, and after you have thus dressed him three times, if you do not find the *Farcins* to be killed, and that the knots do not dry up, then bathe the places three dayes together with the stale or vrine of a Cowe, or Oxe, and with the hearbe called *Lions foote*, in latine, *Leontopodium*, both boyled together, and this will cure him. 4. This medicine I never made use of but once only, and it cured the *horse* unto which I did administer the same. 4. Another.

Take nine leaves of the pot herbe called Beetes, of the smallest but soundest leaves, and nine grains of Bay-salt, beat these very well together to salve, and in a morning before Sun-rising, put this medicine into both his *Eares* by equall portions, and put into them after it, a little wooll, to keepe in the medicine, and so stich up his

Eares,

ears, and let him stand so with meate and white water 24 houres at the least, then take forth the wooll and stuffe, and he is cured. ✠
With this receipt I have cured sundry *horses*. Another. If your *Horse* have a *farcin* in any of the foure quarters of his *body*, let him *bleed* well in the *necke veyne* fasting, then

Take of Arsenick two ounces, and put it into a piece of new cloth, and binde it up with a piece of new Pack-threed, and fasten it unto the *mayne* of the *Horse*, this is to be thus administred, if the *farcin* be onely in the foreparts, but if the disease be as well in the hinderparts, as in the fore-parts, then hang also the like quantity of Arsenick, made up in a cloth like as was the former, and hang that also upon his *tail*, and the more you ride, work, or travell, and exercise him, the better it will be for his disease, to qualifie and rid the same, and the more spare his dyet be, the sooner is he cured, provided you keep him warm in the stable, and for some time you must give him white water. This cure I did never try, but it was taught me by a great *Marshall of Paris*, one who had the repute of a very honest man, and a most skilfull Ferrier, who protested unto me that he had perfectly cured many *Horses* with this receipt. Another :

Take white Bran prepared, like as you shall finde prescribed you, *lib.2. cap.2. § 4. F.* how to make fat a *Horse*, and give it him a day before he is to be dressed, and let him eat it so hot as well he may: continue him to this dyet three mornings together, then let him *bleede* well in the *necke veyne*, but give him no Hay that day he *bleedeth*, but sweet wheat straw onely, neither let him either eat or drink in four houres after, and then let his drink be white water. And two dayes after his *bleeding*, you shall begin to give him again his wheat bran prepared as before, which shall continue for sixe dayes together, during which time you shall give him every evening with his Oats, this powder and these roots following, *viz.*

Take of Comin, of Linseed, of Fenugrick, Sileris. Montani, of each two ounces, quick Brimstone, foure ounces, let all these be powdred, and mixe them well, and give it at one time with his Oates, so much as you may put into an egge shell, the meat being first taken out; let him be thus used daily, by the space of sixe dayes. Those dayes being ended,

Take the root of Salerick, the root of Tassus. Barbatus, the root of Valerion, and the root of Lappaizon, of each like much, chop them all very small, as hearbs to the pot, which being thus well mixed, give them to the *Horse* without Oates if he will eat them, if not, then otherwise in Pils; and when you give him the roots, do not give him the aforesaid powder, and so continue him with these roots sixe dayes together, which sixe dayes ended, cause him to be *bloudied* againe on the other side of the *necke*, but then let him not *bleed* so much as before, and order him as before after the first *bleeding*: nor shall you give him either powder or roots, but let him be still kept warm,

*mullen
Red Docke.*

and have his ordinary allowance of meate, as well of Hay as of Oates, and then for fixe dayes after, every evening after he hath drunke white water, give him one evening of this powder with his Oates, and the next evening of these rootes, and if you finde not the *farcin* to dry up to your minde, continue then this powder and these roots for fixe dayes more, and those dayes being past, give him good Hay and good Oates, and not any longer the powder, or the rootes: and thus following these directions punctually, your *Horse* shall be perfectly cured, and be brought into good state and health again, neither shall the relicks of the *farcin* remaine in any part of his body, and if there be any knots remaining, they shall breake, purge, cleanse, heale, and dry up, the maine cause being taken and purged away. Of this my selfe had never tryall by reason that many of the ingredients were not easily to be had. Another:

Take blacke Elcbore, and adde to the hearb some of its juyce, put unto it old Boares-grease, and boyle it untill the juyce be quite boyled into it, whereby to bring it to a perfect unguent, with which you shall annoynt and rub the knots, or buttons of the *farcin*, but before you doe apply this unguent, let the *hayre* be shaven or clipped away from and about the knots. ✠ With this receit I have cured onely one *Horse*. Another:

Take five or fixe handfuls of four-leaved Plantane, with the roots, of Bay salt one handfull, and so much Comin as you may well take up, with your thumb and two fingers, beate the Comin to fine powder, and then stamp the Plantane and Salt well together with the Comin, and after they be well incorporate, let it steepe and infuse 24 houes, then straine and wring it hard, and give the liquor thereof to your *Horse* in a morning fasting, but you must take *bloud* from him the day before, and he must stand upon the *Trench* fixe hours before you give him the said drinke, and you must also put into his *eyes* the juyce of Rue, and then stich up his *eyes*, and so let them remaine 24 hours, but if the malady shall continue (which I think it will not doe) then must you let him *bloud* againe, and give him the aforesaid drink. This I never tryed, but he that taught me this, did assure me that there is no kinde of *farcin*, but this receit will cure. Another:

Take first the hearb *Moly*, it groweth in marish grounds, you must take 10. 11. 12. or 13. of the roots, (or according to the strength, greatnesse or corpulency of your *Horse*) let your roots be in number or quantity. Take also of white Wine one pinte, then take of bay Salt one handfull (which was never used) and put it into the white Wine, then take of white Wine Vineger halfe a pinte more or lesse, but first note, you must take the roots of the said *Moly*, and let it be gathered a day before you are to use it; you must onely take the roots thereof, (and cast away the residue) for that they are most usefull, and after you have so done, take these great roots, and wash them cleane, so as no filth do remain upon thē, then take the said roots and bruisse them, and

Moly or
Aqua-
Plantique.

and steep them in the Wine with the Salt & Vineger, in an earthen Pipkin, and stop it close, that no ayre get into it, and let it infuse to a whole night, then about 7 or 8 of the clock in the morning, strain it. and give it him to drink, and after he hath taken it, cover him up warme, and let him be walked four hours: but above all things, you must not give him any Oats in four dayes after, but in stead of Oats, give him wheate bran prepared; and let his drink be white water, neither must you suffer him to goe forth of the stable in three or foure dayes after at the soonest; and then after that, you may ride or work him at your pleasure; neither must this drinke be administred warm, but cold. ✠ This is a known certain cure among the *Marishals* in *France*, but by reason I could never finde the hearb *Moly* growing in *England*, I could never come to practise the cure here, neverthelesse I will give you the description of this said hearb *Moly*, and how it groweth, together with its true effigies: It groweth (as I said before)



in marish and wet grounds, it resembleth the hearb called Scolopendion

dion, or Sorrell, onely the leafe is bigger and broader, the flower is like to the white Violet, but lesse, about the bignesse of a purple wild Violet, and it is as white as milk, it smelleth strong like Garlick; its root is little and round, which is most soveraigne to heale the overtures of the *matrix*, being beaten with the oyntment of Ireos, applyed as a Pessure or Plaister: *Homer* saith that the god *Mercury* was the first inventor or finder out of this plant, and the gods for the excellency thereof, named it *Moly*: see *Theophrastus*, *Paracelsus*, and *Dioscorides*.

Albeit that all these receits be very good for the *farcin*, yet are not all *Horses* cured with one and the same medicine; and most certain it is, that the most infallible way to cure the *farcin*, is to give him the fire: in the practise not onely of this cure, but of many others also, which are to be administred inwardly, it is greatly behoofefull that the *Ferrier* be mindfull to observe the strength, age, quality, and ability of the *Horse*, to which he is to administer, and accordingly to mixe and apply his ingredients. Another:

First let him bleed on both sides the necke and *spurre-veynes*, and let him bleed a good quantity, then take Hemlocke, Cinque-foyle, or five leaved grasse, and Rue, of each like much, stamp them and strain them, and put the juyce thereof into his eares, and then stitch them up 24 houres, and it is a certain cure. ✠ For with this I have cured sundry *Horses*. Another:

First let him bleed well at the necke *veyne*, then take Trifora-Magna, and Aloes Platice, of each two ounces, and as much Barly bran, mixe all these, and dissolve it in oyle-olive one pinte, and put thereto of white wine one pinte, and then divide it into two parts or moyities, and so give it two mornings together to your *Horse* fasting with a Horne, that is to say, either morning the one moyity: this done, take as much black sope as a Walnut, halfe as much Arsnick in fine powder, and work them into one body to a salve, then with the poynt of a knife slit or open all the hard knots or pustils, and so put into every of them the quantity of two Barly cornes of this salve, which will eat forth the cores, and kill the poysonous humours, then where you see the wounds, and places red and faire, heale them up by annoyn-ting them with fresh Butter molten and made hot, and then strew upon them the powder of Bolearmonack. ✠ This is a most approved good receit, and by my selfe often practised. Another:

Take the juyce of Rue, and of Aqua-vitæ, of each one spoonfull and a halfe, beat them well together, and by equall portions convey it into both his eares, then stitch them up for 24 houres space, and he is infallibly cured. ✠ This is an excellent cure, and by me often used. Another:

First wash all the places that be raw or swelled, with Chamberly, or white Wine Vineger warmed, take then of Salt one handfull, of white Wine Vineger one pottle, of Allum dissolved in the Vineger,

one ounce, of Verde-grease and greene Copperas, both made into fine powder, of each one pound, melt all these upon the fire, and every day wash the sores, and places swelled therewith warme, twice a day, morning and evening. This I never did experience, but it was commended unto me by a worthy Knight, who averred unto me, that he had cured therewith very many *horses*, of the *Farcin*. Hee also saide that hee hath cured some with this receipt following, viz.

Take Tarre, Tallow, and Horse-dunge of each so much as will suffice, incorporate all these upon the fire, and annoynt him therewith hot. Another.

Take Hempseed one pound, and bruiſe it well, then take Rue, and salt, of each one handfull, of the leaves of Mallows two handfulls, boyle all these in faire water two quarts, unto a moyety, then straine it, and give it your *horse* bloud warme, give him of this two mornings, but not two mornings together, but let him stay one morning betwixt, then take a good quantity of Chamberly and Hem-lock so much as will suffice, and boyle them well, and wash the sores till they be quite whole, and dried up. ✠ This is a very good receipt. Another.

Take the hearb with the root called *Digitalis*, in English *sop-glove*, alias *Fox glove*, a good quantity, binde it up into a fine linnen ragge, and if the *Farcin* be in the forepart, of the *horse*, hang it upon the *maine*, but if in the hinder part, then hang it upon the *taile*, and this will cure him. This I never did experience; But now I will give you for a close the best and most certaine cure for this disease, that I ever yet knew: and with which I have perfected more rare cures of this nature, then of all the residue before inculcated. And thus it is. Another.

Take of Rue, the leaves and tender tops only, without any the least stalkes, a good handfull, first chop them small, and then stampe them in a Morter to a very oyntment, when they are so well powned, put thereunto of the purest white tryed Hogs-grease one spoonfull, and so worke them together to a perfit salve, or unguent, that done, stop into eyther *Eare* this whole quantity by equall portions, and put a little wooll upon the Medicine, to cause it to keep in the better, and so stich up his *Eares*, and let him remaine in the Stable so foure and twenty houres at the least, and then unstich his *Eares*, and take forth the wool, and eyther put him forth to grasse, or else if he be to be wrought, work him, for the more his labour is, and the more spare his diet is, the sooner he is cured. ✠ This I commended to you for the best and most certaine cure, that I could ever meeete with, for with this receipt only I assure you on my credit, I have cured more then 100. *horses*, many of which were by other *Ferriers*, holden for incurable, & sentenced to be food for *Hounds*. The *French* do also call the disease, *Mal de ver*.

21. 106. 1663
To L. 12

§. 2. F.

Hippoph. **I** Have heard of another kinde of Farcin, called the water-Farcin?

Wet Farcin.

Hippof. Truly Sir, in answere to this, I by observation of this disease do find, that there is but onely one kind, albeit I will not deny, but that some one may be more malignant then another, according to the constitution of the *Horse*, who is visited therewith, by reason that *choler* may be in that *horse*, more predominant then in an other *horse*, of any of the other *humours*, for then it commeth forth more dry, but if the *horse* be naturally Rheumatick, then may it appeare more watry and moyst, and so of the residue, but still it is but one, and the same infirmity, for more sorts I could never find. But touching this watry *Farcin*, as you are pleased to terme the same, the *French* giveth this name, viz. *la Louppe*, which is in *English* the *Woulfe*, and they gave me the reason why they do so call it, to wit; because it festreth the flesh, eating and corroding therein inwardly, and it beginneth most commonly in the feet, rather then in any other member of the *horse*. And for this disease a famous *French Marisball* of *Paris* gave me this ensuing cure, but I never yet made tryall thereof, viz.

First wash the place, and shave away the hayre, and search the place well with your finger, and let forth the corruption, but be sure you search it to the very bottome.

Take then Horse-dung, or Goole-dung, Wine, Salt, and Vinegar of each so much as will suffice, and make thereof a salve, and so Playster-wise apply it to the sorance, binding it on, and the third day open it, and dresse it up againe as before, and do this every third day till it bee whole, but bee sure you doe every time you dresse him, examine the very bottome. This he assured me to bee a very perfect Cure.

§. 3. F.

Hippoph. **W**hat is that disease is called the Flankes, and how is it cured?

Hippof. This is when a *horse* hath gotten a wrinch, crick, stroke or other grief in his *backe*, which is called of the *French Ferriers* *Flankes*, the cure is this.

Flankes.

First shave away the *hayre* from the place grieved, then lay on this charge.

Take Bol-Armonack, Cumfry, alias Consolida-Major, Galbanum, Sol-Armoniack, Sanguis Draconis, his owne bloud, Burgundy Pitch, Mastick, Olibanum, of each like much, so much as will suffice, stampe and beat all these together, with Wheate meale, Vinegar, and the whites

whites of Egges so much as will suffice, and so make it into a charge, and therewith charge the place grieved, then clap upon the top, all along the *Chine*, and *Backe* of the *Horse*, a sheeps-skin, comming hot from the sheep, and change it every day, and at three or foure dayes end hee will bee well, but let the charge lye upon the place, untill such time, as it doe fall away of it selfe, and keepe him warme.

§. 4. F.

Hippophyl. **H**ow may a man bring in few dayes his Horse to be fat, or at least in good liking supposing him to be sound?

Hippof. Sir over much riding and exercise, will bring the fattest Horse that ever trode upon the Earth, to become poore, bare, and leane, and so will too early, and too late ayerings, bad dyet, evill keeping, lingring after *Mares*, and spending upon them, lingring after grasse, and the like: But if your horse be poore, bare, leane, and feeble, so that his *stomack* be good to meate, I will give you a Receit, which (if you doe duly observe my rules, justly as I shall deliver them) you shall get him up into *flesh* in twelve or foureteene dayes.

Fat horse.

First therefore take *bloud* from him, if you do find it grosse, or Flgmatick, for otherwise he cannot possibly mend, then insteade of Oates in the morning, you shall give him Wheate branne, prepared after this manner. Set over the fire a cleane Kettle, and fill it almost full with faire water, and so soone as it boyleth put in your Wheate branne, and so let it boyle a quarter of an houre at the least, then take it off, and let it stand to coole, and about foure or five in the morning, give him of this branne so hot as he can eat it, then for his drinke give him of the same water, and at night give him Oates and white water, and let him be kept covered and littered warme: but if it bee Summer, let not the Stable be too hot, but temperate, and at night give him with his Oates also the quantity of what you may convey into an Egge-shell of this powder following, with which you must continue him the space of eight dayes, or according as you shall see cause. You must understand that this branne thus prepared, is the only thing which dryeth up his naughty, grosse, and corrupt humours, and doth the better prepare the body to assume lust, courage, strength, and *flesh*, together with the helpe of the powder, which is this.

Bran prepared.

Take of Commin, Fenugrick, Sileris-Montani, Nutmegs, Cloves, Ginger, Linseed, of each two ounce, Quick-Brimstone six ounce, make all these into powder, of this powder give him every night, the quantity of an Eg-shell full, with his Oates, as I have before prescribed, but he must first be watred, with white water, which so soone as hee hath drunke, let his whole body be rubbed, then cloathed, & littered,

Fat a leane horse.

which being done, then give him a small sheafe of wheat straw, sweet, good, and well threshed into his Racke, and let him eate thereof by the space of an houre, which done, give him Oates mixed with his powder, which when he hath eaten, give him Hay at your pleasure, remembring to keep him warm, but to as with moderation; and let him be also well rubbed, especially against the *hayre*, and by this doing in short time you shall perceive him to mend exceedingly, but you must put also into his Oates together with its former powder, of Nettle-seed two handfuls every time, for that is the thing which principally will cause him to battle: It will also greatly avails to his amendment, if he be *ayered* every morning and evening an houre after sunne rising, and an houre before sunne set, if the weather be warme, and the sunne doe shine. ✠ And this I doe assure you is the most exquisite course can be taken, whereby to set up a leane Horse, and to make a poor Horse fat in little time, and with small charge.

§. 5. F.

Hippoph. **VV**hat helpe have you for the falling of the Fundament?

Hippof. This malady commeth to a Horse sometimes by cold, sometimes through weakenesse and meere poverty, and sometimes by meanes of a laxativenesse and fluxe of *bloud*, when straining to expell, the Horse is not able, and by that meanes the *fundament* commeth out, the cure is,

Falling of
the funda-
ment.

Take white-Salt made into very fine powder, strew a little upon the gut, then take a piece of Lard, and first having boyled Mallow-leaves till they be soft, take of these leaves and beat them well with the Lard, and when it is sufficiently beaten, make it up like to a *suppository*, and apply it to the place every day once, till it be whole. ✠ This I have often tryed,

§. 6. F.

Hippoph. **I** should be very glad to know what you can say of Feavers?

Hippof. Sir, as touching *feavers* in Horses, I say that they be as subject to them, as *man* is, as also that these feavers are of severall natures, which cannot be denied, which may most easily be distinguished and knowne, if you please diligently to observe. A feaver commeth many times, either by intemperate riding or travell, or else through bad and unwholesome dyet: and all *feavers* for the most part have their source from these effects, if you adde thereunto evill ayre.

The Expert Ferrier.

187

§. 7. F.

Hippoph. **W**hy Hippocrates, how doe you define a Feaver?

Hippof. I define it thus. A Feaver is an unnaturall and intemperate heat which beginneth at the heart, dilateth it self through all the arteries and veynes of the whole body of the Horse, hindring all his naturall motions: howsoever some Ferriers are pleased to make of them more sorts, then I will question their physicall and learned distinctions, for I could never conclude them but in a few, as quotidian, tertian, quartan, and pestilent, and yet all these be of one nature, albeit some more malignant then others be, onely a Heetique feaver is of a different nature from the former, and so also a pestilent feaver may be. Now as touching feavers which come in the Spring, Summer, Autumne, or Winter, I cannot see why they should be feavers different in nature from these other, for there are not any of these, but may come to a Horse in any of these seasons.

§ 8. F.

Hippoph. **F**rom whence doe Feavers proceed then?

Hippof. First Sir you must understand that Feavers are of two sorts, that is to say, Ordinary and Accidentall, the ordinary feavers are those that come of surfets, over-riding, and labour, unwholesome meat, as moyst, raw, mouldy, and musty bread, corne, provender and hay, of what nature, sort, or condition soever; but your feavers Accidentall come of some terrible stroke or deep wound, bringing therewith insufferable paine, dolour, and griefe to the poor beast; again, your ordinary Feavers come oftentimes by the extreame violent scorching of the Sunne, but most commonly in the canicular dayes, as when your Horse is abroad at grasse, where is either want of water, or having such as is neither good or wholesome, or else where is want of housing, shelter to goe into, or shady trees to be under, and such kinde of Agues doe prove for the most part either Heetique, or Pestilent feavers, for by that meanes his blood becommeth inflamed, whereby the humour of choller is predominat. Now Sir, if you be pleased to observe strictly and carefully, you shall also finde that feavers doe come many times also from a quite contrary cause; as from cold taken upon hard riding, or great labour, and by having at such times cold water given him to drink, or by washing, or walking having sweat much, or by being out too late in the gripse or shutting in of the evening, or upon day breaking, especially neere or among fenny, moorish, or marish grounds, by reason that naughty vapours do arise from such kinde of places: Feavers also do accrew to Horses when upon hard riding, and great toyle, you give your Horse cold water drawn out of a Well, which being much colder

Bb 2

then

Feaver
refined.

then either River, or Pond water, doth more chill the *Horse* inwardly, whereby he is much more distempered, causing him to quake, and to shake exceedingly after his drinke, which occasioneth crudities, and an evill habit in the *stomacke*, which doth beget and ingender an *ague* or *feaver*, wherefore after sweating and great labour, I doe advise you that whatsoever is given him, be first set over the fire to take away the chillesse, whereby your *Horse* may take the lesse damage, for that *feavers* taken of this nature, doe commonly prove *pestilens feavers*, whose nature is to infect all his fellowes which are in the same stable or roome with him, if he be not either speedily removed from his consorts, or else suddenly cured; and the reason hereof is most evident, for that when as a *Horse* hath been all the whole day travelled (especially in the winter) and brought into the stable all hot and sweating, when in short time after his *bloud* and *pores* begin to be settled, and to return to his heart again, and to his intrals, then if you give him cold water, you may instantly perceive him to fall into a formall quivering and shaking for a time, which being once passed over, you shall see him most palpably assume a most extreame and violent burning, and peradventure after falls into a most desperate sweating, whereby is most easie to be found in him a generall distemperature throughout his whole *body*, together with a formall and dangerous *feaver*, wherefore if the *Ferrier* be not the more expert, it may stick closer unto him, and remain longer by him then a bushell of Oats will do. But a *feaver* which doth proceed either from the corruption of the *bloud*, or from the contagion of the *ayre*, (according as I have before intimated) that I say is most frequent, albeit not so well known to all *Ferriers*, and I am able to affirme thus much of these kinde of *feavers* out of mine own long experience, that they are of that extreame violence, and so malignant, and their poyson of that infinite force, as that if through their own violence, they be not able of themselves to bring the creature visited therewith to his end, yet will these convert their malice into other mortall maladies and diseases, which will in time prove as noxious, to wit, into the Yellowses, Stavers, Glanders, Dropsie, Consumption, Farcin, &c. unto which a *pestilent feaver* is evermore the precursor: insomuch as if the *Ferrier* be not very skilfull and cautelous in observing and knowing the true *symptomes* of these kinde of diseases, he may easily instead of labouring to effect a Cure, through his misprision, miscarry therein.

§. 9. F.

Hippoph. **V**What be the true symptomes or signes whereby to know a Feaver?

Hippof. If you doe observe him well, you shall perceiue him so soon as he beginneth to be *feaverish*, and when the fit first commeth upon him to hang or hold down his *head*, and if at first comming, it beginneth with a cold fit, then will he quake and tremble, and when his cold fit is over, then will he glow and burn throughout his whole *body*, his *breath* will be very hot, and he will fetch his *winde* thicke, and his *nostrils* will be very open, and his *flankes* will beat thick, he will forsake his meat, and reele oft times as he goeth, his *eyes* will be swelled, they will water and be matterative, he will fall away and consume in his *flesh*, his *stones* will hang low, he will desire and offer oft to lye down, and yet being laid he will rise suddenly againe, he will have great desire to drinke, neither will he drink much, and yet you would thinke that all the water in the Thames would not be sufficient to quench his thirst, for he will covet evermore to keep his mouth in the water, albeit he will drinke very little, and his sleepe will goe from him. And these are the best, most certaine, and apparant *symptomes* that I doe know of a *Feaver*.

Feaver how to know.

§ 10. F.

Hippoph. **V**What are the best cures for these ordinary Feavers?

Hippof. If the *feaver* be *quotidian* and daily, then

Take the yolkes of three new laid egges, and beat them well with seven spoonfulls of the best Aqua vitæ, and put unto it of ordinary Treacle, a spoonfull, and so making it bloud warme over a few hot embers, give it him, and then take his backe and ride him, untill hee doe begin to sweat, and then bring him into the stable, and cloath, wilpe, and litter him warme, so as he may sweat an houre in the stable, but then coole him by degrees, and let him fast three houres after, but let him *bloud* before you drench him, in the *necke* and *mouth*, and give him white water or Mashies. This drinke would be given him one houre before the fit commeth. ✠ This is very good.

Feaver Ordinary.

Another:

Take white Wine one pinte, of Aloes one ounce, made into fine powder, of Agaricke halfe an ounce, Anniseeds and Licoris, of each one dram in fine powder, and adde thereto of life-honey one spoonfull, let all these be made warme upon the fire, and so give him bloud warme: then take his back, and ride him into a good sweat, and set him up, cloath him, litter him, and stop well his *body*, *head*, and *breast*, and let him sweat so two houres, then by degrees coole him, and when he is cold, let him be well rubbed and cloathed up againe warm,

warne, but not to sweate any more, and let him stand upon the *Trench* three houres after his sweating, then unbit him, and wash his *tongue* and *mouth*, with Alume, Vineger, Sage, and water boyled together, that done give him a little Wheate straw to eate, and an houre after a gallon of sweet, dry, and cleane Oats, well dressed and sifted, but lay not all at once before him, but three or foure handfuls at a time continuing thus to feed him, till hee hath eaten up his whole gallon, and at night, give him a sweet Mash. And the next morning let him *bleed* at the *neck & mouth*, the quantity of a quart or lesse if the *bloud* bee good, but if you doe find the *bloud* to be blacke, thick, hot, inflamed, yellowish, frothy, or otherwise evill coloured, take then from him two quarts, after keepe him warme, and let him purge, and for foure or five dayes after, give him eyther warme mashies, or white water. ✠ This I have also knowne to bee very good. Another.

First let him *Bloud* in the *Neck* and *Mouth*, then.

Take Germander, Sallet-oyle, and life-Honey of each foure ounces, of Gumme, Draganer, dry red-Roses of each one ounce, put these pounded and chopped very small into good Ale a quart, and warme it, and so give it him, then ride him till he sweate, and order him as in the former cure. Of this I did never make tryall. Another.

Take of the tops of Time one handfull, boyle these in a quart of Beere, untill the Time do begin to waxe tender, and soft, then strain it, and put to it, of browne Sugar-Candy, in powder two penny-worth, Anniseeds in fine powder one penny-worth, and two penny-worth of ordinary Triacle, when all these are well dissolved over the fire, give it your *horse* bloud warme, but you must remember, that you doe let him *bloud*, before you doe give him this drinke, in the *Neck* and *Mouth*. ✠ This I have often tryed and found it right good. Another.

Take of strong Ale one quart, and of Wormewood halfe a handfull, long-Pepper, Graynes, and the powder of dryed Rue of each one ounce, London Triacle two ounces, boyle them to a third part, then take it off, and strayne it, that done, put into it of browne-sugar-Candy in powder halfe an ounce, and so give it him bloud warme. ✠ This at twice giving will certainly cure his *Feaver*. Another.

Take Stone-Crop, of the iuice thereof foure Sponefull, put this iuice into strong-Ale one quart, and so give it your *horse*, then let him be walked, (if the winde be not too cold and sharpe) an houre, then let him up and cover him so as he may sweate an houre, then coole him by degrees, and let him drinke no cold water by any meanes, & let his provender bee good, old, dry, and well sifted Oates, but against the fit commeth (whether the *Feaver* be *Quotidian*, *Tertian*, or *Quartan*) let him be kept fasting, for the longer hee is fasting, and
more

more empty upon his sick dayes, the sooner will his Feaver leave him. ✠ This is a well approved receipt, and let this suffice for ordinary Feavers, provided that when his fits be gone from him, and that he appeareth more lightsome, and well, it will be very good and wholesome for him if you cause him to bee had abroad, and walked warme covered, and so ayred in due time, in the warme Sun, and that will greatly comfort him, and revive his spirits.

§. II. F.

Hippoph. **W**hat say you now to the Feaver Hectique?

Hippof. I say Sir, it is a most dangerous and mortall Feaver, and so malignant, as that if a skilfull Ferrier bee not with him in time, it is certaine death, and first it beginneth with a Consumption in the flesh; it proceedeth of a hot humour ingendred first in the stomacke, which too much Physicke hath occasioned, and by taking away of too much blood from him, in his youth without necessity, wherefore it is a thing most perillous to take blood from young horses upon very slight cause, & not to be over ready with Physick, but only in case of great necessity. The signes to know this Feaver from any other, are to looke into his mouth, and to draw forth his tongue, and you shall finde both his mouth and tongue raw, and mervailous hot, and having little appetite to meate, his flesh will consume, and waste, and seene loose, if you strike him with your hand upon the buttocks, the flesh thereof will quiver and quake, and he will be continually subject to quaking and shaking all his whole body over: besides he will be very much inclined to sweate as hee standeth in the stable. The cure is. First to make this lotion for his mouth.

Take of running water or Well water two quarts, and put thereto of Sage, of Yarrow, of Ribwort, of Plantane, of Bramble-leaves, and of Hony-suckle-leaves of each one handfull, with common Hony one spoonefull, boyle all these to the consumption of one moyety, and a little before you take it from the fire, put to it the quantity of a wal-nut of Alume, and two spoonefull, of Vineger, when that is dissolved take it off, and drayne the water from the hearbs, or else slightly strayn it, which water you shall keepe for your use; and when you would wash his mouth therewith, fasten to a stick a ragge, and so wash his mouth and tongue twice or thrice a day, and this will make his mouth well againe; or else if you do wash his mouth with the surrop of Mulberries, it is very wholesome and good. ✠ After give him this drinke.

Take of Aloes, one ounce powdred, of Garlick halfe an ounce, Anniseeds, and Licoris of each halfe an ounce, make first your Aloes, Anniseeds, and Licoris into fine powder, and after bruise your Garlick a little, putting thereto, of brown Sugar-Candy three ounce, in powder, and adde thereto of white Wine one pint, warme this, and

Feaver
Hectique.

and so give it your *horse*, then let him bee ridden a little, and so set him up warme, and let him bee set upon the *Trench* three houres before, and three houres after, and then eyther give him sweete Hay, or greene Corne, or the leaves of Sallowes, and towards night give him a sweete Mash, and give him this drinke every other day, for three mornings, continuing him with Mashcs or white water, and let his Oates bee very well sifted, and in short time, he will doe well againe. ✠. With this receipt I have cured sundry *horses*, but then forget not to wash his *mouth* dayly with the aforesaid lotion. But if in all these severall *Feavers*, you do find him eyther to be costive, or very hot in his *body*, then you may do well to administer that *Clyster* prescribed you, in *lib. 2. chap. 6. §. 2. Clyster 2. letter C.*

§. 12. F.

Hippoph. **V**^t^o *What say you now* Feaver Pestilent?
Hippof. It is a disease most contagious, for it is so malignant as that it will infect so many *horses* as be in the stable wher he standeth, and it proceedeth from one of these two causes, *viz.* eyther from an infectious ayre, or from the corruption of the *blood*, inflamed by meanes of intemperate riding, and exercise. The signes are these, the *horse* will hang downe his *head* in the Manger, as if hee slept, his *eyes* will water very much, and Inflammations will arise at the roots of the *Eares*, as if he had the Vives.

Feaver
Pestilent.

The best cure I ever knew was this, with which I have cured many *Horses* visited with a *Pestilent Feaver*, first let him *bleed* well in the *Neck vein*, reserving the *blood* in a cleane basin, which when it is cold will be very bad, and ill coloured, then wash his *mouth* with the lotion, specified in the precedent §. secondly apply to the *Temples* this Playster.

Take of Camamile, of Goates-milke, of the Iuyce of Sage, of Sallet-oyle, of white Wine-vineger of each foure Spoonfull, of red-rose-leaves dried one handfull, which must be eyther of a red-rose cake, or otherwise red-rose leaves dried, beat them all in a Morter, till they become of one *body*, and so thick, as that you may spread it playster-wise, upon a linnen cloath, then strew upon the Plaister two or three Nutmegges made into fine powder, then make it good and hot, putting the backside of the Plaister, into a Pewter dish, over a chaffing dish and coales, and so administer it warme to the *Horse*, and for his drinke, let it bee such water wherein have bin boyled violet leaves, Mallowes, and Sorrell, but if the fit doe hold him violently, then.

Take of London Triacle three ounces, and dissolve it in Muscadine one pint, and squeeze into it the iuyce of two or three good *Lemons*, and so administer it with a horne; and this will presently put the fit from him, for the present. The nature of this *Feaver* is somalig-

lignant, and so contagiously hot, as that it will furre the *mouth* exceedingly, and cause ulcers and sores to breed in the *mouth* and *throat*: wherefore you shall doe the more carefully, if every day you doe look into his *mouth*, and if you can perceiue it to be furred, and clammy, then faile you not to wash his mouth and tongue, either with the syrope of Mulberries, or the lotion water taught you in the precedent Section: and if through his too great heat, you doe finde your *horses body* to be costive, then shall you administer this *Clister*.

Take of new milke, and of lallet oyle, of each halfe a pinte, and of the decoction of Mallowes, and of Violets, of each one plate, adding thereto of Sene, one ounce, and of Century halfe an ounce, administer this *clister* bloud warme, and by thus ordering your *Horse*, you will infallibly cure him of his *feaver pestilent*; for I my selfe have cured many, and I never failed in any one. ✠ Provided you do give him during the time of his *physicke*, continually morning and evening, either sweet Mashcs, or white water, and be also dieted and ordered as is fitting for a *Horse* that is in *physicke*.

§. 13. F.

Hippoph. **V**What disease is that which of some is called the Flying-Worme?

Hippof. This malady is the same which the *French Marishals* doe call *ver-volant*, which we in *England* doe call a *Tetter* or *Ring worm*, and by reason it runneth up and down the *body* upon the *skinne*, it is called by the name of the *Flying-worme*. It commeth by a heat in the *bloud*, whereby is ingendred a billious, shirp, or hot humour which breedeth to a *Tetter* or *Ring-worme*, but most commonly it seazeth the *rumpe* of the *horse*, running down all along the *joynts*, till it get into the *taile*, where I have known it to remain so long, untill such time as it came to be a *Canker*: but yet sometimes again, it will seaze some *fleshy* part of the *body* of a *horse*, and so torment him through its continuall itching, as that the *horse* will (with frequent rubbing himselfe against posts, pales, trees, and walles, &c. as also with his teeth (if he can come to the place) bring away the *hayre*, yea the skin and flesh also. And this disease many ignorant *Ferries* have taken to be nought else but the louse of a Hog, which to kill or destroy, they onely apply a little sope. But I have often known it to prove another thing, viz. a formall *Ring-worme* or *Tetter*: it is easily known by the falling away of the *hayre*, by reason of the *horses* continuall scrubbing when it is in the *fleshy* part, but if it get into the *joynts*, betwixt the top of the *rumpe* and the *taile*, then you shall know it by a kinde of scab, which you may with your finger feele, and if you scrape or pick it away, then will issue forth by little and little, a kinde of thin water, which being let long to run, will in time runne down into his *taile* from *joynt* to *joynt*, and there become a *Canker* as I said before;

Ver volant.

Cc

where.

Flying
worme or
Tetter.

wherefore to prevent this inconvenience, if the *Tetter* be in the *joynt*, then

Take of Precipitat two drams, and put it into a small viall glasse, with faire water, much more then will cover the powder, keeping it close stopped, and with this water wash the place every day once, and it will infallibly cure it. And alwayes so soone as you have dressed the *lorance* with this water, and stopped it up again close, then shake it together, and so let it remaine untill its next dressing, which ought to be twice a day. But if the *Tetter* or *Ring-worm* be in any *fleshy* part, it is killed by bathing the *lorance* with the juyce of Southern-wood, Maudlin, and Rue, of each like much, stamped together, and strained, and so let the place be washed and bathed therewith every day once or twice, till it be whole. ✠ I have thus cured many *Tettters*.

§ 14. F.

Hippoph. **W**hat is good to keep a Horse that he be not tormented with Flyes?

Hippof. These *Flyes* are a vermine which are more bold then welcome to a *Horse*, for what by their buzzing, their biting, and stinging, they do infinitely annoy and afflict the poore *beest*, causing him many times to falter in his travell, and lose his pace, and most commonly through his nodding and other evill postures and gestures, provoked by these *flyes*, they cause him so to fret, as to loose his rain and comely carriage of his *body*, whereby he hath bin much undervalued; besides in his travell these *Flyes* doe so cause him to fret and fume, that he both overtoyleth himselfe in his way, causing him to sweat so much, as that he losing his mettle, hath many times thereby inflamed his *bloud*, and brought upon himself sickness, together with a cistemperature throughout his whole *body*. So likewise being at grasse, at what time the *flye* is too busie, they do provoke him to run, and to scope about, by which meanes he being many times very full, it causeth crudities and raw digestions to arise in his *stomack*, which breedeth surfets, or other maladies, wherefore for prevention thereof,

Take the leaves of Gourdes, Pumpions, or wilde, or garden Cucumbers, stamp them, and strain them, and with the juyce thereof wash your *horse* all over, and the *flyes* will not come nigh him. ✠ Of this I have made often tryall. Another:

Take an Apple of Colliquintida, and slice or shred it into small pieces, and boyle it in oyle de Bay, and so annoynt your *horse* therewith, and the *flyes* will not approach him. ✠ This is also good. Another:

Take Mallowes, stamp and strain them, and with the juyce thereof wash your *horse*, and it will keep away the *flyes*. ✠ This is an approved

proved good thing also. Another :

Take Verdegrece made into very fine powder, and boyle it in Vineger, and wash him therewith, being carefull that none get into his eyes or eares. + This is the best and will last longest.

§ 15. F.

Hippoph. *What is good to mollifie the foot of a Horse?*

Hippof. If your horse hath bin foundred, and that after being cured, his soles and hooves doe waxe dry and hard, they be either shrunk or in perill of shrinking, then first take off his shoes, and let him be pared somewhat close, but not too neere, which done, with Bee-waxe molten annoynt the soles with the said molten waxe, with a Goose-feather, and so set on his shooes againe, then three daies after

Take tryed Hogs-grease and Tarre, of each four ounces, of fat Pitch, and of Turpentine, of each two ounces, melt and mixe all thele together, and first stop his feet therewith, and after annoynt the coffin of the hooves good and thicke with the same receipt. And this is the best mollifier can be had in a cure of this nature. + I have often used it.

Feet to mollifie.

§ 16. F.

Hippoph. *What remedy have you for the Figge in the foot of a Horse?*

Hippof. This disease is so called by reason of that naughty flesh which groweth upon the frush or beele, which is in likeness and shape of a figge, from whence this malady and sorance taketh its denomination, and the French also give it the very same Epitheton, viz. la Figne, which signifieth a figge. It commeth by means of some hurt which the Horse hath formerly received in his foot (which was not well healed) by some nail, stub, thorn, bone, or stone, & oftentimes by some over-reach, upon the beele or frush. It is apparant to the eye, and therefore needs no other remonstrance. The cure is,

Cut away the hoofe so as there may be a convenient space betwixt the sole and the hoofe, to the end the figge may the more easily be cured, then put to the sorance a piece of sponge which you must binde close upon the figge, which will eat it off to the very root, then heale up the sore with the green oyntmet taught you in lib. 2 chap. 10. § 4. G. + This I have found good. Another.

Figge in the foot.

Cut away the figge close, either with your incision knife, or else burne it off with a hot iron (which is the better way) and so lay unto it for two dayes after tryed Hogs grease to take away the fire.

Take then the tops of the most angry yong nettles you can finde, pound them very small, and so lay them upon a linnen cloth, just the bignesse of the figge, then take the powder of Verdegrece, and strew

it upon the chopped nettles, (which must be done before you lay it to the sorance) and so binde it upon the sorance, renewing it every day once till the horse have covered the sore. + This I doe know to be a most certain cure, for it never did faile me.

§ 17.F.

Hippoph. **B**ut now what say you to a *Fistula*? how doe you cure that?
 Hippof. A *Fistula* is a hollow ulcer which maketh its way crooked, proceeding oft times from naughty and malignant humours, sometimes it is ingendred from some wound which hath not bin well healed, sometimes it commeth by meanes of a stripe, which having been so strongly laid on, that it hath bruised the flesh to the bone, whereby it hath putrified inwardly, and either brake forth of it selfe, or was opened by the *Ferrier*, and thus it commeth to be a *Fistula*. Sometimes it commeth by a wrench or pinch, with a Collar in drawing, or by being wrung by the tree of a bad saddle; and sometimes it ingendreth of its own accord by the meanes of peccant and bilious humours, which hath long lyen lurking in the body of the Horse. The signes how to know it are so manifest, as that it needeth not an *Ecce*. The way how to cure it, is to search to the bottome either with a probe of lead, or else with some other thing which will bend and yeeld which way soever the concavity of the sorance lea- deth it: and when you have found the bottome thereof, let it be opened downwards, if it may possibly be done, to the end the corruption may the better issue from the place, then taint it for two or three dayes with tryed Hogs-grease, thereby to cause the hole to be the wider, and then inject this water following:

Fistula.

Take of *Sublimate*, and of *Precipitate*, of each so much as will lye upon a three pence, of *Alume*, and of white *Copras*, of each three ounces, burn all these in an earthen pot, but first rub the bottom with a little oyle, that it may not burn there; this done, burne them all together, then take of faire cleare water, two quarts, boyle this water first by it selfe, and scum it in the boyling, then take it from the fire, and put in as much of this powder as will lye upon a shilling at twice, and thus it is made. But if you be desirous to make this water of more strength and efficacy, take then faire water, and Coltrough or Smiths water, of each like much, and of white Wine Vineger a third part, and with the ashes of Ashen wood, make lye of them, with the water and Vineger, and so make your water with this powder and lye, and the former ingredients, according as before is taught you. Inject this water with a Syringe into the sorance, and in short time it will both kill the *fistula*, and heale it up. ✠ This is a most approved and infallible cure. Another:

Take of the best honey one pinte, of Verdigreese one ounce, make it into fine powder, and so boyle them together upon a soft fire three quarters

quarters of an houre, that done, strain it into a gally pot, and so keep it for your use. + This is a most pectious unguent wherewith to taint a *fistula* or *poll evill*, for it goeth down to the bottome, it eateth away all dead and evill flesh, whereby to cause that the carnifying flesh may heale the better. + This I have oftentried. I have also another *Aegyptiacum*, which I make thus.

Take honey one pinte, white Wine Vineger, halfe a pinte, Allum three ounces, and Verdigreece finely powdered, one ounce and a halfe; boyle all these together, till it be thicke: this is a good *Aegyptiacum*. But if you desire to make it yet stronger, then put to these ingredients of Mercury sublimate in fine powder one ounce, and of Arsnick three scruples powdered also, and so boyle them with the former ingredients. This last will kill any *fistula* or old ulcer whatsoever being dressed therewith: but the other which is made onely of Vineger, Allum, and Verdigreece, may be applyed to a *fistula* in the mouth without prejudice to the Horse. + Of both these I have made often tryall.

§. 18. F.

Hippoph. **H**ave you not some good water beside, wherewith to wash a *Fistula* or old sore?

Hippof. I can give you a most excellent water which is this:

Take white Wine Vineger four pints, of Camphire and of Mercury-Precipitate, of each halfe an ounce, greene Treacle three ounces, red Sage, Yarrow, and Rib wort, of each one handfull, of Honey, and of Hogs-grease, of each halfe a pound, boyle all these together untill the one halfe be consumed, and then strain it, and so wash and cleanse the wound with the liquor. + This is speciall good. Another no whit inferiour to the former.

Fistula water.

Take of Coltrough water, four quarts, first boyle it by it selfe a good while, and scumme it so long as any scumme doth arise, then straine it through a fine cloth into a cleane pot, and throw away the grounds, which will be black and naught, then wash the Postnet cleane wherein it was boyled, and put in your water againe. Then take of white Coperas, of Allum and of Verdegreece, of each one pound, beat them all into fine powder, and put them into the water, and boyle them all together, and when it is boyled as much as will suffice, which will soon be done, let it stand to settle a while, then poure the cleare into a glasse, being first cold enough, and so keep it for your use. But the powder which remaineth in the bottome, you may dry and keep in a boxe by it selfe, for it will heale, and dry up any sore or *ulcer*. This water being injected with a syringe of wood or pewter, will cure any *fistula* whatsoever, if it may come to the bottome thereof. + Of this water I have had great experience. But you must understand that these severall waters will onely kill the

can-

cankrous humours of the *fistula*, and therefore after the malice thereof is quelled, you must heale up the sorance with the green oyntment prescribed you in *lib. 2. chap. 10. § 4. G.* or else with some carnifying salve or unguent. Another :

Search the depth thereof with your Probe, as before is taught, you, but be certaine you finde the bottome, then if the bottome be where you may boldly make incision, do it, and that so wide, as that you may thrust in your finger, to feele whether any *bone* or *gristle* be perished, or whether there be any spungy, loose, dead, or proud *flesh* therein, which must first be gotten forth either by incision, or by corrosive; then take of common honey foure ounces, and of Verdigre one ounce, made into fine powder, boyle these together, keeping it alwaies boyling, and stirring it, till it look red, then with a taint of Hurds, taint it to the bottome, and make it so fast that it get not forth, and renew the taint every day once, till it have done mattering, making the taint every day shorter then other, and sprinkle upon it a little flaked Lime. But if you cannot come to taint it to the bottome of the *fistula*, then take strong Lye, Honey, Roch-Allum, white Mercury, of each as much as will suffice, and boyle them together, and inject it to the very bottome of the *fistula*, and it will kill it.

✠ But if the *fistula* be in the *head*, then

Take the juyce of Houfeleeke, and dip a locke of blacke Wooll into it, and put the same into his *ears*, and so stich them up, renewing it every day till it be whole. This cure hath been highly recommended unto me, but I never had opportunity to make prooffe thereof.

Another :

Take Roman Vitreall, Roch-Allum, and Rose-water, of each two ounces, boyle all these on a quicke fire, till they come to be as hard as a stone, then beat it to fine powder, and when you dresse the sore, make a taint, which being dipped in unguentum *Ægyptiacum*, rowle then in this powder, and so convey the end of your taint down to the very bottome of the *fistula*. This is the best way also to cure a *poll-evill*, and this powder being laid upon an old sore, will both heale and dry it up. + This I onely made twice prooffe of, the first time to a *fistula*, and the second time to a *poll-evill*, both which cures I perfected. But now you would gladly know how to ripen and breake a *fistula*, wherefore

Take Brooke-lime, Mallowes, Assmart, of each, like much, boyle them in old Chamberlye, till the hearbs be very soft, and apply these hearbs to the swelling, neither doe you renew it in two or three dayes, and then it will both ripen and breake any impostume. + This I have often used, and found very good. And let this suffice for this malady.

§. 19. F.

Hippoph. **N**ow let us come to the Feet, how doe you cure the Fetlock being hurt?

Hippof. If this forance commeth by any wound, by the biting of a Dogge, or by being cast in a Halter, then the best way to cure the same, is.

Take unslaked lime, and the yelke of an Egge of each like much, beat them together to a salve, or unguent, then mixe therewith the juyce of one head of Garlick, and a little foot, and with this annoint the sore till it be almost whole, then to ~~shave~~ the same,

Fetlock
hurt.

Take Sallet oyle, and oyle of Roses of each one ounce, of Turpentine three ounces, and of new waxe one ounce, melt them altogether, and add to it a fourth part of the powder Verdegreafe, and herewith annoynting the sore, in few dayes it will heale it, and skin it up very soundly. ✠ This is a very well approved Receipt. But if your ~~horse~~ have gotten a sore foot by meanes of any cannell-nayle, or bruise, by treading upon a stone, which after rankleth inwardly, or by other accident; then first rayle the ~~skinn~~ with your Cornet, and lay upon forance, Wheate-flower and Bores-grease well incorporate together, and dresse him therewith twice a day, fortwo daies together, and at the second dayes end,

Take the powder of Quick lime, Sops, and Tallow, and mixe them well together, & for three dayes or more, apply it to the place, dressing it also twice a day, then wash the wound with hot Vineger, and put upon it Caprinell, till it be whole. This I never tryed. But if the ~~hoofe~~ doe weepe, or froath by sending forth thinne, watry, or froathy stuffe, then open the toppe thereof with your Cornet, so as the wound may become hollow round about the extremities thereof so farre forth as that you may come to the ~~Master Veine~~ to breake it in sunder, which done, let it bleed at pleasure, what it will, and when the ~~Veine~~ hath stanch'd, fill up the wound with Salt finely powdred, then take Hurds, and steepe them in Vineger, and so stop the wound therewith, and bind thereto a cloath to keepe the same from falling away, and it will cure it. ✠ But if the ~~sole~~ be boofe, and in danger to fall away, draw it round twixt the ~~sole~~ and the ~~hoofe~~ with your drawing Iron, and so take out the ~~sole~~ quite, and then suffer his ~~foot~~ to bleed well, then apply to it this Plaister.

Froathy or
weeping
hoofe.

Take the whites of Egges, and beate them a little, and so laying them upon Hurds, apply it to the foot, and bind it on that it fall not off, and let it remaine on so by the space of two dayes, which ended open it, and wash the foote with strong Vineger warmed, and then fill the ~~sole~~ with the powder of Salt and Tartar mixed together, and so bind it up with Hurds, steeped in strong Vineger, and thus dresse it till it be whole. These two Receipts were taught me by a famous

Ferrier

Foundring
in the feet.

Ferrier of *Paris* in *France*, but I never had occasion to make use of it, howbeit I esteeme them to be very good. But if your *horse* be foundred in the *feet*, and that he hath not bin foundred above foure daies, then with this ensuing Receipt you may easily set him upright, and make him sound againe in foure dayes more. The Cure is this.

First, let him *bloud* in the *Neck*, *Breast*, and *Spurre veines*, and take from him of *bloud* two quarts, which you must receive in a *Basin*, or other cleane vessell, with which make this Charge as followeth.

Take the *bloud*, and put into it eight new laid Egges shels and all, beat them well with the *bloud*, put to it of Bole-armonacke in fine powder halfe a pound, strong white Wine-Vineger one pinte, Sanguis Draconis three ounces, in fine powder, make this up with Wheate meale good and thicke so much as will suffice, with this, charge his *Back*, *Reines*, *Breast*, *Thighes*, *Fetlockes*, and *Soles*, & spread two cloathes Plaister-wise, good and thick, and apply them to the *Coffin* of his *Hoofes*, and bind the *fore-legges* above the *knees* good and streight, with broad Filletting, or Listes, then Ride him two houres upon a hard way, which if it bee paved or pitched is the better, his *feete* having beene pared reasonable neere before hand, and when you doe bring him into the *stable*, let his *feet* be stopped with this Charge.

Take Rie, or Wheate-branne, Oxe or Cow-dunge, Sheepes-suet, Turpentine (which must be put in last) let your Sheepes-Suet, be of the fat of the loyne of Mutton, and minced very small, melt and heat all these upon the fire, and mixe them very well in the heating, and then put in your branne to make it into a stiffe paste, all which being through hot, then last of all put in your Turpentine, and so incorporate all very well together, with this stop your *horse*, who being thus three or foure dayes charged, and stopped, ridden and kept warme, and not suffered to drinke cold water, but cyther Mashes, or white water, he will be sound in foure or six dayes. This is a most excellent Receipt, for with it I have recovered many *foundred horses*. If it be a dry *Foundring*, especially with too long standing in the *Stable*, then first pare him somewhat neere, and let him *bleed* well in the *Toe-veines*, then.

Take Egges and rost them blew hard, raked up in the hot embers, and together with the powder of Comin, stop his *feete* therewith so hot as they may be taken out of the embers, and put ouer the *sole* a peece of leather, with splents close, to keepe the Eggs that they come not forth.

Take then a great Onion, pill and stampe it, and let it infuse or steepe foure and twenty houres together before, in the strongest white Wine-Vineger, you can get, so much as will suffice, so that it may bee in a readinesse, against you have stopped your *horse*, which must

must be given him to drinke with a horne fasting, and after let him bee warme covered, littered, let him stand upon the Trench three houres, and after that you may give him meate, and white water. **✠**. This is a most approved good cure. If your horse have bene long *foundred*, as a month or better, to make a perfect cure, and to set him up sound againe, it is needfull the *soles* of his feet be taken out, by which meanes new and better will come in their roome, wherefore when you do intend to take them off, have in a readinesse these things, *viz.*

Take the tender tops of Ilope three handfulls, pound them to massh in a Morter, wherewith to stanch his bleeding, then have also further in a readinesse this receipt.

Foundred long.

Take Snayles in the shels and break the shels, so much as will suffice, and take forth the Snayles, and reserve them, then take Bay-salt one handfull, and of the tendrest tops of the angriest red-nettles you can find, two or three good handfull, beat them with your snayles and salt in a Morter to a very salve, then take out the *sole*, then presently stanch the bleeding with your Ilope, and so soone as the *foote* leaveth *bleeding*, apply to the *foote* your other Medicine, of Snayles, Salt and Nettles, and so bind up the foot with cloathes, and so let it remaine foure and twenty houres, then open it, and heale up the so-
rance with your greene oyntment taught you in *lib 2. chap. 10. §. 4.* and within two dayes you shall see a new sole comming, **✠**. This is right good.

But if hee bee *foundred* both in *feete* and *body* at once, and the same time, as falleth out oftentimes, through indiscrete and immoderate Riding, by a most violent heat giuen him, whereby the *bloud* is become inflamed, and his grease molten, then first rake him, and give him the *Clister* prescribed you in *lib. 2. chap. 11. §. 8. C. Clister 8.* and the next day let him *bloud* in the *neck veine* to a good quantity, reserving the *bloud*, and keeping it from clotting, by continuall stirring, till it be cold; reserve I say of this *bloud* halfe a pint, by it selfe, to put into his drinke, and the residue keepe wherewith to make a charge; Now for his drinke let it be thus made.

Foundred in the feet and body.

Take of good Sack one pint, of the *bloud* you saved for his drinke halfe a pint, of London Triacle, and of Diapente, of each one spoonfull, and of mans-ordure warme as it commeth frō him, the quantity of a wall-nut, brew and mixe all these well together, and give it him to drinke bloud warme. This drinke thus given, Charge him with this Charge.

Take the residue of the *bloud* you kept, and put unto it twelve new-laid Egges with their shels, and beat them together, then put thereunto of Bole-armoniack in powder foure ounces, Vineger halfe a pint, Sanguis Draconis in powder three ounces, and with Wheate meale, thicken it to a convenient Charge. Charge his *Backe*, *Breast*, *Loynes*, *Legges*, and *Feete* herewith, both above and be-

Hoofe
bounden.

neath the *knees*, laying it on against the *bayre*. This done, then

Take unflaked-lime, & Orpiment, of each like much, q.s. & dissolve them in running water, and let it stand two good houres, and after it is thus prepared, take as much Matrosetum as will bring it to a thicke substance, which being made good and hot, annoynt the *coffins* of his *hoofes* therewith, especially about the cronets, and stop also the *soles* of his feet with the same medicine, and if you let him *blond* in the *toe-veynes* well, it will be the better, and he will be the sooner, better, and sounder cured. ✠ This way I have cured two *Horses* foundred in the *body* and *feet*, never having applyed it but unto those two onely. But if your *horse* be *hoofe bound*, then

Take Turpentine and sheeps-suet, of each halfe a pound, Waxe a little, as much as will suffice, Sallet-oyle halfe a pinte, boyle all these together, but put in your Turpentine last, and as these boyle, keepe them with continuall stirring, and herewith annoynt his *hoofes* once a day well, or once in two dayes, and he will doe well. ✠ But if it be but an ordinary heat in the *feet* newly taken, then

Take Wheate bran and Hogs grease, and make them to a Poulteffe, and apply it as well to the *coffins*, as the *soles*, and he will be well again. These two latter receipts a worthy Knight taught me, but as yet I never made use, but of the former, which I have found to be very good.

§. 20. F.

Hippoph **B**ut yet Hipposcerus, you have not shewed me how this malady commeth.

Hippof. That was but forgotten Sir, I will now therefore doe it. A foundring in the *feet* commeth evermore after great and over-violent labour, whereby the whole *body* is become distempered, the peccant and malignant *humours* stirred, the *blond* inflamed, and the *grease* molten, which falling down into his *feet*, there letleth, and in short time after, to wit, in 24 houres, the poor creature is hardly able to stand, or if he do, it is after a very feeble manner, holding his four *feet* together, so as you may easily with your hand throw him to the ground, besides he will stand trembling, quaking, and shaking, as if he had a *shaking ague*, nor would he stand at all, unlesse he be enforced, for the *soles* and *coffins* of his *feet* will be so sore, his *joynts* and *sinewes* so stiffe and benumbed, that he cannot stand but with very much anguish and paine: wherefore if he may have his minde, he would alwayes be lying, and his whole *body* will be distempered, and so much abound with heat, as rather to desire cold water, rather then meat, which if it be given him, then will he quake and quiver anew, and be in such pangs for the time, as that you would thinke he would assuredly dye. This disease commeth also to a *Horse* by being watered when he is very fat, and ridden till he do sweat, causing him

to

to take sudden cold therewith: also after a great heat taken, to be set up without exercise upon the cold Planks, without litter, or to be washed, or walked after great labour, the *Horse* being very hot and ketty, (for this infirmity falleth most commonly upon fat *Horses*, but very seldome upon leane) also to water your *Horse* in shallow places, or waters where the water ascends not higher then his *pasternes*, by which meanes through the sudden coldnesse of the water at his *feet*, causeth the *molten grease* descending unto the *feet*, to cake and congeale, which is the prime ground of this malady. And this not onely my selfe, but all the most perite *Ferriers* doe with an unanimous assent acknowledge. And therefore I doe admonish you and every man, who is the *Horses* friend,

First, to be very carefull not to exercise his *Horse* too soon after his taking up from graffe.

Secondly, whilst he is very fat, that he doe not over-travaile, over-labour, or over-toyle him.

Thirdly, that having travelled hard, and to prevent his *foundring*, let him be more gently ridden an houre before he commeth to his lodging, to the end he may be choole, and the more free from danger.

Fourthly, if one houre before you get to your lodging, you ride him into some River, or other watring place up to the *belly*, (but not deeper) then water him by degrees, still betwixt every draught, stirring and removing him a little, it would not be amisse; but then so soon as you be come forth of the water, it were very good you did continue him in the same pace, going neither faster or slower, (like as I have before inculcated) it will be the better also, and your *Horse* out of danger of *foundring*.

Fifthly, forbear evermore (especially if your *Horse* be heated) to water him in any shallow place.

Sixthly, besides his being warme set up with litter enough, let him have store of rubbing, as well of his *legges* as *body*, for it is a most wholesome thing, it dissolveth molten grease very much, and it doth dissipate and send away bad *humours*.

Lastly, picking and stopping of his *feet* in time of journeying, and after is very good and profitable. And thus have I shewed by what meanes this malady commeth to the *Horse*, howsoever many other wayes there are, which I have touched, by reason they are so vulgarly known to every man, and therefore your selfe cannot be ignorant of them.

§. 21. F.

Hippoph. **H**ow doe you helpe the foundring in the body?

Hippof. This commeth oft times by eating too much Provender whilst the *Horse* is yet very hot, suddenly given him after great labour, whereby his meate not being well digested, (from whence) doth occasion crudities, raw digestion, and the evill habit in and about the *stomacke*, whereby many ill *humours* are ingendred, which will soon be diffused throughout the whole *body*, by which meanes the very vigor and strength of the *Horse* becommeth to be much decayed, and in a manner quite lost, enfeebling every joynt and member in such wise, as to lose almost the use of going, and being once layd not able to rise again without helpe: nor can he either dung or stale, but with mickle paine; *foundring* in the *body* commeth also sometimes, when by travelling and the *horse* very hot, you suffer him then to drink his fill of cold water, and after doe not give him exercise enough, which might warm the same in his *belly*, wherefore it is most certain that the *grease* being *molsen*, and the *bloud* inflamed, the *humours* being stirred and dissolved, will presently resort to its center, which if they once settle in the *body*, it must be in and about the *heart*, if not, they then must down lower; to wit, either to the *legges* or *feet*, and there residing, ingender these and such like maladies, whereof we have entreated, wherefore by eating and drinking out of its due season, begetteth an evill habit of the *stomacke*, so as if often times present cure be not had, the *Horse* becommeth desperate sicke, which sicknesse will mathematically usher in his death. Now the signes whereby to know when a *Horse* is foundred in his *body*, be these; the *hayre* will stare, and he will be very chill, he will shiver and shake after cold water, and whilst he is in drinking, the water some of it will issue out of his *nose*, and after two or three dayes, his *legs* will swell, especially his *hinder legges*, and after a while they will begin to pill, he will begin to have a dry cough at first, but after it will be more moist, and then his *eyes* will water, and his *nose* runne with white *flegmaticke stuffe*, and he will forsake his meat, and his *head* will so much paine him, as that he will not be able to hold it out of the manger, and seeme as if he were alwayes sleeping, &c.

§. 22. F.

Hippoph. **F**rom whence proceedeth this word foundring?

Hippof. From the French word *Fundu*, which is *melting*, which word we many times use in our *language*, and therefore when through extream toyle and labour of riding or other exercise, the *grease* is dissolved, and falls to running, we say then that the *horses*

ses greafe is molten, and that he is *founded*, for whereas the *French* calleth *foundring in the body*, *Morsundu*, it is none other thing with us, then plaine foundring, or a surfet given in the *body* of a *Horse*. As for the Cure, the best way is and most agreeable to Art to purge him, but not in that violent manner, as we use in case of other diseases, but first to rake him, then to administer to him this *Clister*.

Take of Mallowes three handfuls, and boyle them in faire water tvvo quarts, to one quart, then straine it, and put to it of fresh or svveet butter, sixe ounces, and of Sallet oyle halfe a pinte, and so administer it to him *Clister-wise* bloud warm, that done, vvalk him up and down in the vvarm sunne, or in some vvarm house, untill he doe begin to empty himselfe, then keep him fasting three or four hours, keeping him vvarm, and to a *stomacke* for three or foure dayes, but let him have but that one *Clister* onely, and let all his Hay be sprinckled with water, and let his drink be either sweet Mashcs or white water, which when he hath drunk, give him the Malt or Bran to eate, and let his Provender be very little for fourteen dayes after, especially if his diseale came through glut of Provender: Neverthelesse the day after his *Clister*, give him this *cordiall drinke*.

Take of Muskadine one quart, of Sugar two ounces, of life honey foure ounces, of Cinamon halfe an ounce, Licoris and Anniseeds, of each one spoonfull, all these made into fine powder, put them into the Muskadine, and warme them on the fire till they be dissolved, and then give it him bloud warme, then walke him in the Sunne, or warm house an houre, then set him upon the *trench* warm cloathed and littered, and so let him stand three houres fasting, unlesse sometimes you put a little Armen into his mouth, then give him Hay sprinckled with water, and after an houre a sweet Mash, or white water, and then a few Oates well sifted and dusted, and this by a little at once, remembring to take *bloud* from the *necke veyne*, the same morning you give him this drinke, and that a little before he taketh it, and pricke him also in the *mouth*, and the next day after this drink, perfume his *head* with Storax, Benjamin, and Frankincense, and so order him according as you in your discretion shall think to be most meet, onely remember to ayre him every day abroad, if there be no winde, (for winde is hurtfull to him) and thus doing you may recover him, and make him a sound *Horse* againe. ✠ This is singular good. Another:

First give him this *Clister*, take the flowers of Melelote, Anniseeds and Licoris, Linseeds, Silleris-Montani, of each halfe an ounce, Polipodium of the Oake, two ounces and a halfe, Agnus-Castus one handfull, the hearb Mercury, Mallowes, Pellitory of the Well, Branca-ursina, of each three handfuls, make a decoction of all these, lettig it boyle to a quart, then put to it of red waxe one ounce and a halfe, of Cassia newly drawn, three ounces, of Diafennicon, two ounces of Benedicta, one ounce of oyle of nuts, as much as will suffice,

fice, and of all these make your *Clister* according to *Art*, which you shall give to your *horse* so soon as you doe suppose or suspect him to droope, and after this *Clister* hath done working, give him the drink prescribed in *lib. 2. chap. 9. § 10. F.* which is very proper and good, provided that you doe administer it so soon as you doe perceive your *horse* to be *foundred* in the *body*, and withall adding to the drinke the juyce of three great Onions, well beaten and strained into the white Wine, and that he be dressed, ayered, ridden, and ordered as is fitting and usuall for *horses* in *physicke*. ✠ Of this I have made tryall, and doe finde it to be good. Another:

Take a head of Garlicke, of Pepper, of Ginger, and of Graines, of each two penny worth, make all these into fine powder, and put them into strong Ale one quart, and so give it him to drink bloud-warm: give him this drink two or three mornings, and order him as is before prescribed. And when you doe finde that he hath gotten strength, let him *bloud* in the *necke* and *spurre-veynes*. ✠ This is very good. All cordiall drinckes are good for this infirmity.

§. 23. F.

Hippoph. **W**hat is your best cure for a false Quarter?

Hippof. A false Quarter is a very evill sorance, it is a rift, cracke, or chinke, which is most commonly upon the inside of the hoofe, yet sometimes (though rarely) it happeneth upon the out side, it is occasioned sometimes by evill shoeing, by evill paring, and sometimes by gravelling, or a prick with a *nayle* or *stub*: nevertheless which way soever it commeth, it will cause the *Horse* to halt, and watrish bloud will many times issue out of the *rift* or *chinke*; the signes are needlesse to recite, they be so manifest: the onely way to cure this malady and sorance is, first to take off the *shoe*, and to cut away so much of the *shoe* on that side where the griefe is, as that the *shoe* being immediately set on again, the *chinke* may be wholly uncovered, then open the *chink* to the quick with your drawing yron, and then fill up the *rift* with a rowle of hurds dipped in this unguent.

False quarter.

Take Turpentine, Waxe, and Sheepes-suet, of each like much, melt them together, and your rowle of hurds being dipped therein, stop the rift therewith, renewing it once a day till it be whole, and thus the *rift* or *chinke* being with this oyntment closed in the top, draw the place betwixt the *hoofe* and the *bayre* with a hot yron overthwart that place, which will cause the *hoofe* to grow, and shoot all vvhole downvards, and vvhhen your *Horse* goeth upright and sound again, let him not be ridden vvhith any other *shoe* untill the *hoofe* be throughout hardened, neither let him be ridden upon any hard ground, till his *hoofe* is become very sound and perfect. ✠ Another.

For

For a false Quarter, and to caule the hoofe to grow :

First prepare a flat piece of wood, making it an inch broad at the least, and so slender, as that it will bend like to a hoop, which must be also so long, as that it may come well nigh twice about the cronet of the *hoofe*: then when you are to bring it about the *hoofe*, have in a readinesse a piece of filliting, which must be long enough, which you must cut into two pieces, then having brought the hoope about the cronet, with one piece of the filliting, binde fast the top of the *hoofe*, which fastning must be behinde against the *hee*le, and bound very straight and hard, and then the filliting so bound, must be twisted three or foure times, and so brought about upon the hoope, and the ends made fast before upon the hoop: then take the other piece of filliting, and sew it upon the top of the first filliting, which you bound about the hoofe, and then let it be sewed as well upon the one side of the hoofe as the other, so fast sewed on, as that it cannot get off. Now you must understand that before you doe binde the foot of the *Horse* with the wooden hoop, and filliting, you must prepare the sorance of the said false quarter, by drawing the place with your drawing yron, so close & neer, till you come almost to the very quick, and then will issue out a kinde of sweaty or deawy moysture, which you shall perceive, then is it time to binde on the hoop and filliting, according as I have before prescribed you: but yet before you doe any thing at all unto the foot, or false quarter, have your salve in a readinesse which is to be applyed unto the chinkes of the false quarter, *viz.*

Take of the roots of *Lingua-Bovis*, green, and newly gathered, of the roots of *Consolida-Major*, and the root of *Mallowes*, all newly gathered, of each halfe a pound, these must be washed and scraped very cleane, and cut into small pieces; let these roots be boyled in *Aligant* two quarts, untill the Wine be boyled quite away, and that the roots become very soft, then pound them very well, and straine them through a fine searfer, and that it may straine the better, reserve a little of the Wine as it boyleth, wherewith to moysten it in the straying.

Take then of *Venice Turpentine*, of new *Waxe*, and of *Burgundy Pitch*, of each halfe a pound, of blacke *Pitch* foure ounces, of the oldest oyle *Olive* one quart, put these things with the former ingredients into a cleane kettle or *Posnet*, but yet after this manner, *viz.*

First the roots, then all the other things by themselves, the one after the other, the *Turpentine* onely excepted, which must be put in when all the other ingredients be molten, you must let all these boyle, untill all the Wine be consumed, and the ingredients be very well incorporate, and then put in the *Turpentine*, and then when it hath boyled one waume or two, take it from the fire, & keep it with continuall stirring, till it be cold, and so keep it in some cleane vessell for your use; you must also adde unto these things (which I had almost

most forgotten) of Frankincense foure ounces, made into fine powder.

This salve is to soften and mollifie the *hoofe* whereby to make it to grow; having thus prepared your salve, before you bind the *hoofe*, with the hoope, and Filleting as before is shewed, annoynt and rub very well, where the hoope and filleting is to bee placed, with the salve, & then bind on the hoope with the said filleting, that don take hurds & rowle it up into a rowle, the full length of the chinke of the quarter, & having first annoynted the hurds very wel with the salve, lay it upon the chinke of the false quarter, and so bind the *hoofe* up with the two long peeces of the aforesaid Filleting, which were sewed unto the other peece of the Filleting, which bound and made fast the hoope: and let him not be dressed but once every three daies, untying all, as well the hoope as filleting; Continue him to this kind of dressing, fiveteene or twenty dayes, or otherwise according as your discretion shall thinke to be requisite.

Now when you shall find that the salve hath brought up the *hoofe*, and that now you know not how to harden it, and make it solide and found, to make an able cure thereof, apply this ensuing salve.

Take of the strongest white Wine-Vineger one quart, Diers-gals, of greene-Copras both bruised, of each foure ounce, boyle these in the Vineger to the consumption of a moyity, then straine it, and put unto it of old Sallet-oyle one pinte, and so boyle it againe, untill the Vineger be all consumed, which you shall know by stirring it with a little stick, and drawing the stick forth let it drop into the fire, and if that which droppeth from the stick into the fire, do not crackle, the let it boyle yet longer, for then it is not enough, but when it is sufficiently boyled, by dropping in a little of the medicine, it will burne without crackling, then take lyurgy of Gold, and lyurgy of Silver, of each halfe a pound, make them into very fine powder and searse them. Take then the Skillet from the fire, and let the medicine stand till it be almost cold, then mixe well the lyurgys and put them in, for if they should bee put in whilest the liquour is hot, they would fly forth of the Skillet againe: then set the Skillet upon the coales againe, and so let it boyle upon a gentle fire, otherwise you shall not now bee able to keepe in the medicine, and so boyle it up, keeping it continually stirring untill it become to be of a deepe or darke gray, and do cleave unto the thing with which it is stirred, and that it doth rope like unto glew, then adde unto it of new Bee-waxe three ounces, which must bee first molten by it selfe, and then put also into the medicine of soote made into very fine powder, and which is made of wood, and also of white leade in powder, of each three ounces, these I say being made into very fine powder, must bee put into the medicine, after it is taken from the fire, and by continuall stirring made halfe cold, and so set upon the fire againe, and kept by continuall stirring untill it bee thoroughly incorporate, and thus it is made;

made ; and when it doth begin to be so cold, as that it may be handled, then make it up into Rowles, and so keepe it for your use. And when you are to use the salve, take away the hoope Fillitting and all, and all annoynt the hooft with the salve, and so bind upon the hooft a linnen cloath to cause that the medicine may remayne on, and let him bee annoynted therewith, every day once till the hooft bee so hard as that he may be able to travell. ✠. This receipt I do hold to be the most soveraigne of any that ever was yet knowne, which was taught me by a *French* man, who was so carefull to give me ample instructions therein, as that he bound on the hoop and Fillittings (which are the most difficult parts of the Cure) in my presence, for he was very desirous to have me fully instructed therein.

§ 24. F.

Hippoph. **W**hat disease is that which is called the Flankes ?

Hippof. This disease called the *Flankes* is different from the former, neyther have we no proper name for it, unlesse wee will name the same the *Plurisie*, for the Epithete wee have from the *French*, who stile the same *Mal-de-Flankes*, it is when your horse is troubled with over much abundance of *bloud*, whereby he eyther ingendreth a Mainge, or else falleth dangerously sick thereby, who by reason he hath beene oft-times let *bloud* before, his body now will looke for it, whereof he missing, falleth eyther into very dangerous, or no lesse loathsome Maladies, the cure is.

First take *bloud* from both sides the *Neck*, and three dayes after in both the spurre veynes, in the *Mouth*, and in the *Temple-veines* ; then give him a drinke of Diapente and sweete Sack, and he will do well. ✠. This is very good.

*Flankes or
maldeflanks*

§ 25. F.

Hippoph. **V**What good Charge have you wherewith to stop the Feet ?

Hippof. I think I have sufficiently shewed you already, notwithstanding for the residue, I do remit you to its proper place, when and where I will give you store of good Receipts, and therefore I leave it for the present.

§ 26. F.

Hippoph. **V**What is good to stay a Flux.

Hippof. This commeth of cold taken, sometimes by reason nature is offended with some cholerick humour proceeding from the *Liver* or *Gall*, into the *Guts* : it commeth eftsoones, when a horse drinketh too much, presently after the eating a great

E c

quan-

Flux.

quantity of Provender, for by that meanes the water comming to the Provender, causeth the Provender to swell, whereby crudities are bred in the stomack, and so conveyed down into the *Guts*, which occasioneth his *Flux*, also it commeth by travelling too soone after provender, it not being well digested before: and it will come also to a *Horse* by drinking cold water when he is very hot, and after (the water not being presently warmed in his belly) is the cause of a Lax or *Flux*. It will also come by eating of a Feather, Flea-dung, Spider, some venomous worme, or other troublesome creature; and therefore my counsell is, not to stop a *Flux* too hastily, unlesse you do finde that your *horse* do purge too too violently, and then be you well assured, that nature is not a little offended, for it will bring him in short time to great weaknesse, and debility of *body*, give him therefore first the Clyster *Laxative*, which you have taught you in *lib. 2. chap. 6 §. 8. Clyster 21. letter C.* and that will carry away from him all that may any way offend him, and a day after give him ~~the~~ drink.

Beane flower, and Bole-Armoniack powdred of each three ounces, mix them with red Wine or Tiste one quart, give it him bloud warme, and after keep him warme in the stable, and let him have Hay and Oates, by a little at a time, and that often, and eyther sweete Mashs or white water, ✠. This is very good. Another.

Take of red Wine one quart, and Bay-salt one handfull, and brew them well together, and with a horne give it him, and this will stay his scowring, ✠. This is also an approved Cure. Another.

Take of wood Ashes finely searsed, and of Bole-Armoniack made into very fine powder, of each like much, put them into the water that he is to drinke, and let him drinke thereof, morning and evening, and this will stay his *Flux*, ✠. But if it be a violent scowring, proceeding from the eating of a Feather, or some other naughty thing, so as this will not stay it, then

Take the entrals of a Pullet, or great Chicken, all but the Gizard, and mixe with them of Spike-nard one ounce, and make him swallow it, and this will infallibly stay his scowring, yea if it be a bloody *Flux*. ✠. This is speciall good.

§ 27. F.

Hippoph. **VV**hat good Receipt have you to Mundifie, cleanse, and heale foule and old Sores?

Hippof. I had thought Sir, you would not have fallen upon this till it had come to its proper place, when and where we should have the particular matters of Sores by themselves, together with their cures: but since you are pleased to touch them in this place, I will give

give you one Receit which cannot easily be paralleld.

Take of green Coperas, and of Salt-Peter, of each halfe a pound, bay Salt, and Salt-Gemma, of each three ounces. Arsnick one ounce, put all these finely powdred into a stillitory glasse, the pot or bottome thereof well nealed, and put also thereunto of the strongest white Wine Vineger one pinte, set the pot on the fire, and put on the head, closing it with Cute of Hermes, and being thus placed in the furnace, make under it a strong fire, by the space of five or sixe hours, and with your Receptory take the first water that commeth, for that is the very strongest and best, and after an houre the fire will be out of the water, then stop up the glasse very close, and so keep the water for your use. The next water is also good, but not so strong as the first, but reserve it also by it selfe, as you do the first. And when you are to wash any sores therewith, be very carefull that you lay none of this water upon either sinewes or veynes, for that it will burn them in lunder, but where Vlcers and fouler old sores be in the fleshy parts, this water will work wonders if wounds be washed with it, and you carefull in the application thereof. ✠ Of this I have had great experience. Another I have taught me by an expert Marishall of *France*, but by reason of the extreame violence thereof I never durst use it, which is called the spirit of Tinne, which will also mundifie all sorts of old sores, and the French Marishals do use it much. And this is the Receit, viz.

Foule and old sores to mundifie.

Take Mercury one ounce, and put into an old cleane pewter pottinger, and fill up the pottinger with Plantane water, and with your finger stirre the Mercury about the pottinger till it be quite dissolved, and then the water will become white, then let it stand an hour in the pottinger, then poure forth the water into a cleane glasse-viall, and then you shall see in the bottome of your pottenger, the Tinne runne liquid like unto Quick-silver, or life as if it were melted, for that is your spirit of Tinne, and thus is it made.

Spirit of Tinne.

§ 28. F.

Hippoph. **W**hat is to be administred to a Horse that forsaketh his meate?

Hippof. There be many causes that may make a Horse to forsake his meate, and yet not be sicke at all, and so also by occasion of sickness that either comming upon him, or else which hath already seized him. And first a Horse may forsake his meate, and forbear to eat for some time, no whit sicke, as when he shall eyther linger after Mares, or after grasse being weary of dry meate: againe, he may forbear his meate, and yet not be sicke by meanes of some accident or inconvenience bred in him, or befallne unto him, as by having the Lampes, Barbs, Giggs, Blisters, bloody-rifts, tongue hurt, paine in the teeth, or some such like infirmity in or about his mouth, these

may be causes that may induce him to forbear to eate, and yet the creature not sicke, but otherwise healthy and hungry, and faine would feed, but eyther cannot or dare not. Also a Horse may forsake his meate, being through the inconsideratenesse of his keeper cloyed, whereby he doth loath his meat, sometimes through over-ayerings morning and evening, sometimes againe by suffering him to eate being very hot after great sweating, upon immoderate riding and toyle, or after water or washing being also very hot. These and many more may be the causes why a Horse may forsake his meat, and yet not be sicke. And he may also forsake his meat by reason of sicknesse ensuing, as upon Colds, Rhumes, and Catarres newly taken, and beginning to be felt upon him: so also he may forsake his meat, by reason of sicknesse which hath already seized him, as in cases of Glanders, Feavers, Morfounding, Consumption, Drop sic, and the like, whereby it is made most apparant that he feedeth not because he is already sicke. Astouching the first poynt, if you doe perceive him to forsake his meate, and that you cannot easily finde the reason thereof, then the first thing you doe, search his mouth, lips, and tongue, and if you finde any thing there amisse, let it be presently amended, but if you cannot finde any thing there amisse, then examine his keeper, and if you may perceive that it came through his default or negligence, either by the cloying him with Provender, or otherwise according as I have heretofore touched, then give him a few branches of Savin, and let him be ayered abroad, keeping him upon the Trench fasting to procure him a stomack, and then feed him by degrees, and that by a little at once, so he will fall to his meat againe with good appetite, feed heartily, and doe well againe. ✠ But if you doe finde that his forsaking of meat commeth by meanes of any sicknesse which hath already seized him, then give him this drink, viz.

*Forfaking
meat.*

Take of white Wine one quart, Polipodium of Oake, a red Colewort-leave, Hore-hound, Mints, the-Holly, Iuniper-berries, Ginger, Parsley-seeds, Fennell-seeds, of each three ounces, beate into fine powder what is to be powdred, and chop and stamp the hearbs small, and so put all into the Wine, and boyle them a pretty while, then strain it, and give it your horse bloud warme, then leap his back, and trot him softly upon faire ground an houre, but not to sweat by any means, then so soon as he commeth into the stable, cloath, and litter him warm, and wash his mouth with water and salt, and set him upon the Trench, and put over his nostrils a fine linnen ragge steeped in sowre leven, infused first in the best and strongest white Wine Vineger, and the juyce of Sorrell, and let him stand so three houres at the least, then unbit him, and bring him meat, but by little at once, for feare of cloying his weake stomacke, neither let him have any Mashes, or cold water, but white water onely, untill such time as he hath found his stomack againe. ✠ This I have often made tryall of.

of, and have found it to be right good. Another :

Take Rue and Pepper, of each like much, stamp them together to a thick salve, then take a good lump thereof, and put it up a good way into his mouth, and let him champ and chew it a good while, and so soon as you doe suffer him to open his mouth, he will put it out, and fall to feeding heartily. ✠ This is not inferiour to the former. Another :

Take the leaves of Briony, and give him them to eate, and it will bring him to a good stomach suddenly. This was taught me by a very good Ferrier, who avowed it to me to be speciall good, but I never made triall thereof.

§ 29. F.

Hippoph. **H**ow doe you cure a running Frush?

Hippof. This is a naughty sorance, which I have heard rurall Smiths to call the Frog, by reason that it breedeth in that spongy part of the heele, which they call the Frog. This sorance comes sometimes when the Smith inconsiderately as he pareth that part, doth goe to the quicke, whereby it bleedeth, which after becommeth sore, and commeth to the running Frush, for that the *horse* being travelled, whilst it is raw, and so the gravell getting into it, doth cause the place to rankle and impostumate, and it will come in short time to be a running sore, which will so stinke, as not well to be endured: sometimes again it commeth by reason of evill humours which do fall down into the legges, and makes its way out at the Frush, it being the softest and tendrest part of all the foot. And sometimes it commeth by a bruise which the *horse* may easily take by treading upon some stone, which inwardly corrupting, putrifieth, and so is engendred a running Frush. The signes to know it is, the *horse* will goe lame, either upon hard or dirty wayes, whereby the gravell doth get in, and fret and paine him at the quick, and you shall perceive that when he resteth, the Frush will weep, sending forth watery stuffe from the Frush. The way to cure it is,

Take stale Chamberlye, and boyle it with a good quantity of Alum, and keep it in a glasse close stopped by it selfe for your use. Then take of red Nettles two handfuls, the strongest and keenest, dry them that they may be made into fine powder, then look what quantity of this powder you have, adde also unto it the like quantity of Pepper, made also into very fine powder, and mixe them very well together, and keep it either in some dry bladder, or boxe for your use also: and when you have occasion to use this water, and powder for this sorance, first take off the shooe, and open the Frush, so that you may come unto the very bottome, then wash the sorance very cleane and well with this water made warme, then put on the shooe again, but first let it be hollowed, that it hurt not the Frush, and let

Frush running.

let the heeles of the shooe be wide enough, then the sorance being thus cleane washed and purged from all gravell and mattrative stuffe, and the shooe set on as afore said, fill the wound full with this powder, and stop it with Hurds, and splent it that the Hurds may keep in the powder, and that nothing get to the fore, and thus wash and renew the powder to the place grieved every day once, and in a weeke or little more it will be perfectly sound and whole againe, provided you suffer not any dung to come to the grieve, and that he tread not in any wet during the time of the Cure, neither should he goe forth of the Stable. ✠ And thus have I cured many *horses* of this malady. Another,

Take of Soot and bay-Salt, of each one handfull, and pound them very well together, (having opened and washed the sorance as before is shewed) and put unto your Soot and Salt, the whites of three new laid Egges, and so temper and beat all well together, till you bring it to one entire body, then dip some hurds therein, and so stop not onely the place it selfe, being opened and made raw, but all the sole besides, and so stop up the Frush, splenting it in such sort, whereby the medicine may be kept in, and thus let him be dressed once a day, and ordered as before is premonished, and he soone will be whole and sound. ✠ This I have often proved, and cured many sorances of this nature.

§. 30. F.

Hippoph. **V**What is best to cure a Fret?

Hippof. This disease you call the *Fret*, is onely gripings and pain in the belly, which commeth of sundry causes. The French doe call it *Tranchaisons*, which doe signifie gripings, it is the plaine Collicke, caused of winde, sometimes of bilious and sharp humours, which descending from the stomacke, goe down into the guts, and there torment him, and sometimes it commeth by reason of Wormes, Bots, or Truncheons, which doe engender in the stomacke or guts of the *Horse*, which do feed and gnaw upon the paunch and guts, putting him to mickle pain and perplexity. The signes are, he will forsake his meat, lye down oft, and tumble, and when he standeth, he will oft soones strike at his belly with his hinder legs, he will also stampe with his fore-feet, and turn his head towards his belly, and looke upon it, and he will many times sweat at the flanks, and seldome any where else, and if the malady be of winde, then shall you perceive his belly to swell, especially towards the flanks: the cure is,

Fret.

Take of good Ale two quarts, of Fenugrick foure ounces, of Bay-berries seven ounces, of long Pepper foure ounces, of Ginger one ounce,

one ounce, Water-Cresses two handfulls, Sage and Nettles, of each one handfull, beat to powder the Spices, and chop the hearbs small, and boyle them in the Ale till one moyity be consumed, then straine it, and so give it him bloud warme, and then cover and litter him warme, and let him stand upon the Trench fixe houres after. But yet so soone as he hath his drinke, rope up all his legges to the body, not suffering him to lye down, and cover him so as that he may sweat for one houre onely, and then coole him by degrees, and let his drink be either sweet Mashs or white water, and he being thus ordered two or three dayes he will be well. ✠ This I have often used. Another :

Take the entrals of a great Chicken, casting away the gizzard, rowle them up in bay-Salt and the powder of Brimstone, and so give it him down his throat, then presently let him be gently ridden, or walked, till he doth dung, and at night give him a Mash, or white water, and he is cured. This is also very good. But if you have cause to suspect that he hath the Bots, then rake him, and in his raking search for Bots, which if you doe finde any sticking upon the great gut, pluck them all (or so many as you can finde) away, whereby you may be confident that the Bots is cause of his griefe, wherefore apply such remedies and medicines which I have formerly prescribed you for Bots, Truncheons, and Wormes, in *lib. 2. cap. 5. § 15.* where you shall finde such receits as will cure him. ✚ But if you doe perceive this griefe of his commeth of winde, then make use of such receits which you shall finde by me before inculcated for the Collicke, in *lib. 2. cap. 6. § 11. lit. C.* where be very good remedies for this Malady.

Chap.

CHAP. 10.

§. 1. G.

Hippophylus.



What is best to be done to cure a galled backe?

Hippof. There be so many wayes which doth occasion it, as that it would be an endlesse labour to deliver every particular thereof. But because you doe motion the *galled backe* onely, I will first speake something thereof. A *galled backe* commeth commonly either with the Saddle, the Pannell, Pack-Saddle or Male-pillion, which through evill stopping, or defect of stopping, may very easily gall the *Horse*, so also may the fault be in the tree, which may be so badly made, so as that let the Saddler be never so sufficient, skilfull, or carefull, yet shall it both gall and hurt him; so also may the tree of the Saddle be either broken or crackt, if it at any time happen, be you then confident, that it can never be so amended or repaired, but that doe what you can it shall hurt the back of the *Horse*, and these be the most frequent and ordinary wayes, whereby to gall the back of your *horse*, howbeit I passe over Male-pillions, Cloake-bags, Port-mantues, Trusses, and the like. The signes to know a galled back are easie, for either the backe will be apparantly swelled, or the hayre fretted off, the skinne either broken or raw, or the backe either inflamed or impostumated, every of which is easily to be determined by the eye, or if his *backe* be wrung with the Saddle, and yet not come to be visible to the eye, yet may you come to the knowledge therof, if taking off the Saddle, stroking your hand all along the back, you shall perceive him either to shake his head, or to winch with his tayle, to rouze, or shake, to stamp or strike with his feet, to offer to bite, or the like, whereby you may come to know it, and very easily to finde out the place grieved. Now if the back be swelled, and before it be impostumated, so soon as you shall take off the Saddle, and finde the same, clap upon the swelling a little of his wet litter, and so set on the Saddle againe, and let him remain with his Saddle on all night, and in the morning the swelling will be abated, and the place it selfe become whole and sound again. Now if the hayre be but galled off, so that it doth not impostumate, annoynt the place but with a little Butter and Salt melted together, and in twice dressing the place will be whole; but if the *backe* be so galled, as that it is become raw, then the cure is thus, viz.

Take

Take three parts of sheepes-dunge newly made, and one part of Rie, or Wheate flower, and dry the flower, and then mixe it well with the sheepes-dung, kneading it as into paste, and making it into the fashion of a Cake, and after bake it a little, and apply the powder thereof warme unto the place, ✠. This will heale him very well. But I may very well spare the labour, in reciting any more receipts for this matter, considering, I have sufficiently already handled them in *lib. 2. chap. 5. s. 1. letter, B.*

Galled back.

§. 2. G.

Hippoph. **V** Has say you to a Galde that commeth by the Shackell?

Hippof. This kind of Gallings being so frequent, as to be knowne to every one both in the manner how it commeth, and in the signes how to know them, needeth not much discussion, nevertheless I will give you an experiment or two of mine owne, and so leave it to its more proper place.

Take new milke three quarts, Plantane one handfull, boyle these together till one part of the milke be consumed, then take of Allum six ounces, and of white sugar-Candy one ounce, beat them both to fine powder, and so put it to the milke, and adde also unto it of white Wine-Vineger six spoonfuls, then boyle it a little till there do come upon the top a tough curd, then strayne it, and keep the whay, casting away the curd, and with this whay first made warme bathe, and wash the sore, the hayre being first clipped close away, and having thus washed the sorance, and wiped it dry then apply your greene oyntment mentioned in the fourth §. of this Chapter, but in case where the Galde is not yet broken, yet likely to breake, there you shall only apply the medicine taught you in *lib 2. chap. 16. §. 10. L.* for the Poll-evill, ✠. This whay is also good to cure the bloody Risses, Bladders, Canker in the mouth, Barbs, Pappes, and all Feavers, and Maladies in the Mouth. Another.

Galled with the Shackle.

A whay.

Take life-hony seven spoonfuls, and Verde-grease halfe an ounce, and boyle them till the hony bee halfe consumed, and that it is become red, then put it into some cleane pot, and annoynt the sorance therewith, made warme, twice every day, and when you have thus annoynted it, cast upon the place Hurds cut very short to keep on the oyntment, and this will in short time heale it up very sound. ✠. This is most soveraign for any shackle-galde, which commeth eyther by lock, cord, or shackle, but if your Horse be desperately galled in any part of his body, as by the girt or otherwise, then.

Take of Verjuyce of the Crab two quarts, of greene Copperas, two penny-worth, and boyle them together to one pint and a halfe: and wash the sorance therewith very well, and after fill up the hole (if any be) with the powder of red-leade, and so let it remaine three

dayes untoucht, then wash it as before, and fill it with your red ointment againe, and thus in two or three times dressing, it will heale up, bee the *galling* never so dangerous, ✠. This have I often used.

§. 3. G.

Hippoph. **V**What is best to be done to a Horse that is Gravelled?

Gravelling.

Hippof. This malady commeth when a horse in his travell hath gotten *gravell* betwixt the sole and the hoofe which setleth at the quicke, and there fretteth and festreth, you shall soone know it by his halting, and complayning upon the same foot, which so soone as you do perceive, take up the *foote* and you shall feele it warme in that place, then in any other part of the *foote*, and if you make tryall with your Pinfors, you shall perceive him to shrink, and to yeeld when you nip him against that place: Take off the shooe and with your drawing iron draw the place, till you come unto the quick, picke forth all the *gravell*, and crush forth the matter and bloud cleane, then wash the fore cleane with your Copperas water, taught you in the next ensuing *Paragraph*, then poure upon the fore sheeps-Tallow, and Bay-salt molten together, of each so much as will suffice, and let it bee poured into the wound scalding hot, then stop up the hole with hurds, and set on the shooe againe, and at two or three times dressing it will be whole, but till he be through well do not travell him, neyther let his *foote* come into any wet ✠. This is a certaine cure. Another.

Search and draw the place as before, and get forth all the *gravell*, then stop the place with Hogs-grease, and Turpentine molten together, pouring it into the wound scalding hot, and stop it up with hurds, and tack on the shooe, and keepe his *foote* from wet, and hee will soone bee whole; This is also very good. Another.

Be you certaine that you have gotten forth all the *gravell* and corruption, then.

Take Virgin-waxe one ounce, Rosin, and Deeres-suet, of each two ounces, Bores-grease halfe an ounce, and of Sea-greene, *alias* House-lecke, one head, incorporate all these together in a Morter, then melt them over a very gentle fire, and so apply it hot to the sore, and stop it up with hurds and tack on the shooe, and in few dressings it will cure it, ✠. This is a speciall good cure.

§. 4. G.

§ 4. G.

Hippoph. **H**ow doe you make your greene oyntment, you doe so much commend:

Hippof. Sir, this Vnguent which I doe so much commend unto you, is the most rare, and soveraigne thing that I ever yet saw, or knew, for the cure of any sores, whether old or greene, *Vlcers*, *Fistulas*, *Poll enills*, or what else, for where this oyntment commeth, no proud or dead *flesh* will grow, no *flies* will adventure neere the place where this oyntment is laid, and for a *Horse* or *Mare-Filly* that is cut, gelt, or *spla*, annoynt but the place, and they will neyther swell or fester, whereby the creature is the further off from danger, for this Vnguent doth not only heale soundly and well, but speedily also; provided you lay nothing upon the wound or sorance, where the oyntment is administred, as neyther hurds, lint, plaisters, or the like, unlesse you may have occasion to Taint a wound which is extraordinary deepe, neither that for any long time, or too often, and besides the seldomer the wound is dressed, as once a day, or once in two daies, it will heale the better and faster, especially if it be brought into good forwardnesse of healing. And together with this Vnguent, you may do well to wash the sorance, with the water I call the *Copperas water*, which by reason it is alwaies first to be used, I will set it downe first, and the *Greene-oyntment* shall assume the second place.

Copperas water.

Take faire water two quarts, and put it into a cleane Postnet, and put thereto of greene *Copperas* halfe a pound, and of salt one handfull, and of ordinary Honey one spoonfull, and a branch or two of *Rosemary*, boyle all these till one halfe of the water bee consumed, and a little before you take it from the fire, put to it the quantity of a Doves egge of *Alume*, then take it from the fire, and when it is cold put the water into a glasse, and stop it up close, and keepe it for your use; and when you are to dresse any sore, first wash it cleane with this water, and if the wound be deepe, iniect it with a seringe. ✠. This water of it selfe will cure any reasonable sore, or wound (but the greene oyntment being applyed after it is washed) will heale any old *Vlcer*, or *Fistula* whatsoever, if they come to the bottom of them, and for greene wounds, they have not their fellow; the *Greene-oyntment* is thus made.

Greene-oyntment.

Take a cleane Skillet or Postnet, and first put into it of *Rosin* the quantity of a wall-nut, which being molten, put to it the like quantity of wax, and when that is also molten, put to them of tryed-Hogs-grease halfe a pound, and so soone as that is molten, put into the rest of common *English* Honey one spoonfull, when all these are molten and well stirred together, then put in of ordinary *Turpentine* halfe a pound, and so soone as it is dissolved, take it from the fire, and put into the Skillet of *Verdegrease* made into very fine powder one ounce,

Ff 2

and

and so stirre it well al together, but be carefull it runne not over, for that the Verde-grease will cause it to arise, then set it againe upon the fire, till it do beginne a little to simper, then take it off, for if you suffer it to boyle it will turne red, and lose its vertue of healing, and become a Corasive, then straine it through a cloth into some earthen Pot, or Pipken, and keepe it for your use, laying something upon the mouth of the vessell, that dust get not into it, and if it be not strained, then the grounds in the bottome will corasive a sore, and not heale it. ✠ This is the most soveraigne Oyntment that I could ever know, for with it I have done so many great cures, as have made me admired by *Ferriers* themselves, who have courted mee not a little for this Receipt, yea they have profered mee ten pounds to teach it them; This cleanseth a wound, bee it never so foule, or infected with dead, proud, spungy or naughty *flesh*, it carnifieth, and healeth abundantly, and with all so soundly, and firmly, as that it doth never more breake forth, it draweth forth thornes, splinters, nayles, and all such things in the *flesh*, and in a word it cureth al sorts of sores and wounds.

§ 5. G.

Hippoph. **W**hat is good to bee administred to a Horle whose greale is molten?

Hippof. As touching this infirmity I have sufficiently shewed you before how it commeth, the signes how to know it, and how to cure the same, and therefore I may now forbear to spend any more time in the declaration thereof, only I will give you one singular Receipt more, and this it is.

Grease mol-
ten.

First, take *bloud* from the *neck-veine*, to a reasonable good proportion, to the end all his inflamed *bloud* may be let forth, then give him to eat cyther branne prepared as you are shewed in *lib. 2. chap. 9. §. 4. F.* or dry branne whether he will eat best, but if he will eat neyther, and that he doth empty himselfe over much, then give him the Clyster Restringent prescribed you in *lib. 2. chap. 6. §. 8. Clyster 3. letter C.* or else if you please, you may give him the 8. Clyster in the same §. cyther of these two so often as neede shall require you may give. And if his appetite be not good, give him *Arman* prescribed you in *lib. 2. chap. 2. §. 2. letter A.* and two dayes after let him *bloud* in both the *Flank-veines*, and if you cannot easily finde them, then in the *spurre-veines*, and the next day after that give him to drinke, two quarts of water warmed, and put into it of white-Wine-Vineger one pint, for this will very much refresh his body, and then the next day give him this drinke.

Take of Tisan three pints, of lofe Sugar finely powdered three ounces, of Cordiall powder one ounce, of life honey foure ounces, give him this to drink *bloud* warme. In maladies of this nature you must

must forbear to administer such drugs as be hot, for by such means more *horses* dye then doe recover and live: for such kinde of drinks as this is being wholly cordiall, are best for this infirmity. + This cure I doe assure you I have often administred, and have done very much good, and made many great and desperate cures therewith.

§. 6. G.

Hippoph. **V**ell now let us come to the *Glanders*.

Hippof. With all my heart Sir. As touching this disease which we doe call the *Glanders*, it is of all others the worst, noysome, and most infectious, insomuch as that *horse* that hath it, if he be not removed and separated from his fellowes, will infect so many as shall be with him in the same Stable and roome. To finde out the depth, root, and true nature of this disease, I have greatly laboured, as also how to cure the same. I have also had much conference with many the most famous and exquisite *Marishals* and *Ferriers* abroad, and I have seen very much of their practise therein, so also have I had very serious discourses with a number of our best *Ferriers* and *Smiths* at home, but I finde not one in twenty can speake truly to any purpose of the nature of this disease, and therefore I do not wonder that they cannot cure a disease whereof they are so much to seek. Neverthelessse what I do understand of this disease, I will ingenuously deliver unto you. The *Glanders* is an infirmity which proceedeth first of cold taken, which being neglected, will in time come to be the *Glanders*; you shall first perceive it by the inflamed kernels and knots which may be felt under the *chaule* of the *horse*, and as they doe grow in bignesse, so do the *Glanders* grow and increase within the body of the *Horse*, which first beginning with a thin Rhume, ascendeth up to the head, and setteth neer to the brain, and so venteth it selfe at the nose, which yet may be easily cured, as I have before inculcated, where I entreated of Colds, afterwards it growes thicker, and then it is worse to cure, but yet faisable enough, in longer time it commeth yet to a thicker substance, and its colour is yellowish, much like unto Butter, and then it is more hard to cure, but yet curable, albeit that now it is come to be a perfect *Glanders*: but when it commeth to be of a viscous, and of a tough and slimy substance, and of a green colour, and to stink terribly, and that it hath now runne some moneths, or peradventure halfe a yeer or better, as also having some small specks of a reddish colour in it, then, is not every *Ferriers* work or Art to cure the same, for in a case of this nature, the ablest *Ferrier* may receive the foyle, and the *Horse* dye under his hands and cure, as I have often by experience been an eye witnessse, albeit there hath been no defect in the *Ferrier*, either in Art, industry, care or diligence. I doe therefore averre that I would not have any man (be he never so expert an Artist) to promise to him-
selfe

selfe the cure of every *Horse* he shall take in hand, by the reason that the *Glanders* it selfe is the thing he must cure, but in taking upon him to cure that malady, he must before he can have perfected his cure, cure him also of many other diseases, which the *Glanders* will bring along with it, as (*v. g.*) the consumption of the flesh and lungs, griefes and aches in the head and braine, inflammations under the *chanke*, diseases in the liver, purpivenessse, hide-bound, dropisie, swelled legges, and many other infirmities too prolix to repeat, all which (I say) are inherent to the *Glanders*, and its origine that it is of cold past all peradventure, howsoever it sometimes cometh of Surfets, sometimes of Morfounding, sometimes by infection, all which (the last only excepted) taketh its first source from cold, and when it runneth (as before I said) greenish with reddish specks, accompanied also with an offensive or stinking breath, then are his lungs ulcerated, by meanes whereof the cure is the more desperate and difficile. I do therefore advise all Ferriers my brethren, who shall at any time take upon them this cure, that they doe first prepare the body of the *Horse* with such preparatives and Physicke, as are meet to expell his peccant humours, which must be also very carefully administred, yea and that according to the strength and ability of the *Horse*: for the *Horse* cannot choose but be feeble and weake, having of a long time before visited with a sicknesse of this nature, yea peradventure a whole yeere or two before together, during which time he hath continually wasted and languished, wherefore he cannot be strong, but a very weake *Horse*, and therefore his physicke must be very gentle, yet such also which may have operation whereby to work, otherwise physicke is but cast away. The signes how to know this disease need no further description, and therefore I will proceed to the cure, for the which I will deliver you many receits, some whereof I have well experienced, to which I will give my particular marke, like as I have formerly done. And I do the rather insert the more receits, because (as I have before remembred) that receit which will not cure one, will cure another.

Glanders.

The first therefore that is to be done in this case, is, to prepare his body by giving him for four or five dayes together, in stead of his Oates and Provender, wheat Bran prepared, like as I have before shewed you in the cases of sick *Horses*, especially in *lib. 2. cap. 9. § 4.* *F.* to qualifie and dry up his moyst and bad humours abounding in him, then let him bloud in the neck, and the next day rake him, and give him this Clister. Make a decoction of Mallowes one pinte and a halfe, and put unto it of fresh Butter, foure ounces, and of Sallet oyle a quarter of a pinte, and administer it bloud warme, and then with a strappe of leather tie it to his tayle, and then fasten the other end of the said strap to his Surfingle, so straight, that his tayle must be close to his tuell, that he cannot purge till it be loosened, then mount his back, and let him be gently ridden, sometimes a foot pace, and some-

times

times an easie trot for halfe an hour, then set him up warm clothed and littered, and let him stand upon the Trench three hours, during which time he will purge kindly, then give him white water and Hay, and at night a few Oats, for he must be kept to a spare dyet. The next day annoynt two long Goose-feathers with the powder of Brimstone and fresh Butter, being first well wrought together, till it be brought to the colour of gold, put them into either nostrill, and fasten them to his headstall, as is before taught you, and so ride him an houre or two, for this will purge his head, and cause him to send forth mattrative stuffe which abideth in his head and lungs, then bring him in and take them forth, and an houre after give him Hay and white water, and Bran prepared, which also he should have given him before his riding abroad. The next day give him his Clister againe, and so let him rest for that day, but ordered in all things as before. The next day give him his Goose feathers again, annoynted as before, and ordered in the like manner as you did before, and all this is, but to prepare him for his after drinke, but remember to keep him alwaies warme, and let him bee evermore fasting and empty, when he is to have any kind of Physicke administred unto him, and let him be ayered morning and evening, if the sunne shine, or that it be otherwise warm and calm weather. And having thus begun with him, three dayes after give him this drink.

Take of Aqua vitæ halfe a pinte, and of white wine one pinte, Aristolechia-Rotunda, Agarick, Gentian, Bay-berries, Myrrha, Ivory, Aloes, of each three drams, make all these into fine powder each one by it selfe, then mixe them very well, and put them into a clean Posnet with the Wine and Aqua vitæ, and so warm it upon the fire, then being well brewed, give it him bloud warm. This drink must be given thrice, to wit, every third day, and he made to fast three houres after, and after ordered as is accustomed with *horses* in Physicke, during which time, and some time after, let him drink no cold water, but most commonly white water, which once or twice in a week may be changed into a sweet Mash, and let him eate the Bran and Malt, and dyet and feed him so, as that he may be kept to a stomack, but be carefull you neither cloy, nor pine him. Instead of the Oats which you should give him, let them sometimes be changed into bread if he will eat it: and sometimes you may give him in stead of Oats, some Wheat either in the eares, which is best, or else Wheat threshed and cleared ready for the Mill. ✠ Truly with this cure as I have set it you down, I have recovered many *horses*. But you must understand that this malady as it hath runne along upon the *horse*, before it come to that height, as to be so rank a *Glanders*, to be termed the mourning of the *chine*, so will it aske a long time to cure, and therefore you must not think that it can be cured with this one only course of Physick, but you must let him rest a few dayes, whereby he may the better gather strength, and then to him again and again, but take

no more blood from him, and as you doe perceive him to gather flesh, and get strength, so let his exercise be increased, but withall, so as not to over-labour him, or to cause him to sweat violently, nor yet straine his winde too much. Another :

If you do finde that together with his *Glanders*, he hath the Strangles, that is that he be oppressed with inflamations under the *chanle*, clip away the hayre from about the place, and clap a piece of sheeps skin newly killed, over all the place, which must be daily renewed, and you must keep warme, not only that place, but his Poll also, then,

Take Basilicon, old Bores grease and Dialthea, of each four ounces, and of oyle de Bay one ounce, beat all these very well together, then annoynt the place enflamed, once every day at the least, and then put to the sheeps skin, and to keep it on till it be ripe enough, then open it, and put into the orifice a taint of Basilicon for three or four dayes, then heale up the wound with taints of *Aegyptiacum*, prescribed you in *lib. 1. cap. 4. § 4. lit. A.* and during the time of his cure, give him Wheat Bran, as well dry as prepared, and for his drink, let it be white water, unlesse sometimes a Mash; keep him warme, and after five or sixe dayes, ride him abroad with the Goose feather in his nose, annoynted as is before advised you, and if he do runne at nose very much, then take a stick, and wrap a fine linnen rag about it, and annoynt it very well with black sope, and put it into his nostrils a good way, but not so as to cause him to bleed, and doe this three or four times a day : or else

Take the seed of Pordo accenta, and bruisse it, made up in sweet Butter, so much of the seed as you may take up betwixt your thumb and two fingers at a time. ✠ This is very good. Another :

Take the oyntment of the oyle de Bay, and unguentum Agrippa, of each like much, rub the inflammation places every night with this unguent well mixed, then apply unto the place a piece of a sheeps skin with the wooll on : but this medicine is much better in Winter then in Summer, by reason that this unguent of it selfe is very hot, wherefore in the Summer season, in stead of such hot unguents, take two ounces of those that be cooler, with three roots of white Lillies roasted or boyled, or Rie-leaven sixe ounces, of old Hogs-grease as much as will suffice, and of the tender tops of Ilope halfe an ounce, mixe all these together, and make thereof an unguent, with which rub and annoynt the place well, and after apply it to the place plaister wise, this done, cover the place with a piece of sheeps skin the wooll being on, and continue to do this till it be ripe and ready to be opened, blow also into his nose of Euforbium, and black Elebore pulverized, of each like much, to the bignesse of a hasle nut of either, then put into each nostrill a long Goose feather, first dipped in oyle de Bay, which powder and oyle will cause him to cast forth much of his *Glanders*, and of his bad humours which do feed them. ✠

This

This medicine if it be rightly applyed, will cure him. Another:

If your *horse* together with his *Glanders* be troubled with inflamed kernels under his chaule, then give him this drink.

Take of Elecampane dryed, Anniseeds, Fennell seeds, Commen, Pepper, Grains, Licoris, of each three drams, all pulverized, and adde thereto two heads of Garlick pilled and bruised, boyle all these in strong Ale two quarts, to a moyity, then strain it and let it over the fire again, and put unto this liquor the quantity of a Tennis ball of tryed Hogs grease, and let it remain no longer over the fire, but untill the Hogs grease be molten, and so administer it bloud warm with a horn, this done, leap his back, and trot him gently a mile upon faire ground, and so home again, then set him up warm clothed and littered, causing him to sweat in his clothes two hours, then by little and little, flake his clothes, cooling him by degrees, till you have brought him to his former coolnesse, and as he doth begin to leave off sweating, let him be well rubbed till he be dry, then two hours after this, give him a sweet Mash, and use this drink and sweating sundry times, every second day for a week. The next week

Take Wheat meale, Hore-hound, Anniseeds and Licoris made into very fine powder, of each as much as will suffice, make a paste thereof with ordinary Honey and Sallet oyle, of each as much as will suffice, then every morning make three Pils the bignesse of a great Wal-nut a piece, and give them to the *horse* three mornings together, keep him all this time warm, and let his drink be white water, and his manger meat be either Wheat Bran prepared, or dryed Bran, but if he have kernels under his chaule, then either ripen them, as you were taught before, or else burn them with the flame of a Candle, and open the *skin* with an incision knife, and then put into the orifice the root of a red Dock, giving it a slit or two, and it will draw his cold quite away from under his *chaule*. But first you must understand that the drink last before mentioned, ought to be applyed before you apply any other medicines, and my counsell is withall that you doe purge him before you give him this drink, or any other medicines, for purging doth the better prepare the body of the *horse*, whereby to cause his physicke of what nature soever to work more kindly. ✠ This receit I have often tryed, and I have perfected very great cures therewith. Another very soveraign after your *horse* hath taken the drink next above prescribed.

Take Gumma-Guiacum, Amber, Corall, of each halfe an ounce, make all these into very fine powder, and infuse it into red Wine one quart, with a good quantity of Cinamon and Arkanet powdred, and give it to your *horse* two mornings together bloud warm, and so order him as is usuall with other drinks. ✠ This is also very good. Another:

First give him this drink following, but first purge him two dayes before: take of Tanners Owes new made, wherein never came

Hides, one pint, of Sallet-oyle foure spoonfulls, two heads of Garlick, pilled and bruised, Feather-few, and Selandine, of each one handfull chopped very small, Anniseeds and Licoris, and Bay-berries, all finely puluerized of each one spoonfull, boyle all these a little and so give it your *Horse* bloud-warme twice a weeke fasting, and he being thus foure times drenched, will bee perfectly cured. This I never tryed, but I have bin assured by able *Ferriers* that it will cure the Glaunders be it never so old. Another.

Take strong Ale one quart, Tarre a quarter of a pint, two heads of garlick, pilled, & bruised, and give it your *Horse* fasting, warme once in foure dayes, till he be thoroughly cured. This I never tryed. Another.

Take of the newest and strongest *Tanners* Owes one pint, Venice Turpentine washed one ounce, Bayberries in fine powder one spoonfull, Saffaron powdred one penny-worth, *Aristolochia rotunda* one ounce, *Guaiacum* two ounces, both in fine powder, incorporate all these upon the fire, till the Turpentine be dissolved, then give it your *Horse* bloud warm two mornings in a weeke, resting three dayes still betwixt till he be cured, which will be in foure or five times giving. Another.

Make Pills of Venice-Turpentine with paste of Barley flower, and give them to your *Horse*, and they will Cure him. Another.

Take Baked Barley flower two parts, the dust of Oaken-barke, and Bay-berries in fine powder of each one part, make a paste thereof with new *Tanners* Owes, and so make them into Pills, with the powder of Cinamon three parts, and Saffaron one penny-worth, and so give them to your *Horse*. Another for the *Glaunders* and Consumption of the *Lungs*, which must bee given after you have made tryal of the drink before prescribed, which beginneth thus (take Elecampane, Anniseeds, Fennel-seedes &c. and finding that your *Horse* is not therewith cured, give him these Pills following.

Take Barly flower baked in an Oven, Cumfrey rootes, Bursa-Pastoris, Bramble-leaves, or the red and unripe Berries growing upon Brambles, which we do commonly call Black-berries, these unripe berries are much better then the Bramble-leaves, of each one handfull, of Alkenet one dram, boyle all but the Barley flower in *Tanners* Owes newly made, so much as will suffice, and when it is thoroughly boyled, straine the liquor from the other simples, reserving only the liquor, and so make a paste thereof with your Barley-flower, adding thereto of the dust of Oaken barke one handfull or two, then make this paste up into Pills the bignes of a good wall-nut, give him foure of these at a time, rowled up in the powder of Cinamon two parts, and one part in the powder of Saffaron, and use this till he be well, not administering these Pills every day, but every two

or three daies, till you do find him well. ✠. This I doe recommend unto you for a speciall good receipt, for that herewith I have affected many great cures in this kind, but then withall let his drinke be white water, and sometimes a sweete Mash, as in all other cures for this infirmity, and withall put into his white water Bramble-leaves, and knot-grasse bruised, and be you very carefull that he take no cold, but be kept warme during his cure, and ayre him morning and evening in the warme Sunne, if there be no wind, and every time you leade him forth to bee ayred, at his going forth or the Stable spirit into his Nostrils the iuyce of wild Dayfie roots, mingled with the strongest white Wine-Vineger, which will purge his head exceedingly, and caule the *Glanders* to runne forth abundantly. Another being an excellent Pill for the *Glanders*, which I have often used, and that to great good purpose.


Take Venice-Turpentine washed halfe a dram, incorporate it with the powder of Brimstone, Alkenet, & Oake-barke dust, of each like much, so much as will suffice, to make up into Pills, give him every morning two of these Pills, fasting as bigge as a good wall-nut every one, till he be well. ✠. Another which is a very good drinke, wherewith to dissolve the *Glanders* and cold, after other drinckes have rotted and ripped them.

Take of Muscadine one quart, of Figges cut and sliced small, a quarter of a pound, life hony one spoonefull, Saffaron puluerized one penny-worth, Ginger and Alecampane of each one dramme, in powder, Pepper in fine powder so much as will ly upon a sixpence, fresh or sweet Butter the quantity of an Egge, boyle all these together a pretty while, then strain it, and bloud warme administer it, only adding to the drinke the yolkes of two new-layed Egges well beaten into the said drinke, and after walke or ride him moderately a little space, and then set him up warme, and order him as in other Physicall drinckes. ✠. This I have often tryed, and do approve it for speciall good: for this opneth the pipes, causing him to void much filth, and it begetteth a good stomack to meate. Another most excellent.

First before you do administer any drinckes or medicines, give him this purge.

Take of the best and strongest white Wine-Vineger one pint, and put it into a pot, and put to it two new-laid Egges, and so let them steep in the said Vineger four & twenty houres at least, and then give them to the *Horse* foure mornings together, and so soone as hee hath taken them let him bee ridden a while gently, and then set up warm, and set upon the Trench till one or two of the clocke, then give him white water, and sometimes a sweete Mash, and let his Provender be moistned with Ale or Beere, and his Hay sprinkled with water, and this will cause him to purge and scowre from him much Flegme and filth: thtee or foure daies after you have purged him thus, give him

the drinke prescribed you before which beginneth thus, *viz.* (take of *Tanners Owes* new made wherein never came Hides, one pint, of Sallet oyle foure spoonefulls, two heads of Garlick, &c.) which being administred as is in the said cure prescribed, and hee ordered as is convenient for *Horses* in Physick will assuredly cure him. This I never made use of, but it was recommended unto me for a speciall good one. Another.

Give him the last mentioned purge of Egges steeped in Vineger, & keep him to it foure or five mornings together, then for foure daies together after, give him a new-laid-Egge, shell and all, with as much powder of Brimstone as will lie upon a shilling, then for sixe mornings after, give him every morning a Pill of washed Venice-Turpentine, made up with the powder of the roote of Alkenet, and let every of these Pills bee of the bignesse of a good wall-nut, let him take this Medicine evermore in the morning fasting, and fast after it till noone, and after order him as in other Physicall drinckes: and withall you must know that untill such time as he be perfectly cured he must not be put to any hard labour eyther by riding or otherwise, for that will rend a new, and breake open againe, the *Ulcer* being newly healed, which as yet be but greene and tender . And this is a very good receipt. Another for a *Glanders* or any cold newly taken.

Take the long Mosse growing upon the lymbes of old Timber-oakes, but not that which groweth upon the maine Body or Trunke of the Tree, gather thereof a good quantity, dry it and make it into powder, and give it your *Horse* foure mornings together, in cleare new *Tanners Owes*, one pint, mixing with the laide Owes and powder, old red-Wine one pint, let this drinke be given him with a horne bloud-warme, and for foure daies after cover and litter him warme, and set him upon the Trench, and let him there remaine fasting during those foure houres, and for the time he taketh this drinke, let his Manger meate bee dry hard bread, well baked, and his Racke meate old dry Hay, but no Oates, and mixe with his bread some of this dried powder, being the Mosse of the Oake, together with Featherfew, water-Germander, and Cordium, all dried and made into powder, and let his drinke be fresh *Tanners Owes*, wherein came never Leather or Hides, and give it him with a horne, if otherwise he shall refuse to take it, but howsoever let him not drinke or take it but bloud warme only. This was taught me by a worthy Knight, who affirmed that he hath often used the same, and that hee hath done very great cures therewith, but I having many other approved Receipts, did never make tryall thereof, neverthelesse it seemeth probably good. Another which I have often used.

Take six heads of Garlick, pill the cloves, and stampe them well, then put unto it of life-hony six spoonefull, and of Wheate meale, so much as will suffice, to make it into a paste, making thereof Pills
every

every one of the bignesse of a good Wall-nut, and so give him of these Pils three or four at a time, and after them three new laid Eggs, and after them cast into his mouth of Bay Salt one handfull, this must be given fasting and before drink at fixe or seven a clock in the morning, then let him be ridden untill he do begin to sweat, then bring him into the Stable and clothe him warm, and litter him, and so let him sweat an houre, then coole him by degrees, and after he hath fasted fixe hours, give him meat, but no drink untill fixe a clock in the evening, which let eyther be a sweet Mash or white water, and if need so require, let him have these Pils three mornings, resting every one day betwixt, and thus ordering him, he will be perfectly cured. ✠ This I have often proved, and have cured many *horses* of colds and *Glanders*. Another very good.

Take of Bay berries one ounce, of Licoris two drams, of brown Sugar-candy, Nutmegs, and Ginger, of each a penniworth, of Garlick a halfe penny worth, let all these be beaten and mixed, then take of Chamberlye that is four dayes old, one quart, and boyle it by it selfe to a pinte, and put to it of sweet Butter a halfe penny worth, and with it the residue of the ingredients, and so give it him bloud warm, &c. ✠ Another most soveraign receit for the *Glanders*; and whereof I have had very great experience.

First cleere his head by pricking him in the mouth, and rub the place with salt whereby to cause it to bleed the more, then take two long feathers of a Goose wing, well annoynted with oyle de Bay, thrust it up and down his nostrils, which will open and purge his head, also perfume his head with the stalks of Garlick broken into small pieces, with a Tunnell, or with a thick cloth cast over his head, the better to receive the smoake into his nostrils, and do this morning and evening, keeping him to a spare dyet and moderate exercise, whereby the better to cleanse his head and stomach, and to empty him, by which meanes the brain will be the better quieted. To perfume him also with Frankincense, Storax, and Benjamin, of each like much well mixed together, is very soveraign; but two or three dayes after, let him bloud in the neck, after this let him be walked abroad, or gently ridden, (if the horse be of sufficient strength) to get him breath, then administer unto him this drink.

Take of Muskadine one pinte, of London Treacle an ounce and a halfe, sweet Butter three ounces, give him this bloud warm, take then tryed Hogs grease, and rub and chafe him under the *chaule* very well therewith, and leave him annoynted thick therewith, then make him this Poulteffe.

Take of Mallowes two handfuls, of Worm-wood, Smalage and Rue, all small shred and stamped, of each one handfull, of Wheat Bran, and of tryed Hogs grease, of each one quart; boyle all these together, continually stirring them untill the Hogs grease be almost consumed, and binde it under his *chaule* so hot as he can well suffer the

the same, and keep his head (especially his poll) very warm, leaving onely ayre for his mouth and nose, and light for his eyes. Then perfume him with Frankincense, and keep him warm in the Stable, and so let him rest with this Poultesse four and twenty hours. The next morning give him early of the best new Ale, one quart, with Anniseeds and Licoris, made together into very fine powder, one spoonfull, and a good piece of sweet Butter, give him this with a horn bloud warm, then put into either nostrill a long Goose feather well dipped in oyle de Bay and fresh Butter well mixed together, then remove the Poultesse, and if you doe finde that the kernels and inflammations too ripe, open them, and let forth the matter, and raint the orifice with Turpentine and Hogs grease molten together, then warm some of the Poultesse you left, but not so hot as before, and lay it to the place, and let it so remaine untill the next day, his head being still kept warm, let his manger meat be old cleane Oats, well sifted and moystened in new Ale and Muscadine, if he will eat them so, if not, then Ale alone, and let his Rack meat be Wheat Straw well threshed, and let his drink be white water for ten dayes after, and then let him not have afterward any cold water, but with exercise, and let him sometimes in stead of white water, a sweet Mash, keeping him to a spare dyet, and let him be every day ayered, either by riding or walking, if he be able to be brought out of the Stable, but then evermore keep him warm after it, and let him either by exercise in moderate riding, or in his cloaths in the Stable, sweat a little every day once, and after let him be rubbed dry, neither let him sweat in his cloaths. Put also into his provender the roots of Elecampane, white Lillies, and Polipodium of the Oake newly gathered, made cleane and chopped very small, to the quantity of two spoonfuls, every time, and give him no Provender but when he is very hungry, and faile not to continue this course of physick and dyet by the space of ten or twelve dayes together, and when these dayes be ended, give him this purging drink.

*Glanders a
purging
drink.*

Take of white wine one quart, or where Wine may not easily be acquired, then the like quantity of good new Ale, Aloes an ounce and a halfe, made into fine powder, of Agarick halfe an ounce, the powder of Elecampane two spoonfuls, of life honey three spoonfuls, brew all these well together, and give it him bloud warm, and keep him warm, sixe dayes after let him bloud in the necke, and if the bloud be good, then take not above a quart at most from him, but if it be naught, take then a pottle from him, after this, order him both in feeding and exercise very moderately, and by this meanes you shall recover him, and bring him to his pristine health again. ✠

Another receit for the *Glanders*, very pretious, which I have often tryed.

Take life honey as much as will suffice, and mingle it with his Oates, rubbing the Oates and honey together betwixt your hands,

so as the honey may be very well mixed with the Oates, let him eate his Oats thus mingled with the honey untill such time as he be perfectly cured, which will be when you shall perceive him wholly to have left running at the nose. ✠ I had this cure from one of the ablest Ferriers I ever knew in *England*, and I have cured many *horses* therewith. Another :

Take of Sallet oyle, and white Wine Vineger, of each three spoonfuls, beat them well together, and put it into one of his nostrils three mornings together, and so likewise convey into his other nostrill, the like quantity of oyle and Vineger three mornings together, remembering that evermore when you doe administer this medicine, you do presently put up into the same nostrill a long Goose feather dipped first in oyle de Bay, stirring the feather up and down in his nostrill, which will cause him to sneeze and snuffe forth the viscos corruption which remaineth in his head. Keep him all the time warm, and let his drink be either sweet Mash, or white water. ✠ Of this I have oft times made tryall, and it is speciall good, as well for *Glanders*, as for any cold, if the *horse* runne at the nose. Another right good.

Take of Diapente and clarified honey, of each one ounce, and with good Sack one pint, give it him bloud warm, being first well brewed together, drench him herewith eight mornings together, and so soon as you have given him this drink, inject into his nostrils this receit following.

Take the powder of *Aristolochia-rotunda*, as much as will suffice, and mixe with it White or Claret Wine in such a proportion as may make it liquid, and inject or squirt it into his nose. ✠ Or else

Take the juyce of *Selendine* mingled with faire water, and inject that into his nose. ✠ Or else

Take *Roch-Allum* and Salt dissolved in white Wine, and inject that up into his nose. ✠ Either of all these are very good to cause him to cast such naughty corruption forth of his nose and head, that doth much oppresse him, which lotions are to be administred evermore after the aforefaid drink. ✠ Another also very good drink.

Take *Tanners Owes* new made, and new milk, of each one pint, Sallet oyle halfe a pint, one head of Garlick pilled and bruised, a little *Turmerick* in fine powder, boyle all these together, as much as will suffice, then take it off and put in your Sallet oyle, and so give it him bloud warm; give him this drink three times in fifteen dayes, that is to say, once every five dayes, and every time you do administer it unto him, convey halfe a horn full into each nostrill, and let him stand upon the Trench 3. hours after warm clothed and littered, and then give him a sweet Mash, and such meat as is dry, sweet, and wholesome, but during the time of his cure, let his drink be white water. ✠ This is very good. Another very good.

Take of faire water two quarts, of *Comin* made into fine powder and

and searfed two ounces, and of the inward rinde of Elder six handfulls, boyle this to a moyety, then take it off, and when it is halfe cold, straine it and put into the liquor, halfe a pint of Sallet-oyle, and give him thereof at his mouth three hornfulls, and at eyther nostrill halfe a hornfull, then leape his backe, and ride him moderately till he be warme, so let him up warme cloathed and littered, and three or foure houres after give him a warme Mashe, but let him eate some Hay first. ✠. This I can averre to be very good, both for *Glanders* and *cold*. Another.

Take Oyle-de-Bay, and sweet Butter, of each halfe a pound, Rosemary shred very well and small halfe a handfull, Garlick one pound, beate the Garlick unpilled in a stone Morter, with a wooden Pestell very well, then put to it your Oyle, Butter, and Rosemary, and so make it into one body, then with Wheate-flower so much as will suffice, make it up into pils, and give him three or foure of these, every day for ten daies together, and order him *ut supra*. Of this I did never make tryall, but it was recommended unto me for a speciall good Receipt. Another.

Take Cloves, long-Pepper, Browne-Sugar-Candy, and London Treacle, of each two ounces, beat the Sugar-Candy and spices to very fine powder, and put to them your Treacle, and after adde to these Ingredients, of good Sacke or Muscadine one pint, and first warme it upon the fire, and when it is almost cold enough to bee given him, put to it of Sallet-oyle three penny-worth, and so bloud-warme give it him, and in the giving convey into eyther Nostrill halfe a hornfull of this drinke, and then order him *ut supra*. Another.

Take of new-milke one quart, warme from the Cowe, two heads of Garlick pilled and bruised, boyle these together, keeping them with continuall stirring, then take it off, and let it coole, and a little before it be cold enough to give him, put to it of life-hony two spoonfulls, and of Sallet-oyle halfe a pint, give it him bloud-warme, reserving for eyther Nostrill, halfe a hornfull, then order him *ut supra*. These latter cures I never made tryall off, but I think them to be very good. Another.

Take Ilope, sweet Margerome, Lavander-Cotton, the roots and crops of Elecampane, of each one handfull, chop and shred all these together very small, and boyle them in good Ale or Beere, so much as will suffice, then straine it, and when the liquor is almost cold, breake into it two new-laid Egges, and stirre all well together, and so give it him bloud-warme, give him this drinke three times, that is every third day. This hath beene recommended unto me for a very good Receipt, whereby to cure not onely the *Glanders*, but the mourning of the *Chine*, but I never made use thereof.

But now sithence I am come almost to the end of my Receipts for this Infirmary, I will give you two Receipts, the one for the *Glanders*,

ders, the other for the mourning of the *chine*, which are Master *Mark-hams*, which hee stileth thus. Two most certaine and newly found out Medicines, which will without faile cure any *Glanders*, though our *Ferriers* hold it impossible. The cure. If your *Horse* his cold be come to the worst *Glanders*, which is a continuall running at the *nose*, and hath so runne by the space of divers moneths, so that the *Ferriers* can do no good, then shall you take better then two handfuls of the white cankerous *Mosse* which groweth upon an old Oaken pale, and boyle it in Milke two quarts, till one part bee almost consumed, then straine it and squeeze the *mosse* well, which done give it your *Horse* luke-warme to drink. Then take two *Geese-Feathers*, and take sweet Butter, as a bigge *Walnur*, and with the powder of *Brimstone*, finely beaten and searsed, worke them together with your knife or splatter, till the Butter be brought to a high gold colour, then take two cleane feathers the longest in all the *Goose-wing*, and first at the quilles ends with a needle fasten two long threds, then with your salve annoynt the feathers all over, which done in the dry powder of *Brimstone*, rowle them over and over, then putting the feathers ends formost, open the *Horse* Nosthrils, and thrust them up into his head, then take the threds which are at the quills ends, and fasten them on the top of the *Horses* head, which done ride him abroad for an houre or two, ayting him in this manner morning and evening, and when you bring him into the Stable, after hee hath stood tyed up a pretty season, unty the threds and draw out the feathers, and wiping them very dry, lay them up, till you have next occasion to use them, and keep his *body* warme. This disease you must understand, commeth not suddainely, but growes out of long proceffe of time; so likewise the cure must not be expected to be done in a moment, but with much leasure: therefore you must continue your Medicine, as your leasure will serve, cyther every day, or at the least thrice a weeke, if it bee for foure or five moneths together, and bee sure it will in the end yeeld your desire.

Now the second and well assured, and certaine Medicine is to take *Elecampane-roots*, and boyle them in milke till they bee soft, that you may bring them to pap, then with a horne give them to the *horse*, together with the milke luke-warme, being no more then will make the rootes liquid, then having annointed your *Goose-feathers* put them into his Nosthrils, and ride him forth as before is shewed. The other receipt for the mourning of the *Chine*, he intituleth thus.

A most rare and approved Medicine, to cure any high running *Glanders*, called the mourning of the *Chine*, held of all men incurable. This disease to my knowledge, there is not any Smith or *Ferrier* in this Kingdome can tell how to cure: for it comes not to the extremity, till the *Horse* hath runne at the *Nose*, a yeare or more, and have at the roots of his *tongue* a hard lung gathered, which will not be dissolved. Now for mine owne part it is well known, that I have

Perfume.

Pag
127

cured many with this Medicine only.

Take of *Agri-pigmentum*, and of *Tussilaginis*, beaten into fine powder, of each foure drammes, then beating them with fine Turpentine bring them into a paste, then make of it little cakes or trotches, as broad as a groat, and dry them. This done lay about two or three of them on a Chafing-dish of coles, and cover them with a Funnell, so that the smoake may come out onely at the end thereof, and so without any losse ascend up into the *Horses* head through his nostrils, then ride the *Horse* till he begin to sweate; this doe once every morning, before water till the running be stopped, which will be in very short space, considering the greatnesse of this disease.

These be Master *Markhams* two great cures, which by reason hee hath so great Eecomions of their vertues, and also what great cures he hath wrought and perfected with them, I thinke it not amisse to insert them in this place. Thus I have delivered unto you a great number of Receipts for this one disease, many of which I have tried, and have found them very good, some I could never have meanes or occasion to prove, and therefore I must expect prompt opportunities, in the interim I do remit them to my brethren to practise. But I will now conclude this Chapter, with one only Receipt more, which I do esteeme my Master-peece for this Malady, having had much experience thereof, nor did it ever faile mee upon often tryall made. This cure is called, The black drinke for the *Glanders*. The Cure. First prepare his *body* with branne prepared, and after with a Clyster, and your Goose-feathers, as before hath bin taught you. This done,

The black
drinke for
the glanders

Take new made Chamberly, and of the best and strongest white-Wine-Vineger, of each halfe a pint, then take of Mustardseede, two or three spoonfuls, and make Mustard thereof with Vineger, and let it be very well ground, that done, put your Vineger and Chamberly to the Mustard, and so stirre them well together. Then take of Tarre and bay Salt, of each like much, so much as will suffice, incorporate them well together, and convey so much thereof, as three Egges-shells will hold, the meate first taken forth, and having first prepared these things, let the *Horse* be taken forth of the stable (being kept that night to a very spare dyet) and ride him first till he begin to sweate, then give him the three Egges-shells filled with the said Tarre and Salt, and so soone as hee hath taken that, give him with a horne the fore-named drinke made of Chamberly, Vineger, and Mustard, all at the mouth, excepting only two small or halfe hornesfuls, which let be conveyed into his Nostrils, which so soone as he hath taken, let him bee ridden againe, so much as before you did, then bring him into the Stable, cloath him up warme and litter him well, and so let him stand upon the Trench untill three or foure of the clocke, then unbit him and give him a warme Mash, and order him in all things as is usuall for *Horses* in Physick. Give him this Medicine or drinke e-

very

very other or third day, three or foure times, and it is an infallible cure. ✠ This cure I gat from a Noble Knight, who had done many great Cures therewith, who was very precise in teaching it, and since I came to know thereof, I have perfected many great Cures therewith, upon *horses* far spent with the *Glanders*, insomuch as if it be rightly and carefully administred, it will cure the rankest *Glanders* that is. And with this Cure I conclude this Chapter.

CHAP. II.

§. I. H.

Hippophylus.

WELL Hippocrates, since we have finished this Chapter, let us goe to the next; and tell me, what meanes have you to helpe the falling away of the hayre from the Mayne and Tayle of a Horse?

Hippof. Sir, this disease comtneeth sometimes by a heat which the *horse* hath taken, which hath engendred a dry Mainge in the *mayne* and *tayle*, which is the occasion of the shedding of the *hayre* from those parts, and sometimes it commeth by a surfet, causing evill *humours* to resort to those parts, which is the cause of the falling away of the *hayre* & I have also known a *Horse* to shed the *hayre*, both of *mayne* and *tayle* after hee hath beene violently and dangerously visited with the *Stavers*: The signes are evident. And the Cure is.

First take *blond* from the *necke veine* if it be onely in the *mayne*, but if in both *mayne* and *tayle*, and then after you have opened the *necke veyne*, and taken from thence a reasonable quantity of *blond*, then slit the *skin* of the inward part of the *tayle*, next to the *tuell* from the buttocks to the fourth *joynt*, and there with your Cornet you shall finde a hard gristle which the *French Marishals* do call *Barivole*, raise it up with your Cornet and take it forth: that done, fill up the clift with salt finely beaten, and then with a hot iron steep it in Buck-lye; burn the *tayle* in sundry places, and then annoynt the places so burned with Hogs grease, till it be whole. ✠ This cure I gat in *France* among the *Marishals* there, whom I saw cure sundry *Horses* of this malady, and I my selfe have cured four or five after the same method. If it be both in the *mayne* & *tayl*, and that you be feareful to experiment this cure by reason you never saw the manner of it, then

Hayre from
the Mayne
and Tayle
falling away

search both *mayne* and *sayle* well with your finger as aforesaid, and annoynt the places with this unguent. Take Quick-silver, and tryed Hogs greafe (the Quick-silver being first mortified with fasting spittle) incorporate them very well together till the Hogs greafe be of a perfect Ash-colour, and annoynt the sorance therewith every day once, holding a hot bar of iron neer, to cause the oyntment to sinke in, and in three or four dayes thus dressing him, he will be well, + This is a very good receit, and I have often used it.

§ 2. H.

Hayre to
grow.

Hippoph. **B**ut then what is good to cause the hayre to grow againe?

Hiposp. Take the dung of a Goat newly made, ordinary Honey, Allum, and the bloud of a Hog, the Allum being first made into fine powder: boyle all these together, and rub and annoynt the places therewith every day, and it will cause the hayre to come againe apace. + This is speciall good.

Hippoph. What is good for the Head-ach?

Head-ach.

Hippof. First let him *bloud* in the *month*, and rub it with Salt to cause it to bleed the more, then take two long feathers of a Goose wing well annoynted in oyle de Bay, thrust them up and down his *nostrils*, whereby to open and purge his *head*, and then perfume his *head* with the stalks of Garlick broken into small pieces, as is before shewed, keeping him to a spare dyet, and moderate exercise, the better to cleanse his *head* and *stomack*, and to empty himselfe, by meanes whereof the *head* and *braine* will be the better quieted. It were very good also to perfume him with Frankincense, Storax, and Benjamin, grossly beaten and well mixed, of each like much as will suffice, but two or three dayes after, let him *bloud*, and give him white water for eight dayes after, during which time, you may do well to give him sometimes a sweet Mash. + This is very good.

§ 3. H.

Hippoph. **V**What is good to helpe the heels that be scabbed?

Heeles
scabbed.

Hippof. You shall many times have small dry Scabs upon your *Horse heeles*, which will not be greatly noxious to him, & therupon the best cure for his Keeper daily to annoynt them throughly with the oyntment made of Elbow greafe. But if there be any running *humour* issuing from the *heelles* of the *Horse*, then let him stand every day morning and evening up to the *belly* in water, till the scabs do dontract, then make a convenient *Cauterize* neer to the *joynts* as well crosse as thwart wise, then heale it up as you use to do kibed *heelles*. + This is very good.

§ 4. H.

§ 4. H.

Hippoph. **W**hat is good for heels that be kided?
Hippof. This disease the French do call *Iauarts*, which is a kinde of Scratches, and the cure is to *Cauterize* the middle of the swelling along, both long and crosse-wise; that done, take Oxe dung reeking hot, mixe it upon the fire with Sallet oyle, and apply it to the sorance, once and no more, then do afterwards as is prescribed you in a cure for a Splent, in *lib. 2. cap. 18. § 17. S.* This I never tryed.

Heeles
kided.

§ 5. H.

Hippoph. **W**hat are have you for heels that are troubled with the Mellet?

Hippof. This sorance we call the *mellet*, is a dry scab that groweth upon the *hee*le, sometimes on the one, and sometimes on the other heele; sometimes it commeth of *corrupt blond*, sometimes of a blow given by the *toe* with the *hinder foot*, for the *mellet* growes commonly upon the *hee*le of the *fore-foot*) and sometimes for want of good rubbing and dressing after travell; it will also have a dry chop without any moysture at all. The signes to know it, is easie, to wit, it will soon be felt with your hand. To cure it I have before shewed you in § *precedenti*. But yet I will give you one receit more for the same cure, whereof I have made often tryall, and it is very good.

Heele
Mellet.

Take of ordinary Honey halfe a pinte, black Sope a quarter of a pound, mixe these together, and put thereto four or five spoonfuls of Vineger, and as much Allum finely beaten as a Hens egge unburned, and of Rye-flowre two spoonfuls, mixe and incorporate all these well together, and having first clipped or shaven away the *hayre*, apply this medicine plaister-wise to the sorance, just so farre as the sorance goeth, and let it so remain five dayes, and then take it away, and wash all the legge, foot, and sorance with powdred beefe broth, & after rope up his legs with thumbands of soft Hay wet, and he wil be sound. But then you must understand, that when at any time you do dresse the sorance, you do not faile to take off the dry scab, or whatever crusty thing shall be upon or about the place, and by washing and cleansing the sore that you do make it marvellous clean.
 † This is a very good receit.

§. 6. H.

Hippoph. **V** *What is good to helpe a Horse that is Hide-bound?*

Hippof. This malady is when the *skin* of the *horse* doth cleave to the *flesh*, as you cannot with your hand pull up the *skin* from the *ribs*; sometimes it commeth through extreame poverty and maceration; and sometimes through the indiscretion of the Groome for want of good tending; sometimes of a surfet taken by over-riding, and violent heats given him, and then washed, or negligently suffered to stand long in the cold, or in the raine; and sometimes again it commeth of corrupt *cholericke bloud* siccicating the *flesh*, which wanting its naturall course, causeth the *skin* to shrink and cling together, and to cleave to the *bones* and *flesh*; it also maketh him sick, and to have a gaunt *belly* shrunk up to his *flankes*, and his *hayre* will stare, and his *legges* will swell: and by these signes you may know the disease it is so conspicuous. It causeth also siccidity and aridity in the *liver* and *lungs*, causing great torment throughout all the whole *body*, and his *dung* will be very hard and dry, and of a naughty favour, for his body will be very costive, and if he have not help in reasonable time, if death it selfe ensue not, yet will at the last other desperate maladies attach him, whereof the least will be the *mainge*, which will not easily or suddenly be cured. The cure is to let him *bloud* either on both *sides* the *necke*, or on both the *spur.veines*, then cloth and litter him warm, and do no more unto him that day, more then to give him good meat and white water, for cold water he must not drink till he be thoroughly well againe. The next day give him this drink.

Hide-bound.

Take of white wine one pinte, of Sallet oyle one pound, of Venice Turpentine one ounce, of Methridate, of loafe Sugar, and of Cassia prepared, of each two ounces, of the milk of sweet Almonds halfe a pinte, and of Verjuyce of the Crab one penny worth, mixe all these well together, and warming it upon the fire, give it to the sick *horse*, let him have this drink sixe or seven mornings together, alwayes having a speciall care to the strength of the *Horse*, as well in this, as in all other your cures. † This is a cure I have used very often, and have found it to be speciall good. Another singular good receipt. First, annoynt his body all over with *Acopum* and *Sacke* warmed together, or else with this *Bath*.

Take faire water, Mallowes, Smalage, Rosemary, and Bay leaves; boyle all these in the water till they shall become soft, and so *bath* his whole *body* therewith warm, and when you have dryed him again, annoint him with this unguent.

Take of Hogs grease tryed one pound, Camomile, Mallowes, Grunsell, Smalage, of each one handfull, chop the hearbs very small, and boyle them with the Hogs grease a good while with a soft fire.

fire, then strain it and wring forth the oyle that cometh of the hearbs, and with this Vaguent annoynt his *body* all over, for it will both supple and loosen his *skin*: the next day give him this drink.

Take of Muskadine and of strong Ale, of each one pinte, Grunfell, Rue, Smalage, Rosemary, and Betony, of each like much: all together amounting to a handfull. Then take Gum-Dracament one ounce, two heads of Garlick pilled and bruised: let all these boyle in the Muskadine and Ale, to the consummation of one pint, then put to it of sweet Butter, a penny worth, and when it is molten, take it from the fire, and straine it very hard, and so give it him bloud warm. Let this drink be divided into three parts, whereof give him one part the first morning, the other second parts, the second and third mornings following, for you must understand that when I said that this drink must be boyled to the consummation of one pinte; my meaning is, that it must boyle till one part be consumed, and not otherwise; and in the interim you must keep your *Horse* very warm; and let his drink be either sweet Mashies or white water, and four dayes after he hath been thrice thus drenched, give him this other drink. Take Anniseeds, Licoris, Fennel-seeds, Bay-berries, Elecampane dryed, Fenugreek, Turmericke, of each like much, all made into very fine powder, and searfed; let two spoonfulls of this powder (being well mixed) be infused in good Ale one quart, with Sallet oyle two spoonfulls, give him this drink four mornings together, wherein you are to observe that the first time you are to administer this drink to your *horse*, you are to put into the Ale two spoonfulls of this powder, and the other three mornings, but one spoonfull: keep him warme, and order him as is behoovefull for a sicke *Horse* that is in *physicke*, and he is certainly cured. ✠ This is a speciall good Receit.

Another:

Let him *bloud* in both the *flanke veines*, then take of good white Wine one quart, and put thereto of Sallet oyle, three ounces, of Comin one dram, Anniseeds and Licoris, of each two ounces, make all these into very fine powder, and searse them, and give it him bloud warm, then set him up, and let him be thoroughly rubbed against the *hayre*, and along the *back* and *ribs*, and nape of the necke, halfe an houre together, then cover all his *backe* with a *Sacke* made thoroughly well soaked in a tub of water, and when it hath drained a while; lay it upon him, and upon that, two housing clothes at the least, and gird them close unto him well wipled, which will bring him into a sweat, which truly will be the prime cause whereby to restore him to his pristine sanity, but let him not sweat above one houre at most, and coole him by degrees, taking away the Sack first, and keep him to sweet Mashies or white water during the time of his *physicke*, and longer; let him be thus drenched, sweated, and ordered, seven dayes together, and give him in stead of his Oates, Barly boyled, and dry Beanes bruised in a *Mill*, and good old sweet Hay,

Hay, well shaken and dusted, and sometimes green Mault from off the *floore*; and after eight dayes let him *bloud* in both the *breſt veines*, but take not above a pinte of *bloud* from him in all, and that day you *bloudy* him, give him of good Sacke one pinte, and put to it of Sallet oyle a quarter of a pinte, and of *London Treacle* one ounce, warm this upon the fire, and brew them well together, and so administer it *bloud* warm, then leap his *backe*, and ride him till he *sweat*, then set him up warm clothed and littered, and at *night* give him a sweet Mash, putting into it the powder of Brimstone two spoonfuls, and he will be well again. ✠ This is very good. Another :

Take Hogs grease two drams, and of the juyce of Dragon-wort one ounce, of Incense halfe a dram, of Sirrop of Roses three ounces, dissolve all these in Tison one pinte and a halfe, set it upon the fire till all be dissolved, and so give it him *bloud* warme, and exercise him moderately upon it till he do begin to *sweat*, then set him up warme, and let him fast three houres after, and this will scowre from him all his infection, loosen his skin, and procure a good appetite to meat, provided you take *bloud* from him the day before, and (if as well in this receit as in all the former) you doe give your *Horse* a *suppository* the day before you drench him, you will much better and sooner perfect your *cure*, especially if you finde him *costive*, otherwise a gentle *Clister* will not be amisse. ✠ This is a well approved cure, and I have often used it.

§ 7. H.

Hippoph. **H**ow doe you cure a Horse that is Hip-shot?

Hippof. Sir, this commeth sundry wayes, that is to say, either by a stroke with another *Horse*, or by a wrench, by which meanes the *bone* may be slipped out, and then it must be put in again, or by a straine, which may cause him to halt, or by meanes of some thorne which he may get by leaping or running among bushes, which must first be gotten out, otherwise the place will fester, and he goe lame. The cure is, first let him *bloud* in the *thigh veine*, on that side whereon the grieve is, then charge him with the *charge* we call a *honey-charge*, prescribed you in the next §. and so put upon the other foot a *Pattent-shoe*, and let him not lye down in ten dayes (if that the *bone* have been out) after bathe the place well with that *bath* which is already taught you in *lib. 2. cap. 5. lit. B.* and the receit beginneth thus, (take Smalage, Oxe-eye, and Sheeps suet, &c.) and put into the *Bath* some of the said *honey charge*, and if this doe not cure him (as it is most probable it will) then apply to the place this *Ceroene* (as the *French* doe terme it) which is a Searcloth very hot, and this *Ceroene* is thus made.

Take of blacke Pitch halfe a pound, of Masticke two ounces, of Galbanum four ounces, of fat Pitch and of Turpentine, of each halfe

halfe a pound: melt these in a pot together, and when it is halfe cold, charge the place up to the *hanch*, and so overthwart the *reyues* of the *backe*, and if he be not cured at the end of eight or tenne dayes more with this *Ceroene*, or *Searcloth*, then take it off and apply to the place grieved this unguent.

Take of oyle de Bay, Althea, tryed Hogs greafe, of each halfe a pound, incorporate all these together to an unguent, and therewith annoint, rub, and chafe the place grieved, and he shall doe well. + This is a very good receit, and I have made great use thereof.

§. 8. H.

Hippoph. **H**ow doe you make this Honey-Charge Hippoferus?

Hippof. I will shew you Sir, Take of Wheat meale two pound, and put a little Wine to it, as much as will suffice, put it into a kettle, as if you were to make a Poultesse, & when it is wel mixed adde to it of Bolearmoniack in fine powder, half a pound, of common English Honey, one pound, then set it upon the fire, and boyle it, keeping it continually stirring, and put to it in the boyling, of blacke Pitch, halfe a pound, still stirring it till it be boyled, so much as will suffice, & when it is almost enough, put to it of ordinary Turpentine halfe a pound, of oyle de Bay, Comin, Althea, Sanguis Draconis, Bay berries, Fenugrick, and of Linseed-meale, of each two drams, boyle all these together againe, still stirring them till they be well incorporate, and herewith charge the grieved *members* of the *horse*. ✠ This is the very best charge that I doe know for ordinary grieves of this nature; but if you be to apply this to many *horses*, then must you double your ingredients according to the number of your *horses*. This *charge* is singular good for any slip or wrench in the sholder, hip, or other member, for all sorts of scratches, and for stiffness of *sinewes*, or for *sinewes* hurt or any way offended, as also for a *hip-shot* or *dislocation*, or for a *horse* that is over-wearied with travell, as also to draw away all bad *humours* to assuage swellings and tumours, and it will serve in the place of a *white plaister*. And this I have often tryed.

Honey-charge.

§ 9. H.

Hippoph. **V**Vell now let us come to treat of the hoofs; what have you good to mollifie, the hoofs, and to cause it to grow?

Hippof. I gave you a very good receit in *lib. 2. cap. 6. § 3. lit. C.* but now I will give you more which shall be very good. Take of Elder leaves, and of Wal-wort, of each like much; stampe and straine them till you have gotten of the juyce one quart, or better, then take of Mutton or Deers suet clarified, three pound, Turpentine, Honey, and

Hoofe to grow.

and Sallet oyle, of each one pound : boyle these till all the juyce be consumed into the other ingredients; then when it is cold, reserve it, and when you have occasion to use it, annoynt the *hoofe* therewith.

✠ This is very pretious. Another as good to caule the *hoofe* to grow. You must observe this rule, *viz.* you must at what time you would have him *shod*, cause his *hoofe* to be pared well and even, and to open the *heel*es and *frash* well, and so let him be *shod* up; which must be done when the *Moone* is three dayes in the increase after the *change*, by which meanes the *hoofe* will grow more in eight daies then (if he had been pared and *shod* in any other time of the *Moone*) in fifteen dayes, both faster and better, then to supple the *hoofe*, and to cause it to grow the more, Take Goats grease, Turpentine, Sallet oyle, and new waxe, of each two ounces, melt them together, then whilst they be hot, adde to it of ordinary Honey three ounces, of Sanguis-Draconis one dram, in fine powder : incorporate all these together, and bring them to an unguent, with which annoynt and rubbe the *hoofes* of the *horse* daily, which may well be done by using to each the quantity of a hassle nut of this oyntment, which will cause the *hoofe* to grow more in fifteen dayes, then without it in three moneths, and if you adde to the former ingredients, of the juyce of the hearb called *Hepatica*, fixe ounces, and of the root called *Hosmanderigalis* two ounces, it will be much better. For if you doe finde that the aforesaid Unguent doe not make the *hoofe* to come away to your minde, then will this addition assuredly doe it. ✠ This is a very good receipt. Another :

Take Sallet oyle foure ounces, new Waxe and Turpentine, of each one ounce, Goats grease three ounces, melt all these together, and being all molten, take it from the fire, and put into it of Horle-grease, Agrippa, and of Morciaton, of each one ounce, beat and incorporate all these together with the other ingredients, till it be through cold; with this oyntment, rub and annoynt the *coffins* of the *hoofes* especially about the *cronet* at the *hayre*, every day once, and it will grow very much. ✠ This is singular good. Another very good.

Take of Hogges-grease three pound, of patch or peece-grease two pound, Turpentine one pound, new Wax halfe a pound, and of Sallet-oyle one pound, melt, and mixe all these together, bringing it to an Oyntment, and herewith rub and annoynt the *Coffins* of the *Horse*, especially about the *Cronets*, neere to the hayre. ✠ But if your *Horse* be prickt in shooing, or otherwise accidentally hurt in or about the *Sole*, draw forth the *Nayle* first, or whatsoever was caule of his harme, then take a few of the longest hayres from his *Tayle*, and wrap them about the point of the said *Nayle*, and cast the said *Nayle* (thus wrapped up in the *Hayre*) into the fire, and he will goe sound, and upright againe : provided you doe not suffer any other *Nayle* to be driven in the place of the former. ✠ This many have supposed to be a *Charme*, but I for my part do not thinke it to be any such matter,

matter, I have often used the same, and have ever more found it to make a perfect Cure.

Now as touching hurts and bruises in the *feete*, most certaine is it that a *Horse* will many times have a *sore foote*, which will runne with water and matter about the *Fruish* and *Heele*, which many will ignorantly imagin to be a disease in the *Foote*, not knowing how it might come, when as it is nought else but a very bruise, gotten by treading upon a stone or stub, and I have cured many *Horses* in this wile, *viz.* Take a wild or garden Colewort, and beat it with old Bores-grease to an Vuguent, and apply it unto the Sorance, then leape his *back*, and and ride him an easie Trot upon sward-ground, to the end the Medicine may the better enter into the *sore*, and thus dressing him once a day he will soone bee well. ✚. This is very good. But if your *Horse* have a weeping *Hoofe*, or small Cliftes, which disease the *French* do cal *la Corne que Escume*, the *Coffin* which frotheth or whee-
seth; Then the cure is; First to open the place with your *Drawing-iron* or *Cornet*, I meane the outward part thereof only, till you come unto the *Master Veine*, which you must breake with your *Cornet* and suffer it to bleed so long as it will, then fill up the wound with the powder of Salt, and hurds steeped in Vineger, and bind them so on that they fall not off, and thus by dressing it every day once, and in short time it will be well. This cure I never tryed my selfe, but I have beene present sundry times in *France*, where I have seene this cure fully perfected by *Marishalls* there.

Hoofe weeping.

But if the *Hoofe* be *loose*, then: take Bettony, Rosemary, Rue, red-Mints, Tanfie, Sotheron-wood, of each like much: bray all these hearbs with Tarre, so much as will suffice, and the powder of Bole-Armoniack, so much as will suffice, and apply it to the *hoofe*, till you find that it be fast againe. ✚. This also is very good. Another. Take Tarre, Brimstone in fine powder, Wheate-branne, and the Vrine of a Man-child: boyle all these to a Pultis, and apply it hot to the *hoofe*, and this will fasten it. ✚. This is singular good. But if the Veine lie bare in the *sole* of the *Foote* causing the *Horse* to halt, then to make the *hoofe* to grow over it, whereby it becommeth sound againe, make this Plaister, and apply it to the Sorance.

Hoofe loose.

Take Stone Pitch, and Rosin, of each two ounces, Brimstone in fine powder one ounce; melt all these together till they be well incorporate, then when you take it from the fire, adde thereto of Turpentine one ounce, and so stirre them all together, and as it cooleth, make it up into Rowles, and when you would use it, poure the same into the *Orifice* by the helpe of a red hot iron, and so all about the Sorance, then clap Hurds upon it, and over that a peece of Leather, cut and shaped for the purpose, and so splent it to keepe it fast on. Use thus to dresse him twice or thrice, and he will be cured. ✚. This is very good. But if the *foote* have taken any harme by an over reach, stub, prick, or gravell, then making the wound very cleane, and laying it bare.

Hoofe hurt.

Take Sope, and Salt of each like much, so much as will suffice, make them to an Vnguent, then first wash the Sore with Chamberly and Salt, or Beere and Salt, and dry it againe with a linnen ragge, then bind on the Medicine, and let it so remaine foure and twenty houres; and do thus if the wound be great three or foure daies together: then having with this Medicine exhausted all the *Venome* (which it will soone do;) take of Traine-Oyle one spoonfull or two, and as much Ceruse that is, white lead in fine powder, and so worke them to a thick salve; then apply that to the sorance plaister-wise, till it be whole; which will not be long, for nothing doth dry up sooner, or is more kindly, or Naturall for the breeding of a new *Hoofe* then this. Another most soveraigne for a *Hoofe bound*.

Hoofe bound

First pluck off the Shooes, and shooe him up againe with *halfe Moone or lunet-shoes*, then ease with your drawing Iron or Rape the quarters of the *Hoofes* on both sides of the *Feete*, from the *Cronet*, downe to the end or bottome of the *hoofes*, so deep till you perceive as it were a dew to come forth, and if you make two Rales it will be the better, and enlarge the *Hoofes* the more, that done, annoynt the *Hoofes* above next to the *Hayre*, about the *Cronet* with this oyntment.

Take of Turpentine one pound, of Wax, and of Sheepes or Deeres Suet, of each halfe a pound, of Tarre, and of Sallet-oyle, of each halfe a pint; melt all but the Turpentine together, and when it is almost ready to be taken off from the fire, put in your Turpentine, and so stirre it well together till it be cold. Let his *Hoofes* be annoynted herewith once a day till you doe perceive hee mendeth, and then let him be ridden upon soft, moyst-swardy-ground, an houre or two every day once, for the space of a *Month*, and if he do not go well at the *Months* end, (as I am confident he will) then take off the *lunet-shoes*, and pare his *Soles*, *Frusbes*, and *Heeles*, so thin, till you may see a dew to come forth, & the *bloud* ready to start, then tack on his whol *Shoes*, and stoppe all his *Feete* as well within as without, with this Charge.

*Hoofe bound
a Charge.*

Take of Cow or Oxe-dung, and of Wheate-branne, of each, so much as will suffice, of tryed Hogges-grease, and of the kidney of a Loyne of Mutton, of each one pound, of Turpentine, and Tarre, of each halfe a pound, melt all these together (the Turpentine excepted) which must be put in when it is almost ready to be taken from the fire, continually stirring it, to the end the ingredients may be the better mixed. Let this *Charge* be layed on good and hot, renewing it every day once by the space of nine daies, to the end the *sole* may arise: but if this will not do it, then take out the *soles* cleane, and after you have stanchd the bleeding, with the tender tops of Ilope well stamped in a stone Morter, then apply the medicine of *Snayles*, Bay-Salt, and red Nettles shewed you in *lib. 2. chap. 9. §. 18.F.* renewing it once a day for three daies, and after you may heale up the *feet*, and

and bring a new and perfect *sole* with your Greene Oyntment so often recommended unto you, in many other of my *Cures*; and thus you shall rectifie the *hooves*, and make him sound, but then hee must be shod with *lannels* againe, and turned forth to grasse. ✠. But if he hath stood in the Stable with little exercise, whereby he may bee in danger of a *dry foundring*.

Take of Turpentine, of Sheeps suet, and of Waxe, of each one pound, of Sallet-Oyle one pint, of Tarre halfe a pint; melt all these upon a soft fire, and stirre them in the melting untill they be all well incorporate, but put in your Turpentine last, which being well molten put it up in a cleane Vessell, and keepe it for your use, and herewith annoynt the *hooves* of your *Horse* dayly, they having beene first washed very cleane, and wiped dry, and this will conserve his *hooves* supple and moyst, keepe them coole, and make them very tough and sound. ✠. This I have often used. But if the *hooves* be somewhat straight, and yet the *Horse* not *hoofe-bound*, then administer this Medicine to his *feete*.

Take the fat of Bacon, the sword cut away halfe a pound, of white Sops three ounces, Balme one handfull, and five or sixe sprigges of the tender tops of Rue, chop, and stampe all these together very well in a Morter, and then fry them, and lay them to the *hooves* reasonable hot, and keepe him from comming in any wet till he be well, and being thus dressed every day once, his *hooves* will in short time be sound, well, and easy to him againe. ✠. This Receipt is very good. But let us discoure of a *loose hoofe* yet a little more. Take of Tarre three spoonfulls, of Rosin three ounces, of Tanty, Rue, Mints, and Sotheren-wood of each one handfull, pound all these very well, adding to it of sweet Butter halfe a pound, of Virgin Waxe halfe an ounce, and so try them all together till it come to be a thicke salve, and apply it Plaister-wise warme to the *hooves*, seven or eight daies together, and this will cure him, and fasten the *hooves* againe. ✠. This is very good. But if his *hoofe* be otherwise hurt, eyther by some other *Horse* treading upon his *Hoofe*, or by any other accident; then

Take an Egge, and Soot so much as will suffice, to be beaten with the said Egge till it be stiffe like a salve; then adde to it of Sallet-oyle and Harts-horne made into powder, of each two or three spoonfulls, boyle this to a thick salve, continually stirring it in the boyling, and apply it to the *hooves* Plaister-wise, dayly dressing them till they be whole. This I never made tryall off, howbeit it was commended to me to be a speciall good Receipt. Another very good to make a brittle or pomized *hoofe* tough.

Take fresh Butter one pound, Wax and Turpentine of each halfe a pound, melt first the Waxe, then put to it your Butter, and when that is molten put in your Turpentine, and so stirring them well together, reserve it to your use, and when you do use it, apply it thus:

Make

Hoof brittle

Hoofe straight.

Hoofe loose.

Hoofe trodden upon or hurt.

Hoofe brittle to make tough.

Hoofe to
grow.

Make a Buskin of leather, so as it may be buckled or tyed above or upon the *pasterne joint*, and then lay on so much of the medicine as will cover the *hoofe* all over very thicke, and then put on the Buskin and fasten it to his *legge* or *pasterne*, and let him stand so night and day till you have occasion to ride or exercise him, dressing him thus once a day, and the longer you use this medicine, the better will be his *hoofe*. + I have often made tryall of this receipt, and I have found it to be very good. But if your *horse* hath his *hoofe* broken, and that you have a desire it should grow, then

Take Garlicke pilled seven ounces, Rue three handfulls, Allum powdred and searfed seven ounces, old Bores grease two pound, beat all these together with Asles dung one handfull, and then boyle it, and so reserve it, and annoynt his *hoofes* therewith, and they will grow very fast. + This is very good. If he be hurt by being cast in his *halter*, then

Halter cast.

Take of Waxe and Turpentine, of each one ounce, melt them together in a pot: take then of Verdigre and Hogs grease, of each one ounce, and incorporate them well together raw, *viz.* without boyling, the Verdigre being first made into very fine powder, and put into another pot by it selfe: then when you have occasion to use it whereby to dresse a sore: take first of that you made of Turpentine and Waxe two parts, and then of that other which was not boyled made of Verdigre and Hogs grease a third part, and mixing them well together in the palme of your hand, annoynt the sorance therewith, thus doting every day once or twice, it will be whole, remembering to clip away the *hagge* first from about the place. And this is a most excellent receipt. ✕ I have often proved it.

§. 10. H.

Hippoph. **W**hat may a man best apply to the Hough of a Horse that is swelled, as if he were in danger to breed a Bloud or Bogg-Spaven?

Hippof. This commeth sometimes to yong *horses* when they be too hard ridden and journeyed in their youth, which is the cause they swell in that place, by reason the *bloud* falling downe there setleth, which if it be not speedily removed, will assuredly beget a *wet Spaven*. The cure is, annoynt the place swolne four or five dayes together with naturall Balsome, and after repress the *humours* with this charge, having first given fire to the place lightly:

Hough
swelled.

Take oyle of Roses two ounces, Bolearmoniack in powder one ounce, Wheat flower halfe an ounce, and the white of an Egge, beat and incorporate all these together, and after you have ended to annoynt the place swelled with Balsome: charge every day for four or five dayes after, the place herewith, and he will be well. + This is very good.

§ II.

§. 11. H.

Hippoph. **VV**hat is good to dry up humours?

Hippof. This kinde of drying up of *humours*, is but onely to reſtraine them for working too much upon wounds, whereby the better to cure them. The way therefore is this;

Fiſt bath the ſorance well with hot molten freſh Butter, and then ſtrew upon it the powder of Roſin for a day or two; then take of the thickeſt Creame, and of Soot, of each as much as will ſuffice, and worke them to a thick paſte, and ſo apply it to the ſorance plaſterwiſe, and it will both dry up the *humour* which poſſeſſeth it, and heale up, and *ſkin* the ſore in a ſhort ſpace. + This I have often uſed, and it is right good.

Humours to dry up.

§ 12. H.

Hippoph. **W**hat is beſt to cure the hurt in the Shoulder, or other member?

Hippof. There are many things good for a malady of this nature, and when I come to treat of Spraines, Sores, and Wounds, I ſhall deliver them unto you, and therefore I will now refer them to its proper place, onely I will give you one for the preſent.

Take oyle de Bay, Dialthea, freſh Butter, oyle of Turpentine, of each two ounces, boyle and mixe them well together, and when they be well incorporate, annoynt the place grieved therewith ſo hot as the *Horſe* can well ſuffer it without ſcalding, and let him be thus annoynted twice or thrice a day, and give the *Horſe* moderate exerciſe by walking him a foot pace gently up and down. And this is a certaine and an approved remedy. This I never tryed, but a great *Ferrier* who is cryed up for famous, taught it me, and wiſhed me to make uſe thereof.

Hurt ſhoulder.

§ 13. H.

Hippoph. **VV**hat doe you hold good wherewith to cure old Hurts?

Hippof. The onely beſt way to cure and dry up old hurts and fores, is this; Take old ſhoes and burn them to coles, and then beat them to fine powder, then adde to it unſlaked Lime and ordinary Honey, as much as will ſuffice, to bring it to a ſtiſſe paſte, which done, knead them all together unto a paſte, and ſo make it into a Cake, and then lay it upon a fire pan, and ſo let it be well baked; which done, make it into fine powder, and every day once, put of this powder into the wound, and it will heale it up, nothing ſooner. + This I have often uſed, and it is very good, and herewith we do conclude this Chapter.

Hurts old to cure.

CHAP. XII.

§ 1. I.

Hippoph.

Imperfection
in the
feet.



What is good to helpe any imperfection in the feet ?

Hippof. First pare the feet very thin, open the heeles and make the shoes wide, large, and hollow: if the imperfection come by *foundring*, then Take a good quantity of Oxe or Cow dung, Tarre, and Hogs grease, of each halfe as much, and of Soot the like quantity, as of either Tarre or Hogs grease: boyle all these very well together, and herewith stop the horse feet very hot, and continue thus to do daily, and it will not onely take away any anguish, but also strengthen the hooves, and make them so perfect as that they will be able to endure labour; but when you trauell your horse (for exercise is very good for him) let him be stopped herewith hot; but if cold, adde then thereto the whites of Egges as much as will suffice, for that will coole his feet very well, and it will comfort the *Frush* very much, but if the hoofe be naturally brittle, and by foundring become dry and streightned, then to enlarge the same, and to make it the more tough, and to grow the better also. Take of Hogs grease, Turpentine, and Masticke, of each, like much, and halfe so much Lard as of either of them: melt all these but the Turpentine on the fire, and when it is well dissolved, take it off, and then put in your Turpentine, stirring it well till it be thoroughly incorporate; then keep it in a stone pot by it selfe; and when it is through cold, be sure to stop the pot very close, and so reserve it for your use. With this Salve annoynt the *coffines* (but especially the *Cronets*) every day twice at the least, and it will cause the hoofe to grow very much, and become tough and sound. † This I have often used, and it is very good.

§ 2. I.

Hippoph. **W**hat is good to ripen an Impostumation ?

Hippof. To ripen any swelling which doth impostumate, you shall know by the heat, for if you lay your hand thereon, it will be hot and burne; wherefore to prepare and make it ready to be opened;

Impostuma-
tion to ripen.

Take Mallow roots, and white Lilly roots, of each like much, bruise them, and put to them Hogs grease and Linseed meale, of each
fo

so much as will suffice, and boyle them till they be soft, and so plaister-wile apply it to the grieve. +

§ 3. I.

Hippoph. **W**hat is good for any inward sicknesse in a Horse?

Hippof. I have shewed you that sufficiently before in *lib. 2. cap. 3. § 6. A.* where I give you three excellent receits together; neverthelesse if you doe finde that your *horse* doe not thrive, but droop and impaire, I will here give you one receit more which I doe know to be most singular, and will doe him much good, and whereof I have had very long and great good experience. First therefore if you do see cause, take *bloud* from him, but not otherwise, and if he be subject to costivenesse, then administer unto him either a *Clisther* or a *Suppository*, and the day following give him this drinke.

Take *Aristolochia Rotunda*, Bay berries, Gentiam, Anniseeds, Ginger, and of *Trifora-Magna*, of each one ounce: beat all the simples to very fine powder, and mixe them well together; then take of white Wine one quart, or of Sacke the like proportion, which is better, then put of this powder, and of your *Trifora-Magna* one spoonfull, into the Wine. Sallet oyle halfe a pinte, and of *Mithridate* two drams, warm these upon the fire, and so administer it bloud warme, and let him be exercised as well before as after his drinke, but not so farre as to sweat by any meanes, neither let him drinke any cold water in foure or five dayes after, but either warm Mashies, or else white water. + This is most soveraigne for any inward sicknesse, droopings, forsaking of meat, Feavers, Colds, Coughs, or the like.

Inward
sicknesse.

§ 3. I.

Hippoph. **Y**ou speake here of administering a Suppository, but what Suppository were best to be given in a case of this nature?

Hippof. I will shew you Sir: if your *Horse* be so ficke whereby you feare to give him any strong medicine, and that he be costive withall, then give him this *Suppository* following.

Take of Honey sixe ounces, of Sal-niter, one ounce and a halfe, of Wheat flower and of Anniseeds in fine powder, of each, one ounce, boyle all these to a hard thicknesse, and then make it into *Suppositories*; and first annoynt your hand with Sallet oyle or sweet Butter, and the *Suppository* also which he is to take, and so convey it into his *fundament* a pretty way, and after tye his *taile* betwixt his *legges*, as I have elsewhere shewed you: or else hold it close to his *body* with your *hand*, by the space of a quarter of an houre at the least, till it be thoroughly dissolved, and this will caule him to purge kindly, and it will very much coole and loosen his *guts*: then you may be the more

Inward
sicknesse a
Suppository.

bold to administer what Drinkes, Cordials, or other things which you may thinke most requisite for his recovery. +

§. 4. I.

Hippoph. **V**What is good to ripen inflammations, Pustils; and Kernels, which doe grow under the chaule of the Horle?

Inflammati-
ons.

Hippof. This commeth to a horse that hath either Cold or Glanders, which must be dissolved, otherwise the Horse can never be cured: wherefore take Wheat Bran two handfuls, and so much Wine, Ale, or Beere, as one quart, with which to thicken it, put to it of Hogs greafe halfe a pound, boyle these together till the liquor be quite consumed, and so apply it to the place so hot as the horse may well suffer it, renewing it every day once, till it do of it selfe breake, or be so soft to be opened, then let forth the corruption, and taint it with a taint of flaxe dipped in this Salve. Take of Turpentine and of Hogs greafe of each like much, and of Rosin and Waxe a much greater quantity; melt all these together, and with the said taynt dipped in this medicine, put it into the wound, renewing it every day once till it be whole. ✕ This is an approved receit. But if it be an inflammation impostumating in any other part of the body, take then the grounds of a Beere-Barrell, foure quarts, of Smalage, Pennyroyall, Winter-Savory, Cumfrey, Rue, and of the leaves and berries of the Missell-tow, of each two handfuls, chop all these very small, and put them to the said grounds, and put to it of Sheeps or Deere Suet tryed, one pound, and three or foure handfuls of Rye or Wheat Bran, so much indeed as will serve to boyle this to a *Poultesse*, and when it is boyled as much as will suffice, apply it to the place, and if the swelling be very much impostumated, it will breake it, or at the least so soften it, that it may be opened; if it be hard at what time you put your *Poultesse* thereunto, it will send it backe again without more to doe. + This I have very much experimented, and have found it to be right good. But if he be troubled with the *Strangles*, and that he is very much inflamed under the *chaule*, then cure them thus: take Basilicon, old Bores greafe, and Dialthea, of each foure ounces, of oyle de Bay, one ounce, incorporate all these well together, and first clipping away the hayre from under the *chaule*, annoynt the swelling and inflamed place therewith very well; this done, binde upon it a piece of Sheeps skin, with the Wooll next to the inflammation, that the warmth thereof may the better helpe to ripen the *Pustils*, which being ripened, open them, and let forth the corruption, that done, taynt it first for three or foure dayes with Basilicon onely, but after heale up the sorance with your blacke *Ægyptiacum*, taught you in *lib. 2. chap. 4. § 4. A.* and during the time of this cure, let him eate good sweet Hay, and Bran, in stead of Oates, and let his drinke be onely

only white Water. ✠. This is a most excellent Receipt.

§ 5. I.

Hippoph. **V**What is good for a Ioynt that hath in it any Ach, Numnesse, Weakenesse, or Swellings which commeth of a cold cause.

Hippof. This commeth sometimes of a Streyn and sometimes of a Cold, taken after a great and violent riding or labour. The signes are apparent, and the Cure is;

Take Acopum, and mixing it with sweete Sack, all to rub and chafe the Ioynt greived therewith. And if it come of cold, it will at foure or five times thus doing, cure it. ✠. This is singular good. Another.

Joint grei-
ued.

Take Aqua-vitæ, and warme it upon the fire, and therewith bathe and rub the greived Member therewith very well, and hold a hot bar of iron before it, to cause it to sinke in the better; take then a rag, and wet it in the same Aqua-vitæ, and lastly, take Pepper finely powdred and searced, and strew it good and thick upon the said wet rag, and so bind it to the place greived; take then a dry Rowler of linnen, and swathe the place therewith, and so let them remaine, and thus do every day once, and in short time it will recover him. ✠. Of this I have made often tryall.

§ 6. I.

Hippoph. **V**What is good to encrease the Hoofe of a Horse?

Hippof. I have given you sundry good Receipts before, but I will adde one more, which the most Famous Marishall of all Paris gave me, which he recommended unto me for tres-bonne, but I never had yet a good occasion to make tryall thereof. The receipt is this.

Take of the Oyle of Hempe-seed, of Waxe, of Venice Turpentine, Rosin, Pitch, Bay-seeds dried and powdred of each halfe a pound, Roch Allume two ounces, mixe all these together, and let them boyl softly upon a gentle fire, then straine it through a hayre-cloth, and keepe it for your use. With this annoynt every day the hoofes of your Horse, and this will cause them to grow very much. This is probably a good Receipt.

Increase the
Hoofe.

CHAP. 12.

§. 1. L.

Hippophylus.



Now doe you cure the Lampas Hippolerus?

Hippof. This is a Malady that every common Smith can easily cure, by putting into the *Mouth* of the *Horse* a good big Bat of wood, where unto two long peeces of the *Head-stall* of an old bridle is nayled at either end, which will cause him to keepe open his *Mouth*, and then holding up his *Lip* with your left hand, burne away the ranke *flesh*, with a hot Iron made of purpose, and after rubbing the place with Salt, and giving him Bran for Oats three or foure daies at the most, he will bee whole. ✠ This disease is a Swelling proceeding from ranknesse of *bloud*, which groweth in the *Mouth* adioyning to the *fore teeth*, which said Swelling is an impediment to his feeding; it is apparant enough to be seene, and therefore needs no further remonstrance. ✠ Neverthelesse I will shew you how the *Marishals* in *France* do use to cure the *Lampas*, from whom I had the Cure, and wherewith I my selfe have cured many *horses*.

Lampas.

Take a roasted Onion, and very hot put it upon a clout, or upon hurds, and with it rub the *Lampas* very hard, and do this two or three times a daytill it be whole. ✠ But many times they burne away the *Lampas*, like as do our *Smithes* with an iron instrument, which they do call a *Bistery*, which is the very same that our *Smithes* use here in *England*.

Hippophylus. How do you stop a Laxe or Loolenesse, when it commeth to be violant?

Laxe to stop

Hippof. Very easily Sir, but I had thought I had handled that point sufficiently before, in *letter F.* where you made your demand touching the *Flux* in a *Horse*, notwithstanding I will give you other very good Receipts by me almost forgotten. To illustrate the manner of it's comming, and the signes how to know the same, I hold unfitting for this place, by reason I have sufficiently already performed it. Take of Allome one penny-worth powdred, Bole-Armoniack powdred, one ounce, put these into Milke one quart, continually stirring it till the Milke doth become all of a Curd, give him this with

with a horne, and it will stay his *Laxe* bee it never so violent. ✠ This I have used. Another.

Take Beane flower, and Bole-Armoniack in fine powder, of each foure ounces, put them into red Wine one quart, and give him this with a horne bloud warme. Let his drinke be white water, only instead of Wheate-bran, put in Bean-flower, and that for three or foure daies after; then let him *bloud* in the *Temple veines*, and give him warme Mashs, made of ground Malt and Beane-flower, and having drunke up the Wort, let him eat up the residue, but if this doe not stay him within two daies, then put in each *Nosthrill*, Sallet-oyle, and that will do it. ✠ This is speciall good.

§. 3. L.

Hippoph. **V** *What meanes have you to raise a leane Horse, and to cause him in short time to become very fat?*

Hippof. I have shewd you this before, but yet I will give you Receipt which you yet have not.

Take Elecampane dried, Comin, Turmerick, Anniseeds, of each two ounces, Grunsell halfe a handfull boyle all these very well with three heads of Garlick picked, a little bruised in strong Ale foure quarts, then straine it well, and give unto your Horse of this drinke one quart, in a morning fasting bloud warme, and then ride him upon it till he do begin to be warme, but not to sweate, and thus do for foure mornings together, and within some short time after, turne him to grasse if the time of the yeare be seasonable, and he will feed wonderfully and fatten sodainely: but if the time of the yeare doe not serve for grasse, then shall you keep him in the Stable, and besides his former drinke, you shall give him in his Oates, this powder, viz. Take the powder of Elecampane dry, and of Comin, both pulverized and searced of each like much: mix them wel together, and every time you give your Horse this Provender, take of this powder half an ounce, and strew it by little and little among his Provender for feare of offending him, till he hath eaten up all cleane, and doe thus but foureteene daies together, and you shall perceiue your Horse to thrive, mend, and prosper after a strange manner: provided that you do give him seasonable ayling, moderate exercise, and Mashs or white water. ✠ This is marvelous good.

*Leane horse
to make fat.*

§. 4. L.

Hippoph. **V** *What is to bee done to a Horse whose Legges doe swell?*

Hippof. If this Swelling be only in his fore Legges and not behind, then it is a signe that this his Swelling came by over-violent labour, when the Horse was very fat, (especially inwardly) by reason that the

Legs swelled

the greafe that was molten fell downe into his *fore-Legges*, which if it had staid in his *Body*, must of necessity have engendred either an *Anticor*, *Feaver*, or a *Surfet* to the great perill of his life ; The signes are knowne by the swelling, and therefore to annoynt them with *Acopum* were very good. But the best cure is, first to take up the *thigh veines*, then with your *Fleame* to prick the places most swelled, and hottest, in sundry places, especially be low, to the end that the corrupt *bloud* may issue forth ; then

Take of white Wine-lees one pint, of Comin bruised one ounce, boyle then together to a pultis with Wheate flower, three handfuls ; then with a cloth apply it to the place good and warme, renewing it every day once, & if in two or three daies it doth draw it to a head (as it is very probable it will do) then lanch it and heale it up either with Shooe-makers waxe, laid on upon a Playster of leather, or also with a salve made of the yolke of an Egge, Where flower, and common honey well wrought together to a salve, which you must also apply Plaister-wise +. But if it do not come to a head, and yet the swelling continue ; then

Take of Pitch, and of Virgin-wax, of each three ounces, Rosin half a pound, of the iuyce of Isop, and of Galbanum, of each half an ounce and of Mirrah-secondary half a pound, of Bdelium- Arabicum, Populeon, and of the drops of Storax, of each halfe an ounce, and of Deeres-suet halfe a pound ; boyle all these together in an earthen Pot, and when it is cold ; take of Bitumen halfe a pound, Bole-Armoniack, and of Costus, of each one ounce and halfe : make all these into fine powder, and then incorporate them well with the other, and so boyle them all over againe very well ; that done, poure this whole mixture or Medicine into cold water, and so make it up into rowles like a salve for Playsters : and when you are to use it, spread thereof upon Playsters of Leather, which must bee so large as to cover the *Legges* full so far as the swellings are, which (if any thing can do it) this will asswage the swelling, and give very much strength and comfort the *Sinewes* and *Nerves* : neyther is this Playster to be removed so long as it will remaine on. ✠. This I have applyed to many *Horses* very much annoyed with *swolne-Legges*, and brought them to their former smallnesse, when as *Ferriers* have spent much time upon the Cure, and given it over at last. But if the Swelling do fall into the *hinder-Legs*, or into all *four-Legs* together (being but a bad Sorance) causing them to burne and swell exceedingly, and the *hayre* to stare, the cause whereof coming, (as I have before said) from immoderate Riding, heat, and labour, whereby the greafe melting falleth downe into the *Legges*, by reason the *Horse* cannot voyd it in his Excrements, or else being over-hot, he is washed or negligently, set up without sufficient store of litter and rubbing, so as the taking cold, the *bloud* with the greafe setleth in the *Legges*, and there congealeth, and so causeth them to swell. This sorance also commeth by having his

his feet beaten (especially in the Summer) with being ridden and galloped upon hard ground, which first occasioneth wind-galls, and those also causeth the *legs* to swell, which truly is the worst kinde of swelling of all other, by reason that *lamenesse* doth immediately follow it, unlesse great Art and diligence be speedily applied for prevention thereof. Wherefore the signes being so apparant, needs no remonstrance, and therefore I will passe on to the Cure, which is thus.

Take Populeum, Nervell, Hogs grease, of each one ounce, incorporate them very well together cold, and annoynt the sorance therewith morning and evening foure dayes together, and at foure dayes end, take of Claret Wine lees one quart, boyle it upon the fire with so much Bran as will bring it to a *Poulteffe*, apply this to the place grieved plaister-wise with a cloth good and hot for foure or five daies more, renewing it every day once, and in short time he will be found again. ✠ This is a most excellent receit which I have often experimented. Another. The swelling of the *legges* may be easily cured, if in the beginning, they be often times in the day laved and bathed in cold water, unlesse the malady come of too great a surfet, wherefore if this of cold water will not doe it, then

Legs swelled.

Take of common honey one pound, Turpentine, common Gum, meale of Linseed, meale of Fenugrick, of each foure ounces, Bay berries made into very fine powder, and seraced, three ounces, mixe and boyle all these together well, and when you take it from the fire, put unto it of white Wine one pinte, and then boyle it over againe till it doe become thicke, spreade this upon a cloath reasonable hot, and wrap it about the members swelled, and doe not renew it above once in a weeke, and it will cure them. ✠ This is a certaine and most approved Cure. Another. If you take up the *veines*, and make them to *bleed* below and not above, and then rope up the *legges* with thumbands of soft Hay wet in cold water, and then cast more water upon them, in short time he will be found and well againe. ✠ This is also very good.

§ 5. L.

Hippoph. **W**hat is good to cure the Leprosie?

Hippof. This is a moyst *mainge*, very infectious, which commeth by meanes of great surfets, taken by over-riding, which is very easie to be seen and known, and therefore needs no further description. The cure therefore is: first, let him *bleed* well in the *necke*, then scrape away the scurfe with an old Curry-combe, Oyster-shell, Hayre-cloth, or some such like thing, till the sorance doe looke raw, and that it be ready to *bleed*, then annoynt the raw places with this oyntment.

Take Arsnick, or Refalgar, and tryed Hogs grease, (the Arsnick

or

Leprosie or elephanick malady.

or Resalgar being first beaten unto very fine powder) incorporate these well together to make them into a perfect oyntment; then tye up the *head* of your *Horse* so high to the Rack, as that he may not be able to bite, rub, or lick himselfe, and so annoynt the places therewith, and cause the oyntment to sinke the better in by himselfe, and so annoynt the places therewith, and cause the oyntment to sinke the better in by holding a hot bar of iron neere to the place as you annoint him, and let him stand so tyed three houres, and then wash away the Vnguent with the strongest Chamber-lye you can get, and wash him so thoroughly, that you may be assured you leave none of the oyntment upon the *Horse*, and then untye him, and give him meat: and thus dresse him once every day till the sores be quite dryed up. ✠ This is also good for Scratches, and Kibed-heeles:

§. 6. L.

Hippoph. **W**hat is good to kill Lice in a Horse?

Hippof. Lice commonly commeth to a *horse* when he is very poore, especially when he runneth abroad in the Winter time in some Wood, Coppice, or places where are many high trees, for that the dropping of the trees falling upon the *Horse*, together with his poverty, doth cause them to engender, and albeit they may be at first but a few, yet will they in short time multiply abundantly: sometimes also a *Horse* will catch them by standing neer to another *horse* that be *lowfie*, and so long as he be visited with them, he can never prosper, but remaine very meager and leane. You may easily know when he is annoyed with this kinde of *vermine*, for that he will often scrub and rub himselfe against Wals, Posts, and Doores, with his *mouth* and *hinder feet*. The way to destroy them is,

Lice.

Take Staves-Acre, and boyle it in running water, and wash him all over with that water warme, and it will kill them. ✠ Another,

Take Quick-silver two ounces, and first kill it with fasting Spittle, and when it is thoroughly mortified, take Hogs grease tryed, and so work them together till it become of an Ash-colour, and annoynt him therewith, and it will in twice or thrice dressing, kill them all. ✠ Another:

Take Tobacco as much as will suffice, and shred it very small, and put it into small Beere, and put to it of Allum powdred, as much as will suffice, and when the Allum is dissolved, wash him therewith, and it will kill them. ✠ All these I have often tryed, and have found them to be very good.

§. 7. L.

Hippoph. **H**ow doe you make your powder of Lime and Honey, with which you doe heale and dry up Sores?

Hippof. Take of English Honey, and of quick-lime newly taken from the Kill, unslaked, of each like much as will suffice, beat your Lime into fine powder, and with your Honey and your Lime knead it to a paste, and when it is thoroughly wrought, make it into a thin Cake, then lay it upon a cleane fire-pan, and set it upon the fire, and so let it bake, and as it is baking, take the soles of two old shooes and cast them into the fire, and let them burn untill they have done flaming, and that they do come to be fire coale; then take them forth, and when the Cake is baked sufficiently and cold, beat the Cake together with the burnt shooes soles to very fine powder, and so keep this powder in a bladder or dry boxe for your use. X This will heale and dry up any wound or old sore, and I have often and long used this powder.

Lime and Honey.

fire shoud

§ 8. L.

Hippoph. **W**hat disease is that we call the Low-worme?

Hippof. This is that disease which I cannot distinguish from Saint *Antonies fire*, or the *Shingles*, for that it hath the selfe same symptoms, and this I have cured. This is a *Worme* that breedeth in the *back*, betwixt the *skin* and the *bone*, and runneth along the *breast* to the *braine*, and when it commeth to touch the *pannicle* of the *braine*, it maketh the *Horse* starke mad. You shall first discover it by these signes, *viz.* presently after a long and tedious journey, the *Horse* will be sick and forsake his meat, and stand out of length with his feet, bending down his *backe*, and he will often make offer to pisse, but cannot, and if he doe, yet will it be but very little at a time, and that in the *sheath*, and in time he will fall mad, gnaw the *Wals*, *Rack-staves*, and *Manger*, and bite and strike at every man that commeth within his reach or danger: and these be the most pregnant and apparant signes: and this disease doth deceive many a good *Ferrier*. For albeit that this infirmity may be many times among *horses*, yet *Ferriers* being ignorant thereof by mistaking it meereley for the *Stauers*, and applying remedies onely for that cure, doe thereby lose many a good *horse* through their misprision. But now to come unto the Cure it selfe, I will give you two receits; the former of which I learned of a *Farmer* in *Buffolke*, who was cryed up for a very expert man in this faculty, (as indeed he was) and hath perfected in my presence many a great cure. Then thus,

Take of Acrement a quarter of a pound, fixe heads of Garlicke cleane pilled, of Rue and Turmentile that beareth the yellow flower,

Loc-worme.

of each one pound, stamp all these in a stone mortar, and put to it so much white Wine, as that when it is strained, there may be of the juyce and Wine two quarts, when you have of this liquor in a readinesse, let your *horse* bloud under the *tail* a good quantity, then stanch him, and dividing this pottle of liquor into five parts, give it him sixe mornings together, that is to say, every morning one part or portion, till he hath taken it all, and by that time he will be perfectly cured. ✠

The second receit was taught me in *France* by a famous *Marshall* of *Burbon*, who hath cured very many *horses* of the selfe same malady, but in a quite contrary way. For whereas the first Cure was wrought by medicine, this second is perfected by giving of fire. Take an iron with a Button at one end, and make it red hot, then burn him therewith upon the top of his *forehead*, and a little under his *foretop*, and another in the *fore-top*, and foure other in the *necke*, cleane through upon the *crest*, whereof two of the holes must be upon the one side of the *crest*, and two on the other side, and to take away and kill the fire, put into every hole Vnguentum Rosarum, and then let him bloud in the *necke veine*, and he is cured. ✠ This is also an approved Cure. The French doe call this malady *ver-coquin*, and the *Italians* doe name *Vermiforme*, but they both have but one manner of Cure for the same. This *Ver-coquin*, or *Low-worme* is a living worm which breedeth upon the *back bone* running along the *necke*, and so by degrees commeth to the head of the *horse*, where with its hard beake, it first pierceth the *panicle*, and then worketh it selfe to the very brain of the creature, where it lyeth biting, gnawing, and feeding, causeth the *horse* to become enraged, and to dye mad, if otherwise he be not cured in time, and therefore the *French Marshall* doe affirme, that the prime remedy wherewith to kill and destroy this *Worme*, is, by fire, and they hold that it cannot be destroyed any other way.

§. 9. L.

Hippoph. **V**What remedy have you to helpe the disease of the Lungs?

Hippof. This disease of the *Lungs* is a malady which is first engendred of cold taken, and let runne till the *horse* be either frettized or putrified in the *lungs*, at what time they become inflamed, and to come at last to rottenesse and corruption: the means how to come to the knowledge of this infirmity is, that by carefull observance you may perceive his *flankes* to beat, and his *ribbes* to work, but most chiefly when he cougheth, and then the more slowly they doe beat and heave, the more old and dangerous is the disease; he will also draw his breath at his *nose* short, and yet weakely, and he will grone often, and principally when he lyeth down and riseth up, and when at any time he cougheth, he will seeme to chew some thing be-

betwixt his *teeth*, and from his *nose* will issue much corruption. The Cure is,

Take of *horse Lung-wort*, alias Mullet, it groweth in every place with broad hoary soft leaves which doe feele like velvet; shred it, stamp it and straine it, then take of Fenugricke a good spoonfull, and of Madder as much, make them into fine powder, and give this to your *horse* in Muscadine one pinte, or else in good Ale one quart, and administer this unto him every other day for twelve or fourteen dayes, and sprinkle his Hay with water, and let his Oates be washed in good Ale, and let his drink be white water, and sometimes sweet Mashcs. ✠ This is very good. Another :

Take a Snake, and cutt off the *head* and *taile*, and flea it, and after cut the same into pieces the length of your finger, and rost it as you would an Eele upon a Spit, but do not baste it with any thing, for it will baste it selfe, reserve carefully the oyle that drippeth from it, and herewith annoynt the *breast* and the *fore-short ribbes* of the *Horse* which be against the *Lungs*, but clip away the hayre first from about the place where you are to annoynt him, otherwise the hayre will take up much of the said Oyle; and thus doing often for some time you shall recover his *lungs* againe, and make him perfectly sound. This was taught me by a great *Marshall of Tours*, but I never could come to make tryall thereof.

*Lungs a
disease.*

CHAP. XIII.

§ I. M.

Hippoph.



Now Hippolerus that we have ended this Chapter, let us proceed to another; and tell me what is good to cure a Malander?

Hippof. This is a noylome forance which groweth upon the inward part of the *fore-legs* in the bending of the *legge* over against the *knee*: it is a Scab hard and dry, which hath a chop or chink upon it, and it hath hard and stubborn staring *bayres* growing in and about it, not much unlike to *Hogs bristles*, by which meanes it cankereth & corrupteth the *flesh*, which will cause the *Horse* to go stiffe, and to halt at first setting forth till he be warm, like as doth the *Scratches*. It commeth either through the negligence of the *Groome* for default of rubbing, and due and orderly dressing, or else from the corruption of the *bloud* through hard and immoderate riding; and those *horses* are most especially subject thereunto, which have long *hayre* growing all along the *legges* from the *pasterne* up to the top of the *thigh* as most commonly have your *Flanders* and *Freeze-land horses*, by reason that the *hayre* in that place, being thick, long, and shaggy, doth gather sand, dirt, and other filth, which not being continually taken off by the industry of his *Keeper*, will scald, burne, and fret into the joynt, and so breed this kinde of forance. I have already shewed you the signes how to know it, now I will also give you very many receipts wherewith to cure it, many of which are speciall good. First therefore (whatsoever you have to apply unto this forance) faile not to wash and shave away the hayre from off and about the forances; first then

Malanders.

Take blacke Sope, Vnguentum Populeon, and fresh Butter, of each like much as will suffice: mixe them well together, and so bring them to a formall Vnguent, and apply it to the forance every other day till it be whole. ✚ But you must withall understand that unlesse you doe picke away and rubbe off the dry crust or scurfe, as well as wash and shave away the hayre which doth annoy the forance, you doe nothing in the perfecting of the Cure, for be you confident unlesse you doe this, the *Malanders* will not be taken away, nor any medicine that you shall apply to it, be able to heale it up. Another:

Take blacke sope, and allay it with Buck-lye, and wash the place well

well therewith: this done, apply unto the sorance a plaister of Goose-dung, and renew it twice a day till it be whole. + Another:

Take quick-silver, and kill it in Orpiment, then take Buck-lye, and mixe ordinary durt which lyeth in the street (wherein must be neither stones nor gravell) with the Buck-lye, Quick-silver, and Orpiment, and herewith annoynt the sorance twice a day if need be, and when the oyntment is well rubbed in, then clap a plaister of the same medicine to the grieve every time you do annoynt it. ✠ This is very good. Another:

Take of the strongest white Wine Vineger, and boyle it, and so boyling hot, rub the Malender therewith twice every day till it doe bleed, that done, put upon it the powder of Verdigre good and thicke, and so binde it on with a clout, and let it so remaine till a crust come thereon, and when you shall finde the crust to be dry, and withall to chop, annoynt the grieved place with tryed Hogs grease, and that will cause the crust to fall off, and the sore to heale up. ✠

This is a most excellent Cure, and it did never faile me. Another:

Rub the sore with the oyle of Hemp-seed, or with the oyle of Nuts, or with sharp Mustard, but the oyle of Hemp-seed is the very best if it may be had. This was taught me by a *French Marishall*, but I never made tryall thereof. Another:

First rub off the outward scurfe till it bleed, then binde upon the place this medicine; take of blacke Sope, and of Quick-silver mortified with fasting spittle as much as will suffice, and so worke them to a salve, and plaister-wise binde it to the sorance, renewing it every day once till it be killed, and after heale up the sore with fresh or sweet Butter. Another:

Take *Glovers shreds* which he cutteth from his white leather, and hoyle them in *Vineger* of the best and strongest till they be soft, binde this to the *malender* very hot, and it will perfectly cure the same. I did never make tryall thereof; but it was given me for very good. Another:

Take the fat or lard of Bacon one pound, red Lead, Verdegreece and Lethurge of gold, of each two ounces, make them all into fine powder, and boyle them well together with the said fat of Bacon, keeping them in the boyling continually stirring; then having very well cleansed the sore, and made it raw, annoynt it with this medicine morning and evening till it be cleane dryed up. + This is very good. Another which is onely to annoynt the sorance with the oyle of Turpentine, and it will heale it up, and make it marvellous sound.

+ And this will likewise cure Scratches, Sores, Hurts, or the like maladies in a horse. Another:

Take a salt barrelled Herring out of the pickle, which hath a soft row, and cut off the head and taylor, and cast them away, then mince all the Herring very small, and put it in a stone mortar, and put thereto of blacke Sope two spoonfuls, and of Allum powdered halfe an

an ounce, stampe all these things together till you have made them to be of one body, and plaister-wise apply it to the Malender, renewing it once a day for three daies: And this will kill the *humour* that feedeth it; which once done, annoynt the place with the oyle of Roses, and that will cause the Crust to fall away, then wash it once every day with Chamber-ly, and strew upon it the powder of Oyster-shells, and it is made whole and sound againe. ✠ This I dare promise to be a very good Receipt.

§ 2. M.

Hippoph. **V**Vell what say you now to the Mainge?

Hippof. This of all other is the worst, vildest, and most filthy, and it will cause the *Horse* to be ever more rubbing, scrubbing, and scratching. It is a formall *Leprosie*, and the *French* doe call it the *Elephantick Malady*, by reason that *Elephants* are very much subject thereunto. The hayre will stare and in many places pill and fall away, and a lothsome Scurfe will be upon the places touched therewith, and he will infect all other *horses* which reside in the same stable, with him: Wherefore so soone as the Malady may be espyed, let him be seperated from his fellowes whether in the Stable, or abroad at Grasse. This disease commeth of corrupt and melancholy *bloud*, by means of it's over-heating, and sometimes by feeding upon naughty and unwholesome meate. It is so easie to be discovered, as that it needs no other description, then what hath beene already shewed: and I will give you many good Receipts for this Malady.

Mainge.

Take Spurge, Selendine, Brimstone, all in fine powder, of each three ounces, Hogge-grease tryed, new-Wax, Sheeps-suet, & quick-Silver well mortified with fasting-spittle, of each two ounces, melt and incorporate all these together, and so bring them to anoyntment, then first wash and make raw the places infected with stale Vrine and greene Copperas boyled together, the infected places being scraped, and made raw with a Curry-combe or some such like thing, and then annoynt him with this Vnguent, but first of all you must take *bloud* from the *Neck-veine*, the day before you dresse him with this Vnguent. ✠ This is one of the best Receipts for a *Mainge* that I have, and with it I have done very many rare Cures.

Take the rootes of Elecampane newly gathered, and the rootes of red Dockes, of each like much, slice and cut them thin, and put unto unto them of Chamber-ly three quarts, and of Bay-salt, one handfull: boyle these till one quart be consumed, then take it off, and with a rag fastned to the end of a stick, wash the places infected very hot, you having first made the places raw, with an old Curry-combe, Oyster-shell, &c. Use this foure or five mornings together, then
some

Some three mornings after annoynt the places greived with this Oyntment.

Take quick-Silver one ounce, let it bee well mortified in fasting spittle, and mix with it so much Hogs-grease as a Hens Eg, or better: then take powder of Brimstone, so much as will suffice, and incorporate all these very well together, and annoynt all the Maingy places therewith till they bee perfectly whole. ✠ This is very good. Another.

Take of the Oyle of Pilchards, and of Chamber-ly of each one quart, Guinny powder, and the powder of Brimstone, of each three ounces, white Wine-Vinegar one pint, boyle all these together till they bee thicke, make the places raw, and annoynt them therewith three times in nine daies, that is to say, every three daies once, and this will cure him. ✠ This is very good, but you must not forget evermore for this Malady, to take store of *bloud* from your *Horse* a day or two before you do administer any thing unto him, for untill such time as the *Melancholy & corrupt-bloud* be first let out, he will not easily be cured. Another for a Mainge, Itch, or Running Scab, &c.

Take as much Auripigmentum finely powdred, and mixed with Hogges-grease as will bring it to be yellowish, but not too yellow a colour, annoynt the places infected therewith, and it will kill it in three or foure dressings: This Vuguent will take away both the Scab and *hayre* together: but have you no feare, for it will not be long ere new *hayre* will come in it's place. +. With this receipt I have cured very many *horses*, who have not beene a little over-run with this disease. Another,

The first day let him *bloud* on the left side of the *Neck*, then two daies after open the other *Veine*, and three daies after that let him *bloud* on both the *Spurre-Veines*, and lastly, two daies after that under the *Tayle*, and let him *bleed* in every of these *Veines*, then scarrifie all the places and wash them with new Brine made very salt: that done annoynt the places with this Vuguent.

Take of quick-Silver one ounce, tryed Hogs-grease one pound, Brimstone made into fine powder foure ounces, Rape-oyle one pint. First kill the quick-silver with fasting-spittle, and then incorporate them together throughly with all the other Ingredients, and having annoynted all the raw places with this Oyntment, cause it the better to sinke in by holding a barre of hot iron neere to the places, and then touch him no more in three daies after, and evermore when you dresse him, forget not first to rub and scarrifie the places infected till they do begin to bleed; but if all this will not awayle, then burne the rankest places of the Mainge with an iron, having a button on the end thereof, but then take heed you enter not the *flesh*, but beare your hand light upon the *skin* only, and let each hole be well-nigh a span from the other. ✠ This I have often used. Another.

Take

The Expert Ferrier.

Take of Chamber-ly foure quarts, Bay-salt foure handfuls, boyle them well together, and wash the *Horse* therewith, so hot as hee can well suffer it, and when he is well washed; take Neats-foote oyle and put it into water, and beate them well together, and therewith annoynt the raw places, and in foure or five times thus doing, he will be well. This seemes to a good cure, but I do not remember that I ever did use it. Another.

Take Mother of Salt-Peter, the best & strongest, and wash the sores therewith so hot as the *Horse* is able to suffer it, and in three or foure times dressing it, will cure him. This I never tryed, but the party that taught it me, averred that it would not only kill any *Mainge*, but all Scratches, Paines, Rats-tayles, &c. Another.

Take Sopers-lees, and first make the *Maingy* places raw, and after wash them with the said Sopers-lees, and in once or twice dressing, he will be well. ✠. This was taught me by the most able *Ferrier*, I do now know living in *England* and I have often used it, and I have done with it very many great Cures. It cureth the *Mainge* both in *Horses* and *Dogges*, provided they get not to it with their mouth and teeth. Another.

Take Hogges-grease halfe a pound, Oyle de Bay one ounce and halfe, Crude-Mercury, and white Elebore, of each one ounce, incorporate these well together, and first make the places raw, & then annoynt them with the said Oyntment. ✠. This is very good, for I have often tryed it. Another.

Take of Hempe-seed, and of Mutton-suet, of each one pound, bray the Hempe-seed mervellous well in a Morter, then take of old Bores-grease one pound, Verdegrease, Quick-silver, Elebore, Gunpowder, Tartar, of each foure drams, & of Brimstone three ounces, make all into very fine powder, that is to be powdred, and mix them well, making them into one *body*, and then dissolve them upon a gentle fire, keeping them alwaies stirring till it be enough, and sufficiently dissolved, and when it is cold, put it into a cleane Pot, and keep it for your Use, and when you have occasion to make use thereof, first scarrify the places, and then annoynt them, holding a hot Barre of iron neere, and in three or foure times thus dressing, he will be well. ✠. This is a most soveraigne receipt for this malady, for I have had great prooffe thereof. Another whereby to cure the *Mainge* in the *Maine* or *Tayle*.

Make Ashes of the hearb called *Abscinthus*, so much as will suffice, quick-lime, & Soot, of each so much as will suffice: mingle all these together, and with warm water make a Ly thereof, with which you shall wash the *Maine* and *Tayle* in the places infected, & this Ly will not only cure this Malady, but also cause the *hayre* to grow againe very fast. This was taught me by a very good *Marishall* of *France*, but I could never make use thereof, by reason the hearbe *Abscinthus* was hard to get here. Another.

Take a little Brimstone, Masculine-Frankinsence, Niter of Tartar,
of

of the Bark of Athen-trees, Virreall, Verdegrece, Black-Helebores, Aristolochia Rotunda, of each as much as will suffice, powder all your simples, and mixe them well together with the yolks of Egges and Sallet oyle, of each as much as will suffice, and so boyle it, and annoynt the place well therewith warm. This seems to be good, but I never tryed it.

Another for the *tayle*: Take Mulberries which be not ripe, with the bark of the roots of the Mulberry tree, and Barly, of each as much as will suffice, boyle all these in faire water, and wash the places grieved therewith, and if the sorance do open of it selfe, then take Sanguis Draconis, the juyce of Leeks, Salt, Pitch, Sallet oyle, and old Bores grease, of each as much as will suffice, and make thereof a salve, and apply it plaister wise, but this I never tryed. Another:

Take of Orpin one pound, Brimstone and Euforbium, of each one ounce, Cantharides twenty five, make all these into fine powder, and with Hogs grease make it into an Vnguent, and apply it to the sorance, rubbing it in all along the places visited, and foure or five dayes after, to the end the corruption may the more easily passe away, annoint him againe with Hogs grease onely, and when the scurfe is falne off, wash the *necke* of the *horse* with Buck-lye made bloud-warme, and he will doe well. ✠ This is a very good receipt. Another:

You must first scrape the *leprous* places till they do bleed; then take of Vineger one pinte, white Elebores, Cantharides, Euforbium, of each one ounce, make all these into fine powder, and boyle them all well together, and apply it very hot to the place grieved, then when the scurfe or crust is fallen away, wash the sorance with Buck-lye mixed with black Sope, and it will be well. + This is a speciall good receipt. Another:

Take of the oyle of Hempseed, halfe a pinte, Brimstone in fine powder, one ounce, Gunpowder finely pulverized, and Quick-silver, of each halfe an ounce, and a little Vineger, then beat them all together a long time, and so apply it cold to the place, and as you do annoynt him, let one stand by with a hot bar of iron, wherby to cause it the better to sinke in, and this will cure him in few times dressing, but suffer the crust to fall away of its own accord. + This is a most precious receipt. Another:

Take of Vineger one pinte and a halfe, Euforbium halfe an ounce, made into fine powder, boyle them well together, and boyling hot, wash the sorance therewith, and it will heale it; neither need you to clip away the *hayre*, unlesse you please. + This I have often used. Another:

Take of black or blew Slat, and make it into fine powder, and mingle it with fresh Butter, of each like much: mixe them well together to a perfect Vnguent, and annoynt the place therewith, and it will cure him, but this I never tryed. Another:

M m

Take

Take of the hearb called in *French*, *Ouraige*, one handfull, boyle it in Vineger, two quarts, then take of green Coperas halfe a pound, and of Salt two handfuls, rub the place therewith so hot as he may well suffer it, and in few times dressing him thus, it will cure him. This I had of a *French Marisball*, but because I could never finde the hearb *Ouraige*, I did never make tryall thereof. Another :

Take of white Wine Vineger halfe a pinte, Cantharides in fine powder, one ounce, boyle them together, and boyling hot apply it to the sorance, and your *Horse* will sooner be cured. ✠ This I have often tryed, and it is very good.

Thus I have delivered you many receits for this one malady, which we call the *mainge*, most of them I have tryed, and can promise them to be speciall good, whereof many will not onely cure the *mainge* in the *body* it selfe, but in the *mayne* and *tayle* also if you please to make use of them.

Another most excellent receit for the *mainge* :

Take Lithurgie of gold, two pound, beat it to very fine powder, and searce it through a fine searcer, and put it into a glasse which will hold a pottle; then put thereto of the strongest and best white Wine Vineger that can be gotten, three pintes or better, and for foure and twenty hours after, shake it together ever and anone, but the first time it must be beaten or shaken a good time together, to wit, a quarter of an houre at the least without intermission, and then let it settle, and so keep it in the same glasse close stopped for your use. Now when you would use the medicine, you must make it into a salve after this manner : Take of the oyle of Roses two ounces, and of the cleereft of the said Vineger in the glasse (which must not have any of the Lithurgie in it) two ounces also; beat these together with a wooden platter, untill you have brought it into a thick salve : Take then of Quick-silver the weight of a shilling, and first mortifie it very well in a little of the firrup of Damaske Roses, the quantity of fixe or eight drops, and about three or four drops of the spirit or oyle of Turpentine; with the firrup and oyle, mingle and work these things well untill the Quick-silver be very well mortified, then mixe it well with the former salve, and then put it up into a cleane gally-pot, and so keep it; and first making the places raw, annoynt them with these Vnguent, and it will kill any *mainge* in the *body*, *mayne*, or *tayle*. ✠ This is very good. Another very good.

Take of Tarre a gallon, of tryed Hogs grease, and Bolearmoniack of each two pound, of Pepper one pound, beat the Pepper and Bolearmoniacke to very fine powder, and then mixe all the ingredients together, making them into one body, then first scrape the sorance, so as you doe raise the scurfe and dry crusty stuffe, but not to make it raw, or to bleed much, and then annoint all the places infected, rubbing and chafing it in very well, as if it be in winter, let one hold a barre of hot iron neer to the places as you annoint and chafe it in; but if

if in Summer, the sunne will do it much better as he runneth at grasse; and thus dresse him every three dayes so long as the unguent lasteth, and he will be cured. + This is an approved cure.

Another. To perform this cure, the best way is, to give the fire to the place after this manner: the iron being hot, first draw it along either side of the chipke, then draw it upon the top of the chink, then draw three strakes (if need so require) overthwart, and in short time the hoofe will grow again, so as the chink will be closed, and remain sound and whole. And over and above, you may exercise him that very next day after you have thus given him the fire, provided his exercise be not upon hard, but upon soft or sandy ground. X This is a very able cure taught me by a singular *Marshall of Brussels*, and I have practised the same upon sundry good *horses* here in *England*.

§. 3. M.

Hippoph. **W**hat is good to cure a sore Mouth?

Hippof. This is a disease that sometimes comes by much corrupt *bloud*, and sometimes by cold; for this malady most commonly beginneth in the *palat* of the *mouth*, which will cause it to look red, and be enflamed, and from the *palat* it will fall into his *chaps*, whereby he will not be able to shut them, as if he had there a *convulsion*. The cure is, if it be but yet in the *palate*, then let him *bleed* there, and let him *bleed* well, then: Take of life Honey four ounces, Chibbals or young Onions, halfe a handfull, and toasted Cheese as much as will suffice, boyle these in faire water very well, and bloud warm wash the *palat*, *tongue*, and all other places in and about the *mouth*, well with this liquor four or five times, and he will do well.

Mouth sore.

✠ This is very good. Another:

After you have let forth the corrupt *bloud*, then take Verjuyce of the Crab, and Bay-Salt as much as will suffice, and warm it upon the fire, and bloud warm with a rag wash well every part of the *mouth* and *tongue* twice or thrice a day till it be well. ✠ This is also very good; but if it be come into his *chaps*, which you may easily know by observing his wide yawning and gaping, whereby his *chaps* will be so fallen, as that he will not be able to bring them together to shut close againe, wherefore so soon as you doe perceive him in that posture, Take Verjuyce of the Crab onely, and make it warm, and then fastening a rag upon a stick, wash his *mouth* very well therewith; the Verjuyce being bloud warme, and then with your hand help him to close up his *mouth*, and doing thus two or three times, he will be perfectly cured. ✠ these be speciall good receits.

§. 4. M.

Mellet.

Hippoph. **V V** *What is good to cure the Mellet in the heeles?**Hippof.* I have shewed you that cure before, lib. 2. cap. 4. § 9. lit. A. But yet I will give you one receit more,

Take of Honey one pinte, and of Sope three ounces, and of white Wine Vineger five or sixe spoonfuls, and as much Allum as an Egge, and of Beane flower two spoonfuls, mixe all these together, and apply it to the sorance so farre as the *mellet* goeth, and let it lye on five dayes, and then take it away: that done, wash the *legge*, *foot*, and sorance with warme beefe broth, and so keep his *legges* roped up, well moystened in the beefe broth two or three dayes after, and he wil be well. ✠ This I have often used, and it is a most rare cure.

§. 5. M.

Mollifie humours.

Hippoph. **V V** *What is best to mollifie humours?**Hippof.* This I have also formerly handled, yet take with you this onely one receit more.

Take of Rosin three ounces, of fresh Butter five ounces, of new Waxe one ounce, melt all these upon the fire, and so bring them to an Vnguent, and herewith annoynt the humours foure or five dayes together, and this will mollifie them very well. ✠ This is most pretious for this cause.

§ 6. M.

Morfounded

Hippoph. **V V** *What shall a man doe to a Horle that is morfounded?*

Hippof. *Morfounding* is but the *French* word: signifying melting of grease or *foundring* in the *body*, whereof I have before sufficiently intreated; neverthelesse I will give you for this malady two singular receits, the one I had of an *Italian rider* in *Brussels*, and the other of a *French Marishall* in *Avinion*, a man esteemed most famous, and of both those receits I have made often use, and I have perfected them for most rare cures. That which the *Italian* taught me is this; first open the *necke veyne*, and draw away the inflamed and corrupt bloud, then take of white Wine one pinte, Sallet oyle halfe a pinte, of Rhubarb and of Aloes, of each two drams, of Senæ halfe an ounce, of Agarick three drams, Bay berries halfe an ounce, Saffaron two drams, Duck or Duke powder, and of cordiall powder, of each two drams, make what is to be powdred into very fine powder, and mixe them well together, adding thereunto of life Honey foure ounces, all which being made warme upon the fire, and well brewed together, give it your *horse* bloud warme, but you must withall understand that the same day you shall administer this drink unto him,

him, he do stand fasting upon the Trench three or foure houres before, and as many after; neither must you the same day give him any Oates, and let his drink be either a sweet Mash, or white water, and keep him warm, and with white water five or sixe dayes after, and then give him Oates, but in tthe interim in stead of Oates, let him have either bread made for him of purpose, or else Bran prepared; and when you do give him Oates, put in amongst them Fenugrick bruised. X This is I do assure you a most excellent receit, with which I saved the life, and brought to perfect sanity a *horse* of price, which was visited with this infirmity; the second receit which I had of the *Marishall of Avinion* is this; (*viz.*) so soon as you doe perceive or suspect him to be *morfounded*,

Take of Salt one handfull, and put to it of faire water one pinte, and give it him to drink, and ride him moderately upon it till he *sweate*, and this will cure him if it be administred so soon as you may suspect the malady, but if you stay three or foure dayes, or longer, before you doe give him this water and salt, then take of the powder of Hellebore one spoonfull, and of Saffaron one penny worth, of *Affafetida*, and of Sope of Venice, of each two drams, of *Bacca alias* the seeds of Bayes, a farthing worth made also into fine powder, mixe and pound all these together well, putting to them of Vineger one pinte, and give it him bloud warme, then cover him with a wet cloth, and clothe him warme, and let him upon the Trench, that he may neither lye down, nor vomit, but let him sweat an hour after, and then coole and dry him by degrees, and let him be well rubbed, and he will doe well again. X This is also a very good receit.

Chap.

CHAP. XIII.

§ 1. N.

Hippoph.

Nose run-
ning.

Ell now Hipposerus, let us goe on, what will cure the running at the Nose?

Hippof. I have shewed you that before, but yet I will give you two or three receits more; Take Orpin and Brimstone, as much as will suffice, and cast them upon burning coles, and so perfume his head and nose therewith, and that will dissolve the humours congealed in the head and braine. + This is very good. Another:

Take Auripigmentum, and Tussilago, of each two drams, make them into fine powder, and with good Venice Turpentine washed, make it into a stiffe paste, and thereof make small cakes the breadth of your thumb naile, and dry them a little, and therewith perfume your horse over a Chafing-dish and coles every day; but before you doe perfume him, give him the drink prescribed you in lib. 2. cap.

§ which beginneth thus (first let him bleed in the necke veine well, then take Assafætida as much as a hasle nut, &c.) and this is very good.

§ 2. N.

Hippoph. **W**hat is good to cure a Navell gald?

Hippof. This is a naughty sorance comming by meanes of a Saddle behinde, which being let run a while, will be long in curing. It is called a Navell galled, by reason that the hurt is upon the top of the backe, right over against the Navell, the signes are so demonstrative, as that they need no description; the cure therefore is,

Navell gal-
led.

Take oyle de Bay, Costus, Foxe grease, oyle of Savine, of each one ounce, then take great garden Wormes a hundred, and scowre them well in white Wine and Salt, then put all the ingredients together into an earthen pot very well stopped, and boyle it well, then adde thereto of Sallet oyle one ounce and a halfe, and boyle it over again till it come to a perfect oyntment, then straine it into a Galley pot or glasse, and so keep it close stopped for your use, and when you are to use it, onely warme it, and so dresse the sorance therewith; with Lint or Hurds, and it will soon be whole. + This by prooffe I do know to be very good.

§ 2. N.

§ 3. N.

Hippoph. **V**Vhat helpe have you for a Horse, that is troubled with a disease commonly called the Night-mare?

Hippof. This disease is so called indeed, but yet all able and skillfull Ferriers doe laugh at those that give it the same Epiphraze, for it is none other thing but a *Malancholly-bloud*, wherewith the creature is oppressed, for it doth perplex the Heart more then any other member or part of the Body, causing him in the night time to sweate more then in the day, bereaving him of his sleepe and naturall rest, and the best signes to know this disease, is by observing well the Horse when you come unto him in the morning, you shall perceive him to have sweat aswell in the *Flankes*, as *Neck*, and *Short-ribs* next to the place where the heart lyeth. The Cure for the Malady is:

Take of Salt one handfull, Sallet-oyle halfe a pint, and of brown-Sugar-Candy made into fine powder, foure ounces, mix all these very well, then warme them upon the fire, and so give it him with a horne bloud warme, give him this two mornings together, and it will cure him: But the day before you drench him, first open the two *Spar-veines*, and let him bleed there very well: 4.

I have knowne many who have taken a good great stone, which hath had an hole in it, and they have taken a withe and put it through the hole of the said stone, and so hung it upon the top of the Rack, iust over the Horse, whereby hee hath bene perfectly cured.

Night-mare

Chap.

CHAP. 15.

§. 1. 0.

Hippophylus.



What good Receipt have you, wherewith to Cure old Sores.

Hippof. Sir I have many, and the most of them be very good, whereof I will give you only one, and leave the residue to their proper places:

Take of Roch-allome a good quantity, and burne it in a hot fire Pan, then take so much Bay-salt, and burne that also; beat these together to very fine powder. then Take of common Hony and of sweet Butter, of each like much, so much as will suffice, and so incorporate all these ingredients together; neyther must it be warmed upon the fire, but only thus brought to a Salve, and so keep it for your use: which must be applyed eyther Plaister-wise, or Taint-wise, or both, according as you shall see cause, and this will heale any Sores very soundly; neither will it permit any dead or proud flesh to remaine in the place. ✠. This I have oftentried.

Old sores.

§ 2. 0.

Hippoph. **W**hat is best to bee applyed to an over-reach upon the Heele?

Hippof. I have handled this Malady before, in lib. 2. chap. 4. §. 10. let. A. notwithstanding I will give you one or two Receipts more: First, cut out the over-reach with your incision Knife, making it plaine as may be, then wash it with Beere and Salt, and apply this Plaister unto it.

*Over reach
in the heele.*

Take Oate-meale and Butter, so much as will suffice, to bring it to a Salve, pound them together in a Morter, working them into one body, and apply this Plaister-wise to the Sorance, renewing it every day onctill it bee whole. ✠. This is very good Another.

Mollifie the heeles of the Horse with suppling things, whereof I have given you store, then open the sole of the Foote round about, and dresse the Heele to enlarge it, then when you have made the Sole firme againe, keep his Feete moist with *Vnguentum Rosatum*, or some such

such like suppling thing, and hee will bee whole and sound againe, This I never tryed: Another.

If the malady doth proceed from a disease which the *French* doe call *Encastelure*, then take out the sole of the *Foot* where the Sorance is, open it close to the *bayre*, then take up the *veine* in the ball of the *Foot*, and give him the fire all a long the *bayre*, upon the saide Sorance, and lay unto it black-Sope upon the Hurds, and when the scurf is fallett off, dresse it with black *Ægyptiacum*, untill such time as it hath produced a circle of a new horne, and keepe the *Hoofe* alwaies supple with *Vnguentum-rosarum*, and the greife will heale up, and wears away in short time, This is very good.

§. 3. O.

Hippoph: **H**ow doe you make Oyle of Oates, and what is it vertue?

Hippof. To deale ingeniously with you, neither my *Master* nor my selfe did ever know the nature of this Oyle, or how to make it, untill such time as wee met with *Master Markhams Master-Peece*, from whence since we have made very good use thereof, and doe finde it to be a most singular receipt: I will give it you iust as we have it from him.

Take of Milke eight quarts, and warming it upon the fire put thereunto of burnt Allome foure ounces, which will cause it to run into a Curd like to a Posset; take of the Curd and cast it away, and straine the Whey through a course cloth into a cleane vessell: then take of Oates a quarter of a Peck, dry and cleane husked, that were never dried, and put them into the Whey, and so set the Whey upon the fire, and let them boyle untill the Oats doe burst, and be soft; then take them off, and put them into a Cullender, so that the Whey may go gently from them without any pressing: (for you must keep the Oats as moist as may be) this done, put the Oates into a frying-Panne, and set them over the fire, stirring them continually, till you see the vapour or smoke of them, not to ascend upwards: But as it were to run about the Pan; then suddenly take them off: and putting them into a Presse, presse them most exceedingly, and looke what comes from them is only their Oyle, which you must reserve in a close glasse and so stop it well.

Now there are others more artificiall and curious waies whereby to distill and extract this Oyle, yet this above them all, is both the easiest, surest, and least troublesome way, and the very best for every meane capacitie. ✠ This Oyle of Oates is of all medicines whatsoever the most excellent, and soveraigne for the *Body* of the *Horse*, as being abstracted from the most naturall, wholesome, and best nourishing food, which doth belong to the sustentation and lively-hood of the *Horse*, this Oyle being given by foure or five spoon-

fuls in sweet Wine, one pint, or strong Ale one quart, and some of the Whey poured into his nostrils, doth cure the Glanders before all other Medicines. It is also (given in the same manner) the best of all *Purgations*, for it purgeth away all those venemous and *Pecant-humors* that feedeth the most incurable *Farcin* whatsoever; and for my owne part at what time I can conveniently come by this oyle of Oates, I will never use any other Oyle or vnctuous matter in any medicine whatsoever, to be administred inwardly but this only: I having found by good experience, that it is the most Sovereaigne of all simples of that kind, and thus I have shewed you what Master *Mark-hams* opinion (which is the same both with my *Master* and my *Selfe*) is, both of this Oyle and it's vertues, and so I remit you to the use and practice thereof. ✠.

CHAP. XVI.

§. I. P.

Hippophilus.



What is that Receipt which I have often-times heard so highly commended among Ferriers, called *Pastons*, and to what use doth it serve?

Hippof. This thing which is called *Pastons* is none other then a plaine *Plaister*; only some of our verball Ferriers have gotten hold of the French word *Paston*, which doth signifie a *Playster*, and that they deliver and vent among ignorant people, whereby to cry themselves vp for learned, and skilfull *Doctors* in *Horse-leechcraft*; now forasmuch as maladies and diseases, are of sundry sorts and different natures: so ought the *Pastons*, *Plaisters*, and *Medicines* bee discrepant each from other, but since you were pleased to understand the true nature of this word *Paston*, I have in a word delivered the same unto you, and now I will give you the Receipt of one of the *Pastons* which will bee well worth your acceptance, It being the most soveraigne remedy of any that ever I could come to know, which is as good to dissolve and take away evill *humors*, which shall at any time fall downe into the *Legges* of your *Horse*, as any other Medicine you can use, And this it is.

Take of common Hony one pound, of Turpentine halfe a pound, of Mastick in fine powder two ounces, of Frankincense and Bole-armoniack both made into fine powder, of each four ounces, of Sanguis,

guis Draconis, three ounces, of new laid Egges fixe, of the strongest white Wine Vineger one pinte, of the flower of Rice seven ounces, mixe all these together, and hereof make a plaister, and lap the *legges* of the *horse* from the *feet* to the upper joynts, and do this but foure or five times, and you shall see it will performe a most strange and rare cure. ✠

§ 2. P.

Hippoph. **V**hat is good to helpe a strain in the pasterne joynt? Hippof. If it be onely a straine in or upon the pasterne joynt, and not upon the backe sinew:

Take then of Chamber-lye one quart, and boyle it untill the scum doe arise, then straine it, and put unto it of Tansey and of Mallowes, of each one handfull, and of ordinary Honey two spoonfuls, and of Sheeps tallow foure ounces, chop the hearbs small, and then mingle all these ingredients together, and so boyle them untill the hearbs be well sodden, and so apply the medicine to the place with a linnen cloth bound up, and stitched close with a needle and threed, that it may not remove, renewing this plaister every day once, for three or foure dayes, and he will be sound and goe upright againe. ✠ This is speciall good. Another:

Pasterne
joynt strai-
ned.

Take of Brine one quart, and boyle it till it ariseth, and then strain it, and put to it of Tansey and Mallowes, of each one handfull, of Honey two spoonfuls, and of Sheeps tallow foure ounces; chop all these together, and then pound them well: and set them upon the fire, and so boyle them, as much as will suffice, apply this warme to the place with a cloth *plaiſter-wise*, sewing it fast on, and so let it remaine five dayes, and if this doe not cure him, then wash the place with warme water, and shave away the *hayre*, and scarifie the *joynt*, and then apply the medicine of Cantharides and Euforbium, &c. as you are shewed in the cure for an upper attaint in *lib. 2. cap. 4 § 9. lit. A.* and so he will be cured, this is very good.

§ 3. P.

Hippoph. I would gladly Hippolerus, learne a good pill for the Glanders.

Hippof. I have delivered you *my* already, but since you are pleased to renew this cure again, I will give you two *pils*, which shall be of most singular vertue, which shall cure any violent cold or Glanders; prevent *heart-sicknesse*, purge away all *molten grease*, recover a *lost stomacke*, keep the *heart* from fainting in and after hard travell, and violent riding and exercise, and these pils will raise a leane *Horse*, and make him fat suddenly.

Take Anniseeds, Comin, dried Elecampane, Canthamus, of
N n 2 each

Pill for the
Glanders.

each two ounces, make all these into very fine powder, and searce them; then adde unto them of the powder of Brimstone, and of the juyce of Licoris, of each one ounce, which said juyce of Licoris must be dissolved in white Wine one pinte, then take of the oyle of Aniseeds, and of the Sirrop of Colts foot, of each one ounce, of Sallet oyle and life Honey, of each halfe a pinte; mixe all these with the former ingredients, and with as much fine wheat flower as will knead it into a stiffe paste, and so make it up into *pils* somewhat bigger then a *French Walnut*, and so keep them close stopped in a glasse or galley pot, for they will last good the whole yeare, and when you shall have occasion to use them, take forth one, and annoynt it all over with sweet Butter, and so give it your *horse*, and continue thus to do every morning one for some time, and ride him a little after the taking thereof gently, if the weather be temperate, and let him stand upon the Snaffle or trench three houres after, then feed him, and at night you may either give him a Mash, or white water. ✠ and thus doe (if it be to prevent sicknesse) three or foure mornings together, but if it be to take away any infirmity, as Cold, Glanders, or the like, then administer it eight or ten dayes together at the least, but if it be to cleanse his *body* from *molten grease*, or to take away foulness, then give it him either in his heat, or presently after; but if it be to make him fat, being meager, poore, and leane, then use it fifteen dayes at the least. If you shall finde any difficulty in the giving of this *pill*, you may then at your pleasure dissolve it, either in sweet Wine, or else in good Ale or Beere, and so give it him with a horn drench-wise. ✠

The other *pill* is,

Take of Wheat flower one pound, or so much as shall suffice to make a stiffe paste, then take of Aniseeds, Fenugricke, Brimstone, of each two ounces, Sallet oyle one pinte, common Honey one pound and a halfe, white Wine two quarts; make the hard simples into fine powder, and searce them, then with the residue make a stiffe paste, and of this paste make a *pill* the bignesse of a mans fist, and dissolve it into two or three gallons of faire water, by washing and having the said paste therein within your hands, & so let your *horse* drink the same at his ordinary watering times, or at any other time, when he is willing to drink, for he cannot drink too much of this water, then ride him to warme it in his *belly*, but not otherwise, and when the water is spent, doe not cast away the bottome, but filling againe the vessell wherein he drinketh, with fresh water, the next time he drinketh, dissolve another ball therein, and thus do for fifteen dayes together at least, and you shall see some wonderfull effects thereof. This water scowreth, cleanseth, and feedeth after an admirable manner, and the former lesser *pils* doe purge the *stomacke* and entrals from all foulness, it voydeth and carrieth away in his ordure molten and dissolved grease, and fortifieth nature so powerfully, as that it leaveth no evill *humours* in the *body*. ✠ This was taught me by a

Scotch

Scotch man who was Groome in Prince Henry his Stable under Monsieur Saint Anthony, and a singular good Groome he was. I have often times made prooffe and use thereof, and have found it to be right good, and for that reason I doe rather commend it unto you.

§ 4. P.

Hippoph. **V** What good Antidote or preservative have you for the Pestilence?

Hippof. This disease which we call the *Pestilence* or *Plague*, hath also sundry other names, for some doe call it the *murraine*, others the *garget*, others the *gargill*, and the *French* doe call it *mal de montaine*; the *montaine* evill: it is a most contagious, and infectious disease, it is sometimes engendred of a surfet by riding, when the *horse* afterwards taketh cold, and sometimes it commeth of the contagiousnesse of the ayre, as when a *horse* commeth upon a sudden into *fen*ny or *marsh* places, where he never was before, having been ever bred and kept in pure, sweet, and wholesome ayre, as one hapned to a young Gelding of my own, when I comming into the hundreds in *Essex*, and travelling late, I came to my Inn, where my *Horse* the very next day fell into a *pestilent Fever*, whereof he had doubtlesse dyed, had I not administred help instantly, wherefore whensoever you do suspect your *horse* to be never so little touched with this malady, remove him presently, lest he should infect so many *horses* as be in the same Stable with him. This comes also to a *horse* many times by meanes of corrupt bloud and bad *humours*, which doe lye lurking in his *body*, which washing, drinking being hot, and surfets, do often caule, but let it come as it may, it brings with it a *pestilent Fever*, which is seconded by ensuing death, if speedy prevention be not at hand.

The signes be these; after that he hath drooped and languished two, three, or foure dayes at most, he will begin to swell under the roots of his eares, as if he had the vines, and under the *chaule*, and so this swelling will run up his *cheeks* through the malignancy of the disease, and become very hard; he will hang down his *head* and *face*, and seeme alway to *leepe* and forsake his meat, and his *eyes* will be yellowish, he will draw his *breath* short, which will be also very hot and offensive, and sometimes he will put forth Carbuncles, and swellings in his groine, bigger then a mans fist, and his *stones* will hang, but this not alwaies, and this I have known in *Horses* more then in one or two. The cure is,

Take of white Wine one quart, and the hearb called in *French*, *Mairelle*, which we in *English* doe tearme *Night-shade*: stamp it, and take the juyce thereof, and boyle it in the Wine, and when it is boyled as much as will suffice, take then Linseed meale, and Barly meale, and sift out the bran, taking only the flower of them both as much as will

Pestilence.

will suffice, and put it into the liquor, and so boyle them againe to a Poultesse, and make plaisters thereof, and apply it to the swellings, but before you lay on the plaister, strew upon them the powder of burnt Egge shels, and thus renewing the plaisters every day once, you shall either ripen or breake them, or they will drive the swellings back againe without further trouble, but if the swellings doe breake, then heale them with your green oyntment so often shewed you, but then to drive away the malignancy of the infection from the heart, and to send it forth, first let him bloud in the *necke* and *weeping* veines, and then give him of Diapent two sponfuls, with white Wine one pinte, and of *London* Treacle one ounce, and this will recover him. And for your other *Horses* which you may have just cause to suspect to be infected, to prevent their danger, give him this preparative.

Preservative
A

Take two Walnuts, the kernels onely, and (the older the Nuts be, the better:) take also two Figs, and twenty leaves of Rue, stamp them all well together, and let every *Horse* have his proportion three or foure mornings together fasting, being made up and given in *pils*, and let them fast three houres after, and this will both preserve and free them. These things I have often used, and found them to be speciall good.

§ 5. P.

Hippoph. **W**hat good purging pils have you?

Hippof. I have already shewed you many in *lib. 2.*

cap. § But yet I will give you one or two more.

Take fresh Butter one pound, Aloes and Fenugrick, of each one ounce, life Honey, and white refined Sugar powdred, of each foure ounces, Agarick halfe an ounce, make all these into fine powder, and being well incorporated with the Butter and Honey, make *pils* thereof and give them to your *Horse*, and if he be a small or weake *Horse*, then you must give him but two parts of three, but if your *horse* have a strong cold, and a cough withall, then

Take of fresh Butter, and of Mel-Rosarum, of each foure ounces, of Aloes and Sene, of each one ounce, Rubarb and Bay berries, of each three ounces, Colloquintida and Saffaron, of each two drams, cordiall powder one ounce, Ducke or Dutch powder foure ounces, make all these into fine powder, and mixe them well with Mithridate two ounces, and with your Butter and Mel Rosarum, beat and pound them well together, and so make them into *pils*, and give them your *Horse*, this receit will purge him very well, albeit it may heat him for some time; and as touching the ordering him in his dyet, or otherwise, let all things be done as in other *physicall* cures of the like nature: if it be a small *horse*, then give unto him two parts in three, and proportion the *pils* according to the strength, greatnesse, and corpulency of your *horse*. ✠ This is very good.

§ 6.

§ 6. P.

Hippoph. **V**Vhat is good to cure the paines in the Heeles of a Horle?

Hippof. This is a noysome Sorance, comming to a Horse, either by ill humours, and corrupt blood, by meanes of Surfets, proceeding from great heats, by intemperat ridings, as I have sufficiently declared, before or else through the negligence of his *Groome*, or *Keeper*, for want of good rubbing, clensing and picking, this doth grow betweene the *Fetlock-joynt*, and the *hee*le, in the very *Pasterne*, which will cause the place to swell, and to have chops, from whence will issue a thin and stinking water, and those horses which have shaggy, and long hayre upon their *Fet-locks*, are most subiect to this Malady; the signes bee easily knowne, by reason that the chops may be soone felt, for they will cause the *Legges* of the horse to swell, and much filthy matter will come from the place greived, being of that hot nature, as that it will scald the very *haire* from about the sorance, and this will cause the horse to go very stiffe, and lame, at first setting forth: The cure is.

Take of the Lees of red Wine one pint, of Wheat-branne one handfull of House-lecke one head, of common Hony, two spoonefuls, of the dust of *Tanners* bark, Allome, and tryed Hogges-grease, of each one pound, & of Verveine halfe a handfull, bray all these well in a Morter, and adde unto them of the leane of of Martlemas or dried Beefe, burned, and made unto fine powder, halfe a pound, and so work them to a kind of salve, and apply it unto the Sorance, so hot as the horse can suffer it: But before you do apply this medicine, you must draw the skin with a hot iron, a little above the *houghes*, or *knees*, or else take up the *veines* (which I altogether use to do) then take of Tarre, and of Sweet Butter, and of Hony, of each two spoonfuls, and warme them upon the fire, and cyther annoynt the places scared, or else the *veine*, so taken up with this Vnguent, once every day, till his Oyntment be all spent, and by that time, your horse will be perfectly cured, especially if you continue this former Emplaster daily to the sorance, having first clipped, and shaven away the hayre; from about the place greived, ✠ With this I have cured many horse. Another.

Take of Turpentine, Hogges-grease, and Honey, of each like much, so much as will suffice, a little Bole-armoniack in fine powder, and yolkes of two Egges: with so much Wheat-flower, as will thicken all the other ingredients: incorporate all these well together, and so bring it to a salve, and Plaister-wise apply it to the Sorance, and so bind it up, renewing it every day, and let him not come out of the Stable, or come into any wet, and he will be soone cured. ✠ This is also very good. Another.

Passons.

Take

Take of tryed Hogges-grease one pound, Verdegrease one penny-worth, of strong Mustard two ounces, Nervall foure ounces, of oyle de Bay, of Hony and Wax, of each halfe a pound, Arsenick one ounce, Red-lead two ounces, and of white-Wine-Vinegar halfe a pint, powder your Verdegrease, and then boyle all together, and the *bayre* first clipt away, which must alwaies be done in any of these Cures) apply this Medicine hot to the place, and renew it daily, and it will not only cure the paines, but all manner of scratches, scabbed, and kided *Heeles*; to wash also the Sorance, with Vinegar and Gunpowder is very good to helpe the paines, and scratches. ✠. This I have often used.

§. 7. P.

Hippoph. **D**oe you not use to purge a Horse that is Purfive & Short winded?

Hippof. Yea Sir, and I do it after this manner.

Purfive is a
pill.

Take of the fat of a Boare three pound, mince it very small, and lay it in faire Water foure and twenty houres, to the end the salt (if any be in it) may soake out of it, then: Take of Agarick, Pulverized two ounces, of Colloquintida in powder halfe an ounce, *mel rosarum* six ounces, in corporrate all these well together, and worke it to a paste; which you must make into Pils, the bignesse of an ordinary tennis Ball, one of which you must give him at a time rowled up within the powder of Lycoris, but the night before you doe administer it, you must give him no Oats at all, but a little Hay and wheat-Branne prepared only, then the next morning about six or seven of the clocke, give him one of these Pils, and then cover him up warm; and ride or walke him two houres space; then bring him in, and let him stand upon the Trench two houres more, then unbridle him, and give him a little Hay sprinkled with water, and eight or nine houres after the taking of his *Pill* (which will be about three of the clocke, give him white Water to drinke, and let him eate of the Branne, then at night when you are to go to bed, put a muzell upon his *mouth*, and let him remaine so all night fasting, and let him be warme covered, and the next morning unmusell him, and give him Hay sprinkled with water to eate, and continue to let his drinke bee white Water, only, the third day give him another of these Pils, after which you may begin to give him Oates, but a little at once; but then the dayes he do not take his Pils, you must remember ever more an houre after you give him his white Water, to give him of Agarick, and of Rubarb in powder, of each one ounce, which he must take in fresh or sweet Butter made up like to a Pill: This Purgation may be given to any Horse, but especially to that Horse you shall feare is in danger, to become eyther purfive of Glandery, and if perhaps the Malady to have beene longer upon him, give him then of Antimony thirty graines,

drams more or lesse, according to the strength and age of the *horse*, and also according to the nature and quality of the disease; and if after the application of this medicine your *horse* will not feed (as it may be very probably) you may cherish him with milke mingled with the yolkes of Egges and Sugar, well beaten and brewed together.

✠ This I applyed to a *horse* of more then twelve yeares old, who in seven dayes ate not one bit of any thing but onely the said Milke, Egges, and Sugar, and yet in fourteen dayes after, I cured him, and made him perfectly healthy and sound.

§. 8. P.

Hippoph. **V** Has remedy have you for a horse that pisseth blood?

Hippof. This disease comes sometimes being troubled with the *stone*, like as we have it often times among men; sometimes it comes to a *horse*, that being very fat, is put to more then his strength is well able to performe, like as I once saw a very proper Gelding (a young Gentleman being upon his back in hunting) who comming to a great leap, and the *horse* being ridden off from his winde, his Rider inconsiderately forcing him to take that leap, which the Gelding with much difficulty tooke, but withall fell, and was not able to arise but with the help of men, and comming home the same night he pissed blood, whereof he dyed four dayes after, maugre the endeavours of three very able *Ferriers*, and being opened, they found two veynes broken neere to the kidneys, and much *blacke blood* found in the place. This malady may also come by bearing too great a weight, as also when a *horse* is too hard ridden, he will pisse water like to *blood*: your eye sheweth you the disease, and therefore it needs no further remonstrance. The cure is:

Take of *Ambrosio Sanguinario*, alias *Bloud-wort*, and *Bursa Pastoris*, of each three ounces, stamp them well, and boyle them in faire water very well, and so give the liquor thereof being strained, to the *horse* blood warme. ✠ Give him this five mornings together, and it will help him. Another:

Pissing of blood.

Take Barly, and boyle it in the juyce of Gumfolly, and give him the Barly to eate, and the liquor to drink, and this will cure him. ✠ This is also very good. Another:

First cleanse his *yare* from all filth, and his sheath also with broken Beer and Butter, then let him *blond* in the *necke* and *mouth*, then take the juyce of Leeks or green Onyons, to wit, the water wherein they have been steeped twelve or sixteen hours at the least, the vessel wherein they be steeped being kept close stopped.

Take of this liquor, and of white Wine, of each one pinte, and stir and jumble them together till they become slimy, then give it him to drink, and do this fixe or seven mornings together, and it will stay his fluxe of *blood*, and bring his *urine* to its naturall and ordinary colour.

lour. ✚ This is a very good medicine, and I have often tryed it. Another no whit inferiour to the former.

Take Beane flower finely sifted, and adde unto it the Suet of a Stagge as much as will suffice, and give it him three mornings together warme, with a horn, with a sufficient quantity of red Wine, and during that time, let his drink be either sweet Mashcs, or white water, made with Beane meale. + This is an approved good receit.

§. 9. P.

Hippoph. **V** What good receit have you for a horse that hath taken a surfet by Provender?

Hippof. This comes commonly to such *horses* as are insatiable feeders, and therefore it is requisite that they be dyeted, especially if they have too much rest, and too little exercise; for such *horses* if they can either breake, or steale to a Bing of Provender, and drink presently after, will undoubtedly surfet upon them, for drinking after Oates, Pease, or Beanes, doth cause the Provender to swell in their belly and stomacke, and so clogge the stomacke, as that crudities will arise, and so cause him to be very sicke, yea and perhaps to no little danger, that you shall see him to stand with his four legges asunder, the one farre from the other, and he will scowle and cast forth of his fundament, corn which will goe forth as whole and entire, as he did greedily swallow them without chewing, or grinding them. The cure is, first open a *veyne* in the necke to keep the blood from inflaming, then draw his yard, and wash it with broken Beere, and Butter, then anoynt it with soft grease, and put into the pipe of his yard a small piece of a clove of Garlick, whereby to provoke him to *stale*, then rack him, and give him the *Clister* prescribed in lib. 2. cap. 6. Sect. 8. *Clister* 8. C. and it is called a *Clister lenative*, then keep him warme, and to a spare dyet, for four or five dayes after, and let his drink be white water during that time. + with this receit I have cured many a *horse*, but one *horse* amongst the rest of very great price, who otherwise had infallibly dyed.

§ 10. P.

Hippoph. **H**ow doe you cure the Poll-evill?

Hippof. This mallady we do tearm the *Poll-evill*, because it breedeth in the top of the *Poll* behinde the eares of the *horse*, but let it assume what name it shall, yet it is none other thing then a *Fistula in graine*, that is a formall *Fistula* which doth begin like all other *Fistulaes* with a great inflammation and imposthume in the nape of the necke: sometimes it comes by meanes of his unruly striving, the halter being new, and therefore hard, which doth so pinch and gall him, that the harm thereof by reason that the *flesh* is bruised, doth

doth fester and inflame, and from thence is ingendred this most lothsome forance, and sometimes it comes againe of bilious and evill humours, which do make their approach to that place: sometimes it comes again by the means of a stroke or blow given by some cudgell by his *Keeper* or *Rider*, betwixt his *eares*, whereby it festereth inwardly, and inflaming breedeth an impostumation, so as if it be not in time taken, it will grow to a very foule *Fistula*, not easie to be cured; for the *poll* of the *horse* is so tender a member, as to be soon offended, and therefore easily damnaified; I need not to deliver you the signes, for the swelling will be so apparant, as that it cannot be mistaken, albeit it will putrifie much more inwardly then outwardly; and therefore you ought to apply your diligence to open it, before it do breake of it selfe. The cure is,

First to lay unto the place swollen, such things as will ripen it, and to prepare it ready to be opened: and as touching the ripening thereof,

Poll-evill.

Take the loame of a mud wall which had never any Lime in it, but much Straw or Litter; and the elder this Loame or mud wall is, the better; boyle so much as you shall please thereof in the strongest white Wine Vineger, and let it boyle till it come to be a very Poulteffe, then being very hot, lay it to the swelling, renewing it morning and evening till it be ripe enough to be opened, then open it with a red hot iron made sharpe at the end, and let the iron be the bignesse of a naile rod, but you must begin below, thrusting your instruments upwards, cleane through, that it may come forth in the softest place, and when it is thus opened, so as the corruption may issue forth at ease; anoynt the orifices with tryed Hogs grease two or three dayes together, to get out the fire, but howsoever faile not to dresse it twice every day with the said Poulteffe, taynts being dipped in the Poulteffe, and put down to the bottome, as well to carnifie and heale the *Fistula* at the bottome, as to keep open the orifices, and this Poulteffe will cure him. → But withall you must remember to make him a hood or nightcap to keep warm the *nape* of his *neck*, and to keep in the taints also: this also cureth the Botch in the groine, hurts in the withers, navell-galles, galled-back, or Sit-fasts, &c. Another:

First ripen it as before, or else with tryed Hogs grease scalding hot, making him a Biggin wherewith to keep his *poll* very warme, and renew this Emplaister every day, and it will ripen it the sooner; then when you finde it to be softest, and most likely to breake, open it with a hot iron two inches beneath the soft place, carrying your hand upward into the soft and most matterative place, to draw forth the corruption downwards, then taint it with Flaxe or Hurds dipped into molten Hogs grease, and lay also a plaister of Hogs grease upon it, renewing it for four or five dayes once every day, to get forth the fire: after this, take of Turpentine of *Venice*, halfe a pound thrice washed, and dried from the water, the yolks of two Egges, and of

Saffaron one penny worth in powder; incorporate all these together very well, then with a probat search the depth of the forance, and taint it with a sponge full as bigge as the hole of the wound, and as long, and convey the taint down to the very bottome, well anoynted with the said medicine: but this must be done with the help of your instrument, and then cover it with a plaister of Hogs grease, renewing it twice a day, but when the swelling is alaid, then use no plaister, and in short time it will be perfectly whole and sound. ✕ This is a very good cure. Another:

First ripen and open it as before is taught you, and apply Hogs grease to fetch forth the fire, then heale it thus.

Take Roman Vitreall, Allum and Rose water, of each two ounces, boyle all these together on a quick fire till they do come to be as hard as a stone, and then beat it into a very fine powder, and when you are to dresse the sore, first dippe a taint into Vnguentum Egiptiacum, and so rowle it in the said powder, and convey the taint with the help of your instrument, to the very bottome, and it will in short time make it perfectly whole and sound. ✕ This powder being strewed upon any old sore or ulcer, will both heat and dry it up. Another:

*Powder for
old sores.*

Take of Quick-silver one ounce, let it be well mortified with fasting spittle, and mixe with it tryed Hogs grease the quantity of a Flens Egge, and Brimstone pulverised; incorporate these very well together, and anoynt the swelling very well with this unguent; having thus done, take presently of red Tarre one penny worth, of the reddest and best, of Hogs grease halfe a ponnd, and of green Copperas and bay Salt of each one handfull, both made into fine powder; boyle all these on the fire exceeding well, and then boyling hot (even as it comes from the fire) with a clout fastened upon the end of a stick; apply this medicine upon the place (being so lately anointed with the Quick-silver, Hogs grease, and Brimstone) and thus by scalding it three or foure mornings together, you shall after those mornings but onely warme the Tarre medicine upon the fire, so that it be but molten, and apply it, and it will be cured; for this scalding of the place doth so kill the malice of the *Fistula*, that it can never breake to annoy the *Horse* any further. ✕ And thus with this medicine I have not onely cured many *poll-evils*, but sundry other *Fistulaes*; it cureth all impostumations and foule Vlcers, being thus applyed.

§ II. P.

Hippoph. **W**hat is good in case of Pursivenesse or shortnesse of Breath?

Hippof. This disease commeth by two meanes: the first naturall, the second accidentall; naturall, as when a horse is (as we doe usually say) cock-thropled, for that his throppell or winde-pipe being too long, and so becomes crooked as his winde is thereby so straightned or stopped, as that he is not able to draw it in and put it forth with that ease and pleasure that other horses doe that are loose thropled, for that the winde-pipe is (I say) straightned, which doth convey his breath into his lungs, and vent it forth againe. In like manner, a horse becometh pursive and short-winded, when the pipe is too much filled, with fat or other phlegmaticke stuffe, whereby he is very much suffocated, which causeth his lungs to labour the more, and therefore if you shall be pleased to follow my counsell, never breed with that horse that is cock-thropled.

This disease commeth secondly by accident, when a horse shall be too hard strained upon his water, like as many of your ignorant doctries use to doe, when morning and evening they doe make them watering courses (as they are frequently so termed) so also this infirmity commeth by riding, gallopping, or straining a horse upon a full stomacke, before he hath either digested his meat, or emptied himselfe; for by this meanes phlegmaticke humours do distill out of the head into the winde-pipe, and so fall upon the lungs, where they doe rest, and there congeale, hindring the drawing of his breath: it comes also by Colds, Glanders, and the like; the signes are so apparant, as that they need no discription, onely this inconvenience (besides many more) it bringeth with it, as to be heavy, sad, and dull in travell, be marvellous subject to sweats, and be ready to fall down if he be but a little strained. A right skilfull Ferrier not long since told me of a strange cure in this kinde, which a Gentleman's Groome related to him of a Gelding which the Groome had in his laid keeping, who was so pursive (or as we plainly say) broken-winded, as that he became almost unusefull, and his cure was after this manner; he suffered his Gelding to eate what he would, as well his fill (viz.) of good Hay, as of Provender, but debarred him of all drink for the space of two or three dayes together, then leaping his backe, he rode him upon a foot pace to the water, at which time he suffered him to drink his fill, then coming forth of the water, he clapt spurres suddenly to him, and ran him with a loose hand upon the top of his speed so long, untill for want of breath he fell with him, and for some time lay as if he were dead, but recovering breath, he arose, and being well recovered of his winde, he rode him into the water the second time, where he also drank, and being come out of the water, he did as before,

before, and so being againe ridden from off his wind, he fell like as at first, having thus the second time recovered breath, hee gave him water the third time, and then rode him as formerly, but now this third time being fallen, when he began to get *breath* again he coughed most vehemently, at what time through the violence of his coughing, the Gelding cast forth of his *mouth*, and that out of his *wind pipe* a hard lump of congealed *Flegmatick stuffe* of a good bignes, which by this meanes brought up, the Gelding was ever after freed from the malady, and made sound, and from that houre, had the use of his *winde*, as ably, and as well as ever before, and this was the story which one of the ablest *Ferriers* I do know in *England* delivered unto me (as he affirmed, and I do beleeeve him, for that I do know him to be a right honest man) from the *mouth* of the *Groome*, who with many vehement asseverations affirmed the thing to be most true, nevertheless albeit I do Mathematically beleeeve that the *Groome* delivered this history to the *Ferrier*, I must say with the *French man* *Je croy en Dieu* : But leaving this famous *Groome* to his rare *cure*, let us proceed to cures that are more probable, and now of such cures as I have met with for this disease. You shall participate.

*Pu-siveness
or shortnes
of breath.*

Take of new Milke one pint, and of Sallet oyle halfe a pint, give him this bloud warme, which done, put downe his throate two new laid Egges, do thus three or foure mornings together, and then you shall perceiue amendment, but for his Hay, let it be spinkled with water, and his Oates well wet in good Ale or Beere, and let his drinke bee altogether white water. ✠. This is very good Another.

Keepe your *horse* three or foure daies to a spare Diet, before you do administer to him; then give him this drinke: Take Fenugreeceke three ounces, of Bay-berries one ounce and a halfe, of the inner rind of Elder halfe a pound, the whites of six new laid Egges, of browne-Sugar-Candy, water-Cressets, Prim-rose leaves, if they may bee had, red Mints, red Fennell, white or Hawethorne leaves, of each one pound, bray all these together in a Morter, (the Spices before beaten by themselves) and when they be well powdred, put to the Ingredients Ale one quart, and so boyle it, and after straine it, and so give the liquor thereof to your *Horse* to drinke bloud warme, and set him upon the Trench, and let him fast six houres after, then give him mear, and an houre after that, give him a warme Mash, or white Water, and let him be kept to a strickt Dyet, and let his drinke be Mash or white Water, nine daies together after, and his Hay spinkled with Water, and his Provender wet in Ale or Beere; and thus you may cure him, ✠. With this medicine I have don very great cures. Another.

Take the guts of a Hedge-hogge, and hang them in an Oven till they be dry, then make them into powder, then take three or foure spoonefuls of the powder, and put it into sweet Wine, Ale, or Beere, and

and so give it him to drinke, and the residue of the powder mix with the powder of Anniseeds and Lycoris, and with sweet Butter make it into Pils, and give him two or three of the Pils presently after his drench, and keepe him fasting three or foure houres after, then you may give him Hay first sprinkled with water, and after Provender or Bread wet or moistned in good Ale or Beere, putting also thereunto of this powder, and if you have not enough of this powder to serve, then; Take of Comin, Lycoris, Centaury, and Anniseedes, of each like much, make these into fine powder, and give him thereof two spoonfulls with his provender, and put also into his Mashcs and bread of the powder of Fennell-seede, mixed with the powder of brimston; this is very good for this malady, for I have seen a *horse* for a month together, to eat no other Provender but what hath been mixed with this powder, and also his Mashcs and white water, so made and compounded, and I have also brought him to drinke new Milke mingled with the powder of Brimstone, by meanes whereof he hath been the sooner recovered, and made perfectly sound: X. and this is very good. Another.

First let him *bloud*, then take of sweet Wine one pint, and of the juyce of Hore-hound halfe a pound, of the Oyle of Frankincense halfe an ounce, of the powder of Anniseed, Lycoris, and browne-Sugar-Candy of each halfe an ounce, let all these be made into fine powder, incorporated well together, and give it him once or twice in the weeke, for a while, and ride him not at all that day you drench him, but keepe him warme clothed, and well littered, and let him stand upon the Trench foure houres after fasting, then give him meat, and three houres after a sweet Mash: Putting thereinto of the powder of Lycoris, and Anni-seeds, of this I never made tryall, but it hath beene highly commended unto me for right good. Another.

Take of Barley, two gallons, steepe it in water two dayes, and shift the water every day, then take it cleane from the water wherein it was last steeped, and boyle it in three gallons of faire cleere water till it burst, putting thereto of Anniseeds, and Lycoris, and of Raisins of the Sunne stoned of each one pound; and so let it boyle one houre, then take it from the fire, & strain it very dry, and put unto the liquor of honey one pint, and of Sugar-Candy in powder sixe ounces, then put the liquor into a clean earthen Pot, or bottle keeping it close stopped, and thereof give your *horse* bloud warme, foure mornings together, the quantity of an Ale pint at a time, and let him eat the Barly if he will, howsoever put it not away; but heat some of it every day: and being hot, put it into a bagge, and therewith perfume his head. ✠. This is very good, for I have often used it. Another.

First you must keep him to a very sparse Dyet and inure him, five or sixe daies to eat his Oates steeped in Chamber-ly, and after that.

Take

1

Take of Bayberries, Fennell, Cummin, Smallege, Fenugreek, Fearn-rootes dried, and Lycoris foure ounces in the whole, or, of each halfe an ounce, according to the bignes, age, strength, or Corpulency of the *Horse*, make all these into powder, then take one part

2

of the powder, and put unto it of fresh or sweet Butter halfe a pound, and of new Milke halfe a pint, and so give it your *horse* bloud warm:

3

the next day do the like with the other halfe of the powder, and the third day let him not forth of the Stable, & give it him so long as he shall be in *Physicke*, for his drinke let it be white water made of Barly meale, but not with Wheate bran, and let him stand upon the Trench, at least two houres before his drench, and two houres after, then after that give him that which followeth.

4

Take of fresh Butter halfe a pound of good Agarick, night-shade, and Cassia, of each one ounce, make all these into Pils (being first powdered, searced, and well mixed,) and administer them to your *Horse*, then give him of white Wine halfe a pint, whereby the better to cause him to swallow Pils, the fift day let him rest, and keepe him alwaies warme covered, and well littered, and if you do percive him to bee loose in his *body*, and that hee hath purged well, let him rest three or foure daies quiet, without doing any thing unto him, but if he hath not purged after one daies rest only, then give him this drinke.

5

Take Mithridate, Diacartami, Senæ of each two ounces, and of good white Wine one pint, mixe and brew all these together, and so give it him to drinke, and let him rest three daies, giving him every one of these three dayes about noone of fresh Butter onely, halfe a pound, made into the manner of *Pils*, these three dayes being ended, you must administer unto him as followeth, and continue it weekly till he be perfectly cured.

Take of Agarick, Aloes, and of Diacartami of each one ounce, of Saffaron, Mirrh halfe an ounce, make all these into fine powder, and so make them into *Pils* with fresh Butter foure ounces, and give it to your *Horse*, and then presently after give him of white Wine one pint, to wash down the *Pils*. ✠ This is a most excellent cure, and by me often practised. Another.

Take of white Wine one pint, of Sallet-oyle three ^{ounces} quarts, of Aloes, & Lycoris, of each one ounce, of Colloquintida, of Agarick, & Mirrh, of each halfe an ounce, of Aristolochia rotunda three drams, of Night-shade one ounce, of Bay-berries three drammes, make all these into fine powder, then take of Venice Turpentine two drams, of *mel rosarum* three ounces, mix all these together, and make it bloud warme, and so give it your *Horse* to drinke with a horne, but give him no Oates in fifeteene daies, and let his drinke be white water, it will not bee good to give him much Hay, but Wheate flower, which should not be much beaten or threshed, and instead of his Oates give him Wheate bran, or Barly meale, and keepe him warme six dayes after

after let him *blond*, in the Neck. ✠. Let him have this drink twice to wit, after the first drinke let him rest one day, and then drench him againe, as you did before. Another. First give him this *purgation*.

Take of fresh Butter halfe a ponud, of Sene, and of Agarick, of each halfe an ounce, made into fine powder, of Alloes, and of loafe Sugar, both powdred of each one ounce, of Cordiall powder halfe an ounce, make all these into fine powder; then

Take common-hony foure ounces, mix and beat all these together, and so make them into Pils, and give them to your *Horse*, but before you do, administer these *Pils*, he must stand upon the Trench two houres, and so likewise two houres after; that day give him no Oates, and let his drinke be white water, and for your other directions you may give him his allowance of Oates all the other daies, but you must then wet them either in strong Ale or good Beere, and you may travell or give him exercise, but with moderation all those other daies, and three times every day you shall give him three or foure handfulls of Wheate bran prepared, as before is shewed you in *lib. 2. Chap. 9. §. 4. F.* and thus continue him to this dyet at your pleasure.

✠. I have made tryall of this cure, and I doe know it to bee right good, for in a month or six weekes I have brought a Gaunt and Purfivie *Horse* to have a belly as round, fresh, & as cleer, as that of a sucking Colt, nor is this cure very chargable or costly; you must give him Wheate straw instead of Hay, only in the night you may give him Hay, provided it be sprinkled with water.

§. 12. P.

Hippoph. **W**hat cure have you for a Horle that is Prickt?

Hippof. This Sorance hath many names; It is called *Accloyed*, *Cloyd*, *Retraite*, *Prick't*, &c. All which names, wee for the most part do fetch from the *French*, and all is but only plaine *Prick't*, which occurreth to the *horse* eyther through the unskilfulnes or negligence of the *Ferrier*, in the driving of his *Nayles*, or in the weak-nesse of the *Nayles* of their evill pointing, or if a *Nayle* should fortune to breake in the quick, and not be immediatly drawne forth, it will in short time fester in the *flesh*, and loone after impostunate, and so in time beget a fowle Sore, which may aske much Art to Cure. The signes be, that he will complaine when he treadeth upon stony or hard ground specially, which so soone as you perceive, you have then iust cause to suspect him to bee *Prick't* if hee were lately shod, wherefore the better to make tryall, your way must be to search the *foote* whereof he complaineth, and you shall no sooner put your Pin-fors, to the place, but that he will presently shrink in his *foote* by reason that the nipping of the Pinsons doth paine him in the *quick*, or if you do but cast water upon the *foote* whereon he halteth, in short time

you shall perceive the *hoofe* to be sooner dry against the *nayle* or place which grieveth him, before any other part of the *hoofe*. Again, if you shall with your hammer knock upon the top of the *clenches*, when you do come to that *nayle* which grieveth him, he will lift up his *foot*; so likewise there be many other such like signes, whereby to discover the place *pricks*, which be familiar to every common Smith, and therefore I shall not need to speake any more thereof. But let us now passe to the Cure.

Pricks.

First therefore after you have made tryall with your *Pinsans*, or otherwise, as before is inculcated; pluck off the *shoe*, and either with your drawing iron, or your Butter, search the place to the very bottome, and if you can see or feele any stub of any naile therein, leave not till you have got it away; and if the place be festered or matterative, wipe or wash the wound very well, so as you may leave no part thereof behinde; then take of the tender tops of red Nettles, a little handfull, and stamp them in a mortar, of *Badgers grease* two ounces, of red Wine Vineger, and of black Sope, of each two spoonfuls, or for want of *Badgers grease*, take the like quantity of the fat of Bacon, which is salt: Beat all these together in a mortar to an Vnguent, and stop the wound well therewith, and after cover it with Hurds, and so tack on the shoe again, and do not remove it in two dayes, and when you dresse it the second time with the said Vnguent, you may shoe him up, but drive no naile at that place, and so you may travell him, for he will be whole and sound. ✠ This is an excellent Cure, and I have often used the same. Another:

Open the sorance well as before is shewed you, and wash it cleane with Vineger and Salt, and then lay unto it the tender tops of Elder buds beaten to a very Vnguent, if it be in Summer that those buds or leaves may be had, if not, then in Winter, take inward rinde of Elder so pounded and brayed, and upon that, melt into the wound hard Tallow with a hot iron, and then lay upon it to keep it close stopped, some Hurds, and so tack on the shoe, and in few times dressing, he will be whole. ✠ With these two receipts I have done many (whereof some have been very great) Cures. Another.

First open the place, cleanse the sore well as before; then take red Nettles, and Bay Salt, of each like much: beat them unto a salve, then fill up the hole of the wound therewith; that done, lay upon it bolster-wise Hurds, and melt upon the Hurds hard Tallow to keep wet, dirt, and gravell from it, which would annoy the sorance; then tack on the shoe, causing the *foot* to be well pared, and drive no naile neere the place, and after twice or thrice dressing, you may ride him, for then the more exercise he hath, the sooner will he be whole. ✠ This is speciall good. Another:

Take off the shoe, and cause him to be well pared and searched as before, then take of Turpentine, brown Sugar Candy powdred, and white Ginger in powder also, of each the quantity of a Garden-Beane,

Beane, then melt them all together in an iron spoon, and so poure it into the wound hot, and lay Hurds upon it, and after do as you are directed in the former Cures. + This also is very good. Another:

Search the place as before is shewed, then take Roch-Allum, and burn it, and make it into fine powder, and so fill the hole therewith, and lay a boulder of Hurds upon it, and after do as before you are taught. ✠ And this is very good. Another:

Search the place as before is shewed, then take of Goats greafe, or for want thereof, Deers-suet, or Sheeps-suet, of Turpentine, Sallet oyle, and new waxe, of each two ounces, melt them all together, and whilst it is upon the fire, adde thereunto of ordinary Honey, three ounces, and of Sanguis Draconis one dram made into fine powder, incorporate all these together upon a gentle fire, and bring it to an oyntment, and of this you must poure a sufficient quantity into the wound warm, then put on Hurds, and do as before is prescribed you, and let the *foot* be very well stopped, and let him come in no wet if you can prevent the same, neither let any nayle be driven neer the grieved place. ✠ This is one of the best Receipts of this kinde. Another:

Search the place as before, and cleanse it with Salt and Vineger. Then take Salt, and make it into fine powder, then take foure times so much Turpentine, and boyle them together, and so poure it hot into the wound, and then put upon it the powder of Brimstone dissolved in white Wine, and lay upon it Hurds, and then do as before is declared. + Very good. Another most singular receipt which the *French* do call a *Retoire*. First search and wash as before. Then

Take of oyle de Bay four ounces, of Orpin, of Cantharides, and of Euforbium, of each two ounces, make them all into fine powder, and set it upon a gentle fire, stirring it, till you have brought it to an Vnguent, with which dresse him as before is taught you.

§ 13. P.

Hippoph. **V**What hold you good wherewith to perfume a Horse? *Hippof.* Perfumes are very necessary to be applyed to *horses* in some cases, viz. in Colds, Glanders, Rhumes, Murs, Pozes, Catars, &c. for the better expiation of which maladies, Perfumes are admirable helps, for sometimes they breake a cold, sometimes they dissipate congealed *humours*, which do annoy the *head*, *braine*, and *stomacke* of the *horse*, sometimes they expell and caule the *horse* to vent, and to send away at his *nose* and *mouth*, much filth and corruption, which doth stop, clog, and pester his *head* and *body*, and sometimes they do ficcicate and dry up many bad *humours*, which are engendred in the *head* and *braine*, and so likewise many vertues *Perfumes* have whereof very many of our *Ferriers* here in *England* are most ignorant: for did they truly know the nature of *Per-*

fumes, and how rightly to apply them in their proper places, they might easily do cures for which they should be not a little admired. The ingredients and simples wherewith we usually perfume *sicke horses*, are many, as Frankincense, Storax, Benjamin, Brimstone, Olibanum, &c. sometimes Hearbs, Roots, Graine or Corne, and such like things, which are very much behoofefull for the cures of such diseases, for which they are frequently administred, as you shall finde in many of my Cures set you down at large: yet I will for example sake set you down two or three for your better satisfaction.

1 *Perfume.*

Take the best Olibanum, Storax, Benjamin, and Frankincense, of each one ounce, bruiſe all theſe, and mixe them well together, but not too ſmall, and when you are to perfume your *Horse*, take all theſe, ſo well mixed, and putting thereof upon a Chafing-diſh and coles, cover the coles with a Tunnell, and ſo apply the ſmall end to one *noſtrill* at once, and after to the other, to the end he may receive the ſmoke or fume up into his *head*, and let him be thus perfumed a quarter of an houre together. ✠ Another:

2 *Perfume.*

Take Brimstone made into fine powder, and mixe with it freſh Butter and Sallet oyle as much as will ſuffice, let him not take this with fire, like as he did the former, but let it be conveyed into his *noſe* with a linnen clowt rowled up in the faſhion of a great Taynt, and this will bring forth much bad matter. ✠ Another:

3 *Perfume.*

Take Penny-royall, Sage, and Wheate, of each as much as will ſuffice, and boyle them in faire water till the Wheat do burſt, put the Wheat and Hearbs being firſt drayned from the water ſo hot as it cometh from the fire, and ſo faſten the bag unto the *head* of the *horse*, whereby he may receiue the fume up into his *head*. And thus you may perfume him at pleaſure, and as you ſhall ſee cauſe. ✠

The reſidue of *perfumes*, and the manner how to apply them, you ſhall finde among my Cures, and therefore it will be ſuperfluous for me to intreat any further of them.

§. 14. P.

Hippoph. **W**hat is the beſt manner of adminiſtring Purgations to a Horſe?

1

Hippof. As touching Purgations, I have ſpoken before very largely, as well for inward purging, as for outward, and therefore what I ſhall ſay more, is in effect but one and the ſame thing: nevertheleſſe for your further ſatiſfaction, I will briefly deliver unto you, what can be ſaid of Purgations. Five wayes we have whereby to purge a *horse*, viz. by *Pils*, *Potions*, *Clifters*, *Suppoſitories*, and *Graffe*. *Pils* for the moſt part do purge and cleaſe the *head* and *braine*, by drawing the *peccant humours* down into the *body*, and ſo ſending them forth with the *excrements*. *Potions* do free the *ſtomack*, *belly* and *guts*, from ſuch naughty *humours* which Glanders, Colds, and Surſets have engendred

2

gendred in the *body*. *Clisters* are of sundry, and those of different natures, some to ease and appease griefes, some to allay the biliousnesse and sharpnesse of evill *humours*, some to binde, and some to loosen, and some to heale as in case of *Ulcers* and old Sores within the *body* principally, and those do also cleanse the *guts*, refresh the inward parts and *spirits vitall*, and prepare the *body* before hand for the receiving of *purging pills* or *potions*. Suppositories help the diseases in the *guts*, being of nature and condition more gentle then *Clisters* are, and may be applyed when *Clisters* cannot. It therefore remaineth that the skill of the *Ferrier* be such, as to be able judiciously to understand the severall natures of every of these things, to know how to make choice of his ingredients and simples aptly, to understand how to compound them punctually and artificially, to discern rightly before he do administer what be the *humours* and maladies wherewith the *creature* is annoyed and visited, as whether (*V. G.*) it be *Choler*, *Melancholy*, *Flegme*, or *Rhume*, as also in what part of the *body* the *humour* offensive, is most predominant, and what simples will purge or remove those evill *humours*, for it is requisite he be able to know right well, and *ad unguem*, the nature and property of every one of them in particular, by reason that some are much more asperous and violent then others be, yea many simples are *strong poysons* if they be not well prepared and corrected, and yet their qualities well weighed and compounded by true Art, and great good judgement, will work wonderfull effects. Those simples which be strong, are *Colloquintida*, *Scamony*, *Elebore*, &c. the more gentle are *Manna*, *Cassa*, *Whey*, *Prunes*, &c. But those that be of the meane, or indifferent working, are *Rubarb*, *Agarick*, *Aloes*, *Sene*, &c. and this I am bold to intimate unto you, to the end you may the better understand their natures, vertues, and qualities, and come to know the more securely how to work when occasion shall be offered. The fift and last way of *purging* is by *grasse*, especially if the *horse* be *surfett*, and hath been over-toyled the Winter before, for this must be done in the *Summer* time, when *grasse* is in its best heart; but that *grasse* which will scoure and purge most, is a new mown meadow, for that will rake his *guts* very well, nor will he in such a place gather flesh; I do therefore counsell you not to suffer him to remain in such grounds above fourteen or fifteen dayes, and then take him forth, and put him into some other pasture, where the *grasse* hath not been touched with the *Sithe*, for then he will *belly* well, and in short time recover much *flesh*, and become fat and lusty. This manner of scowring will cause him to empty himselfe well, to purge, and send away all his bad *humours* and *surfets*, ease his *limbs* marvellously well, do his *legges* and *feet* very much good, refine his corrupt *blood*, and make him agill and full of *spirit*. To mow green *Rye* before it be eared, is also most wholesome, for it scowreth, cleanleth, and cooleth the *body* very much; so doeth the leaves of *Sallows*, and of the *Elme*: but as touching

ing the administering of Scowrings and *Purgations* in the Stable, you must understand that some skilfull *Ferriers* who have been far travelled in this *Mystery*, have very diligently and studiously set you down many very good rudiments and instructions, wherewith to worke with all security, whose observations I do advise you punctually to observe: as first the seasons of the yeere are to be pondred: (V.G.) in winter, if his *body* be to be purged, it must be first prepared by *Phlebotomy* or *Bloud-letting*, together with artificiall dyet, therefore you shall administer cyther *Suppository*, *Clyster*, *Potion*, or *Pill*, &c. You must keep him a day or two from hay, straw, or such like hard-meats of digestion, for that those things will be a great impediment to the working of *physicke* or medicine, and he must also be kept for a time from meate, because *emptinesse* is a great helpe to *physicall operation*, otherwise it may happen (as it doth oftentimes) that more danger then good may accrew to the *Horse*. Wherefore two or three dayes before you do intend to *purge* him, let his meate be cyther Wheate or Rye-bran prepared, like as before is taught you, and give him also either good bread made of purpose with Beanes, Pease, and some Rye in it, or else Oates well sifted which must be dry and sweet, and let his drinke be white water onely, and that morning you intend to give him a *purge*, let him befasting from either meate or drinke, but about six or seven a clock in the morning, give him this or some other *purge*, which I have already taught you, or shall hereafter, which must be correspondent unto the malady, for which you are to *purge* him, for one *Purgation* will not sort to every infirmity, but this *purge* is most profitable for the causes which I shall presently deliver unto you: And this it is, *viz.*

1 *Purgation*

Take of white Wine one pint, or of strong new Ale one quart, so much of the powder of Mechoacan of the best, and choycest as you may take up upon a shilling at foure times, give him this drinke warme with a horne, then Trot him but a matter of a Mile gently upon good ground, and so set him up warme, and let him stand upon the Trench till one of the clock, then give him a warme Mash. This will purge and fetch away his filth and slime, and carry away his *peccant humours*, which Surfets have engended; halfe an houre after hee hath had his Mash, give him Bread or else a few Oats mingled with wheat bran, and that little and oft for feare of cloying his *stomacke*, and at night give him white water, and so give him bread and hay sprinkled with water for all night. ✠ This is an excellent *Purge*. Another.

2 *Purgation*

If it be in the spring prepare him as before, then for three or foure daies together give him, greene Rye so much as he will eate, and after feed him with Bread, or else Oates and Bran, like as you are told before, but instead of Hay, continue him those nights with greene Rye, by reason his teeth will be on edge. ✠ This cooleth his *body*, and cleareth it from all *Flegmaticque* and *Rhumatique humours*: as for

for his *bloud-letting*, let that bee according as your judgement shall dictate unto you, and you may use this so long as you may see cause **†**. If you doe perceive your *Horse* to bee sicke, Surfetted, full of colds, or otherwise ill disposed, whether in *Summer* or in *Winter*, after you have opened a *Veine*, give him this *Purge*.

Take of Alloes, Siccatrina, made into fine powder two ounces, and make it up into *pils* with fresh or sweete Butter, and give it to your *Horse* over night, he having beene kept fasting the whole day before, and prepared also with the Dyet before prescribed; and after he hath taken those *pils*, give him either a sweet Mash, or white water the next morning early, for that will cause his *pils* to work the more kindly, that day, and so let him fast till night, during which time he will *purge* freely; then at night (he having stood upon the Trench all day,) give him white water, and after Oates and Branne, and then give him Hay sprinkled with water for all night, nevertheless he may not the first day *purge*, by reason that some *horses* are of so strong a *Constitution*, as that *Physicke* will not easily or suddenly worke, but then bee you confident it will the next day: you must therefore be careful how you do order him. After his *purging* keep him still warm clothed and well littered, take him from the Trench, and put on his Coller-halter, give him sweet Mash or white water, and after feed him well, but by discretion, both with Hay, Oates, and Bran, and keepe him to white water two or three dayes after, or longer, if you shall so please, and when you give him cold water, let it bee with exercise. **†**. This I have often tryed. Another.

3 Purgation

If your *horse* bee newly taken from Grasse, and that you hold it needfull his *body* be cleansed, & to free him of his many bad *humours*, which eyther his Grasse or former Surfets might bring: Then first Rake him, and administer unto him the *Clyster* prescribed you in *lib. 2. cap. 6. §. 8. lyster C. Clyster 4.* and the next day after give him this drinke.

Take of the strongest Ale-wort one quart, of ordinary Honey a quarter of a pint, of London Treacle two ounces, mixe and brew all together well, and so give it him bloud-warme: this done, keepe him upon the Trench warme clothed, and well littered fixe houres after, and let his drinke be a sweet Mash, or white water, and let his Racke meate be sweet Wheate-straw, Oates, and Branne. **X**. This both purgeth and comforteth. Another which must bee given the next day.

4 Purgation

Take of white-Wine one pint, and put thereto of Sene one ounce, which must be infused all night in the Wine; the next morning be- times straine it, and put into it of the best and choycest Alloes one ounce, made into fine powder, and Agarick halfe an ounce, of Licor- is powdred one spoonfull, warme this a little upon the fire, and mix and brew it well together, and so give it your *Horse* bloud-warme; then

5 Purgation

then walke or ride him gently a quarter of an houre, and so set him up warm clothed and littered, nor let any cold ayre come unto him, neither let him eate or drink in six hours after, and at night give him a sweet Mash, or white water, and let his Rack-meate be sweet Wheat straw, and Oates with Bran. ✠ The next day (if the *signe* be good) open a *veine* in the *necke*, and prick him in the *mouth*, and if the *bloud* be bad, take from him two quarts, but if good, then not fully one quart; keep him warm, and let his drink be either sweet Mashies, or white water, and put into his drink, either the powder of Brimstone, or of Fenugrick, of Turmericke, or of Elecampane, one or more together, according as he will be brought to like and take them, which being well mixed, put thereof into his drink, one spoonfull at once. ✠ These are very soveraign purgative receits, whereby to coole the *body*, purge *choler*, and other peccant *humours*, and to purifie and refine the *bloud*. but besides, this is not onely good for *horses* newly taken from *grasse*, but for other sick, surtettered, and diseased *Horses*. Another:

Purgation.
6

Take of Gentian two ounces, slice it into very small slices, then boyle it in Beer one quart, till it come to one pinte, and give it him bloud warm, but it will make him very sick for a short time, but have no feare, for the *portion* will do him much good: let him fast upon it four or five hours at least, then give him a warm Mash, or white water, and the next day give him this receit.

Take of Life-Honey, or for default thereof, ordinary Honey, and mingle it with his Oates that he is to eate, which must be mixed by rubbing the Oates and Honey betwixt your hands, so that the Honey may be very well mixed, let him eate his Oates thus mingled, untill you do finde him to be quite cured, which will be when he hath quite done running at the *nose*. ✠ This is one of the best, and most certain cordials that I know, neither have I made use of any so much as of this, for the time I have known the same, for this disperfeth all flegme and choler; it also purgeth the *head* and *brain*; it purifieth the *bloud*, it venteth the evill *humours*; it causeth good digestion, and freeth a *Horse* from Glanders, Colds, Catars, Rhumes, Running at the *nose*, and the like.

Chap.

CHAP. XVII.

§ 1. 2.

Hippoph.



What cure have you for the quick or running Scab?

Hippof. This is a noylome difeafe and infecti-
ous, a very formall *mainge*, and meer neighbour
to the *leprosie*, or *Elephantique difeafe*. It commeth
by surfet taken by over-riding, when the *bloud*
is over-hot; it doth putrifie and corrupt the
bloud, and consequently the *flesh*, and at the last,
breaketh forth into this malady, which we call
the *Quick-scab*. And the reason why we do give it this name is, for
that it runneth from one member of the *horse* to the other, some-
times it will be in the *neck*, and at other times in the *breast* of the
horse, now in the *maine*, and then in the *taile*, &c. The cure is,

First shave or clip away the *hayre* from that place visited, so close
as may be, and take off the *scurfe* and *scabs* with some old Curry-
Comb, Oyfter-shell, or some such like thing. Then

Quick scab.

Take faire cold water, with a linnen cloth, wash and bathe the pla-
ces very well, and lay the linnen cloth well wet upon the place, and
so touch it no more in ten dayes, and if in that time the *quick-scab* do
not heale, then dresse it as before, and so a third time, or a fourth, or
so oft as necessity requireth, till it be thoroughly healed. But remem-
ber that the day before you thus dresse the sorance after this man-
ner, you take (to a reasonable quantity) of *bloud* from the *neck-vein*.

✠ This is an approved cure. Another as good as the former.

First let him *bloud*, and then shave or clip away the *hayre* close, as
in the former cure. Then take Mallowes, and Marsh-Mallowes, of
each like much, and boyle them in faire water as much as will suf-
fice, till the hearbs be soft, and with the hearbs and decoction, bathe
and wash the sorance two or three dayes together warme; then take
of common Honey one pinte, Coperas, Allum of glasse, and Verdi-
grece, all made into fine powder, of each four ounces, Turpentine
and Quick-silver mortified, of each two ounces; boyle all these to-
gether with the Honey unto an Vnguent, and herewith dresse him e-
very day till he be whole. ✠ This I say is very good.

§ 2. 2.

Hippoph. **H**ow doe you cure a Quitter-bone?

Hippof. This cometh to a *horse* by some hurt he hath taken in the *foot*, either by a pricke with a nayle in shooing, or by graveling, or by a stub, or the like, when it was not so well healed, that it impostumated, and so brake out above the *cronet*, which bred the malady; or else being neglected, it brake out above the *hoofe* before it was perceived. It is bred also sometimes by a hurt upon the *hoofe*, by a blow, or by striking one *foot* upon the other; and sometimes it cometh by evil *humours* which fall down into that place, and it groweth most usually upon the in-side of the *foot*, where when it beginneth, it causeth a hard round swelling upon the *cronet* of the *hoofe*, betwixt the *heele* and the *quarter* of the *long talon*, it begetteth an Ulcer at what time it doth beginne to impostumate, and it breaketh out above the *Cronet*, like as I said before. The signes I have already given you, for the place will be swelled the bignesse of a hassle nut, and the *horse* will haunt right down. The cure is, so soon as it is espied, to open it above; if it doe begin to be lost, then

Quitter-
bone.

Take Auripigmentum made into fine powder, and infuse it in the strongest white Wine Vineger can be gotten, forty eight houres, and then apply it to the fore, and it will so eat about the *Quitter bone*, as that you may pluck it away with your *finger* or *pliers*, which so soon as the *bone* or *gristle* is taken forth, you may heale up the wound with your Coperas water, and green oyntment prescribed in *lib. 2. cap. 10. § 4. G.* till it be whole, but he must not come into any wet during the time of the cure. ✚ This is very good. Another:

First cut the *hoofe* to the *quicke*, then

Take a Snake the greatest you can get, and cut off his *head* and *taile*, and flea it, and so boyle it in water till the *flesh* come from the *bone*, and then you may bring the *flesh* to be a very oyntment; put of this into the sorance down to the bottome, and this will kill the *Quitter-bone*, and dry up and heale it; but you must not suffer him to come into any wet, dirt, or gravell, during the time you have him in cure. + With this medicine I cured one *horse* onely, for that I had no cause to use it to any other since. Another:

Take of Arsenick the quantity of a small beane, make it into powder, and put it into the hole of the Sorance, conveying it downe unto the bottome with your instrument, and then stop the *mouth* of the wound with Hurds, and binde it on with a cloth, and a rowler, that the *Horse* may not bit it away; and so let it remaine foure and twenty houres: then open it, and if you shall perceive the wound to looke blacke within, it is a token that the Arsenick did its office in well working, then to allay the fire, and to restore the *flesh* that is thereby become

become mortified, *taint* the hole with Turpentine and Hogs-grease molten together. Then take Pitch, Rosin, and Waxe, of each like much, and of Turpentine as much as of all the other three, and melt them and so make a Plaister of Leather, with which you must cover the top of the Sorance, but first be sure to convey the aforesaid *taint* to the bottome, and then lay on your Plaister, and thus dresse him dayly till you have gotten forth the Core, or sharpe *Gristle*, if the Arsenick have not eaten it out before, for if the *Gristle* be in the bottome of the wound and uncovered, you may raise it with your *Fingers* or Instrument, and so pluck it quite away, for till that be out, the Sorance will not heale; that done, heale it up with your green oymment, or else with this Vnguent.

Take of common-Hony, and of Verdegrece in fine powder, of each so much as will suffice, boyle this till it bee red, and therewith *Taint* the wound till it be whole, keeping evermore the *mouth* of the wound open, least it heale up above before it be well healed at the bottome, neyther let your *Horse* come into any wet, or go forth of the Stable untill he be thoroughly cured. ✠. Thus I have cured many *Quitter-bones*. Another.

Cut the place to the quick, then take Virgin-wax, Pitch of Greece, Galbanum, Mastick, Sagapenum, Olibanum, and Sallet-oyle, of each one ounce, and of Deere or Sheeps-fuet halfe a pound, melt these upon a soft fire, and incorporate them well together, and therewith *Taint* and dresse the same till it be whole. ✠. This is also very good.

CHAP. XVIII.

§. 1. R.

Hippophilus.



That is good to cure the Red-water :

Hippof. This *Red-water* is that which issueth out of old incurable *Flaers*, and *Sores*, which when you shall see it to come forth of any wound, then be you assured that it is very hardly or seldome cured, till that Water be gotten away ; for it is a signe that the wound is poysoned with the said *Red-water* : nor could I ever finde any cure for the *Red-water*, but only one which a *Marishall* of *France* taught me, which is this, viz.

Red water.

Take of the root of the hearb called *Emanuel*, alias *Ropus-Henricus*, or good *King-Henry*, or *All-good* : boyle the Rootes thereof in water, and give it him drench-wile with a horn of bloud warme, and this will take away the *Red-water* and you may then cure the wound with your other Salves or Vnguments.

This I had never caule to make tryall off in *England* ; but I have beene an *Eye witnesse* to two or three cures in this kinde, which the *Marishall* of whom I had the Receipt did very sufficiently perfect. The *French* calleth this Malady, *La En Rouse*.

§. 2. R.

Hippoph. **H**ow doe you make a Restrington charge ?

Hippof. This *Restrington charge* is to be applyed to broken bones, or to bones dislocated or out of joynt, being first set, as also take moist humours from weeping wounds, and so dry up bad humours which do preoccupate the body. I will commend unto you one onely receipt which shall be speciall good.

Restrington charge.

Take of oyle de Bay, four ounces, Orpin, Cantharides, and Euphorbium, of each two ounces, make all these into fine powder and mixe them with your oyle de Bay very well, and therewith Charge the place greived. ✠ This is also very good to Charge the swelling of a Back-sinew spraine.

§. 3. R.

§ 3. R.

Hippoph. **V** What cure have you for a Ring-bone?

Hippof. A *Ring-bone* commeth two waies, to wit, eyther by *Nature*, or by *Accident*; by *Nature*, when as either the *Stallion* or *Mare* have it, from whom the *Colt* is ingendred, whereby he taketh it as hereditary from them, and therefore (as I have formerly admonished) I will dissuade you from breeding upon any *such Horse* or *Mare* that either had or have this malady. It commeth also accidentally by some knock or blow given either by some other *Horse*, or by his *Keeper* or other person, and sometimes by some evil *humour*, which through over-heats do fall down into the *legges*, and maketh its residence upon the top of the *crones*. It beginneth first with a *slimy humour*, which in time groweth to a hard gristle; you shall know it, for that there will be a swelling round about the *crones* of the *hoofe*, adjoyning unto the lower part of the *pasterne*, and the *hayre* will stare, and be bristly, and it will cause the *Horse* to hawk. The cure is: first wash the place, and shave away the *hayre*, then

Take quick or *unslaked Lime*, newly taken from the Kill, which must be well burned, the best burned you may know by its lightnesse, make your *Lime* into fine powder, and lay it upon the place swelled all along of a good thicknesse, and binde upon it a linnen cloth made fast about the *foot*, and so put the *horse* into the water, and let him stand in the water a pretty while, then take him forth, and unbinde the *foot*, and he is infallibly cured, for the burning of the *Lime* doth kill the *Ring-bone*, even unto the very root thereof. + With this receipt I have cured not so few as a hundred *horses* at the least, but when you are thus to dresse your *horse*, let him be brought close to the water whereinto he is to be ridden, that so soon as you have applyed your *Lime* unto the sorance, you may presently put him into the water. Another. First, shave away the *hayre* as before is advised, then scurfe the place.

Take then *Cantharides* halfe an ounce, *Euphorbium*, and oyle de *Bay* of each one ounce, your *Cantharides* and *Euphorbium* must be made into fine powder, and then boyled with your oyle de *Bay*, stirring continually, that it run not over, then with two or three *feathers* lay it boyling-hot upon the sorance good and thick, let him be dressed in the same place where usually he standeth in the Stable, and let him have no litter neer him, but tye up his head so as he may not reach the medicine with his mouth; but when the *hayre* do begin to grow again, give the fire to the sorance, to wit, three or four straight lines right downwards, drawing the swelling quite crosse, and let the edge of the iron be no thicker then the back of an ordinary knife, neither must you burn him any deeper then that the *skin* may look yellow. that done, apply to the place this charge.

Ring-bone.

Take

Excretion
to cure.

Take of Pitch and Rosin, of each like much, let them be molten together, and whilst it is hot, apply it to the place all along, from the one end of the swelling to the other, & before it be cold, clap Flocks upon it, and about three dayes after, lay on more of the said charge, and new Flocks again upon that charge, and so let it remain untill the Flocks and charge fall off of its own accord. + This is also very good. Another. First wash and shave, and scarrifie, as before, then

Take gray-Sope, and Arsnick pulverized, of each the quantity of a Wall-nut, which being very well mixed, spread it upon the sorance so far as the *Ring-bone* goeth, and having thus spread it, apply upon it a few Hurds, and binde a cleane linnen cloth upon it to keep it on, neither let it be removed in four and twenty hours, then take it away, and stir not the *asker* or *scab*, but onely annoint it with fresh Butter, till it doe fall away of it selfe, and so heale it up with some healing salve, whereof I have given you plenty. + This I have tryed, and have found to be very good. This medicine will cure a *bone-Spaven*, *Splint*, *Curb*, or any other *bony excretion*.

§. 4. R.

Hippoph. **H**AVE you any way to recover and make sound a Horse that is rotten?

Hippof. Truly Sir, for any man to promise that, were great precipitation, onely thus far he may wade therein, as to give ease and help to a horse that hath the *rot*, for it is one thing for a Horse to be rotten, and another thing for him to have the *rot*. For a horse to be rotten, is to have his inward parts wasted and consumed, or, at least so rotten, as never possibly to be recovered, to wit, his *Liver*, *Lights*, &c. But for a horse to have the disease called the *rot*, I doe finde the same to be either a formall *droppe*, or else a disease so allied neerly thereunto, as not to be distinguished easily: as we say, a Sheep is rotten, when his *Liver* is become foule and tainted; nevertheless men doe eat the *carkas*, and doe averre it to be good meat, wherefore the Sheep is not rotten, but hath the disease called the *rot*. This malady commeth oft times to horses unhandled, to wit, in their youth, whilst they be yet Colts, which be bred, and do feed in *Fenny-Marsh*, and wet grounds, and sometimes it commeth to them after they have bin backed and ridden, when they have too hard and violent riding, being yet but young, whereby the *bloud* is first enflamed, and after putrified and corrupted, begetting obstructions in the *Liver*, and those do cause putrefaction, and so knots and pustils do engender in the *Liver*, which breedeth either a *Droppe*, a *Feltricke*, or a *rot*. The signes how to know this infirmity, are these: After his journeyes his *hayre* will *stare*, his *legges* swell and burn, and when you shall presse the places swoln with your finger, upon taking your finger away, there will

will remaine a pit or dint, hee will forbear his meat very much, and when he doth eate, it will be without any *stomacke* or *appetite*, he will pant much, lift and beat in the *flanks* many times, he will swell under the *belly*, neither will he cast his *coat* in seasonable time, when other *Horses* that be sound do, and he will be so faint of *body*, as that he will become *lunt*, and utterly to have lost his *mettle*. These and such like be the symptomes of this malady. Now come I to the cure.

Let him first *bleed* well under the *taile*, then

Take of *Mares-milke* two quarts, if the same may be had, if not, the like quantity of the milke of a *red Cow*, then take a lump of *Arement*, then take a young *horse* of or about the age of foure yeares, and of colour blacke, if it may be, if not, then of some other colour, run and chase him about that he may *sweate* much, then with a *spoon*, or with some other such like instrument, rake the *sweate* from his *head*, *necke*, *breast*, *backe*, *sides*, *ribbes*, *buttocks*, *legges*, and in a word, from each part or *member* of the said *horse*, and get off the sweat so much as you can possibly, and so put your *Arement* and your *sweat* into the milke, which all being well mixed, give him this by equall portions three mornings together, till he hath taken it all, and let him drinke none other drinke after it in fixe or seven houres, but immediately after his drinke, let him be led forth into some *pasture* where other *horses* be, the better to cause him to *neesse*, *stale*, *dung*, and *empty himselfe*, for it is very *wholesome* for him so to doe, before he either eate or drinke. Having thus done, set him up warm and well littered, and if the season do serve, give him of the green blades of *Rye*, if not, give him *Barly* steeped in milk three dayes, but renewed every day once. Then after every of these drinks, if you feele him cold in the *pasterne joynts*, or that he *trippeth* or *stumbleth* as you leade him in your *hand*, meddle no further with him, for that he is past cure, otherwise for nine dayes together, after morning and evening give him white water onely, unlesse now and then a sweet *Mash*, and sometimes give him milke with his white water, if the *Horse* be not above nine years old, and so you may cure him: but if he be elder, this may prolong his life, whereby he may do the more service. This I never did experience, but a *Noble Knight*, and a very friend told me, that he hath thus recovered sundry *Horses* which have beene visited with this disease.

Ror.

Chap.

CHAP. XVIII.

§. I. S.

Hippophilus.



What good Salves have you wherewith to heale up sores and wounds?

Hippof. Sir, I have many, according as I have before shewed you, but yet I will give you many more, the greatest number of which I have tryed, and I am able to commend them unto you for very good, and those not Salves onely, but Vnguents, Powders, and Waters, which be most soveraign.

Salve.

Take of Perosen, and of hard Rosin, of each one pound, of Frankincense, Virgin-Wax, or for want thereof new Waxe and Sheeps suet, of each halfe a pound, of old tryed Hogs grease one pound and a quarter, boyle the Gummes and Waxe in white Wine halfe a pint, and then put unto it your Sheeps tallow and Hogs grease, and when all is well molten and incorporated, straine it, and whilst it is yet hot, put in of Venice Turpentine one ounce, and so work all well together, and when it is cold, poure in the liquor from the salve, which put up into a cleane galley pot, or other cleane vessell for your use. ✠ This is a most soveraign Treatise or Salve wherewith to heale any wound (that is not come to an Ulcer) and so dry it up. Another most excellent powder.

Powder.

Take unslaked Lime, the dry dust of Tanners Oken Bark and old shooe soles burned to a cole, of each like much, make these into fine powder, and mixe them well, and keep it in a cleane boxe or glasse for your use. ✠ This powder healeth the buds or knots of the Farcin, after they be broken, and it skinneth them, and if they be first washed with the juyce of Vervine and strong Vineger mingled together, and then this powder being cast upon them, will (I say) heale and skin them. It also healeth and skinneth all other sores. Another:

Oyntment.

Take tryed Hogs grease halfe a pound, Verdigre in fine powder one penny worth, boyle these upon the fire two or three walms, then take it off, and put unto it of Venice Turpentine halfe an ounce, and stirre it well together till it be cold. ✠ This Vnguent will heale any wound or sore in a Horse. Another:

Oyntment.

Take of Roch-Allum a good quantity, and burn it, and as much bay Salt, and burn that also, make both these together into fine powder, then take of common Honey, and of sweet Butter, of each like much as will suffice, incorporate the Allum and Salt with the Honey

Honey and Butter by melting them over a gentle fire, and with a taint or plaister apply it. ✠ And this cureth any foule sore. This I have often tryed. Another:

Take of faire water one pinte, and put into it of green Coperas, and of bay Salt, of each the quantity of a good hassle nut, both made into very fine powder; let these boyle a little upon the fire. With this wash any sore before you do apply your Salves, Vaguenes, or Powders. ✠ This is a right good water. Another:

Water.

Take of common Honey two ounces, Roch-Allum, Verdigrece, and Vineger, of each one ounce, make your Allum and Verdigrece into very fine powder, then take of Sublimate finely powdred, two ounces, boyle all these a walme or two on the fire; this laid on a Spatula plaister-wise once a day, or if the wounds be deep, with a *saint*, cureth both speedily and soundly; but before you dresse him with this Salve, let the Sore be well washed and injected with the water last above mentioned, made of faire water, Coperas, and bay Salt. ✠ This is a most approved cure, and good beyond all peradventure, for it cureth not onely sores and wounds in any part in the *body* of the *Horse*, but in the *foot* which way soever it may happen, and it cleanseth any wound from dead or proud *flesh*. Another:

Salve.

Take the buds or tendrest tops of the leaves of Elder, one handfull, and first shred, and after pound them very well, till you bring them to a perfect Salve, and apply this to the sore, binding a cloth upon it to keep it from falling off. ✠ This will cure any old or new sore whatsoever in any part of the *body*, as *galled backs*, *Spurregals*, *gravelling*, *pricks*, or *accloyed*, the wound being dressed herewith every day once, it will cure any *Fistula* if the juyce thereof be injected to the bottome. With this one thing alone I have done cures which very good *Ferriers* could not cure. Another:

Take common Honey and Verdigrece finely pulverized, of each as much as will suffice, boyle them together till the medicine waxe red, and this will heale up any old or green sore in short space. ✠ This is also very good. Another:

Egyptiacum.

Take the white of a new laid Egge, and Sallet oyle as much as will suffice, and beat them well together, and before you do apply it unto the wound, poure into the wound burnt Butter, and then lay on your medicine with Hurds plaister-wise, and this will cure any green wound. 9. This is very good. And thus much for sores.

Oyntment.

Hippoph. **V**hat is good for a Horse that hath gotten a wrench in his shoulder?

Hippof. If you do finde that the griefe be in the shoulder, and that you do know it to be a wrench, make this charge, and charge the grieved shoulder therewith.

Shoulder
wrench.

Charge.

Take Wheate-meale two pound, and allay it with red Wine in a Pipkin or Postnet, as if you would make thereof a paste, then take of Bolcarmoniack made into fine powder halfe a pound, of ordinary Honey one pound, boyle all these together, and adde thereunto in the boyling, of Pitch halfe a pound, and so keep it continually stirring untill your Pitch be thoroughly molten, but before you take it from the fire, put into it of ordinary Turpentine halfe a pound, of Comin, oyle de Bay, Dialthea, Sanguis Draconis, Bay-berries, Fenugrick, Linseed flowre, of each, two ounces, make all these into fine powder, then take of the oyle of Aspick one ounce, boyle and mixe all these very well together, that done, charge the grieved shoulder all over very well, even down the knees. ✠ This charge is most soveraign for any wrench or straine in the shoulder, knees, or hips; it also cureth Kibes, Scratches, and all such like sorānces, it is also most excellent to comfort the sinewes offended or hurt; it is very good for a back-sinew-spraine, it draweth away all bad humours, and abateth swellings. X I have often made use of this receit, but if it be a shoulder-pight, or joynt-dislocated, then thus he is to be cured, viz.

Shoulders
dislocated.

First cast him and lay him upon that side which is not hurt, then fasten with a cord the foot of the same legge all along a board, and so fasten the foot to some tree or post which must be some two or three paces distant from the horse, and neer to the ground, and let one stand at the middle of the boord with a stick to turn it easily and by degrees in the middle thereof, and whilst that is in doing, let another with a pail of cold water, rub, wash, and bathe the grieved place with his hand or foot, and that very hard, and in so doing, he must take up the member grieved, which he must chafe from the very top to the farther end of the legge, and by thus doing you shall put in the bone which was out, into its right place, and after this is done, you must raise him as gently as may be, and when he is up, let him bloud in the breast-veine on that side the griefe lyeth, putting a Patten-shoe upon the contrary foot, and let his forefeet be tramelled fifteen dayes after at the least, to hinder him from lying down, and charge the grieved shoulder daily with a restraining charge, and look upon the grieved member every two or three dayes, by the space of fiftene dayes; after that you have thus set the same, neither let him be removed out of his place during that time, and after swim him, and apply bathes

bathes unto the *shoulder* made of good hearbs, such as I have prescribed you in the Section of *bashes*, and lastly annoint him with this Vnguent :

Take oyle de Bay, the oyle de Petra, oyle de Spike, and Nervall, of each like much : and thus ordering him, he will be sound and well again. + I have proved this upon fixe *horses*, and cured them all.

Another :

If the *shoulder* be either strained or dislocated, it were uery good to swimme him, then take *bloud* from the *breast veyne* on that side the grieffe lyeth, then tramell his *fore-feet* that he do not lye down, and so let him remaine three weeks, then anoynt the *member* grieved with Sallet oyle onely, and the first time you shall take but of Sallet oyle halfe a pound, which you must rub in against the hayre very hard, both upon the *shoulder* and the *breast*, by the space of halfe an houre, the next day after you shall likewise rub and chafe the *shoulder* and *breast*, by the space of halfe an houre more, without applying any thing unto them, and so continue rubbing and chafing him for the space of eight or ten dayes together, as for the Sallet oyle, you must take four ounces thereof every third day, wherewith to chafe, rub, and anoynt the *shoulder*, and the other two dayes betwixt, you must not rub and chafe it with any oyle at all, and at the end of eight or ten dayes, his *shoulder* will be swelled down to the very *knee*, then take off the oyle, and apply a restrigent charge to the part grieved and swelled, and addeto it of ordinary Turpentine halfe a pound, to cause the *charge* to remaine on the better, and the next day, and all other dayes after instead of this *restringent charge*,

*Shoulders
strained.*

Take Vineger and bathe the *shoulder* therewith upon the said *charge*, and by degrees the *haire* will fall away, and when the swelling is asswaged, lend your *horse* in the beginning to the water, upon a foot pace, and he will be cured; this receit certainly is very good, and not costly; but I did never make tryall thereof, albeit it was highly recommended unto me by a famous French Marisball, who averred that he hath recovered very many *horses* therewith, but for a *horse* that hath gotten a wrench or slip, the onely remedy is to put in a French rowell, and then to blow him, and put on a Patten shoe, and let his Keeper turne the rowell every day once, as well to cause the putrefaction the better to issue forth from growing to the *flesh*, and after twenty dayes you may take it forth at your pleasure. ✠ This is good for a new *straine*.

§ 3. S.

Hippoph. **W**ere it not much better Hipposcerus, that after you have thus rowelled and blown him, and set a Patten-shooc upon the contrary foot, that he were turned forth to grasse, for that the horse keeping himselfe in continuall agitation and motion, as hee feedeth in the pasture, the humour may the better descend, and so issue forth, whereby he may sooner be cured?

Hippof. Sir, I answer negatively to your assertion, for by his being abroad, the winde will take the wound, and cause him to swell, and thereby doe the horse more harmethen you are aware of: secondly I say, if when he is abroad there might happen to fall raine, that the place rowelled might take wet and cold, it might thereby endanger a Gangrene, and therewith endanger the life of your Horse, for the like I my selfe have done; but having rowelled your horse, and that you be to blow him, if you use to take Tobacco, then forbear to blow him your selfe, but let some other who taketh not any, to blow him, for the very scent and steame of Tobacco will cause your Horse to swell both in the shoulder, and all along under his belly, even to the sheath and stones most violently, and the effect thereof I have very often seen. + With rowelling I have cured very many horses, if the straine be newly taken, but if the horse have gotten hurt on his shoulder, that the skin be broken, then first cut away all the dead and bad flesh if there be any, then

Take the white of an Egge, and beat it, and lay it upon a few Hurds plaister-wise, but first wash the wound with a little white Wine made bloud warme, and then apply your plaister to the sorance, and then anoynt the shoulder round about the sorance with Sweet Butter: do this every day once, and it will be whole. ✕ This I have often tryed. Another:

Take your lancet or fleame, and make a little hole in the skin upon the pitch of the shoulder, and blow the place with a quill, that the skin may arise from the flesh, then

Take of stale Vrine two quarts, and boyle it to a moyety, then straine it, and put thereto of sweet Butter, and of tried Hogs grease, of each halfe a pound, then take of Mallowes, Tansy, Vervine, red Nettles, Sothernwood, and of the tender tops of broome, of each halfe a handfull, chop all these together, and boyle them in the Vrine till they be soft, and then first bathe the shoulder with the decoction or Vrine, and after anoynt the shoulder with the hearbs, being first made into an Vnguent, using thus to doe every day once or twice till it be well; but during this cure, the horse must be kept within doores, and in a few dayes he will goe sound againe. ✕ This is very good, for I have often tryed it. Another:

If your horse have any grieve in his shoulder, first put into it a

French

Shoulder
rowelled.

Shoulder
the skin
broken.

French rowell, and blow it, and put a *patten-shoe* upon the contrary foot, then apply this *charge* unto the place: take of Pitch and Rosin, of each one pound, and of Tarre halfe a pinte, melt them upon the fire, and before it be cold, *charge* the *shoulder* therewith, and clap Flaxe upon it, and let the *charge* lye on till it fall away of it selfe, and once a day turn the rowell for fifteen dayes together at least, then take out the rowell, and heale up the wound, (then if the season be fit for it) turne him to grasse with his *patten-shoe* on, and let him runne three or foure moneths, and he will goe upright againe. ✠ This is very good, Another,

First swimme him, (as you may doe well to doe for any grieve in the shoulder or hips) and before you do rowell him, apply unto the grieved *member* this *bathe* and unguent.

Take Pimpernell an arme full, Bay berries, Primrose leaves, Camomil, Crow-foot, Mallowes, Fennell, Rosemary, and fine upland Hay (which was cut about Midsummer) of each like much, and of each a good quantity, put all these into a Leade or Cauldron, and there let it steep in faire water two dayes and two nights, then boile it untill the hearbs be soft, and bathe your *Horse* therewith every day once good and warm, and binde of these hearbs with the Hay to the *shoulder* or place grieved, in what place or joynt soever it be, use this bathe foure dayes, and at the expiration of foure dayes, let him *bloud* in the *breast*, on that side the grieve lyeth, if the grieve be in the *shoulder*, but if in the *knee* or *fetlock joynt*, then let him *bloud* in the pastern veyne, and so likewise if the paine be behinde, and let him *bleed* well, but if you have not skill or knowledge enough to open any of these *veynes*, then pare the foot very close, and open the *roe veyne*, and there let him *bleed* well; after this his foure daies bathing, when he is dry againe, anoynt the grieved *member* with this Vnguent.

Take Petroleum, Nervall, Patch or piece grease, and oyle of Wormes, of each like much, and anoynt him herewith by the space of halfe an houre, and then for halfe an houre after, trot him in your hand in a faire soft ground, then bring him into the Stable, and observe if any of the said oyntment be come forth, or doth stick to his *bayre*, which if it doe, let it be rubbed and chafed in againe; also bathe him morning and evening, and at noon anoynt him, and trot him as before is advised, but at night onely binde or rope on the hearbs, and this is the cure. Use this but foure dayes onely, for feare of making his *joynts* too supple and weake (and if this help not, as I do beleieve it will) then *rowell* him, this I never tryed, but my opinion is that it is a very good receit. Another:

If your *Horse* be *shoulder splat*, then put upon him a paire of *short pasternes* upon his *fore-feet*, then take of Dialecthea one ounce, of Sallet oyle one pinte, of oyle de Bay halfe a pinte, of fresh Butter halfe a pound, melt all these together in a Pipkin, and anoynt the grieved place

*Shoulder
splat.*

place round about (*viz.*) as well all over the *shoulder*, as the *breast*, and betwixt the *fore-legs*, upon and about the *brisket*, and in two or three houres after, all the *shoulder* will be swelled, then with your *fleame* strike the swelling in very many places, that the corruption may issue forth, and continue to anoynt him with the said ointment, and if it gather to a head (as it is likely it will) when it is ripe enough, open it, where you doe finde it to be softest, and then heale it up with your green ointment so often commended unto you, and thus your *horse* will goe sound againe. ✠ This I have often tryed, and let this suffice for this malady.

§ 4. S.

Hippoph. **Y**ou have delivered your selfe very well, but yet Hippocritus (*but yet*) I am to seeke to know and understand when I see a horse doth *hault* or *complaine*, where the *griefe* lyeth, being a thing most needfull for a Gentleman to be very perfect in, but more especially for him that is a Ferrier, who is to cure and set upright the Horse that is lame.

Rules how
to know
where a
horse halteth
either before
or behinde.

Hippof. You speake pure truth Sir, and therefore I will give you such assured rudiments, whereby you shall not at any time faile in the discovery of the least *lameness*, that shall proffer it selfe to your eye, if you will be pleased diligently to observe my documents, you must therefore first understand, that if he do *hault* before, his *griefe* must of necessity be, either in the *shoulder*, or in the *knee*, or in the *shanke*, or in the *pasterne*, or in the *foot*; if it be in the *shoulder*, it must be either towards the *withers*, or in the pitch of the *shoulder*, or in the *elbow*; if in any of these places of the *shoulder*, you may know it, in that he will a little draw his *legge* after him, and not handle it so nimbly and dexterously as he doth the other; if he cast his *legge* more outward then he doth the other, it is a manifest signe that he is lame, and that the *griefe* lyeth in his *shoulder*; and for the better tryall thereof, let your man but turn him short on either hand, and in that *shoulder* where the *lameness* is, you shall perceive him to *complaine*, and to yeeld, for he will either favour that *legge*, or trip in the turning: you may also finde his *lameness* by his standing in the stable, for there he will hold forwards his lame *legge* more then the other, but yet you come not to understand in what part of the *shoulder* the *griefe* lyeth; wherefore take for an infallible rule, that if he doe *complaine* more when a man is upon his *backe*, then otherwise, when he is from his back, then be you confident that the *griefe* lyeth in the *withers*, and gripe him hard, and you shall perceive him to shrink, and perhaps offer to bite if the Horse doe tread thicke and short before, then is the *griefe* upon the pitch of the *shoulder* close to the *breast*, which you may easily finde by setting your thumb hard to the place, and by thrusting him with it as if you would have him to goe back, where-

at

at he will shrink, and put back his *legge*, *foot*, and *body*; if the griefe be in the elbow, you shall discover it by pinching him with your *fore-finger* and *thumb*, good and hard upon that place, at the doing whereof you shall perceive him to shrink and hold up his *legge*, and to offer to bite; and these be all the griefes which doe lye in the *shoulders* of the *Horse*, which not being visible, you shall thus discover them; as touching those griefes which lye lower, they must be either in the *knee*, in the *shin*, in the *pasterne*, or in the *foot*: If it be in the *knee*, you shall finde it by his stiffe going, for he will not bend it so actively as he doth the other; if it be in the *shanke* or *shin-bone*, you may both see and feele the same, it being then a *backe sinew spraine*, *splent*, or some such like sorance or anoyance; so likewise if it be in the bending of the *knee*, then it is a *malender*; which is also most easily descryed; if it be in the *pastern* or *joynt*, then may you know it by his not bending it so well as the other; besides if you put your hand upon the place, you shall finde it to be very hot, and to burn much: first if it be in the *foot*, it must then be either in the *crown*, or in the *sole*; if in the *crown*, it is then probable it came by some straine or wrench, if in the *hee*, then it came by some over-reach; or else by some discale in or about the *Frush*; if in the *sole*, then it came by some pricke, accloy, retoire, cannel nayle, stub, stone, or gravell. And thus have I discovered unto you all the severall sorts which causeth a *Horse* to haule before, and how to know and distinguish the places grieved, together with the occasion of every particular griefe. It followeth that we discusse yet further the meanes how to distinguish an old griefe, from a new taken straine or hurt, which without an exact scrutiny, cannot easily be discovered, for oft times a *horse* hath gotten a straine, for which he is presently turned to grasse, where peradventure he runs the whole Summer, and so by that meanes seemeth to goe upright, till he be heated and strained anew, and then will it appeare again, howbeit upon his first riding it may not appeare: you have therefore three wayes whereby to finde out his lamenesse, in what *joynt*, *limb*, or *member* of the *body* soever it lyeth. 1 The first way is to take him out of the Stable, and to cause him to be turned at the halter end on either hand suddenly and swiftly upon as hard a way as you can pick out; and if he have any ache, wrench, or griefe in his *fore-parts*, it will appeare, for that when he shall turne upon that hand in which the griefe is, you shall perceive him to favour that *legge*, and so likewise run both towards you and from you, especially down a little yeelding hill, and if he have any *aperfection*, he will soon shew it, for that he will favour that *legge* wherein the griefe resideth; but if you be not able to finde out his lamenesse this way. 2 Then your second way must be for you to take his *backe*, and to ride him out a good round trot or pace a full houre, or so long untill such time as you have thoroughly heat him, then set him up, and let him stand quiet two or three houres, and then either take his *backe* againe, or else

When in the knee.

When in the shanke.

When in the pasterne.

Three wayes to finde out lamenesse.

else turne him at the halters end as before, and by thus doing, you may discover the least griefe that may be in him, especially when you thus stir him, if it be done upon stony or hard ground, for then he can neither will or choole, but either to favour the member grievd, or else to halt right downe. 3 A third way we have, and that is, to know whether the griefe doth proceed from a hot or cold cause, for if it proceed from a hot cause, then will the *Horse* halt most, when he is hot, and in the middest of his travell; but if it be of a cold cause, then will he halt least whilst he is hot and most ridden and travelled, and most at his first setting forth, whilst he is cold; and thus much for lameness and halting before.

Now you perceiving your *horse* to halt, and that you be assured that his lameness is not before, then may you be confident it must be behinde, which being so, the griefe must of necessity be either in the foot, or in the nether joynt, in the pasterne, or in the legge, in the hamme, or in the hough, in the stifling place, or joynt, or in the hip. If the griefe be either in the legge, pasterne, or foot, if you doe observe him well, you shall understand it by the very same signes which I have inculcated already in the legges, pasternes, or feet, for that the signes be the very same; if it be in the bending of the hamme, you may then easily know it to be a plaine Sclander. If it be in the hough, then is it either a bone or bloud-Spaven, which is easily enough to be discerned, or else it must come of some blow, wrench, or straine, neither then will the swelling easily appeare, but you shall perceive it either by the stiffness of the joynt, or else you shall finde the place to be hot and burning if the paine shall lye in the stifling place, it is manifestly discovered by his gate, for then you may perceive him in his going, to cast the stifte joynt outward, and you may plainly see the bone on the inside to be bigger then the other, besides, his toe will hardly touch the ground. If it be in the Hip, which is upon the side of the buttock, and if the hurt or wrench be newly taken, you shall easily know it, in that the *Horse* will goe side-long like a Crab, not being able so well to follow with the grievd legge as he can doe with the other. Notwithstanding if it be a hurt taken, long before, you shall perceive the Hip to be false lower then the other, and the flesh to shrink, you may also perceive it the better, as by going up a hill, or upon yeelding ground, by reason he cannot goe with so great ease, as when he goeth upon even or plaine ground. But the better to discover in what part behinde the griefe lyeth, let his Keeper take him out of the Stable in a long raine or collar-halter, and let him runne him in his hand the full length of the rayne, for that in which legge soever the griefe is, you shall perceive him to favour it, but if you finde him to goe upright, without favouring any legge, then let your man take his backe, and ride him out a good trot or hand gallop, till he be warmed, then set him up, and let him stand an houre or two till he be cold, then take him forth againe, and let

let your man trot him in his hand at the end of the Rayne as he did before, and thus you shall perceive him to halt and complaine, and well observing him and his gate or going, you may easily finde the place grieved. And if any lamenesse whether before or behinde, doe proceed from any hot cause, then you shall best know it, for that the more you travell or exercise him, and the warmer he is, the more he will halt. But if his grieve shall proceed from any cold cause, then will he halt most, being cold after he hath been travelled and set up warme.

§. 5. S.

Hippoph. **Y**ou have spoken well of lamenesse in generall termes, but yet would I gladly understand from you somewhat more in particular, as (V. G.) I would know how to distinguish between a pinch in the shoulder, and a wrench in the shoulder, as also betwixt a shoulder splat, and of the shoulder pight, and so of the other members?

Hippof. In answer to this demand, I say that if you be cautelous in observing duely and justly the postures and gestures of your Horse, may very easily come to know in what member, joynt, or limb the grieve lieth, and from whence it proceeds; for you must understand that when a horse is pinched in the shoulder, it must come either by carrying too heavy burthens, or by being put to draw, and be over-laboured too young, his joynts and limbs not being knit, and this you may easily finde, in that the horse will appeare to your eye to be very narrow breasted, and to consume and waste in his flesh from those parts where grieve remaineth, and you may also perceive it, in that the shoulder bone will sticke out further then the other, and thus you may finde it; but if he hath gotten a wrench in the shoulder, it comes commonly by meanes of some slip, or by causing him to make too sudden a stop upon false ground, or by some fall upon yeelding or slippery ground, or by too short or sudden turning him upon false grounds, or upon the planks in a Stable, or by some rash going out of a doore, or other narrow place, or by some stroke given by another horse, you shall know it (like as before I told you) by his not well lifting and handling his legge with that dexterity he doth the other, as also by taking him upon the pitch of the shoulder bone, and as touching a shoulder splat, which also cometh by a slide or slip, especially upon some side or yeelding ground, where one legge doth slide from the other, whereby he teareth the flesh which is in the inside neere the brisket, which causeth a hauke to be underneath the body, which will after be swelled, and the horse will thereupon halt right down, and he will draw his legge after him; but if he be shoulder-pight, this cometh by some brush, straine, or fall, which the Horse receiveth by some leap, ship, stroke, or bruise against some doore, tree, or the like: insomuch that often times the joynt is dislocated, and this will also cause him

Shoulder-splat.

Shoulder-pight.

to hault down right : wherefore your cures for each of these mischiefs and mishaps, must be handled accordingly, and if the paine doe lye in any of the nether joynts, it cometh most commonly by meanes of some wrench, as by putting his foot into some cart roote of rough uneven ground, or by going upon loose stones, and many times by turning him too short in places that may be dangerous for hislimbs, for by such like causes doe occurre lamenesse to a Horse, which when it shall happen, you shall thus know them, and know also in what *joynt* or *member* the griefe hath its abode, and the manner of curing each of these severall griefes, I have already sufficiently shewed you, and therefore now let us passe to other matters.

§ 6.3.

Hippoph. **W**ill you tell me what is good to cure the Scratches?
 Hippof. Of this malady we have sundry sorts and degrees, unto which albeit we doe give severall names, nevertheless they be all in effect but one and the same disease, as Mules, Kibes, Rats tayles, Crepunches, paines, &c. every of which are none other thing but the very *Scratches*, being certaine scabs which ingender betwixt the *heel* and the *pasterne joynt*, and so goeth many times above the *pasterne*, even up to the *hough*, and albeit you may have this sorance sometimes upon all foure *legges*, yet not ordinary, for that it breedeth most commonly in the *hinder legges*, this is a noysome sorance, and comes sometimes through the negligence of the *Groom*, in that he doth not daily anoint the *horse heeles* with store of *elbow grease*, (as we tearme it) especially after journeyes and hard travell; or when he brings his *horse* in from water, and then doth not rub his *legges* and *heel*s dry, for that the sand and durt doth burne and fret his *heel*s, which doe occasion swellings, and such like swellings doe occasion the *Scratches*. It is therefore requisite that the *Groom* doe clip away the long *shag haire* from about the *pasternes* (if he have any) and *fetlocks*: as also from the inside of his *legs*, unto the bending of the *knee*, by meanes whereof he may the better keep the *legges* of his *horse* from this disease; sometimes it also comes from the corruption of the *bloud* after great heats and surfets taken, sometimes againe for that the *horse* hath been bred in *murrish*, *fenny*, and *watery grounds*, sometimes it is ingendered from *melancholy humours* which doe fall down to the *legges*, and sometimes by standing continually upon his owne *dung*, which will through the heat and steame thereof, breed the *Scratches* without other help, and sometimes again, the *Scratches* will fall down into the *heel*s of the *horse*, and there make its way forth after a desperate sicknesse taken by a surfet; and lastly it comes by reason the *grease* of the *horse* had been moulted by over-riding or labour, whereby the *grease* falleth down and resteth in the *pasterne* and *fetlocks*, and so causeth the *Scratches* to be ingendered. It beginneth

neath first with a dry scab, and after it sendeth forth fretting, warrish, and matterative stiffe, which will stinke and be most noy some, and his pasternes and fetlocke ioynts will be full of chaps and chinkes, sometimes all along, sometimes right down, and sometimes overthwart, and the places will swell, and the cracks or chinkes will cause the legs to be very gourd, and to run with much noy some and offensive matter, and the horse will be many times so lame, as not to be well able at first setting forth to goe, but with much trouble, and no lesse paine, and by these very signes you shall know this malady: neither shall you want store of receits wherewith to cure it; the French doe call this disease *grappes*, grapes, and lavars, and *Arasistes*, as also such other like tearmes and epithetons, all which (as before is touched) makes but onely one and the same disease: the first thing which is to be done towards the cure, is to bathe and wash the places all about, and then either to shave or clip away the hayre very close, otherwise you can hardly make a perfect cure thereof; then

Take the spawne of Toads, which in the beginning of March you shall finde in pooles, ponds, ditches, and standing water; and first draining the water from the said spawn, and then distill it, and keep the water in a glasse close stopped to serve you for the whole yeare, and herewith wash and bathe the places every day warm, and in short space it will cure them: this I have often used. Another:

Scratches.

Take Honey and Pepper made into very fine powder, of each as much as will suffice, and boyle them together and anoint the sorance therewith, and they will soon heale and dry up; this I did never try, but a famous Ferrier of France taught it me. Another:

Take Lime and Salt, and make them both into fine powder, which being well mixed, apply it to the places greved good and thick, then take Hurds, and cut them very small, and clap them upon it, and so binde up the place with a linnen cloth, that it doth not remove, and so let it remaine two whole dayes and nights, and this will cause the sorance to purge, and after heale it up very kindly: This I did never try. Another:

Take Verdigre and the fat of Bacon, and pound them to a formall Salve, and so plaisterwise apply it to the sore, and it will heale up the scratches in short time. This is very good. Another:

Take old Bores grease and common Honey, of each as much as will suffice, and worke it to an Vnguent, anoynt the sorance therewith, four or five dayes, and no longer, and it will cure the Scratches.

✠ This is very good. Another:

Take Verdigre in fine powder, Gals, Brimstone, and Bolearmoniack, of each one ounce, make all into fine powder, and mixe them with Bores grease as much as will suffice, and so bring it to an Vnguent, and anoint the sorance therewith, and this will both heale and dry them up. ✠ This I have often tryed. Another:

First cauterize five strakes on either side, and your iron must be

somewhat broad and you must go but only one crosse-wise, and after heale it up as it is usuall in Cures in your Cures of Cauterize this I never did practise. Another.

Take Pepper, Garlick, Cole-wort-leaves, and old Boares-grease, of each so much as will suffice, pound them together to an Vnguent, and herewith anoint the Sorance, and in few daies it will ripen the *Scratches*, and kill the mallice of the disease, and heale it up. X. of this Receipt I have made often use, and it is good; you must not faile alwaies before you dresse any *horse* that hath the *Scratches*, first to wash and bathe the place well with warme water, and then to shaw or clip away the *haire* very close, also every time you are to dresse any *horse* of this malady, wash the place with Chamberly and greene Coppe-ras boyled together, and after dresse him up with your other Salves, Vnguent, &c. Another.

Take Hogs-grease and strong Mustard, and anoint the Sorance therewith, and in short time he will be whole, ✠. This is very good. Another.

Take first of white-Wine-Vineger one pint, and put unto it of the strongest *Tobacco* in the Rowle you can get one ounce, open the leaves, and shread the *Tobacco* small, and boile it untill the Vineger do begin to consume, then take it from the fire, and strain it wringing it hard, then take white-Wine one pint, of Roach *Allome* the quantity of a Walnut, of Bay-salt, and of common Honey, of each one Spoonfull, red Sage, Rue, Hony-suckle-leaves, Yarrow, Plantaine, Rib-wort, Bramble-leaves, of each like much, halfe a handfull in the whole; boile all these in the Wine till one quart be consumed, then straine this water also, and mix them both together, and set it upon the fire till it begin to boile, then take it off, and when it is through cold, put it up into a glasse, and so keep it close stopped, that no ayre come unto it, and when you would use it for the *Scratches*, wash the Sorance, and then put upon it the powder of burnt *Allome*; and this will cure the *Scratches*. ✠. This I have often tryed, and it is singular good. Another.

Take Verdegrease, and make it into fine powder, and then take common hony, and worke them together to an Vnguent, and therewith anoint the sorance, and in short time it will infallibly cure him. ✠. With this Receipt I have cured very many *Horses*. Another.

Take tryed Hogs-grease, and Gun-powder, of each so much as will suffice, first beat your Gun-powder to very fine powder, and incorporate them very well together, and anoint the places greived once a day therewith, and it will soone cure the *Scratches*. ✠. This is a speciall good receipt. Another.

Take Trayne oyle, white lead, made into very fine powder, and the Jelly which you shall find upon the ground, which many do report to be the falling of a Star in the night where it shooteth, of each like

like much, incorporate these well together, and anoynt the sore twice every day therewith, but if you cannot get of this Jelly then add to the former ingredients a little Arsenick pulverised, and in ten or twelve daies this will heale him. X. This also is very good. Another.

Take the tender tops of Elder buds, and the berries of the bramble while they be red, and before they be rip, of each one handfull, boil them in Wort two quarts, and put unto it of Allome the quantity of an Egge, and therewith wash and bathe the Sorance good and hot twice every day, and this water will cure him, X. This is also very good. Another.

Take of Hemlocke a good quantity, shread it very small, then take of Creame one quart, and boyle it with the Hemlock till the Creame do turne into an oyle, which done take it from the fire, and straine it into a cleane galley pot, and keepe it for your use: with this anoint the Sorance and it will soone heale it; of this I never had tryall. Another.

Take Brimstone, and make it into fine powder, and mix with it of sweet Butter, so much as will suffice, to bring it to an Vnguent, which will be of the colour of Gold, herewith anoint the sores and it will cure them. This I never tryed. Another.

Take unslaked Lime, Salt, and Soot, of each like much, all made into very fine powder: boyle this in the strongest white Wine Vineger you can get so much as will suffice, till it become as thicke as a Pultis: then soften it with tryed Hogs-grease, and so worke it to an Vnguent, and herewith anoint the places greived till they be perfectly cured. +. This is very good; but to prevent all sorts of Scratches, Kibes, Rat-tayles, &c. take up the *Thigh-veynes*, and your *Horse* shall never have any of these Maladies, or if he have them, yet by so doing, they will of themselves be cured. +. This I have oft experienced.

§ 7. S.

Hippoph. **H**ow doe you cure a Sit-fast?

Hippof. This Malady the *French* do call *Mal de la Corn*; it is an hard knob which hath beene formerly a *Saddle-gall*, but by reason that the Owner of the *Horse* was unwilling to spare his worke till it was fully cured; it is converted into a *Sit-fast*, which is oftentimes troublesome to the *Horse*, by reason it is growne to a dry knob so hard as a horne. The cure is.

Take the greene outward leaves of a Cabbage, and stamp them with old Boares-grease, or tryed Hogs-grease, and worke them to an Oyntment; and then mount his *Back*, and then let the Saddle, to the end that the Oyntment may the better enter, or sinke into his *Backe*, and in a few daies it will Cure him. ✠ This is a very good cure.

Sit-fast.

§. 8. S.

§. 8. 5.

Hippoph. **T**Here be yet certaine Scabbes which doe grow upon Horse-heeles, which Ferriers doe deny to be the Scratches, but they will have it to bee a disease wholly different. How doe you cure them?

Hippof. Sir, men may say what they shall please, but I doe assure you, these are also plaine *Scratches*. But yet I will give a few Receipts for them.

Scabs and
Scratches.

Take of Salet-oyle three ounces, Red-wax-gummed one ounce, common Hony two ounces, mixe and melt all these together, and make them into an Vuguent, with which you must oft anoint the Sores, and this will cure them. ✠. I have often used it. Another.

Take ordinary Turpentine two ounces, new Wax, oyle de Bay, Quick-Brimstone, of each three ounces, common Hony one ounce, Allome and Zacacon, of each halfe an ounce, mixe, melt, and incorporate all these well together, and every evening anoint the places grieved therewith, having first cleansed the Sorances, as before is taught you. This I did never try, but I hold it to be very good. Another.

Take the strongest white-Wine-Vineger, Mustard, and Soote, of each so much as will suffice, and mix them well, then adde to them the yolkes of two Egges, and of Hogs-grease one ounce, Rape-oyle, and new Wax, of each two ounces, quick-Brimstone in fine powder halfe an ounce, melt all these, and make it into an Vuguent, and therewith, anoint the grieved Sorances. ✠. This I have often tryed, and I know it to be very good.

§ 9. 5.

Hippoph. **VV**hat is good for a Horse that can neither Stale or Dunge?

Hippof. This accident oftentimes hapneth to a Horse that is suddenly travelled; being newly taken from Grass, or that hath beene long time kept and pampered in the Stable without any exercise at all, for as those who be too hard Riders do soone surfet their Horses, so likewise do these terribly wrong their Horses who be too indulgent, and tender of them, and therefore the golden meane is evermore the best. The signes to know this Malady is plaine, for that his paine will bee so great as that it will cause him oft to lye downe and tumble, as if he had the Bots. I will give you one onely Receipt which a famous French Marishall gave me, with which I cured one Horse, for that I had never occasion to practise it upon any since, but I do hold it to be most soveraigne in a case of this nature.

Take

Take the root of *Male-Brake* or *Fearne*, and put a piece thereof upon his *tongue*, and it will cause him both to *stale* and *dung*, and so he will be cured. The male of *Fearne* is to be knowne by the root, from the female, for if you take a *Fearne-root*, and cut it in two pieces, you shall see the perfect figure of an *Eagle*, and thereby you may know it to be the *male*, which is for your turne. And the *female* root will beare other effigies different from the *male*, which wanteth its vertue to perfect this cure. ✠ This (I say) I have once tryed.

Stale or dung.

§ 10. S.

Hippoph. **V** *Has is to be done to a Horse that fallth sicke in his journey or travell.*

Hippof. This also hapneth as the former doth, but yet oftner and sooner, especially if he be very fat and purfive, and wanting *breath*, as also if he be travelled being fat and heavy, the *Sunne* shining and scorching much, for such a *horse* is in danger either to tire, or to fall desperately sicke, which may also endanger his life, as I have frequently knowne. The cure must be.

Take *Muskadine* or sweet *Sacke* one pinte, *Aqua vita* a quarter of a pinte, of *London Treacle* two ounces, and of the best *Sallet oyle* a quarter of a pinte: warme all these upon the fire, and brew it well, and give him one hornfull thereof, then take his *tongue* in your hand, and put down his *throat* a new laid *EGGE*, breaking it with your fingers as you put it forth of your hand; then give him a second home full, and then another *EGGE*, and after all the residue of the drinke, and so after that a third *EGGE*, then let him *blow* in the *palat*, and rub it well with white *Salt*, then let him upon the *Trench*, cloath, stop, and litter him againe warme, and let him fast an hour or two after it, and then feed him by degrees, both with *Hay* and *Oates*, giving him either a sweet *Mash* or white water, and he will doe well againe. This drinke refresheth all the *spirits*, being over-laid through heate and labour, and causeth a good appetite to meat. ✠ With this drinke I have cured many sicke *horses*, as well of mine own, as of my friends, which have faine away very desperately sick upon the way in travell; but if I do finde that his *bloud* is inflamed, as many times it will be, I then use to open a *veyne* in the neck.

Sicke in travell.

§ 11. S.

§. 11. S.

Hippoph. **B**ut what is to be given to a Horse that falleth suddenly sick?

Hippof. First let him blood in both *breſt veines*, or if you have not skill ſufficient to open theſe *veynes*, then let him blood in both ſides the *necke*, and let him *bleed* well nigh two quarts, then give him this comfortable drink.

Sudden
ſickeſſe.

Take of ſweet Sacke one quart, and burn it with Graines, Cloves, and Cinamon, of each like much, being all beaten groſſe, put to it of Sugar three ounces, and when it is burnt, adde unto it of Sallet oyle halfe a pinte, and of *London Treacle* two ounces, warm all theſe, and brew them well together, and ſo give it to your *horſe* blood warme, then ride him gently untill he do begin to ſweate, and ſo ſet him up warm clothed and littered, but be ſure to keep his *head* and *heart* warme, neither muſt you ſtuffe and cloth him too hot; for this drink will cauſe him to ſweate ſufficiently of it ſelfe, yet litter him well, keeping the Stable cloſe, and ſo let him faſt ſixe hours after, againſt which time, let him be rubbed very dry, and give him to eate ſweet Wheat ſtraw, and after give him either a ſweet Maſh or white water, and boile therein of Mallowes and Water-creſſes, of each one handfull, of Fennell-ſeed, and of Perſley-leed, of each one ounce, if he will drink the ſame. After that morning and evening (your *horſe* being faſting) ride him a mile or two, to the end he may take the ayre, which is very wholeſome for him, if the weather be temperate, and let his meat be ſweet ſtraw, old clean dry Oats, and ſome Wheat, and Peaſe mixed therewith: give him a little at once, and often, untill you doe perceive his *ſtomacke* to come well unto him, and let him be daily well rubbed, and warm clothed, to provoke him to ſweat, and let him be alſo well littered, and his drink either ſweet Maſhes, or white water: and by this manner of keeping and ordering of him, in ſhort time he will recover his priſtine ſanity. ✠ This I have often tryed, and it is very good.

§ 12. S.

Hippoph. **V**Vhat cure have you for a Selender?

Hippof. This diſeaſe is the very ſame with the *Malander*, but the ſole difference is, in that the *malander* breedeth upon the bending of the *knee*, or the *legge* before, and the *Selender* engendreth of the bending of the *hough* in the *legge* behinde: but it cometh juſt as doth the *Malander*, and the cure is the very ſame with it: but yet I will give you one good receit which will cure both: firſt, waſh and ſhawe away the *hayre*, and rub the ſorance with a wiſpe or *hayre* cloth till it be raw: then take the ſhreds of white leather untanned, which *Glovers* doe make, and boyle them in Vineger till they be ſoft, and binde of this hot to the place, but if you do not finde that

Selender.

by

by once or twice dressing, taketh not away the scurfe or scab, renew it daily untill it doth, for by this meanes the roots of the bristly haire which groweth in and about the sorance, is the onely thing that feedeth the *Malander*, wherefore the roots of the *hayre* being taken off (which this medicine will doe) the sorance will soon be cured; and to heale up the rawnesse thereof,

Take fresh or sweet Butter, bay Salt, and Frankincense, both made into fine powder, of each as much as will suffice, and boyle them all together on the fire, and with a ragge upon a sticke apply this medicine to the place scalding hot two mornings together, and after heale it up, and cause the *hayre* to come againe, being daily anointed with Mallowes and sweet Butter made into an Vnguent. ✠ This is a very good cure.

§. 13. S.

Hippoph. **W**hat is to be given to a Horse sicke, surfettcd, and his grease molten?

Hippof. The onely way is first to take *blond* from him, if there be just cause, and after to scowre his guts with this purge.

Sick or
surfettcd.

Take Cassia one ounce, Filonio-perfio, or Perfico, and Tri-fora magna, of each halfe an ounce, sirrop of Violets two ounces, dissolve these in mel Rosarum four ounces, and give it him with a horne in a morning fasting, and after either ride him gently, or else walk him up and down an houre or better, and for an houre after at the least let him stand upon the *Trench*, then give him a sweet Mash, which when he hath dispatched, give him old dry Oates cleane and well sifted, and after sweet Hay, neither let him have any cold water in eight dayes after, nor after that time, but with exercise. ✠ And this is a speciall good cure.

§. 14. S.

Hippoph. **N**ow let us come to the finewes, what say you to a finew spraine?

Hippof. I have already handled this point sufficiently in lib. 2. cap. 4. § 9. A. for an Attaint upper, neverthelesse I will give you more receits for a *finew spraine*, albeit it be the same malady: the first shall be for a *finew sprung*, or when the *finew* is broken, and severed from the *flesh*, as many times it falleth out, then

Take Tartar, and the lees of Claret or red Wine, of each three ounces, Wheate Bran one handfull, boyle these with the juyce of Smalledge, two handfuls or better, and when you take it from the fire, put into it of Turpentine one ounce, binde this to the *finew* grieved, so hot as he may well suffer it, and using this medicine foure or five dayes, he will be found againe. ✠ This is very good: Another,

Sinew
(prung.

T t

ther,

ther, if the *sinew* or *artery* be broken with Corasives, or other accident, to cause it to soder or joyne againe.

Take the leaves and roots of *Solomons seate*, and of great Cumfrey, of each like much, pound them small, and infuse it in white Wine foure and twenty houres, bathe the sorance herewith warme (you having first boyled it) and after you have bathed the place well, binde the hearbs and roots to the place grieved, dressing him every day once, untill he be perfectly consolidate. And if the *flesh* be still broken, when you do finde the *sinew* to be knit, strew thereon the powder of Lime and Honey, which will heale and skin it in short time. ✠ This is good, for I have often tryed it. Another for a *sinew* grieved.

Sinew grieved.

If the *sinew* be so farre grieved, whereby to cause the *horse* to complaine, and to halt,

Take then of Mallowes a good quantity, and boyle them in faire water, untill they shall become tender, then draine the water from the hearbs, and so stamp them to mash, and apply them to the *member* grieved hot over night, and the next morning he will be upright againe, but then he must haue eight or ten daies rest at the least after. But if it be a *sinew spraine*, then clip away the hayre close, or shave it, then

Take of the oyle of Sulphur, and of the oyle of Turpentine, of each one ounce, take first the one halfe thereof being well mixed, and chafe and rub it into the *sinew* well, and so let him be tyed up to the Rack, that he may not come unto it with his mouth, for that it will greatly perplexe him for four or five hours after his dressing, and the next day anoint him, as you did the day before, & he will be cured, but the place will be raw, and therefore heale him up with sweet Butter, or Hogs grease, and when the place healeth, the skin will peelee, and yet the *hayre* will come again, but he must either runne at grasse, or else be kept in the Stable without any exercise at all by the space of a moneth at least. If the *sinew* be cut, then

Sinew cut.

Take new Waxe, and Gumme-Arabick, of each two ounces, of the marrow of an Oxe or Cow, four ounces, of the oyle of Roses three ounces, melt and incorporate all these on the fire, and so keep it for your use, and when you are to use it, warme it, and so apply it either unguent wise, or taint wise, or plaister wise, according as you shall see cause, and it will cure any sorance of this nature. ✠ This I have often tryed. Another.

If your *Horse* have a *sinew sprained* by an over-reach, stroke, or otherwise weakened, the better to strengthen the same,

Sinew sprain

Take tryed Hogs grease, Horse grease, May or fresh Butter, Sallet oyle, of each sixe ounces: take also of the oyntment called Agrippa, two drams, or new Waxe, two ounces and a halfe, and of Camphier a third part to all the rest, melt them all together upon the fire, and so work it to an unguent, and good and warme, anoint the swelled or grieved part therewith morning and evening, and what remaineth

of

of this medicine, let it be reserved in a galley pot for other times, for it will keep a whole yeare. ✠ This is very good. Another, if it be a *sinew spraine* onely, then

Take Goats, Kids, or Deeres suet, and Rosin, of each one pound, Fig dust halfe a pound, Verdigre in fine powder, halfe a pound, melt and mixe all these well, and therewith anoint the *sinew* grieved every day, and chafe it into the *sinew* by holding a hot bar of iron neer it. This will both comfort and strengthen the *sinew*, but I did never make tryall thereof.

§. 15. S.

Hippoph. **B***ut* Hippoferus, is it needfull that by applying your *Vn-
guents*, you doe evermore worke them in with a hot bar of
iron?

Hippof. Truly Sir, those that are for Straines, Aches, Mainges, Farcins, and such like maladies and sorances, the further they doe sinke into the *skinne* and *flesh*, the sooner and better will the cure be performed, and therefore albeit I do not alwaies put you in minde of the hot bar of iron in every of my *receits*, yet it is needfull to be used. But to proceed with another receipt for a *sinew spraine*.

Take ordinary Sope, and Aqua vitæ, of each as much as will suffice, boyle them, and in the boyling, keep it by continuall stirring, then take it off, and (so hot as he can well suffer it) bathe and chafe in the oyntment, and he will be found again. This was commended unto me for most soveraigne, but I never made tryall thereof. Another for a *straine* taken in travell.

*Sinew
sprain.*

Take so much of the best gray Sope as will serve to anoint the *sinew* strained, but before you do anoint him, having caused his legge to be cleansed from dirt, sand, or gravell, and made dry again, anoint him therewith, and then swathe the leg with a thumband of Hay, and so let him stand all night, and the next morning he will be found again, so that you may securely travell him againe, without feare. ✠ This I have often used, and it is very good. Another if it be a *straine* newly taken.

Take then of the strongest white Wine Vineger you can get, one pint, and May or fresh Butter halfe an ounce, then put to it of Wheat bran as much as will suffice, which by boyling will bring it to a Poul-
tisse, and apply it so hot as he can suffer it; doe this morning and evening, untill the swelling be asswaged. ✠ This is very good. Another, but if it be an old taken *straine*, then

*Straine
newly taken.*

Take Mallowes and Chickweed, of each like much, boyle them either in the grounds of Ale or Beere, or else in old Chamberlye, and apply it to the place. ✠ This is a speciall good cure. Another for an old *straine* which is thought to be incurable, insomuch as the *sinew* being swelled, is become very hard and knotty.

St a ne old.

Take Patch-grease, *alias* Peere or Peece-grease, as much as will suffice, melt it upon the fire, and anoint the *spraine* therewith very hot, and chafe and heat it very well, then rope the place as before is shewed you, but before you rope him up, wrap a rowler of linnen upon the place, and do thus daily, and it will dissolve the hardnesse, and make him sound again. ✠ This is most excellent. Another for a *spraine* of the same nature.

Take Nervall, Bolearmoniack, Bores grease, black Sope, of each like much, melt them together, but first pulverize your Bolearmoniack, and anoint the sorance herewith, chafing and heating in very well; continue thus to do twice a day till it be well. + This is also very soveraign.

§ 16. S.

Hippoph. **VV** *What is good for a Horse that hath a stinking Breath?*
 Hippof. This commeth by means of corrupted and infected *lungs*, the signs how to know it is by the smell onely, the cure is,

Stinking
breath.

Take Cinamon, Cloves, Galingall, Comine and Coriander seeds, of each three ounces, Fenugrick eight ounces, make all these into fine powder, and searce and mixe them well with Wheat flowre two pound, and put thereto so much white Wine as will bring it to a stiffe paste, and make a cake thereof and bake it in an Oven till it be as dry and as hard as *bisket*, and when it is cold, beat it to fine powder, and give him every morning an houre at least before his water, of this powder four spoonfuls in white Wine or strong Ale, of each one pinte. This will take away all the corrupt and evill favours of his breath, for this powder healeth all his inward parts that be putrified, from whence his bad breath taketh its origen. ✠ This is very good and approved, and a better remedy you shall finde none.

§ 17. S.

Hippoph. **VV** *What is the best way to cure or take off a Splent?*
 Hippof. This is to be done many waies, but because we are come to treat of this cure, I hold it not amisse to make you understand what a *splent* is, by what meanes it commeth, how to know it, and which way to cure the same, and to take it cleane away. A *splent* is in the beginning, a very *gristle*, howbeit if it be long let alone, it will come to be a hard *bone* or *excrecion*, and then it will not be so easily cured. It commeth to a *Horse* by meanes of too hard travell and sore riding, whilst he is very yong, or by bearing in his youth too heavy burthens, by both which meanes the grease being molten, falleth down into his *legges*, and so breedeth this sorance, you shall have it bigger or lesser, according as the cause of its coming

ming was; it taketh its residence for the most part upon the inside of the *shanke* about the middle thereof, but sometimes again higher even adjoyning to the *knee*, which if it be there, then it is more difficile to cure. It will many times cause the *Horse* to *haulc*, but howsoever it will make him oft to *stumble*, and to *trip*, and many times to *fall* in his travell. Sometimes it commeth to a *horse* hereditarily, like as doth the *spaven*, and other sorances and maladies: as if either the *Stalion* or *Mare* be visited therewith, as I have formerly intimated. The signes how to know it are most facile, *viz.* either by the *sight* or *feeling*, for that you may both *see* and *feele* its swelling. Now to the cure, for which I shall give you very many receits.

Splent.

First wash the place with warme water, and shave away the *hayre*, then with your *incision knife* slit a hole cleane through the *skin*, more then the length of a Barly corne, and then convey into the said hole so much *Arsenike* as the fourth part of a hasle Nut, which must be bound on with a boulder and rowler of linnen, and made fast with a needle and threed, and so let remaine untouched three whole daies and nights, in which time the *Arsenike* will eat and corrode cleane away the *splent*, then to kill the fire, anoint the place (having first taken off the rowler and boulder, and washed cleane the sorance) with sweet or fresh Butter molten, eight or ten dayes after, and it will be whole. ✠ With this I have done very many cures of this kinde.

Another:

First, anoynt the place with ordinary soft washing Sope, then tye a red woollen cloth about the *legge*, just upon the *splent*, that done, heat a Brick glowing hot, and lay it upon the cloth against the place where the *splent* is, and hold it so close unto it a pretty space, then so soone as you doe take that away, have another as hot in a readinesse, and clap that too also, doing as before, and so a third, or so many as shall be needfull, till you doe finde that the *splent* is dissolved and taken away, which commonly will be in applying two or three hot Bricks. ✠ With this I have taken off very many *splents*. Another:

First wash and shave away the *hayre*, then *knock*, *rubbe*, and *pricke* it with your *blond staffe* and *fleame*, and after you have so done, rub and knock it again, then

Take Vervine and Salt, of each one handfull, pound them together to an Vnguent, and apply it to the place, and binde it up with a rowler stitched on fast with a needle and threed, and so let it remaine foure and twenty houres, and then unbinde it, and it is cured without any more to doe. ✠ This is very good. Another:

Wash and shave as before, and rub and knock as before also, then with your incision knife lay open the place a little, then knocke and rubbe againe with a little Salt, then apply unto it this oyntment which the *French* do tearme a *Retoyre*.

Take of oyle de Bay foure ounces, Cantharides, Euforbium, and Orpin,

Orpin, of each one ounce, all these being made into fine power, let them be well incorporate into the said oyle, and wrought to an Unguent, lay of this to the splent, and bind it up with a Bowlster and Rowler, and sew it up fast, and let him stand so by the space of three houres upon the Trench, so tyed up as that he bite not off the rowler and Medicine: at three houres end, unrowle the place, and put unto it againe the said Retore or Oyntment, being made warme, and let the Horse stand trameled foure dayes, and at foure daies end send him to the water a *foote pace*, where every day he must be ridden up and downe, to the *belly*: If you doe love the *horse*, and have a desire to have him perfectly cured, let him not bee ridden more then a *foote pace* to the water in a *moneth* after, for indangering the growing of it againe, for nothing can bee more soveraigne for him then rest. 4. This Retore is a speciall good thing for this Malady, and I have often used it, and it did never faile me. I had this in France of a famous Marishall who cured many *horses* therewith in my presence. Another.

After you have washed and shaven, knocked, rubbed, and laid it open, as before is taught you, take a head of Garlicke, picked and pilled, three or foure drops of the best white Wine Vineger, a penny weight of greene Coppras, all well beaten together, apply it to the *splent*, and then bind and stich it up, and let it lye on foure and twenty houres, then open it, and if the *splent* be not taken quite away, make more of the same Medicine, and administer it againe, binding it up as before, and after other foure and twenty houres take of the medicine, and then you shall need do nothing more unto him, but only what you are prescribed in the precedent cure. This I did never try. Another. First burne away the *haire* with a hot *syle*, then shave it close with your Rator, that done have in a readinesse a peece of Leather, the breadth of the Sorance, and bind it hard upon it, and let it so remaine by the space of an houre, then take him off, and leade to the water, without doing any more unto him, and hee is cured. This cure I never tryed. Another.

Take Mustard seed, and beat it, and let it steepe a little in fayre water, and after make a Plaister thereof, and lay it to the place, and three dayes after take it away, but have a care your *horse* come not unto it with his teeth, the *hayre* also being shaven away before you do apply your Plaister, and this will cure him. This also I never proved. Another. First wash and shave away the *hayre*, then take of the tender tops of Wormewood, Smalage, Pellitory, and of Brauca-vrsina, of each like much, and beat them together with old Boresgrease, so much as will suffice, and apply it to the place: neither did I try this. Another. First wash and shave as before, and knocke, beat, and rub the *splent* three or foure times, then take marsh mallow rootes, boyled with the *skin* on, and laid to the place, and it will take away the *Splent*: This I never made use of, but a very good

Ferrier

Ferrier taught it mee, who avowed it to bee right good. Another.

Take Mustard-seede, Mallow rootes, and Oxe dung, all stamped and boyled together, and plaister-wise apply it to the place three or foure times. This I never used. Another.

Take Auripigmentum made into fine powder, and lay it upon the *Splent*, and it will take it off; but beware that this powder doe touch neither *veine* nor *sinew*, for it is a very coroding thing, &c. Another.

Take two heads of Garlick and pill them, and cut them small, but do neither stamp or bruise them: then take of Salt the like quantity, and mix them with your Garlicke, and divide them into two equall parts, & so put them into two fine linen cloutes, and bind them upon the ends of two sticks, of a foote in length a peece of the fashion of two short wooden *foyles* but nothing so long, being not above twelve inches a peece. Take then your bloud sticke, and rub, knock, and beat, the *Splent* therewith very well to soften it, then pricke it through the *skin* with your *bloud staffe* and *Fleame*; then take of the oyle of Nuts one pint, and put it into a small Pipkin, and set it upon the fire in a Chafingdish with coles, and make it boyling hot, and when it is ready to boyle, put into it your short sticks or foyles which hath the Garlicke and Salt fastned unto them, and first with the one *foyle*, and then with the other (I meane by turnes) apply them hot unto the *Splent*, and between whiles, rub and stroke the *Splent* downwards, with your thumbe, whereby to bring forth the *bloud*, till having with the *foyles* very well mollesied the said *Splent*, you may the more easily crush forth the *bloud* whereof the *Splent* is ingendred, and formed; it being indeede compact of bad and corrupt *bloud*: and thus is the *Splent* cured, only you must remember to anoint the place two or three times after with sweet or fresh Butter, ✠. This of all the cures I have is the best, for this Malady, howbeit it may seeme intricate; I gate it of a *French Rider* to a *Noble Knight in England*, and I have herewith taken off more then one hundred *Splents*, I have used this more then thirty yeares since. Another.

Take up the contrary *Legge*, and beat the *Splent* with your *bloud-staffe* till it do begin to be soft, then with your *Fleame* prick it in sundry places that the *bloud* may issue forth. Take then the greatest red Onion, and cut off the top, and picke out the core, and put into it so much of the powder of *Verdegrease* as the end of your *thumbe*, then put on the top again, and wrap it up in a wet brown paper, and so rost it in the hot embers, as you do a *Warden*, till it be as soft as pap, then take it out of the *Embers*, and put away the paper and all that is burnt from about it, and stamp it, and being yet very hot apply it unto the *Splent*, and lay a Bowlster upon it, and then swathe it up with a linnen Rowler, stitching it fast, and so let it remaine five or sixe dayes, and then open it, and after anoint the place every day once, with sweete Butter

Butter till it be whole. ✠ This is a very good cure. Another.

Take a great Onyon, and pick out the core, and put into it of the powder of *unslaked Lime*, and of the powder of *Verdigrease*, of each as much as will suffice, but so much as will fill it up, then rost it, as before is shewed you, and stamp it in a mortar well, then slit the *skinne* a little, that the medicine may come unto it, to eat away the *splent*, and shave not away the *hayre*, but lay on the medicine and boulster, and bind it up fast, and so let it remaine on three dayes, without stirring it, then unbind it and wash it cleane, and anoint it every day with sweet Butter, till it be whole. ✠ This is very good. Another.

Take an Elecampane root, and make it cleane, and wrap it up in a brown paper, and rost it in the *embers* as you did the *Onions*, and being soft like pap, apply it to the *splent*, you having first rubbed, knocked, and prickt it as before is taught you, the *hayre* also being washed and shaven off, it must be laid on so hot as he is able to suffer it, and let it lye on two dayes and two nights, then take off that, and lay on a second, and after a third, till the *splent* be quite consumed, and then anoynt the place with fresh butter onely every day till it be whole.

✠ This is speciall good. Another.

Take of the oyle of Exeter, and taking every day once or twice a little thereof upon the brawn of your thumbe, rub and anoint the place therewith, and thus doing, it will take it quite away, but this will aske long time to do. ✠ This I have tryed. Thus have I given you very many *receits* for this malady, most of which I know to be good from my own experience: the residue which I never tryed, were cryed up unto me by very skilfull *Ferriers* and *Marishals*, for very good. The *French* do call this malady *Surots*, and *Epineles*, or *Espinuls*.

§. 18. S.

Hippoph. **VV**hat helpe have you for *stumbling*?

Hippof. This inconvenience commeth many wayes, sometimes it commeth *naturally*, and sometimes *accidentally*, it commeth *naturally* by reason the *sinewes* of the *fore-legs* are somewhat straight, so that the *horse* is not able to handle his *legges* with that dexterity and agility he should, and the onely remedy to cure him of this defect is, to cut him of the Cords (as we terme it) *viz.* by cutting a slit upon the very top of his *nose*, and with your *cornet* to take up the two great *sinewes* which you shall there finde, and so cut them in sunder, and after to heale it up againe with some healing Salve, and this will doe him no harme, but good, for by this doing, it will give him the use of his *legges* so perfectly, as that he will seldom or never after *trip* any more, and this can every ordinary Smith doe. ✠ And my counsell is, that when at any time you shall

Stumbling.

shall either breed or buy a yong *horse*, before, or presently after you shall *backe* him, let him be thus cut of the *cords*, and you will finde great profit thereby. The second cause that maketh a *horse* to *stumble*, is *accidentall*, and this commeth either by meanes of the putting forth of a *splent*, or a *ridge bone*, or about *wind gals*, or by some detriment taken in the *foot*, as by being hot, foundred, prickd, stubd, graveld, or the like, or by some *sinew spraine*, or some hurt or wrench in the *shoulder*, or by some pinch in the *withers*; and it commeth also by over-riding, and then negligently set up, which causeth him to goe *stiffe*, and then the cure must be done with *bathes* and *unguents*, whereby to stretch, supple, mollifie, and to comfort the *stiffe members*, for remedy and ease whereof, I have given you very many good *receits* before prescribed you, as well of *bathes* as of *unguents*. But yet I will give you one more which I have often made use of, and have done much good therewith for *stiffe legges*, viz.

Take of Hogs grease one pound, of fresh Butter, Altheæ, and of oyle de Bay, of each halfe a pound, mixe and incorporate all these well together, and therewith anoynt, rub, and chafe the *legges* and *sinewes* of the *horse*, every third day three times a day, and let his shooes be made wide enough, especially at the *heelles*, and let him be pared thin; the *sinewes* being well suppled, it is needfull he be also cut of the *cords*, which will prevent his *stumbling* the better. *Stumbling* commeth also by meanes of carrying heavy *burthens*, and when the *rider* is a man of an extraordinary weight, especially if the *Horse* be young. ✠ This is a very good cure.

Stiffe legges

§. 19. S.

Hippoph. **V** *What is to be given to a Horse that cannot Stale or Pisse?*

Hippof. This infirmity commeth either of the *collicke*, or by meanes of too much hard riding: the cure is,

Take Grummell seed, Saxafrage-seed, and the roots, of each halfe an ounce, make them into fine powder, boyle them a walme or two in white Wine one quart, and give it him warme. ✠ This is very good. Another.

Stale or pisse.

Take the tops of green Broom, and burne a good quantity of them, so as you may have so many of the *ashes* as will come to be a pretty handfull, searce them, and put them into white Wine a pint, and after it hath infused an houre, give him the Wine, but not the *ashes*. ✠ This is very good. Another.

Take black buds of the Ashen tree, and burn them, then take the *ashes* cleansed, and as before is shewed you of the Broome *ashes*, and administer it to the *Horse* just as you did the other. ✠ This is a most approved cure.

Vv

§ 20. S.

§ 20. S.

Hippoph. **VV** *What good cure have you for the Stavers?*Of melan-
choly.Corrupt
blood.

Hippof. This difeafe is *secundum vulgus*, called the *Staggers*, but the true name thereof is the *Stavers*, it is a dizzineffe in the *head*, neerly allyed unto the *frenzy* when it feazeth the *braine*. It is ingendred fometimes of corrupt *blood*, and heavy and bad *humours*, which do intoxicate and opprefle the *braine*. It is a difeafe incident to almoft every *horfe*, yea and that moft dangerous if it be not foone efpied. Sometimes it commeth by feeding and grazing, at what time the *Horfe* is hard ridden, that he be hot and sweateth, for by his feeding and holding down his head fo low as to graze upon the ground, the *peccant humours* doe fall down to the *head*, and there fettle, and in fhort time feazeth the *braine*, which bringeth this mortall difeafe. Sometimes it commeth by what was occafioned by hard and over-violent riding, whereby the whole *body* became diftempered, and the *blood* inflamed and putrified: and fometimes it commeth by eating over-much, for thereby is the *ftomack* fo overcharged with meat, as not to be able to digeft and convert it all as it ought into good *blood* and nutriment, and therefore muft neceffarily breed evill *humours*, which attaching the *head* and *braine*, it is in conclufion the caufe of this difeafe. The fymptomes whereby to discover it, is, in that his *fight* will faile him, and he will hardly be able to fee a white Wall, he will flaver at the *month*, and his *eyes* will be fwelled, and runne with much water and other filth, and his gate will be reeling and staggering, he will oft lye down and beat his *head* againft the planks, floore, and walles, and when he is laid, his *body* will quiver and shake, and he will forfake his meat, and thefe be moft certaine fignes which I have ever obferved to be in *horfes* oppreffed and exercifed with this infirmity.

Stavers.

But now to come to the cure: I will give you firft a cure which a *French Marifhal* taught me, which by reafon it founded to be fo much improbable, I would never make tryall thereof, but fuch as it is you fhall have it. Faften unto the end of a ftick a linnen ragge, and anoint it well with Barbary Sope, and put it up into his *nose* gently, and by degrees, and fo draw it out again as treatably. Another.

If you do perceive your *horfe* in his travell to fall ficke fuddenly of the *Stavers*, and that you be in fuch a place, where for the prefent you can get no help, then thruft up the greater end of your riding rod into either *nostrill* good and hard, caufing him thereby to *bleed* well, and this will preferve him for the time, till you come where you may meet with better remedy: then take a piece of Wheaten leaven, bay Salt, Rue, Aqua vitæ, and ftrong white Wine Vineger, of each as much as will fuffice, bray all thefe in a ftone mortar very well, then put this medicine into two thin fine linnen clothes or rags,

bv

by equall portions, and then moisten it well in the liquor, and so convey those clouts into either of his *eares* one, and then stitch them up close, that he get not the medicine forth, but that the substance thereof may be diffused into his *head*, and let the medicine remaine so foure and twenty hours, then take forth the rags, and this will make him a sound and whole *horse*. + But before you apply this medicine to his *eares*, run him through the *gristle* of the *nose* with a long *iron Bodkin*, and the next day after let him *bloud* in the *neck* and *mouth*, and then giue him this drink, which will keep off the *Yellowes* for comming too fast upon him; then take Turmerick, Mirrha, Ivory, or Harts-horne, of each one ounce, of Saffaron one penny worth, pound all these by themselves to very fine powder, then take Seldina a good handfull, stamp it and straine it, and put the iuyce thereof to the other ingredients, then put unto it of Muscadine or sweet Sack, one pinte, or for want thereof, of strong Ale one quart, adding unto it of *London Treacle* one ounce, set these upon the fire, and let it boyle one walme or two, and in the taking off, put unto it of sweet Butter the quantity of an Egge, and so having well brewed the same, give it him bloud warme, and for three or foure dayes, give him either sweet Mashies, or white water. + This is very good. Another.

First take *bloud* from him in the *necke* and *mouth*, and let him chew and swallow down his own *bloud*, being most wholesome for him; and whilst he is thus *bleeding*, thrust an iron Bodkin through the *gristle* of his *nose*, skin and all, then

Take Assafetida, the quantity of a hasle nut, and dissolve it into a sawcer full of white Wine Vineger, then take Lint or fine Flax, and dip it into the liquor, and so stop both your *Horse eares* therewith, and so stitch them up, and at the end of foure and twenty houres, unstitch them, and he is cured. + This is very good. Another.

First let him *bloud* in both the *weeping veynes*, and in the *mouth*, then

Take of bitter Almonds one ounce and a halfe, of the gall of an Oxe two drams, of black Ellebore made into fine powder, a halfe penny worth, of Graynes, Castoreum, Vineger, and of Varnish, of each five drams, boyle all these together, untill the Vineger be all consumed, then straine it, and put it into his *eares*, and do as before. + This is very good. Another. Bloudy him as before, then with your incision knife, make a slit down his *forehead* an inch long and better, and with your *cornet* loosen the *skin* round about, but most toward the *foretop*, then put into the place the root of a red great Dock, cut thin, and let it remaine there fourteen or fifteen dayes, and once in two dayes at furmost, crush out the mattrative stuffe, and then take forth the Dock roots, and heale up the place with your healing Salve, and give him during these fourteen dayes, white water onely, and he will doe well. + This I assure you is very good. Another.

ther Bloudy, &c. Then take Aqua. vitæ, and Garlick, of each so much as will suffice, stamp them together, and convey it into his *cares* doing *ut supra*, ✠. This is singular good. Another. Let him bleed well in the *neck* and *mouth* (for the abundance of bad *bloud* is the cause of this disease) then with your *Incision knife* slit the *fore-head* of the *Horse*, and with your *Cronet* raise the *skin* especially upwards, & put in three or foure *cloves* of *Garlick* pilled, & put upon it a little lint or fine Flax to keepe away the *Wind* (for that is dangerous) and then give the *Orifice* a stitch to keep in the Medicine the better. Then.

Take the seeds of Cresses, of Poppy, of Smallage, of Parsly, of Dill (I say the seeds only of these hearbs) and take also pepper, and Saffaron, of each two drammes, make them all into fine powder, and put unto them of Barley water two quarts, as it commeth boyling from the fire, and let it infuse therein three houres, and then straine it, and give him one quart thereof, if it may be in the morning fasting bloud-warme, and walke him up and downe an houre and better, and then set him up warme, and give him Hay sprinkled with water, and the next day give him the other quart fasting, and then doe as before, neither let him drinke any cold water in foure or five daies after, but only white water, unlesse sometimes a sweet Mash: And thus doing he will be cured. ✠. This is a most excellent Receipt, and I have often used it.

§. 21. S.

Hippoph. **V** Has remedy have you for a Horse that hath Swelled-Legges?

Hippof. This Malady of *swelled* or *Gourdy-Legs* commeth eft-soones by long standing in the Stable, when as the upper parts of the planks at his *fore-feete*, are much higher then that at the *hinder feete*, as I have before observed in *lib. 1. cap. 4.* for by that meanes the *Horse* not standing even, and therefore not at his ease, the *bloud* setteth in the *hinder-Legges*, which causeth them to *swell*. Sometimes they doe come by reason the *Horse* being hard ridden, was brought into the Stable too hot, and carelessly set up, who taking cold, the *bloud*, *grease*, and *humours* do fall downe into the *Legges*, and so cause them to *swell*. Sometimes it commeth by over-riding, whereby the *Horse* hath his *bloud* stirred, and his *grease melted*, which falleth down, and resteth in the *hinder-Legges*, causing them to *swell*. Sometimes by being ridden and gallopping upon hard waies in the Heates, and by that meanes the *bloud* and *grease* falleth downe into his *Legges*, congealeth there, whereby they do become *gouty* and *gourdy*. And sometimes *gourdy-Legges* cometh by sicknes and surfs taken, which after remedy had, yet the *faces* or *dregges* thereof still remayning in the *body* of the *horse*, falleth downe, and cauleth the *legges* to *swell*, as

Swelled-
Legges.

I have frequently seene. And these be the primme causes and reasons which we have observed for this Malady. The signes your eye doth demonstrate, and you may without teaching point to it with your finger, and therefore we may say nothing thereof. Wherefore now we will to the cure. If the swelling come by ordinary meanes, then take up the *Thigh-veines*, and then you neede doe no more, for that alone will cure him, and after open the *heebe-veines*, and lay a *Retoyre* to the *Legges*, or else give him the *fire* which will siccate & dry up the bad *humours*, which must be given gently, and lightly, neither would I have you give him the *fire*, unlesse you might thinke or find it in your indgement to be very requisite. But my meaning is not that this remedy of the *fire* bee applyed, but only to an old griefe, otherwise not at all. ✠. This is good. But if besides his *swelled-Legges*, they also be stiffe, comming to him after much labour and travell; therefore.

Take of Violet-leaves, Primrose-leaves, and Strawberry-leaves, of each a handfull, boyle all these in new Milke till they become very soft, and then take it from the fire, and put to it of the oyle of *Nervall*, of *Petroleum*, and of *Pamphilion*, of each one ounce, and so stirre all together untill it becometh bloud-warme, and therewith chafe, rub, and anoint the *Legges*, *Nerves*, *Sinewes*, and *Joynts*, holding a hot barre of Iron neere to the place, to cause the Vnguent to sinke the better in: Anoint him thus with this Vnguent, five or sixe daies together, and it will helpe him. ✠. This I have often used. Another.

Take Traine-oyle, and warme it upon the *fire*, and therewith bathe his *legges* morning and evening, and in short time he will be well. ✠. This is very good; also to ride your *Horse* into the water morning and evening up to the *belly*, doth take away the swelling of his *legges*. ✕. This is marvelous good.

§ 22.S.

Hippoph. **V**What is good to assuage the swelling of the Cods in a Horse?

Hippof. This Malady commeth many waies, to wit, by violent riding & heats, when there was not sufficient care had of him, but was neglected in the setting up; also it commeth by washing, walking, and cold taken after immoderate labour, and sometimes by feeding to intemperately upon Provender, and sometimes by feeding upon unwholesome meate. The signes to know it, are, his *stomack* may be peradventure good to his meate, but yet it will do him little good, for he will be alwaies meagre and leane, his hayre will stare, neither will he cast his coate at usuall times like as other *Horses* doe, he will loose his mettle, and become very *lunt*, and his eyes will run with water and matter, and his *stones* will swell; in a word, he will be out of
ioynts,

ioynt, that is, out of good temper throughout every part and member of his *Body*. Other causes there bee of this Malady whereof I have intreated before in *lib. 2. cap. 6. §. 9. let. C.* to which place I do referre you; nevertheless I will give you a Receipt or two which I have often used, and doe know them to be right good.

Swelled cuds

Take Turmerick and long-Pepper, of each a penny-worth, Aniseeds, and Fenugrick, of each a halfe penny-worth, sweet Butzer so much as will suffice, boyle all these (being first powdred) in Ale three pints, till one pint be consumed, and then take it from the fire, and straine it, and dissolve into it in London Treacle one ounce, and so well brewed, give it your *Horse* bloud-warme, let him have this drinke sundry times, and let otherwise his drinke be white water, and sometimes a sweete Mash till he be well. ✠ This is very good. Another.

Take of the best Tarre two spoonefuls, life-honey one spoonefull, black-lope the quantity of a Nutmegge, Diapente one ounce, and of Bay-salt two spoonefuls, mix all these well together, and convey it into two or three Egges-shells, the tops being so opened as that you may but get forth the meate, then fill up the shells with this Medicine, and so put them downe his *throate* in a morning fasting, and give him presently after it two or three hornfuls of Ale or Beere to send downe the Medicine the better, but the surpluse of what remaineth of the Medicine, let it be spred upon the roote of his *mouth*, doe thus every morning for eight dayes together, and when he hath taken his Medicine, let him be ridden gently an houre or two, and then set him up warme cloathed and littered, and let him upon the Trench three houres, and let his drinke bee white water, and sometimes a sweet Mash, both then and for sometime after. † This is also very good.

§ 23. S.

Hippoph. **H**ow doe you take off a Spongy-Wart?

Hippof. A Spongy-Wart, is that very thing which our *Ferriers* cal an *Anberry*, which is kind of *wen*, which swelleth sometimes to a great bignesse, sometimes againe it will bee but small; but then commonly they are many, and do grow into *clusters*, this cometh by meanes of *peccant humours* caused of bad *bloud*, and that *horse* that is inclined to *Warts*, will seldome be ever free of them, for take them off in one place, and he will put forth more in other parts of his *body*, but to breed of eyther *Horse* or *Mare* inclined to them I will dissuade you: for most commonly hee will put them forth about the *eyes*, yea, and oft-times so neere to the *eye* it selfe as to endanger the *sight* thereof; They be easily knowne by reason they be so apparently seene, and therefore need no further description. The cure is. It were good first to *purge* him, and to take *bloud* from that *Master-veine* which

Spongy-wart.

which you doe finde doth most feed them, as well to divert as to stop the malice of that bad *humour* which doth occasion the malady. If the *Wart* or *Anberry* be farre enough extant from the *skin*, then tye two of his strongest *hayres* taken from his *taile*, hard about the sorance so fast as you possibly can, and so as that it may not loosen, and in few dayes it will fret and eat it cleane off, which done, strew upon it the powder of Verdegreece to kill it at the root, and after heale it up againe with your green salve. But if you cannot come to tye it either with hayre or threed, then either with your incision knife cut it away close to the *skin*, or else burn off with an hot iron, and then first kill the *fire* with Turpentine and Hogs greale molten together, and after heale it up as before is prescribed you. ✠ This is very good.

§ 23. S.

Hippoph. **VV** *Has is good to be applyed to a Horfe that is Surbated :*

Hippof. Two wayes a *horfe* doth surbate; the first is when a *horfe* is newly backt and weighed, upon his first shooing, and when the owner of the *horfe* will not have patience with him, but will presently journey him upon hard and stony wayes, his *hoofes* and *feet* being yet but tender to what they will be afterwards, and so the *horfe* must needs *surbate*. The second way is, when a *horfe* hath of himselfe bad *feet*, and is also either ill *shed*, or else his *shoes* be very thinne worne, or that they be too narrow or too short, and that he be ridden upon bad, hard, stony, and rough wayes; in such like cases your *horfe* will *surbate*; you shall finde it by the handling of his *feet*, especially the next day after a long journey, by reason he will not stand still long upon his *feet* without hitching them up, and removing them, for that they will be so sore; as that he will not know how or where to place them, and you shall also perceive him to be *surbated*, by reason that after a journey he will lye much, standing being painefull unto him, and in his lying you shall see him covet to lye and stretch himself all along upon one side, and if you feele the *coffins* of his *hoofes*, you shall finde them to burne very hot, and his *hoofes* to be very dry. The cure is very facile.

Take two new laid Egges, and after you have well picked his *fore-feet*, breake them raw into the *soles*, and then stop them up with Oxe or Cow dung, and he will be well by the next morning. ✠ This is an approved good cure.

Surbated feet.

§ 24. S.

§ 24. S.

Hippoph. **H**ow doe you cure a Horse that is stifled?

Stifled.

Hippof. This mischiefe commeth *accidentally*, to wit, either by a *straine* in leaping, or by a slip in travell, or by the stroke of some other *horse*, and thus the *bone* is either out of its place, or else the joynt is very much strained or hurt. The signes to know it is; if the *bone* be out, you may see it plainly, for besides his halting, the *bone* dislocated will so stick out, as that the *horse* can do no more then touch the ground with his *toe*, til it be put in again, and the way to put it in is thus. First tye down his head to the Manger, then take a cord and fasten it to the *pasterne* of the *stifled legge*, and draw his *legge* forwards, and so the bone will come right by helping it with your *hand*, which being in, your care then must be to keep it in with your *hand*, and then tye the other end of the cord to the Rack, so as he may not put back his *legge* to dislocate the *bone* any more for an houre or two after till it be settled and dressed. Wherefore let his *Keeper* stand by him all the time, lest the *horse* should lye down, or be unruly. This done, take pitch which you must have molten in a pot, in a readinesse, and with a clout upon a stick annoint the stifling three or foure inches broad at the least, and ten inches long, and presently before the pitch can coole, have a strong piece of new Canvas cut fit for the purpose, which being made very warme by a fire, clap it upon the place so neatly, that the *bone* cannot goe forth againe. This plaister must not lye towards the *flanke* and *foot* longst-wayses, but crosse-wayses upon the *joynt*, as it were about the *thigh*, otherwise it cannot hold in the *bone*. Having thus done, anoint the plaister on the out-side all over with the said molten pitch, and whilst it is warm, clap flocks of the *horses* colour all over upon the out-side of the Canvas, and let the plaister remaine on untill it fall away of it selfe, and after that you may apply such good Vngvents as you may thinke to be most expedient for the malady. But if the *bone* be not out, then put in a *French Rowell* a little beneath the stifling-place, and let the *Rowell* remain in fifteen dayes, turning it once every day, and at fifteen dayes end take it forth, and heale up the *orifice*, like as before you have been taught. ✠ This is speciall good.

§ 25. S.

Hippoph. **V**Vhat remedy may be had for a Horse that is troubled with the Stone?

Hippof. This is a very troublesome disease, and it commeth of grosse and bad *humours*, gotten principally by violent exercise, and intemperate riding, and it commeth from the *Liver* and *Spleen*, which falling down into the kidneyes and bladder, setteth there, whereby there groweth in the *mouth* of the *conduet* certaine inflamed hard knots

knots which stoppeth his *urine*, whereby he is not able to *pisse*, but with great difficulty, by reason the *sinewes* and the *pores* about the necke of the *bladder* are benumbed, which taketh away the sense and feeling of the *bladder*. And sometimes this infirmity cometh by reason that in his travel, the *horse* is kept so long in agitation, as not to suffer him to *stale* and *pisse*, for the water being made hot by exercise, doth conglutinate, and becommeth viscous and thick, so as it cannot passe away from him, as nature requireth it should do, whereby there is made too great a retention of the *Vrine*, by meanes of the obstructions he hath in his *kidneyes*, which engendreth gravell, sometimes red, and sometimes grey, which falling down into the *conducts*, ingendreth *phlegmaticke* and *grosse humours*, which occasioneth conglutination, and so becommeth to be the *stone*, waxing so hard, and thereby stopping the current of his *water*, so as he will not be able to *pisse* or *stale*. And you may come easily to know it, by reason that he can neither draw his *yard*, nor *pisse*, but with great paine and difficulty in his sheath, and that many times drop by drop.

The cure is, take Saxafrage, Nettle-roots, Parsley-roots, Fennell-roots, Sperage-roots, and of Dodder, of each one handfull, bruise all these things, and boyle them on a gentle fire with white Wine, untill a third part be consumed, then put unto it of Salt one handfull, of Sallet oyle, and of the Lard of a Goar, of each three ounces, Honey halfe a pound; when all this is boyled, straine it, and wring it very hard, and of this give your *Horse* one pinte every morning fasting, made bloud warme, and if in the boyling or by standing, it happen to become thicke, dissolve it again with white Wine, and after the first boyling it must be but onely warmed. And give to him this drinke every morning so long as it will last. ✚ This is very good, for I have often tryed it. Another as good as the former.

Take of strong Ale one quart, and put it into a pottle pot, then take so many of the reddest Radish roots, cleane washed and sliced into small pieces as will fill up the pot, then stop up the pot so close, as that the *ayre* cannot get in, and let it remaine foure and twenty hours, then straine the roots from the Ale very hard into some other cleane pot, and so give it him in a morning fasting with a *borne*, then ride him a while upon it, and so set him up warme covered and well littered, and in a little while you shall see him *pisse*, give him this drinke sundry mornings together, and during this cure, let him have but onely white water to drink. ✚ This is speciall good.

Stone.

§. 26. S.

Hippoph. **V**V *What cure have you for a String-hault?*

Hippof. This is a malady which for the most part the best mettled *horses* be many times troubled with; it commeth meerly of cold, as by taking cold suddenly after hard riding, especially when by being washed, for the *bloud* and *sinewes* being by that meanes stupified and benumbed, is the cause of the disease by reason the sense and feeling of the *member* is taken from him; you may easily know it by the manner of the unsightly lifting, and sudden snatching up of his *legge* much higher then the other, and it commonly commeth into the *hinder legge*, rather then into the *fore-legge*. The cure is, first to take up the veine in the thigh, and after to anoint all the *legge* and the *thigh* from the *body* down unto the very *foot* a long time together, one holding a red hot Barre of iron neere to the place, and let him be anointed with this oyntment.

Take of the oyle of Petroleum, of the oyle of Wormes, of the oyle of Nervall, of Patch or Piece grease, of the oyle of Spike, of each one ounce, of *London Treacle* two ounces, and of Hogs grease one pound, melt all these upon the fire, and then take it off, and keep it with continuall stirring til it be thorough cold, and with this anoint the visited member every day once, and then wispe him up with a soft thumb band of Hay from the *pasterne* to the top of the *hoofe*, and thus do for ten dayes together, rubbing and chafing in the ointment very well a long time together, holding (as before I have advised) a hot barre of iron neere to it, to cause this Vnguent the better to sinke into the *sinewes*, *nerves*, and *joynts*. But after you have done anointing him, you must keep him warme and well littered, and let the thumb band be daily made lesser and lesser, and shorter and shorter, till you perceive him to handle both *legges* alike, and your *Horse* to be recovered; but you must not ride him that he may sweat much in a *moneth* after, and so soon as warme weather commeth, turne him to grasse into some dry pasture where is water, and take him up againe about *Bartholomew Tide*, or before the cold commeth, and whilst he doth remaine in the Stable, keep him warme, and so he will be free of his *String-hault*, and be a sound *horse* againe. To anoynt him also with *Acopum* is very good. ✠ Thus I have recovered sundry *horses* of this malady.

String-
hault.

§ 27. S.

Hippoph. **V**What is the nature of Suppositories?

Hippof. The nature of *Suppositories* are to helpe a *horse* that cannot well empty himselfe; for a *Suppository* cauſeth him to diſcharge himſelfe of many ſuperfluous and euill *humours* which do diſturb, annoy, and diſtemper his *body* with their *peccant qualities* and conditions, for they breed bad *nutriment*, which oft times good dyet cannot amend, and therefore muſt be ſent away by *purgation*, that is to ſay, by *Suppository*, or *Clifter*, or *Potion*; I haue ſpoken already ſufficiently, and therefore I will now intreat of *Suppositories* onely, which of all other wayes is the gentleſt, wherewith to *purge* and *cleanſe* the *guts*: for a *Suppository* is but a preparative to a *Clifter* or *Potion*, whereby to looſen the *guts*, which may be bound and clogged with dry, hot, and hard *excrements*, which a *Suppository* rather then a *Clifter* can looſen; and as I haue already given you receits for *Clifters*, ſo now will I give you for *Suppositories*, whereof you may make uſe according as occaſion and neceſſity ſhall require.

Take a great Candle of four in the pound, and cut off three inches at the ſmaller end, and then anoint the bigger and longer part either with Sallet oyle, or freſh or ſweet Butter, and ſo convey it into his *fundament*, then with your hand hold his *taile* to his *tuell* a good halfe houre, or elſe tye his *taile* with a ſtrap to his girt or Surſingle, by which time the *Suppository* will be diſſolved, then let looſe his *taile*, and then preſently leap his *backe* and trot him up and down till he do begin to *empty* and *purge* himſelfe, for by this meanes it will worke the better and more kindly. ✠ This is the moſt gentle of all *Suppositories* can be given. ✠ This diſſolveth all hard, dry, and hot *excrements*, and ſendeth them forth, and beſides it ſuppleth the *guts*. Another, If you doe finde your *horse* to be ſo exceeding weake, as that you dare not without perill of his *life*, adminiſter unto him any *Potion* or *purging medicine*, then give him this *Suppository*.

1 *Suppository*.

Take of common Honey fixe ounces, of Salt-Niter one ounce and a halfe, of Wheate flowre, and of Annifeeds in fine powder, of each one ounce, boile all theſe to a ſtiſſe thickneſſe, and ſo make it into *ſuppositories*, then take one of them and anoint it all over with Sallet oyle, and your hand alſo, and ſo put it up into his *fundament* the length of your hand, then tye his *taile* betwixt his *legges*, as before is ſhewed, and let it remaine ſo halfe an houre, by which time the *ſuppository* will be diſſolved, then ride and order him as before. ✠

2 *Suppository*.

This is alſo very good, eſpecially in caſe of *ſurfets* or inward ſickneſſe. Another.

Take a piece of Caſtle-Sope, and paring it bring it into the faſhion of a *ſuppository*, and apply it, and order him as before is taught you. ✠

3 *Suppository*.

This is ſpeciall good to purge *phlegme*, & it is very gentle. Another.

X x 2

Take

4 *Suppository.*

Take Saven, so much as will suffice, and stamp it to mash, and stamp with in Stavesaker and Salt, of each two ounces, boyle these in common Hony so much as will suffice, till it be thick, and so make it up into *Suppositories* and administer one of them, like as you are before shewed, and order him so likewise. +. This purgeth *Choler*. Another.

5 *Suppository.*

Take an angry red Onion and pill it, and iagge it crosse wayes with your knife, and so administer it, and order him as before. X. This purgeth *Melancholy*. Another.

6 *Suppository.*

Take common-hony one pint, and boyle it till it be thick, & make it up into *Suppositories* as it cooleth, and administer it, and order him as before is prescribed you. +. This purgeth evill *humours*, it cooleth and comforteth the *body* very much, and causeth a good appetite to meate. All these I have often used and I do know them to be very good. But you must take with you some instructions fit to be knowne, which are; First, when at any time you do administer eyther *Suppositories*, *Clysters*, *Potions*, you must doe it in a morning fasting unlesse necessity urge the contrary: Secondly, you must not at those times suffer him to drinke any cold water, no not with exercise, but eyther sweet Mashs, or white water. Thirdly, it is very needfull that before you shall administer eyther *Suppository*, *Clyster*, or *Potion*, that the *Horse* be raked. And fourthly that he be after kept warme.

§. 28. S.

Hippoph. **V**What benefit commeth to a Horse by Sweating?

Sweating.

Hippof. Truly Sir very much, for by moderat and iudicious giving of *Sweates*, as well in his cloathes in the Stable, as abroad in his exercise, you may cure him of many Maladies and prevent, many infirmities which otherwise might accrew unto him. For *Sweating* doth open the *pores*, & sendeth forth thole *peccant* and *malignant humours* which doe annoy, oppresse, and vex him. But as touching this manner of *sweating* by you proposed, it hath relation unto what I have already handled in *lib. 2. cap. 2.* where I intreating of what is to be done to a *Horse*, newly taken from grasse, I there tooke occasion to advise *sweating*, and there I referred you to this place, and therefore I will here illustrate it. Wherefore if you be in the way of *ensayning* your *Horse* having already *purged*, *blondied* and *cleansed* him, and prepared his *body* fit for *sweating* (if neede shall require) Then if the weather be faire and warme, ride him a mile upon his trot, and then home againe, then presently litter him very well, and cloath him up so warme as that he may *sweate*, but not yet so violently as to stirre the *humours* in his *body* too much, neyther let him *sweate* above an houre, and then coole him againe by degrees, and that with great

great care and moderation; and thus ride and *sweate* him for three dayes together; then for fixe dayes together keepe him warme, but not to *sweate* any more, and during the time of his *sweating*, and fixe or eight dayes after, let him have no cold drinke, but white water, and sometimes a sweet Mash. And thus briefly of *sweating*. ✠. This manner of giving *sweates* I have often used, and with great commodity to the *Horse*. But let us passe on to another Chapter.

CHAP. XIX.

§. I. T.

Hippophilus.



What cure have you for a Horse whose Tongue is hurt?

Hippof. This Malady commeth by *accident*, as with with a Bit, Halter, or the like.

Take therefore of Arman halfe an ounce, and roſt it in the embers till it be red-hot, then take it up and beat it to very fine powder: then take of life-hony a Sawcer-full, and of white Wine one pint mixe and ſteepe theſe with the powder together, and ſo let it boyle over the fire, ſtirring it continually, then take it off, and let it coole, and ſo waſh his *tongue* therewith morning and evening, or as you ſhall pleaſe till it be whole. ✠. This is very good. Another.

Take the iuyce of Salendine, and waſh the *hurt-tongue* therewith nine dayes together, and it will cure it, albeit it be halfe cut in ſunder, for the iuyce of Salendine well conglutinat and ſodder the *tongue* together being cut or wounded. †. This alſo is very good.

§. 2. T.

Hippoph. **H**ow doe you helpe a Horse that hath an Itch in his Tayle?

Hippof. This commeth of rankneſſe of *bloud*, and therefore it is requiſite that firſt he be let *blond* in the *Tayle*, and that hee *bleed* well. After.

Take Buck-lye, and with a Ragge or Hurds in the Lye waſh the place infected every day often, or as many times as it ſhalbe dry, and continue thus doing foure or five dayes, and this will cure it. †. This

Tong hurt

Taile an itch.

is very good. Another. But if the *hayre* do fall away with the *Mainge*, or *Itch*, then slit the *skin* from within two inches of the *Tuell* to the fourth *ioynt*, and with your *Cornet* take out a certaine *bone* or *gristle*, which the *French* do call *Barinole*, then fill up the clift with Salt made into fine powder, and with a hot iron burne the *taile* in sundry places, and wash it with Buck-lye, as before; But your Lye must bee made very strong. This cure I never practised, but I once saw a *Marishall* of *Paris* dresse, and so cured a *Horse* in this manner of this malady, of whom I had the cure.

§ 3. T.

Hippoph. **H**ow doe you make your Vnguentum Theriacum?

Hippof. This *Vnguentum Theriacum* is most soveraigne for any *Ach* in any of the *Ioynts*; it is also speciall good for *Horses* that doe fall lame, if the griefe be in the *Hip*, *Stifling-place*, *legs*, *shoulders*, *Pasternes*, or any other part of the *legges*, a *back-sinew-sprain* only excepted. And thus I do make it.

*Theriacum
Vnguentum.*

Take of Nervell, of Oyle of Pamphilion, and of black-Sope, of each two ounces, and of tryed-hogs-grease halfe a pound, melt all these upon a gentle fire, and being molten put into it of ordinary Treacle two penny-worth, then take it from the fire, then with a Splatter or Spooone, keepe it by continuall stirring till it be through cold, then will it be of a dun-colour, keep this in a gally-pot for your use. And when you shall have occasion to use the same, anoynt the grieved place therewith, rubbing, and chafing it in very well, and let one hold a barre of hot iron neere, as you do anoynt the griefe. And thus is it made. ✚ This is most excellent to raise the *veine* from the *sinew* at what time you are to take up the *veine*, I have tryed it *sapient sapius*.

§. 4. T.

Hippoph. **H**ow doe you destroy a Tetter?

Hippof. This Malady or Sorance the *French* doe call *Vervolant*, the *Flying Worme*, which is a *Tetter* or *Ring-worme*, and the cure is this.

*Tetter or
Ring-worme*

Take the rootes of Elicampane, and the rootes of the red-Dock, of each like much, slice them thinne, and put them into vrine three quarts with Bay-salt, two handfuls, let it boyle untill one quart bee consumed, then take it off, and with a clout fastned to a stick wash the Sorance very hot. Use this foure or five mornings together, and it will kill it. ✚ This is very good.

§. 5. T.

6. 5. T.

Hippoph. **V**What is to be done to a horse that tyeth in travell, and falleth sick?

Hippof. For a Horse to tire upon the way, the causes are many: First, for that he is travelled when he shall be too young; Secondly, in that he is lately taken from grasse whilst he is yet foule and foggy, before he be well ensaimed; thirdly, in that he hath beene long kept and pampered in the Stable, without giving him breath or moderate exercise; Fourthly, by being travelled beyond his strength in longer journeyes, and deeper wales then he was well able to performe; Fifthly, it might be through the covetousnesse or carelesnesse of his rider, in not feeding or seeing him fed so well as was fitting; Sixthly and lastly, by reason the Horse might have some secret infirmity whereof his master might be ignorant. Wherefore if your Horse may happen in his travell to tire or faint, have patience with him, and do not force him beyond what he may be able to performe, either by spurring or beating him, like as many cholericke and passionate people doe usually, but get to some house or Inne so loone as conveniently you may, when first you see him begin to sinke or to faint under you, set him presently up warme clothed, and well littered, that he take no cold, and let his Keeper or the Ostler of the Inne rubbe and chafe him all over with fresh dry straw, but especially let him rub him against the hayre, and let him have no meat till two houres or more after you have given him this drinke.

Take of the best sweet Sack one pinte, but if that cannot be had, then take the same quantity of White or Claret Wine, and put thereto of Cinamon, Ginger, Nutmegs, Graines, Cloves, Anniseeds, and Fennell-seeds, of each one ounce, all made into fine powder: then take red Sage, Rosemary-tops, Mints, Camomill, and wilde Thyme, of each like much, so that in all they amount to halfe a handfull, chop the hearbs very small, and then put all these Hearbs and Spices into the Wine, and then boyle them a pretty while, then take it from the fire, and straine it hard, and unbit your horse, and give him this drink bloud warme; this done, Bit him up againe, and with a switch stir him up and down as he standeth in his place tyed to the Rack, then coole him, and two houres after his drink, give him first some Hay, and halfe an houre after that, give him either a sweet Mash, or white water, and after feed him at your pleasure, but be you considerate in giving him his Provender by little at once and often, and howsoever feed him well, and thus ordering him, by morning he will be well recovered, and able to travell againe. ✚ This is an excellent drink, and of great vertue for any Horse that tyeth or falleth sick upon the way. It is also very requisite that with a Syringe you do inject of this drinke into his nostrils. Another. If you doe feare that your

1
2
3
4
5
6

Tying in
travell.

your *horse* may tire in his journey, for prevention, carry with you a boxe of powder of dryed Elecampane roots, and let the powder be also searced, and when you do come unto your Inne, let him not be walked, but set up warme in the Stable clothed and littered, his *legs*, *body*, *head*, and *necke*, be by the *Groome* or *Ostler* well rubbed, but chiefly his *Poll* betwixt his *eares*. Then take of strong Ale one quart, or of sweet Sack one pinte, which is much better, and put into it of your Elecampane halfe an ounce, brew them well together, and give it him with a horne, then bridle him, and tie him to the Racke, but not too high, so as he may put down his *nose*, and let him stand so an houre, then unbridle him, and give him Hay, and an houre or better after that, give him either a sweet Mash or white water, and then Provender sufficient, but with discretion and by degrees, and so also in the morning, give him both Oates and Bread, whether he will cate best, feeding him by little and little so long as he will cate, and in the morning when you are ready to take his *backe*, give him the same drinke againe, and you shall finde him to travell with *spirit* and *mettle*, and if you tie a branch of Penny-royall upon his Bit, it will greatly comfort him. But yet for all that which hath been said, if he happen to tire, then

Take Arsmart, and rub his *bare backe* where the Saddle resteth, and lay also some of the leaves upon his backe under the Saddle, and so clap on the Saddle, and this will cause him the better to hold out.

✠ This is good. Another.

Take the best Spanish Tobacco you can get, shred it small, and dry it, and make it into fine powder, and mixe therewith the powder of Cockle shels of the like quantity, which must be searced, and put this powder into a glasse, keeping it close stopped, and so keep it to your use. And when you are to use it, take of this powder, and mixe therewith of the oyle of Dill, and of the oyle of Cloves such a quantity as will make this powder into a stiffe paste, and so make it into *pils*, every Pill the bignesse of a Walnut, which must be dried in the shade (these Pils must be made in the Canicular or Dog dayes onely) then keep them close stopped in some glasse or gally pot, that no ayre can get into it, and when you have cause to use any of them, give him one of them at what time you shall perceive your *horse* to faint or tire, or that you do perceive him to have taken a cold or surfet, which may very well be the cause of his debility, give him (I say) one of these *Pils* when you do come unto your Inne. But if hee hath taken a cold or surfet, then give him a *Pill* in the morning fasting, and let him be well rubbed, clothed warme, and well littered, and suffer him not to drink any cold water, but either a sweet Mash or white water, for there is not any thing more noxious then to give a *horse* in this case cold water, and let his travell be moderate and with great discretion, and he will both hold out his journey, and get strength and flesh also in his travell. ✠ And this I have often tryed both upon my own *horses*

horses and others in whose company I have travelled, as well in *England* as in parts abroad.

CHAP. XX.

§ I. V.

Hippoph.

On doe you prescribe a Vomit to a Horse?



Hippof. Of this I have spoken a little already, where I did remit you to this place. We doe usually give vomits unto *horses* newly taken up from grasse, by reason they are thereby full of very grosse and phlegmaticke humours, which doe abound in the stomacke and head, which if they be not fetched from the *horse* in its due time, will be a meanes to impaire greatly the health of the *horse*, which must oft times be necessarily expulsed by vomit, and you shall have a receipt of a vomit which I had in *France* from a speciall Ferrier there, who (as I have before touched) hath in my presence administred to sundry *horses*, which did worke very kindly upon them, and I my selfe have administred the same to sundry *Horses* here in *England* to very great profit unto them. The receipt is this.

Take two of the greatest roots of Polipodium you can get from the Oke, wash and scrape them very cleane, and tye it to his Snaffle, Trench, or Bit, then let it be steeped in the oyle of Spike a whole night, and in the morning fasting put on his bridle with the said roots, and ride him with it in his mouth an houre or better faire and softly, and if he be troubled with any rhumaticke or phlegmaticke humour, or with any cold or other filthy matter which may any way pester, clogge, or annoy his stomacke; this thing will force him to vent them at his mouth and nose, and it wil cause him to cough and neeze, whereby he will send forth a great abundance of filth and evill slimy stuffe from off his stomacke and head, as that in short time he will become very cleane in his body, for this will both refine his bloud, and exhaust all his watry humours, in such sort as by temperate ordering him, and doing as I have here prescribed you, you may be confident to keep him a long sound, perfect, and serviceable *horse*. And this is not to be applied onely to a *horse* newly taken from grasse, but to any other *horse* that hath taken a cold, or to any ketty, foule, foggy, or pursive *horse* whatsoever.



This may seeme strange here

Y y

a-

Vomiting.

amongst us, but let any man make tryall, and he shall finde it to be most admirable.

§ 2. V.

Hippoph. **V**hat is to be given to a Horse that hath a violent Cough?

Hippof. If this great and very violent Cough proceed from a cold (as commonly all Coughs doe) then give him first Wheat Bran prepared, as sundry times before is prescribed you, and take blood from the necke veine, then with his Oates give him this powder following, viz.

Violent
Cough.

127

Take of Comen, Fenugrick, Sileris-Montani, *alias* Sifilecos, Nutmegs, Cloves, Ginger, Linseed, of each two ounces, Quick-Brimstone sixe ounces, make all these into fine powder, and of this powder give him every night with his Oates one spoonfull. But because this powder disperseth the corrupt, grosse, and phlegmaticke humours which are predominant in the body of the horse, which doe occasion the said violent Cough, so soone as you shall perceive that with this powder he hath purged sufficiently, use it then no longer, but faile not to continue his white water, but before you give him his water, take a sticke about the bignesse of your thumb at least, and well-nigh a foot long, and wrap a fine ragge about it foure or five times steeped before hand in oyle de Bay, and so put it into his mouth, like as you would doe a Snaffle, and with straps made fast to the ends of the sticke, fastned then over his Poll, like as Smiths use to doe when they burne horses for the Lampas, and let him drinke with it in his mouth, that done, let him stand with it in his mouth one houre after at the least, to the end he may lick and suck up the said oyle upon the ragge or cloth, and when you doe give him his Oates, mixe them with this powder following, viz.

Take of Fennell-seeds foure ounces, of Fenugrick two ounces, of Cardamom one ounce, beat all together but grossly, otherwise hee will blow it away as he eateth his Oates, and keep him warme as before is advised you. ✠ This is very good, for I have often used it.

§ 3. V.

Hippoph. **F**or what causes doe you take up Veines?

Hippof. As touching taking up of veines, you shall understand that it is a thing in many cases so much behoofefull, as that many times the most exquisite Ferrier living, shall not be able to perfect this cure but by that way and meanes, for unlesse such veines be either taken up, or some wayes stopped, which are noxious to the cure, by feeding the malady with its peccant humours, the Ferrier

can

can never worke by true Art. Againe, *veynes* well taken up, doe prevent many maladies wherunto many *horses* are much more propense then others are. And lastly, the taking up of *veynes*, cureth some diseases, which could otherwise never be cured. For by taking up of the *thigh-veines*, sendeth away Spavens, Splents, Curbs, Kibed-heeles, Swelled-legges, Scratches, Malenders, Faricion in the legs and the like sorances; besides it easeth all paines, aches, straines, stiffnesse in the limbs, &c. Take up the *Shackle-veynes*, and it preventeth the Quitter-bone, Ring-bone, swellings in the lower-joynts, foundrings, &c. Wherefore forasmuch as ignorant people, whatsoever opinion they may have of their superabundant skill, yet are they very much to seeke in that they doe so much exclaime against taking up of *veynes*, absurdly affirming it to be a great meanes of laming of *Horses*: but let them not mistake themselves, for assuredly it is the best and onely remedy against these and many more maladies, and when they shall have made triall, they will not be of so prejudicate opinions.

Veynes to take up.

CHAP. XXI.

§ I. W.

Hippoph.



What good thing have you wherewith to preserve the winde of a Horse?

Hippof. Sir, for this infirmity I make a Cataplasme which is this.

Take Wheate flowre foure pound, Elecampane and Gentian, of each one ounce, Anniseeds, Fenugrick, Comyn, Brimstone, and Licoris, of each halfe a pound, let all these be made into very fine powder and searced, then put unto it of common English Honey halfe a pound, and so much white Wine as will make all these things into a Cataplasme, boyle all these sufficiently, till it be so thicke that you may make it into Pils, and give your *horse* of them three or foure at a time for fixe or eight mornings together. Use this often, for it will conserve a *horse* in health, and keepeth him sound of his body, winde, and courage. ✠ This is most excellent. But if you doe perceive a taint in his winde, then

Winde to preserve.

Take a close earthen Pot or Pipkin, and put thereinto of the strongest white Wine Vineger three pints, and foure new laid Egges unbroken,

broken, and foure heads of Garlick cleane pilled and bruised, then cover the pot very close, and bury it in a Mixen or Dung-hill twelve houres, then take it up, and take forth the Egges, but breake them not, then straine the Vineger and Garlick through a fine linnen cloth, putting unto the liquor of life-honey foure ounces, and of browne Sugar-Candy, Anniseedes and Licoris, all made into very fine powder, of each two ounces, and your *horse* having fasted all night till morning, give him one of the steeped Egges, and then one hornefull of this liquor or drinke, and then another Egge, and after that another hornefull, and so a third Egge, and then an hornefull, and lastly a fourth Egge, and so the residue of the liquor, remembring to give him into eyther nosethrill halfe a hornefull of his drinke, and it must be administered bloud-warme; then set him upon the Trench, cloth, stop, and litter him warme, and let him stand so foure houres, then unbit him, and if it be in Winter time give him sweet Wheate-straw, but no Hay, and if it be in Summer, give him grasse, greene-corne, or the leaves of Sallowes, and for nine dayes give him eyther sweete Mashies, or white water, putting therein some Salet-oyle, and be you assured hee will doe well againe. 4. This is also very good. Another.

Take a Hedge-hogge alive, and Bake him in the Oven in an earthen-pot, close stopped untill he do become so dry as that you may make him into powder: give him also this powder one spoonefull, in a quart of good Ale every other day, and this will infinitely helpe and preserve his winde. ✠ This is also speciall good.

§ 2. W.

Hippoph. **I**s there such a disease which is called the Wilde-Fire?

Hippof. Yea Sir, there is, and it is a disease most dangerous and very difficult to cure, but by a Receipt of a powder which once I obtained of a skilfull Chirurgion, which said powder is not fit to bee applyed to any living creature, but to a *horse* only it is so terrible. And thus it is to be made, viz.

Wild-fire.

Wants

Take of living Toades foure, the greatest and blackest can bee found, living Moles or Ants three, and of old Shoo-les sixe, and heads of Garlick unpilled, and with their beards or roots remaining upon them forty, then take of the leanest and fastest Martlemas-beefe three pounds, cut it into thin and swall peeces and slices, such Martlemas-beefe I meane which hath longest hanged in the smoake: take also of Oates eight pints, and of old woollen-raggies the coufer the better two pounds; take also of Swallowes-dung a good quantity, and foure or five living Swallowes, put all these things into an Earthen-pot new, and well nayked, and let it bee big enough to be able

to hold all the Ingredients, and put also all those living-creatures among them alive, and then make a Cake of Clay, and therewith lute up the Pot so close, as that neyther smoake nor ayre can eyther get in or out; having so done carry your Pot into some Orchard or other Close, or Back-side, from Housing or Straw, and there place it, and so make a great fire both round about it, and upon it, and so keep the fire unto the Pot, till it bee as red-hot as the very fiery-coles themselves, and let the fire continue so great after the pot is red-hot by the space of halfe an hour at the least: then let the fire remaine untouched untill it be all consumed to ashes, and so go forth of it selfe, without eyther quenching the same, or taking away any of the fire about it, and so let it stand till it be through cold, which will hardly be done the same day, so when the Pot is through cold, take it from the place, and opening it, take forth the stuffe, and put it into some Trough or great Morter made for the purpose, which must stand in some out or open place where no winde can come, the Trough or Morter being covered with a cloth, that the powder may not fly away, there pound and stamp these things together into fine powder, and in the stamping, adde thereunto of unslacked-Lime one pound. Let him that stampeth it be close muffled, and his eyes covered with a glasse-case made for the purpose for feare of hurting them; and when it is thoroughly powdred, searse the powder through a course Haire-cloth, and so keepe the very finest of the powder for your use, in some cleane glasse or gally-pot. This powder killeth all *Wild-fires* whatsoever, and all running Sorances and Vlcers, provided it be applyed to fleshy-places, and not to places where *veines* or *sinewes* be, for that it will burne them in sunder. X. This I have made sundry times, and often used it, and to cure and dry up old sores and Vlcers (this powder being discreetly used and rightly applyed) a better thing then this truly I know not, especially if the cure be eyther desperate or dangerous.

§ 3. W.

Hippoph. **V**What good Plaiſter have you to lay upon a Wound, whereby to keepe in the Taint or Salve?

Hippof. Take Pitch, Roſin, Maſtick, Turpentine, Hogge-greaſe, of each ſo much as will ſuffice, melt all theſe together, and ſo keepe it: and when you would uſe it, ſpread what will ſerve upon a plaiſter of Leather, and ſo cover the wound therewith. ✠. This ſalve doth infinitely comfort a wound greene or old, bee the ſame Fiſtula or otherwiſe. Very good.

Wounds.

§. 4. W.

§. 4. W.

Hippoph. **H**ow doe you take away a Wen, or other excretion arising in the Flesh?

Hippof. A *Wenne* is a hard rising out of the *flesh*, which commeth sometimes by bad-humours, but most commonly by some Hurt, Stroke, Bruise, Blow, or with a stone throwne at that place, it is outwardly *fleshie*, but towards the roote it is matterative, you neede no signes whereby to know it, for it will betray it selfe by its swelling, The cure is.

Wen or ex-
cretion.

If you cannot come to tye a double threed about it whereby to eate it off, as I have formerly shewed you in the cure of a *Spongy-Wart*: then with your Incisionknife cut it a crosse into four equal parts or quarters to the very bottome, but beware you touch not either *veynes* or *sinewes*, then with Mercury eate away the foure quarters, or else burne them off with your hot-iron; then heale the place with your healing salve. †. This is very good.

§. 5. W.

Hippoph. **W**hat is good to take away Wind-gaules?

Hippof. *Wind gaules* are terrible Sorances, which do breed in the *legges* of a *Horse*, as well on the outside as on the inside, a little above the *Fet-locke ioynt*, and by their swelling are plainly discovered, and made visibie to the *Eye*, for they bee bladders, wherein lyeth a *Ielly*, which being let forth is thicke, and of the colour of the yolke of an *EGGE*, whereof some will be bigger, and some lesser. It commeth most commoly to *Horses* in the Summer-time, by reason they are ridden upon hard ground, and the *Horse* being over-heat by too hard riding, his grease falleth downe into his *legges*, and setleth there, and by that meanes breedeth this Malady, wee call *Wind-gaules*, and they will be so painefull unto him, as to cause him many times to halt. The signes to know them are by the swellings in that place before named, which be most easie to be seen and felt. The cure is eyther to stricke with your Fleame or to open them with your Incision-knife, and to let and crush out all the congealed stuffe which is therein, opening the place no further then through the *skin*, and you must be carefull of the *sinew*, which lyeth close to that place: then.

Wind-galles

Take the white of an *EGGE*, and *Oyle-de Bay* so much as will suffice, incorporate them together, and apply it with *Hurds Plaister*-wise, and in three or foure dayes thus dressing it, he will be cured. †. Thus have I cured many *Horses*. Another. After you have let forth the *Ielly*-

Take Pitch, Rosin, and Masticke, of each like much, boyl- or but melt

melt them together, and as it cooleth, make it up into rowles bigger or lesser at your pleasure, and being thorough cold, apply it with a hot iron to the orifice, and so round about the place of the sorance on either side of the legge, and so soon as you have layed on this charge, and before it can be cold, clap on Flocks, and this will dry up the Wind-gaules, and heale them. ✠ This is speciall good.

But during not onely these two cures, but all other for this malady, you must not suffer your *horse* to come into any Well by any means. Another. First shave away the hayre as you must doe in all these kinde of cures, then open the sorance as before is taught you, and crush forth the jelly and filth, then

Take Tacha-Mahacha, Masticke, Parrosin, of each to the quantity of a hasle nut, and of Stone-Pitch to the quantity of a Wall-nut, with a little Brimstone powdered, melt all these together, and when it is molten, put in so much Turpentine as a Wall-nut, and so stirre them together, and when it is cold, make a plaister thereof upon leather, and apply it warme to the place upon the out-side onely upon the orifice, which ought evermore to be made on the out-side, then put on the plaister it selfe, and round about it with the same Salve, and clap Flocks upon it, and so let him rest in the Stable, and by keeping him from wet till he be whole, and let the plaister remaine on untill it shall fall away of it selfe ✠ This is a most excellent cure, and I have often made good use thereof. Another.

Take the oyle of Vineger, and dip your thumb therein, and rub the sorance therewith every day till the haire do fall off, which will cause the Wind-gaules to breake, run, and bleed, then heale and cure the Wind-gaules well and soundly. ✠ This is as good as the former. Another. Wash and shave as formerly is shewed you, then give fire to the place, that done, open the Wind-gaules just in the middle line or stroke, halfe an inch at least, and so crush forth the jelly with your thumb, then

Take Pitch, Rosin, and Mastick, of each like much, and therewith charge the place as before is taught you. This is very good. Another. First wash and shave, and open the place with your fleame, &c. then take of oyle de Bay, and of Turpentine, of each one spoonfull, Verdigrece in fine powder, one penny worth, the white of an Egge, and of red Leade two ounces in powder, boyle all these to a Salve, and administer it to the place plaister-wise. ✠ This is one of the best cures for Wind-gaules that I doe know.

§. 6. W.

Hippoph. **W**Hat is good for a Horse that is wrung or hurt in the Withers?

Wither-
wrung.

Hippof. This is a thing that I have handled before, yet I will give you a few more receits. Having travelled him, and comming home, or to your Inne, when you take off the saddle, and that you doe finde the horse to be wrung in the *withers*, and his backe or *withers* thereby to be swelled, immediately clap on the Saddle againe, and lay upon the swolne place some wet litter, and so let the Saddle abide on againe; then cut up a thin Turfe of grasse and earth together, that done, put the Turfe upon the fire, and let it there remaine till it becommeth red hot, and being well burned, take it from the fire, and moisten the grassy side very well with white Wine Vineger, then take off the wet litter, and lay the Turfe very hot with the grassy-side next to the place, and so put on the Saddle againe, and let it so remaine for all night, and this presently helpeth any swellings in the *withers*, or any other part of the backe, as also any swellings by Spur-gaules or Navell-gaules. ✠ This is very good. Another. If the skin be broken or ulcerated, then

Take sweet Butter, Bay-salt, and powder of Frankincense, of each as much as will suffice, boile all these upon the fire, and with a clowt fastened to the end of a sticke, even as it commeth boyling from the fire, scald it two or three times, but if it be full of corruption, then make incision on both sides from beneath, that the matterative stuffe may the more easily void away downewards, and after use none other thing wherewith to heale it up, but onely your usuall powder of Lime and Honey, which will heale that, or dry other such like hurts. ✠ This is most excellent, I have often experimented the same. Another. But if it be a wrinkle either in the shoulder, or in any other joynt or member, then

Take of white Wine one pinte, halfe a porringer full of Wheate flower, of common Honey one pinte, of Syzes three ounces, boyle all these together to an Vnguent, and anoint the places grieved therewith. And this also is very soveraigne for Cones, Cracks, and Chops in the heeles of the horse. ✠ This I often using have found it to be very good. Another.

Take three great Onyons, picke forth the cores, making a concavity or hollownesse in them, then fill them up with the powder of Frankincense, then wrap them up in three or four handfuls of Hurds or Tow, then wet the Hurds, and so cover and heale them up in the hot embers, and lay upon the top of the embers a good Shovell-full of hot burning coles, and so let it remaine untill the Onions be thoroughly roasted, then take them forth, and separate the Hurds and burned

burned part from the other, and the soft and pappy part you shall apply to the sorance very hot, and let it remain three daies before it be removed, and do thus so oft as need shall require, untill it be through whole; but unlesse the hurt or bruise be very great, it will be cured at first dressing. ✠ This is very good. Another. But if the place grieved be broken,

Take then of the oyle of Worms, of Turpentine, and common Honey, of each two ounces, incorporate all these together very well till you have brought them to be one body, and either by Taint or Plaister dresse the sorance therewith, and it will heale it up sound. ✠ And this also is very good. Another, If your Horse hath taken a wréch in the shoulder, or in the hippe, knee, or hoofe; then first swim him, then after for thirteen or fourteen dayes together, annoynt the member grieved all over, and a good way about with this unguent.

Take of the oyle de Bay, of Neryall, of Dialthea, of tryed Hogs greafe, of each two ounces, melt all these together, and stirre them well till they be well incorporated, and herewith anoint him against the haire, with a hot bar of iron to be holden before you as you anoint him. and after let him be rowelled with a French Rowell, and let a Patten-shoe be put upon the contrary foot, and let him be kept in the house, and the Rowell turned daily, and the corruption put forth, and then let him be either gently ridden or walked every day halfe an houre, and let the Rowell remain in the Horse fourteen daies at the least, then take it out, and heale up the orifice with your green Oyntment, and so soon as he is whole, with your cauterizing-iron draw crosse lines eight or nine inches long over against the joynt that was pained, so as the rowelled place may be in the middle, but yet burn him no deeper then that the skin may look yellow, and then charge all that place with this charge.

Take Pitch one pound, Rosin halfe a pound, and Tarre half a pint, melt these together, and whilst it is warm, charge the place therewith, and clap Flocks upon the charge, and then if the season of the yeare will serve, let him be turned to grasse, and so let him run three moneths at the least. ✠ This is very good.

§ 7. W.

Hippoph. **W**hat is good to cure wormes of what sort soever in a Horse?

Hippof. Of this malady I have entreated sufficiently before in the § of Bots, where I have given you many good receits. Nevertheless I will give you one or two more for wormes onely, and so leave you to practise.

Take the entrails of a great Chick, and with the powder of Brimstone and Bay-Salt rowled in the said entrails, give it him down his throat, and cause him to swallow them so warm as they come out of

Wormes.

the belly of the Chicken, but cast away the Gizzard, give him this three mornings together, and every time ride or walk him till he dungeth, and keep him warm, and give him white water, and at three dayes end, give him Rice boyled in water, and after dryed in the Sun, and give him also to eate the leaves of Sallowes, and it will cause him to voyd the Worms with his ordure, but if you shall rake him first, it will be the better. ✠ This is very good. Another.

Take the tender tops of Broom and Saven, of each halfe a handfull, chop them very small, and work them into Pills with sweet Butter, and having kept your Horse fasting over night, give him them in the morning, to wit, three of these Pills at a time, and then set him upon the Trench for two or three hours after, and then give him meat, but no drink at all till night by any means, and then let him have warm, but no white water. ✠ This I have often experienced, and do know it to be a most excellent receit.

CHAP. XXII.

§ I. α.

Hippoph.



What is your best cure for the Yellowes?

Hippof. This disease of the *Yellowes* in a Horse is the very same that Physicians do call the Jaundise in a man; and as there be two sorts of Jaundise in a man, so also are there the like in a Horse, viz. the Yellow and the Black, the yellow being moyst, the black dry; the yellow proceeding from the over-flowing of the gall, occasioned of choller, and the black comming from the over-working of the Spleen, by means of over-much malancholy, both bad infirmities, but the black worst, more dangerous and most mortall, the yellow is more easily discovered by reason of its colour, for it coloureth the whites of the eyes, the tongue, the lips, and the inward parts of the nostrils, which the black Jaundise doth not apparantly, albeit by due and strict observation, you may come to know when your Horse hath a black Jaundise, for then you shall perceive the whites of his eyes, lips, tongue, and mouth to be of a thick and duskish colour, and not so cleere and sanguine as before when he was not visited with any such infirmity, both which are so mortall (especially the latter) as that if very great care be not taken whereby to pry into its symptomes, the Horse may fall.

fall downe upon a sudden (as I have often seen and known) even as he travellet, and dye, or else he appearing to be sound and healthy, and to eat his meat like as he was accustomed over night when you left him, coming again unto him in the morning, you may finde him dead, stiffe, and cold. And the origen of this malady cometh principally of unkindely and unnaturall heats given him by most violent and intemperate riding, whereby the Liver becommeth inflamed; the Liver, the Bloud, Gall, and the Spleen, which causeth choller to have soveraignty and dominion over the other humours, and so engendreth this perilous disease, which seldome bringeth a lingring or languishing death, but that which endeth him suddenly, and therefore it is most requisite that the greater eye and care be had unto it. The best symptomes how to know it is thus. Your Horse will be dry in his body, mouth, and nostrils, being marvellous hot through the abundance of choller that reigneth in him, and he will be very gaunt in his belly towards the flanks, he will be also very faint, and not onely sweat upon every the least motion, but also as he standeth in the Stable: his eyes, the insides of his lips, mouth, and tongue, will be yellow as Saffron, and he will seldome lye down, and being layd, he will sometimes grone. The cure. First let him bloud in the neck and mouth, and let him bleed well, then give him this drink.

Take of Turmerick and long Pepper, of each one penniworth, Anniseeds and Licoris in fine powder and searced, of each halfe a spoonfull, Selendine, the leaves and roots one handfull chop, stamp, and straine the Selendine, and so put all these together into strong Ale one quart, warm this upon the fire, and in the warming adde unto it of London Treacle one ounce, and of sweet Butter the quantity of an Egge, and give it him bloud warm, and after keep him warme, and give him white water, and he will do well. ✠ This is very good. Another. First bloody him as before, and then

Yellowes.

Take Turmerick, Myrrah, Ivory or Harts-horn, of each halfe an ounce, Saffron one penny worth, make all these into fine powder, and searce them, and put unto it of the juyce of Selendine a good quantity, put all these into Muscadine one pinte, Sack or Ale, and let it boile upon the fire a walm or two, then put unto it of sweet Butter as much as will suffice, and of London Treacle one ounce, and so give it him bloud warm, but let him first be raked. This is very good. Another. First bloody him as before, then

Take of white wine one quart, of Saffron two drams, and of Turmerick halfe an ounce, and a good quantity of the juyce of Selendine; give him this bloud warm, and keep him warm, and give him white water. ✠ This is very good. Another. First let him bloud as you are prescribed before. Then

Take of sweete Wine one pinte, of stronge Ale and Beere one quart, and put unto it of the iuyce of Salendine six spoonefuls, and of

the iuyce of Rue two spoonefuls, and let all these boyle upon the fire a little, then straine into it of *English* Saffaron halfe an ounce, and put into it of life hony three ounces, and so give it him bloud-warme, then leap his backe, and so ride or else walke him a foot-pace a quarter of an houre, then set him up warme, letting him to fast three houres after, and after give him meat, and a sweete Mash, or white-water. ✠. This is very good. Another. Bloudy him as before. Then

Take of the best life hony halfe a pound, of Saffaron made into fine powder, and of the powder of Fenugrick of each so much as will suffice, incorporate these with your Hony to a stiffe paste, and so make thereof three Pils, and dipping them into Salet-oyle give them to your *Horse*, which after he hath taken, ride or walke him gently an houre, then set him up warme, and order him as before. ✠. This is a particular good Pill. Another. First let him bloud as before; Then

Take of white-Wine one quart or Ale to the same quantity, and put therein of Saffaron one ounce, and Turmerick one ounce, both made into fine powder, with the iuyce of Salendine so much as will suffice, and give him this bloud-warme, and order him as before. ✠. This is also very good.

§. 2. T.

Hippoph. **VV** *What cure have you for the mattering of the Yard?*
Hippof. This disease commeth commonly in Covering-time by overmuch spending upon *Mares*, for that the heat of the *Mares*, & the *Horse* his own heate and Coity, doth burne the *Horse* giving him the running of the reines, as we may truly terme it: And the signes to know it, is, you shall perceive the end of the *Yard* to be swelled, & when he pisseth you may observe him to do it with much paine, and you may also see at other times the *Yard* to drop with yellow matter. The cure. Give him first a purge prescribed you in *lib. 2. cap. 16. §. 14. let P.* & it is the first purgation which will ease his pain in pissing; then the next day,

Take Roch-Allome one ounce, and white-Wine one pint, boyle them till the Allome be dissolved, then bloud-warme iniect this Lotion with a Syringe, putting it up into his *Yard*, so far as may be, foure or five times a day till he be well. ✠. This is a perfect cure, nor shall you need any other.

FINIS.

Imprimatur,

THOMAS VVYKES.



A Table of the Contents.

The First Booke.

The Contents of all the Chapters contained in the first Booke.



H E Introduction,	Chap. 1. page 1
Of the best manner of breeding,	2. 4
How to make and order your Stable,	3. 10
Of the marks, colours, and shapes of Horses,	4. 15
Of the office of the Groome and Rider,	5. 25

The Second Booke.

The Contents of all the Chapters contained in the second Booke.

O F what poynts consisteth the office of the Ferrier, handled Dialogue-wise: as also a formall ex-amine of the Ferrier, chap. 1. p. 34	
Of the causes of sicknesse in generall, and the causes of health and long life,	2. 46
Of such things which are of necessity to be known by every expert Ferrier before he doe adventure to ad-minister,	3. 55
The manner of handling the par-ticular cures,	4. 64

The Index.

Chap. 4. A.

A Copum and its vertues	66
Arman 1.	67
Arman 2.	68
Ach in the head	69
Egyptiacum 1.	71
Egyptiacum 2.	ibid.
Accloy	72
All diseases a Cataplasme 1	ibid.
All diseases a Cataplasme 2.	73
All diseases 3.	ibid.
S. Anthonies fire	74
Anticor	75
Attaint upper	76
Attaint upper or back sinew sprain	77
Attaint Neather	79
Arives	ibid.
Arraistes or Rat-tayles	81
Ayering	139

Chap. 5. B.

B ack swelled	82
Barbs	83
Bath for Humours to dry them up	ibid.
Bath for stiffe legges	84
Bath 1	ibid.
Bath 2	ibid.
Bath 3	85
Bath 4	ibid.
Belly gaunt	86
Belly paine	ibid.
Bit wherewith the tongue is hurt	87
Bleeding to stanch	87
Blinde-	

The Table

Blindenesse	88	Collicke	ibid.
Biting of a mad Dog	89	Collicke and stone	121
Blond Spaven	90	Colt-Evill	122
Bath for a bloud-Spaven	91	Cold	ibid.
Bone-Spaven	ibid.	Consumption	135
Blond-shotten eyes	93	Consumption of the flesh	136
Blond-shotten eyes : a charge	94	Convulsion	137
Bloud-running itch	95	Costivenesse or belly-bound	139
Blowing and Pursivenesse	ibid.	Crown-scab	140
Bots, &c.	97	Curb	141
Bots 1.	ibid.	Cold or running at the nose	159
Bots	99	Coperas water	219
Brittle hoofe	100	Charge	306
Bruised heeles and feet	101	Corrupt bloud	330
Burning with shot	102		
Bunches, knots, &c.	103		
Bran prepared	185		
Black drink for the Glanders	234		
		Chap. 7. D.	
		Dangerous sicknesse how it com- meth	142
		Dangerous sicknesse how to know	143
		Dangerous sicknesse how to prevent	145
		Dangerous sicknesse how to cure	ib.
		Diapente	146
		Diatefferon	147
		Desperate and dangerous sicknesse	ibid.
		Dissolve tumors	149
		Desperate sicknesse	150
		Drooping	152
		Drop sic	153
		Dead flesh	155
		Deep wounds	ibid.
		Desperate straine	156
		Dissolve grease	ibid.
		Disease of the Liver	158
		Draw his yard	160
		Draw a thorne	ibid.
		Drink to preserve lungs	161
		Diseases to prevent	163
		Drinke comfortable	ibid.
		Dislocated joynt	164
		Disease of tranchaisons or the chol- licke	ibid.
		Dry up sores	165
			Chap.

The Table

Chap. 8. E.

E Ate a taynt	166
Eate a feather	167
Eate a Spider	ibid.
Eye a stroke	168
Eye Filme, Pin and Web	ibid.
Dragon	170
Eye a canker.	170
Eye a charge	171
Electuarium Theriacum	67
Excretion to cure	302
Eye a Wart	173
Eye broken	174
Excretion	175
Eares impostumated	176

Chap. 9. F.

F Arcin	178
Farin wet	184
Flanks	ibid.
Fat Horse	185
Fat a leane horse	ibid.
Falling of the fundament	186
Feaver defined	187
Feaver how to know	189
Feaver ordinary	ibid.
Feaver Heetique	191
Feaver pestilent	192
Flying worme or tetter	194
Feet to mollifie	195
Figge in the foot	ibid.
Fistula	196
Fistula water	197
Feelock hurt	199
Froathy or weeping hoofe	ibid.
Foundring in the feet	200
Foundred long	201
Foundred in the feet and body	ibid.
False quarter	206
Flanks or maldeflanks	209
Flux	210
Foule and old sores to mundifie	211
Forsaking meat	212
Frissh running	213
Felsrick	154
Fret	214

Chap. 10. G.

G Alled back	217
Galled with the shackle	ibid.
Gravelling	218
Green oyns-mens	219
Grease molten	220
Glanders	222
Glanders a purging drink	230

Chap. 11. H.

H Ayre from the mayne and tayle	
falling away	235
Hayre to grow	236
Head-ach	ibid.
Heeles scabbed	ibid.
Heeles kited	237
Heele Mellet	ibid.
Hide-bound	238
Honey-charge	241
Hoofe to grow	ibid.
Hoofe weeping	243
Hoofe loose	ibid.
Hoofe hurt	ibid.
Hoofe bound	244
Hoofe bound a charge	ibid.
Hoofe brittle	245
Hoofe straight	ibid.
Hoofe loose	ibid.
Hoofe trodden upon or hurt	ibid.
Hoofe brittle to make tough	ibid.
Hoofe to grow	246
Halser cast	ibid.
Hough swelled	ibid.
Humours to dry up	247
Hurt shoulder	ibid.
Hurts old to cure	ibid.
Honey	69
Horse-bread	148
Haw	169

Chap. 12. I.

I Mperfections in the feet	248
Impostumation to ripen.	ibid.
Inward	

The Table

Inward sicknesse	249
Inward sicknesse a suppository	ibid.
Inflamations	250
Joynt griev'd	251
Increase the hoofe	ibid

Chap. 12. L.

L Ampas	252
Lax to stop	ibid.
Leane horse to make fat	253
Legs swelled	254
Legs swelled	255
Leprosie or elephantick malady	ibid.
Lice	256
Lime and Honey	257
Loe-worme	ib.
Lungs a disease	259
Lint wherewith to heale ulcers, or old sores	165
Lunatick eyes	173
Lamenesse to finde out, three wayes	311

Chap. 13. M.

M Alender	260
Mainge	262
Mouth sore	267
Mellet	268
Mollifie humours	ib.
Morfounded	ib.
Melancholy	330

Chap. 14. N.

N ose running	270
Navell galled	ib.
Night-mare	271

Chap. 15. O.

O ld sores	272
Over-reach in the heele	ib.
Oyntment	304
Oyntment	ib.
Oyntment	305

Chap. 16. P.

P Astern joyn't strained	275
Pill for the Glanders	ib.
Pestilence	277
Preparative	278
Pastons	279
Pursivenesse a pill	280
Pissing of blood	281
Poll-evill	283
Powder for old sores	284
Pursivenesse or shortnesse of breath,	286
Prickt	290
Perfume 1	292
Perfume 2	ib.
Perfume 3	ib.
Purgation 1	294
Purgation 2	ib.
Purgation 3	295
Purgation 4	ib.
Purgation 5	ib.
Purgation 6	296
Putrefactive	310
Purgation defined	313
Pin and Web	169
Pearle or filme	ib.
Perfume	234
Powder	304

Chap. 17. Q.

Q Vick seab	297
Quitter bone	298

Chap. 18. R.

R Ed water	300
Restraining charge	ib.
Ring bone	301
Excretion to cure	302
Rot	303
Rules to know where a Horse halteth either before or behinde	310

Chap. 18.

The Table

Chap. 18. S.		Suppository 5	ib.
		Suppository 6	ib.
		Sweating	ib.
		Spirit of Tinne	211
S alve 304 S alve 305 S houlder wrench 306 S houlders dislocated ibid. S houlders strained 307 S houlder rowelled 308 S houlder the skin broken ibid. S houlder split 309 S houlder split 313 S houlder pight ibid. S cratches 315 S it fast 317 S cabs & scratches 318 S tale or dung 319 S icke in travell ibid. S udden sickness 320 S elender ibid. S icke or surfettid 321 S inew sprung ib. S inew grieved 322 S inew cut ib. S inew sprain ib. S inew sprain 323 S traine newly taken ib. S traine old 324 S tinking breath ib. S plent. 315 S tumbling 328 S tiffe legges 329 S tale or pisse ib. S tavers 330 S welled legs 333 S welled cuds 334 S pangy wart ib. S urbated feet 335 S tifled 336 S tone 337 S tring hault 338 S uppository 1 339 S uppository 2 ib. S uppository 3 ib. S uppository 4 340		Chap. 19. T. T ongue hurt 341 T aile an itch ib. T heriacum unguentum 342 T etter or Ring worme ib. T yring in travell 343 T runchions 97 T wo things to be observed in every cure 64 T hree sorts of vermine which doe ingender in the body of the Horse 97 T oads Evil. Chap. 20. V. V omiting 345 V iolent cough 346 V ineger 69 V er volant 193 V eynes to take up 347 Chap. 21. W. W ind to preserve 347 W ild-fire 348 W ounds 349 W en or excretion 350 W ind galls 350 W ither-wrung 352 W ormes 354 W hite water 68 W ater 305 W hen in the knee 311 W hen in the shanke ib. W hen in the pastern ib. Chap. 22. Y. Y ellowes 355 Y ard mattering 356	

E N D.

The Toad evil is a swellinge of the lips, wth will rise in knots. it proceeds from the Horse eating or smothering where a Toad lies, it is often in dry sores. For Remedy. let him bleed in the neck. Take his spittle you take clay & vinegar tamped together & laye it all about his lipps & mouth. diaphan. &c. in all with doe wth effect.